LIBRARY
SUPREME COURT, U.S.

TRANSCRIPT OF RECORD

Supreme Court of the United States

455

OCTOBER TERM, 1949

No. 455

AUTOMATIC RADIO MANUFACTURING COMPANY, INC., PETITIONER,

vs.

HAZELTINE RESEARCH, INC.

ON WRIT OF CERTIORARI TO THE UNITED STATES COURT OF APPEALS FOR THE FIRST CIRCUIT

PETITION FOR CERTIORARI FILED NOVEMBER 14, 1949.

CERTIORARI GRANTED JANUARY 16, 1950.

No.

UNITED STATES CIRCUIT COURT OF APPEALS FOR THE FIRST CIRCUIT.

OCTOBER TERM, 1947.

AUTOMATIC RADIO MANUFACTURING COMPANY, INC.,

DEFENDANT, APPELLANT,

v.

HAZELTINE RESEARCH, INC.,

PLAINTIFF, APPELLEE.

APPEAL FROM THE DISTRICT COURT OF THE UNITED STATES FOR THE DISTRICT OF MASSACHUSETTS, FROM INTERLOCUTORY JUDGMENT (FORD, J.), JUNE 21, 1948.

TRANSCRIPT OF RECORD.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

	PAGE
Court (Circuit Court of Appeals) and Title of Case	1
Transcript of Record of District Court:	
Title of Case in District Court, Massachusetts	1
Complaint	2
Exhibit A annexed to Complaint	5
Answer	45
Interrogatories to Plaintiff	48
Answers to Interrogatories	50
Motion to Amend Answer	71
Stipulation *re* Motion to Amend Answer	74
Allowance of Stipulation *re* Motion to Amend Answer	75
Stipulation *re* certain of Defendant's Models	75
Plaintiff's Motion for Summary Judgment	76
Affidavits in Support of Plaintiff's Motion for Summary Judgment:	
Affidavit of John K. Gowen, Jr.	77
Affidavit of John R. Binns	79
Affidavit of Harold A. Wheeler	119
Defendant's Countermotion for Summary Judgment	169
Affidavit of George K. Woodworth in support of Defendant's Countermotion for Summary Judgment	172
Defendant's Affidavits in Opposition to Plaintiff's Motion for Summary Judgment:	
Affidavit of David Housman	197
Affidavit of George K. Woodworth	202
Affidavit of Leo A. Kelley	207
Affidavits in Opposition to Defendant's Countermotion for Summary Judgment:	
Affidavit of John R. Binns	247
Affidavit of Laurence B. Dodds	271
Affidavit of Richard F. Walker	272

	PAGE
Affidavit of Charles R. Wexler in Rebuttal to Affidavit of John R. Binns in opposition to Defendant's Countermotion for Summary Judgment	277
Affidavits of Floyd H. Crews:	
In reply to last paragraph of the Opposing Affidavit of John R. Binns	281
In reply to Pages 8, 9 and 10 of the Opposing Affidavit of John R. Binns	283
Affidavit of Laurence B. Dodds	289
Hearing on Motion and Countermotion for Summary Judgment	292
Interlocutory Judgment	293
Motion for Stay of Judgment and allowance thereof	294
Order Granting Supersedeas	295
Memorandum of Decision	296
Notice of Appeal	304
Supersedeas Bond	304
Statement of Points	304
Designation of Contents of Record by Defendant	309
Designation of Additional Contents of Record by Plaintiff	311
Clerk's Certificate	312
Enlargement of time for docketing case	312
Proceedings in U. S. C. A., First Circuit	313
Recital as to hearing	313
Opinion of Court, Magruder, J.	313
Dissenting opinion, Woodbury, J.	329
Judgment	330
Recital as to stay of mandate	330
Clerk's certificate (omitted in printing)	330
Order allowing certiorari	331

UNITED STATES CIRCUIT COURT OF APPEALS FOR THE FIRST CIRCUIT.

OCTOBER TERM, 1947.

No.

AUTOMATIC RADIO MANUFACTURING COMPANY, INC.,
DEFENDANT, APPELLANT,

v.

HAZELTINE RESEARCH, INC.,
PLAINTIFF, APPELLEE.

TRANSCRIPT OF RECORD OF THE DISTRICT COURT.

No. 6677, CIVIL ACTION,

HAZELTINE RESEARCH, INC., Plaintiff,

v.

AUTOMATIC RADIO MANUFACTURING COMPANY, INC.,
Defendant.

APPEAL OF AUTOMATIC RADIO MANUFACTURING COMPANY, INC., DEFENDANT, FROM INTERLOCUTORY JUDGMENT ENTERED ON JUNE 21, 1948.

The complaint in this cause was filed in the Clerk's office on April 9, 1947, and was duly entered at the March Term of this Court, 1947, and is as follows:

COMPLAINT.

[Filed April 9, 1947.]

JURISDICTION.

1. Plaintiff is a corporation incorporated under the laws of the State of Illinois and brings this action as assignee of Hazeltine Corporation, a corporation incorporated under the laws of the State of Delaware.

2. Defendant is a corporation incorporated under the laws of the Commonwealth of Massachusetts, with its principal place of business at 122 Brookline Avenue in Boston, in the Commonwealth and District of Massachusetts.

3. The matter in controversy exceeds, exclusive of interest and costs, the sum of Three Thousand Dollars.

STATEMENT OF CLAIM.

4. On or about September 18, 1942 defendant and said Hazeltine Corporation for valuable consideration entered into an agreement in writing effective September 1, 1942, a copy of which agreement is filed herewith and identified as Exhibit A.

5. By said agreement, defendant agreed to make payments of moneys unto said Hazeltine Corporation and its assigns based upon defendant's sales of certain apparatus identified in Section 2 of Article III thereof, which payments of moneys were in any event to amount to a minimum of Ten Thousand Dollars ($10,000) for each year ending August 31; except that said minimum payment obligation was temporarily suspended during the continuance in force of Order No. L-265 of the War Production Board prohibiting the manufacture and sale for civilian use of certain apparatus covered by said agreement. By said agreement defendant also agreed to render monthly to said Hazeltine Corporation and its assigns written statements of the defendant's said sales.

6. On or about August 30, 1945 said Order No. L-265 was revoked, and on or about March 28, 1946 said Hazeltine Corporation, for valuable consideration, assigned to plaintiff the said agreement, together with all claims for unpaid royalties and

otherwise, and all other rights and obligations theretofore accrued or thereafter accruing thereunder, wherefore said agreement since August 30, 1945 has been in full force and effect and plaintiff is the sole owner of all the rights of said Hazeltine Corporation thereunder.

7. Since August 30, 1945, defendant has been extensively engaged in manufacture and sale of apparatus upon the sale of which money payments are due under said agreement, and defendant has failed and refused to pay the same either to said Hazeltine Corporation or to the plaintiff, has failed and refused to pay either to said Hazeltine Corporation or to the plaintiff the minimum sum due for the year ending August 31, 1946 under said agreement, and has failed and refused to render either to said Hazeltine Corporation or to the plaintiff the statements of defendant's sales as required by said agreement.

8. Plaintiff and its assignor, said Hazeltine Corporation, have each duly performed all of the obligations and conditions of said agreement on their part.

DEMAND FOR JUDGMENT.

Wherefore, the plaintiff prays for a judgment: That the defendant pay to the plaintiff the minimum sum due to the plaintiff for the year ending August 31, 1946 with interest at six per cent thereon; that an accounting be had and that the further sums due to the plaintiff from the defendant be determined and the defendant pay the same to the plaintiff with interest at the rate of six per cent per annum thereon; that defendant render to the plaintiff the statements required by said agreement throughout the continuance in force of said agreement; that defendant pay plaintiff's costs herein; and that plaintiff have such other and further relief as may be just.

ROBERTS, CUSHMAN & GROVER,
Attorneys for Plaintiff,
31 Milk Street,
Boston 9, Massachusetts.

LAURENCE B. DODDS,
1775 Broadway, New York 19, N. Y.
RICHARD F. WALKER,
31 Milk Street, Boston 9, Mass.
CLARENCE H. PORTER,
31 Milk Street, Boston 9, Mass.
Of Counsel.

LICENSE AGREEMENT

THIS LICENSE AGREEMENT dated as of Sept. 1st, 1942, between HAZELTINE CORPORATION, of Jersey City, New Jersey, a corporation of Delaware (hereinafter called Licensor), and AUTOMATIC RADIO MANUFACTURING COMPANY, INC., of Boston, Massachusetts, a corporation of Massachusetts (hereinafter called Licensee):

WITNESSETH THAT:

WHEREAS, Licensor represents that it owns or has the right to grant licenses under the United States patents enumerated in Schedule A attached hereto and under the United States patents to issue on the patent applications enumerated in said Schedule A attached hereto, and maintains laboratories with a staff of engineers, research men and inventors, and expects to file further patent applications and to obtain further United States patents important in the field of this Agreement; and

WHEREAS, Licensees of Licensor are entitled to certain privileges under certain United States patents as set forth in Schedule B attached hereto, and

WHEREAS, Licensee desires a license under such patents issued and to be issued and under said applications,

NOW, THEREFORE, in view of the premises and in consideration of the licenses herein granted and agreed to be granted, the mutual covenants and agreements herein contained, any releases executed concurrently herewith, it is agreed as follows:

ARTICLE I

~~Settlement of Damages~~

~~Licensee agrees to pay and Licensor agrees to accept in full satisfaction of Licensor's claims for profits and damages arising out of Licensee's unlicensed manufacture, use or sale of apparatus of the type licensed hereunder prior to the date hereof the sum of _____ Dollars ($_____). It is further agreed that such sum is now due and payable to Licensor, of which _____ Dollars ($_____)~~

~~is herewith paid, receipt of which is acknowledged by Licensor. The balance of the first mentioned sum, Dollars ($) shall be liquidated by Licensee paying to Licensor on each "Royalty Day" a sum equal to per cent (%) of the amount of royalties due from Licensee on such Royalty Day, as determined hereinafter, until the balance of Dollars ($) has been paid.~~

ARTICLE II

Definitions

For the purposes of this license Agreement the following definitions shall apply:

Section 1. A "complete radio broadcast receiver" of sound or pictures means a complete apparatus fully equipped with tubes, in the condition in which it is to be sold to the ultimate purchaser for use and fully operative (except for any antenna not particularly designed and sold by Licensee to function with such receiver and except for a primary source of power, such as batteries or house wiring) for receiving radio broadcast signals and for converting them into audible or visual signals, one or both as the case may be.

Section 2. A "chassis of a radio broadcast receiver of sound" means a complete radio broadcast receiver of sound in accordance with Section 1, less the cabinet or housing and less the tubes or speaker or both.

Section 3. A "complete carrier current receiver" of sound or pictures means a complete apparatus fully equipped with tubes in the condition in which it is to be sold to the ultimate purchaser for use and fully operative (except for a primary source of power, such as batteries or house wiring) for receiving signals transmitted over wires (such, for example, as power lines) and for converting such signals into audible or visual signals, one or both, as the case may be.

Section 4. "Pictures" means light images, shadows, reflections, and other visible reproductions, of the aspect or shape of animate or inanimate objects, or of drawings, writing, forms, and other graphic, printed and written matter of all kinds.

SECTION 5. "Complete electric phonographs" and "complete apparatus for reproducing talking pictures" means respectively electric phonographs and apparatus for reproducing talking pictures which are complete, fully equipped with tubes, in the condition in which they are respectively to be sold to the ultimate purchaser for use and fully operative for accomplishing the purposes set forth respectively in the definitions of Section 6 of this Article.

SECTION 6. "Electrical phonograph" and "apparatus for reproducing talking pictures" mean respectively apparatus for the reproduction of sound from sound records and pictures from picture records used in or in connection with such apparatus, to be heard or seen in the immediate vicinity of the apparatus, in which such record gives rise to or controls an electric current or electromotive force in such a way that the variations of the electric current or electromotive force correspond in some way to the recorded sounds or pictures, and the electric current or electromotive force directly or indirectly brings about the production of sound or pictures from the apparatus, and also, when furnished as parts thereof, apparatus for making sound and picture records for use in or in connection with, such electrical phonographs and apparatus for reproducing in the home talking pictures for private entertainment or private education.

SECTION 7. "Tube" means an electron discharge device consisting of an envelope which contains two or more electrodes and which is to any extent evacuated or contains gas or vapor under any degree of pressure and is capable of changing the form of or controlling or modifying energy supplied thereto used for any purpose under this license.

ARTICLE III

LICENSES

SECTION 1. Licensor hereby grants and agrees to grant under all United States Letters Patents of Schedule A and under all the United States Letters Patents to issue on the applications of Schedule A and under all other United States Letters Patents and applications with respect to which during the term hereof it shall have the right to grant licenses (but, in the case of patents and applications under which Licensor has or shall subsequently acquire a limited right to grant

licenses for part or all of the field hereof, the licenses herein granted are subject to any limitations to which that right may be subject), and upon the terms and conditions hereinafter set forth and solely and only to the extent and for the uses hereinafter specified and defined, a personal, indivisible, non-transferable and non-exclusive license to Licensee to manufacture at its factory located at 122 Brookline Avenue, Boston in the State of Massachusetts, and not elsewhere without previous written permission obtained from Licensor, the apparatus specified in Section 2 hereinafter and to sell (but not to lease or otherwise dispose of) said apparatus manufactured by Licensee as a whole to others for the uses specified in Section 2 hereinafter and for resale for such uses. The license to manufacture includes the right to make all or any of the separate parts and the right to have all or any of the separate parts made by others, but no license is granted to sell parts separately except for bona fide repair of used apparatus or replacement of worn-out or defective parts of used apparatus.

SECTION 2. The apparatus for which the said license is granted is as follows; the use in each case is limited to use in homes, use for educational purposes and private non-commercial use:

(a) Complete radio broadcast receivers of sound;

(b) Complete radio broadcast receivers of pictures (including television):

(c) Chassis of radio broadcast receivers of sound;

(d) Complete carrier current receivers of sound;

(e) Complete carrier current receivers of pictures;

(f) Complete electrical phonographs;

(g) Complete apparatus for reproducing pictures and talking pictures, from films or other records used in such apparatus, to be seen or heard in the immediate vicinity of such apparatus; and

(h) Combination of the apparatus specified in (a), (b), (f) and (g) of this section or of any two or more of them.

SECTION 3. Nothing herein contained, and no act or acts hereunder, shall be construed as, or result in, conveying any license to Licensee, expressly or by implication, estoppel or otherwise:

(a) Under any Letters Patent which or rights under which are held by Licensor under an agreement such that Licensor can grant licenses only upon the payment of royalties or other consideration by Licensor to others. Provided, however, that Licensor will from time to time keep Licensee informed of all such agreements and that Licensee may at any time obtain rights under such agreements corresponding to the licenses herein granted, so far as such agreements permit, on engaging to pay to Licensor any amounts which Licensor has to pay under such agreements because of Licensee's exercise of such rights;

(b) Under any patents of countries foreign to the United States;

(c) To manufacture or sell apparatus otherwise than in accordance with the express provisions of this license Agreement.

ARTICLE IV

Royalties

Section 1. Licensee agrees to pay to Licensor upon each complete apparatus identified in Article III, Section 2, sold by Licensee during continuance of this license royalties as follows:

(a) Upon apparatus identified in sub-sections (a), (b), (d), (e), (f), (g) and (h), Licensee agrees to pay to Licensor a royalty of one and five-hundredths per cent. (1.05%) of Licensee's selling price of said complete apparatus.

(b) Upon apparatus identified in sub-section (c), Licensee agrees to pay to Licensor a royalty of two and one-tenth per cent. (2.1%) of Licensee's selling price of said apparatus less Licensee's actual cost of the tubes and speaker, or either of them, if sold therewith.

The selling price on which royalty is computed in any case is the selling price before any deduction for cash discounts, or for any freight, advertising or other allowances but after deductions of manufacturers' excise taxes actually paid by Licensee directly to the taxing authority.

SECTION 2. In order to insure to Licensor the full royalty payments contemplated under Section 1 of this Article, namely, royalty on selling prices to purchasers wholly independent of Licensee, it is agreed that, in the event that any apparatus is sold hereunder:

(1) To a corporation, firm or association which, or individual who, shall own or control directly or indirectly a controlling interest in Licensee by stock ownership or otherwise; or

(2) To a corporation, firm or association in which Licensee or stockholders of Licensee, or any subsidiary or parent or affiliated company of Licensee shall own or control directly or indirectly a controlling interest by stock ownership or otherwise; or

(3) To a corporation, firm, or association to which, or individual to whom Licensee sells exclusively or which or who purchases exclusively from Licensee apparatus of the type licensed, either as a matter of general practice or under the provisions of any sales agreement, arrangement, or understanding between the parties; or

(4) To a corporation, firm or association with which, or individual with whom, Licensee or its stockholders or subsidiary or parent or affiliated companies shall have any agreement, understanding or arrangement (such as, among other things, an option to purchase stock or involving a division of profits or special rebates or allowances) without which agreement, understanding or arrangement, prices paid by such corporation, firm or association or individual for the apparatus sold hereunder would be higher than the price actually paid, or if such agreement, understanding or arrangement results in extending to such corporation, firm, association or individual lower prices for the apparatus sold hereunder than those charged to outside concerns buying similar merchandise from Licensee in similar amounts and under similar conditions;

then, and in any of such events, the royalties to be paid hereunder in respect of such apparatus shall be upon the net selling price, before cash discount, freight or advertising allowance or other similar

deductions, at which such purchaser resells such apparatus to a purchaser wholly independent of itself and of Licensee, instead of upon the net selling price of Licensee, provided, however, that Licensee shall not be obligated under this section to pay royalty upon selling prices of apparatus in excess of the standard price at which Licensee sells such apparatus to any wholly independent jobber or distributor.

SECTION 3. For royalty purposes under this Agreement apparatus shall be considered to be sold when billed out, or if not billed out then when delivered, shipped or mailed, or when paid for if paid for before delivered, shipped or mailed; but royalties paid on articles which are not accepted by the customer shall be credited against further royalty payments to be made hereunder.

SECTION 4. In case the royalties accrued and paid by Licensee hereunder do not aggregate a minimum of Ten Thousand Dollars ($10,000) for the year ending Aug.31,1943 , and for each succeeding year during the life of this Agreement, Licensee agrees within thirty (30) days of the end of each such year to make up the deficiency of the actual royalties paid to such minimum sum.

SECTION 5. By giving notice to Licensor on or before July 1st of any year ~~(except that for the year beginning , 19 , said notice shall be given on or before , 19)~~ that it desires and agrees to pay a lump sum royalty for the year beginning said July 1st in accordance with and subject to the following terms and conditions instead of the royalties provided for by Section 1 of this Article, Licensee shall be released from the obligations of Section 1 of this Article for the period of one year beginning said July 1st.

(a) The lump sum payment shall be One Hundred and Five Thousand Dollars ($105,000), which sum Licensee agrees to pay as follows: one-quarter at the time of giving said notice; one-quarter on or before the following October 1st; one-quarter on or before the following January 2nd; one-quarter on or before the following April 1st.

(b) Except as provided in sub-section (d) hereinafter, the apparatus for which this sum shall be a royalty payment shall be all apparatus which is sold by Licensee hereunder

during the year July 1st to June 30th, inclusive, immediately following said notice and which is sold for resale under the trade mark or brand name specified under sub-section (c).

(c) Licensee shall at the time of giving said notice designate a brand name or trade mark identified with Licensee's radio business under which all apparatus included within this lump payment is to be marketed and agrees that all such apparatus will have said brand name or trade mark permanently and conspicuously affixed thereto.

If Licensee finds that in the normal conduct of its business it is desirable to sell apparatus under more than one brand name or trade mark, it may apply to Licensor for permission to use additional specified trade marks or brand names, but apparatus sold under such other trade marks or brand names shall not be included in this lump sum payment unless said permission is granted in writing by Licensor.

(d) Apparatus or parts thereof manufactured for or sold to other radio manufacturers or other licensees of Licensor (except apparatus designed and intended for installation in automobiles, aeroplanes and motor boats and manufactured for or sold to automobile manufacturers, aeroplane manufacturers and motor boat manufacturers which may be licensees of Licensor) or manufactured by or purchased from other licensees of Licensor is not included in the apparatus for which this lump sum is a royalty payment.

ARTICLE V

Reports and Payments

Section 1. Licensee agrees that it will keep records showing the production and the sales of all apparatus coming within the scope of this Agreement in sufficient detail to enable the royalties payable hereunder to Licensor to be determined, and generally to allow such investigation of all its operations hereunder and in connection herewith as may be necessary to determine Licensee's compliance with this Agreement and the accuracy of said records and the statements to be furnished here-

under. Licensee further agrees to permit Licensor's duly authorized representative, or at the option of Licensee a reputable certified public accountant designated by Licensor, to inspect such records at all reasonable times.

SECTION 2. Within fifteen (15) days after, and as of, the first day of each month (hereinafter referred to as "Royalty Day") Licensee agrees to furnish Licensor with written statements under oath of some officer of Licensee, specifying as to each model or type sold by Licensee (except apparatus included under the lump sum payment of Article IV, Section 5) (a) Licensee's model number or type designation; (b) the trade or brand name; (c) the total number produced during the preceding month; (d) the total number of apparatus sold under this Agreement by Licensee during the preceding month; (e) Licensee's selling price and, in the case of apparatus coming under Article IV, Section 1. (b), (1) Licensee's selling price before the deductions thereunder; (2) the nature of the apparatus for which such deductions are made; (3) the amount of such deductions; and (4) the amount upon which royalty is payable; and (f) the amounts of royalties payable thereon as provided in Article IV hereof. Said statement shall also include a statement under oath that all conditions of this license have been complied with.

The first of such statements shall be rendered not later than the fifteenth (15th) day after the Royalty Day next following the date of this license Agreement, as of such Royalty Day, and shall cover the period from the date of this license Agreement to said Royalty Day. The royalty prescribed herein shall be due and payable on the fifteenth (15th) day of each month upon all such apparatus sold by Licensee during the preceding month, or, in the case of the first statement, the period covered thereby.

If in any such period no apparatus has been sold on which royalty is payable under Article IV, Section 1, a statement under oath so stating shall be furnished to Licensor.

SECTION 3. Licensee agrees to pay interest to Licensor upon any and all amounts of royalties that are at any time overdue and payable to Licensor at the rate of six per cent. (6%) per annum from the date when such royalties are due and payable as provided herein.

SECTION 4. Licensor agrees not to disclose to a competitor of Licensee any confidential information relating to Licensee's business obtained by the Licensor under this Agreement, except when combined statistically with corresponding information of other licensees in such manner as to conceal said information, and except as it may be necessary to disclose the information in or in connection with any arbitration or litigation.

ARTICLE VI

TRADE MARK AND PATENT MARKINGS

SECTION 1. Licensee agrees to mark on all apparatus identified in Article III, Section 2, sold by it under this license the word " AUTOMATIC ", or such other trade mark, trade name or brand name as Licensee shall from time to time specify in writing to Licensor. Such trade mark or trade or braind name shall be etched, stamped, or in some other permanent form affixed on every such piece of apparatus and apparatus not bearing said word, name or trade mark is not licensed. Nothing in this section shall be construed to modify the restrictions of Article IV, Section 5.

Section 2. Licensee agrees to mark all licensed apparatus manufactured and sold by Licensee hereunder, in readily legible form, with the statement "Licensed by Hazeltine Corporation only for use in homes, for educational purposes, and for private, non-commercial use, under one or more of the following patents and under pending applications:" followed by the word "Patent" and the numbers of the patents which are, in the opinion of Licensor, involved in apparatus of the types licensed hereunder manufactured by one or more licensees of Licensor. The marking required by this section shall be affixed to said licensed apparatus by attaching plates bearing the required marking or by affixing said marking on said apparatus in some other form equally permanent and apparatus not bearing such marking is not licensed.

SECTION 3. Upon request of Licensor, Licensee agrees to submit to Licensor a sample or complete specifications with the necessary technical information on all new models of apparatus to be sold hereunder so as to enable Licensor to advise Licensee which patent numbers should

be included in the patent marking provided by Section 2 of this article. Licensee agrees that no such new model shall be released for sale until the requirements of this section have been complied with, except that if Licensor fails to provide Licensee with the patent marking information within ten (10) days after receipt by Licensor of sample or complete specifications and of request by Licensee for said information, Licensee may release such apparatus for sale marked with the patent marking supplied by Licensor for similar apparatus.

SECTION 4. Licensee further agrees to use its best efforts to include in any and all catalogues, circulars, or price lists, of Licensee with reference to apparatus to be sold hereunder the statement: "Licensed under Hazeltine Corporation Patents."

ARTICLE VII

WAIVER

No waiver by Licensor, express or implied, of any breach of any term, condition or obligation of this Agreement by Licensee shall be construed as a waiver of any subsequent breach of that term, condition or obligation, or any other term, condition or obligation of the Agreement of the same or different nature.

ARTICLE VIII

LITIGATION

SECTION 1. Licensor agrees that it will bring and diligently prosecute such suits for infringement of the various patents under which licenses are herein granted as may in its judgment be reasonably necessary and prudent for enforcing those patents and preventing unlicensed competition in patented apparatus in the field of this license.

SECTION 2. Licensee agrees that it will cooperate with Licensor in said enforcement of patents and prevention of unlicensed competition in patented apparatus, including the furnishing of statistical and technical information and other facts relating to such enforcement and prevention, provided that such cooperation shall be at the cost of Licensor and shall not unreasonably interfere with any of Licensee's operations.

ARTICLE IX

Notices

Any notice hereunder must be in writing and may be given by registered letter and shall be deemed to have been given when such registered letter, properly addressed, is mailed; if given otherwise than by registered letter, it shall be deemed to have been given when delivered. If such notice is to be given to Licensor it shall be addressed to Licensor at its office, 15 Exchange Place, Jersey City, New Jersey; if given to Licensee it shall be addressed to Licensee at 122 Brookline Avenue, Boston, Massachusetts. Either party hereto may at any time by thirty (30) days' notice to the other designate any other address in place of those above given.

ARTICLE X

Term and Termination

Section 1. Unless sooner terminated as herein provided, the license herein granted shall extend for a period of ten (10) years from the effective date hereof and, unless Licensee shall have fully and faithfully performed all its obligations hereunder and shall have given six (6) months' written notice to Licensor prior to the end of such ten (10) year period of its election to terminate such license, thereafter for an additional period of three (3) years.

Section 2. Licensor may, at its option, terminate this Agreement, (a) on the failure of Licensee to render statements, to pay royalties or to make any other payments due under this Agreement within ten (10) days after its attention has been called to its failure to do so; (b) on Licensee's failure to comply with any other provision of this Agreement; (c) at any time upon or during the bankruptcy, receivership or insolvency of Licensee or the appointment of a receiver or trustee for its property, or upon or after an assignment for the benefit of creditors, or upon the filing of a petition, either voluntary or involuntary, for financial reorganization of Licensee or other adjustment of its indebtedness. Any such termination by Licensor shall be by notice in writing to Licensee, stating the reason for the termination and shall take effect ten (10) days after such notice is given.

SECTION 3. In the event of any default of Licensee identified in Section 2, sub-section (a) of this Article, whether or not Licensor has terminated this Agreement in accordance with the provisions of said section, there shall thereupon become payable by Licensee the minimum royalty of Ten Thousand Dollars ($10,000) specified in Article IV, Section 4, for each calendar year during any portion of which Licensee shall be in default or for the prorated portion of any such calendar year including the date of commencement of this Agreement or the date of termination under the provisions of Section 1 of this Article, in case such date of commencement or termination shall be other than at the beginning or end, respectively, of a calendar year.

SECTION 4. All licenses shall cease on the date of termination. Apparatus manufactured during the life of the Agreement and on which royalty has been paid within thirty (30) days after the termination shall be licensed to be sold in accordance with the terms and conditions hereof. Within thirty (30) days after the termination Licensee shall report and pay royalties as above provided.

SECTION 5. No termination of this license Agreement for any cause shall release Licensee from any of the liabilities accruing to Licensor or rescind anything done or any payment or other consideration made or given to either party hereunder prior to the time such termination becomes effective. No failure on the part of Licensor to exercise any right of termination hereunder shall be construed to prejudice any subsequent right of termination.

ARTICLE XI

SUCCESSORS AND ASSIGNS

Neither this Agreement nor any of its benefits, nor the licenses, rights or privileges herein granted shall be directly or indirectly, by operation of law or otherwise, assigned, transferred, divided or shared by Licensee with any person, firm or corporation whatsoever, without the written consent of Licensor. This Agreement shall inure to the benefit of the successors or assigns of Licensor, but neither the Agreement nor the licenses, rights or privileges herein granted shall inure to the benefit of the successors, assigns or any legal representatives of Licensee without the written consent of Licensor having first been obtained.

ARTICLE XII

New York Laws

This Agreement is to be governed by and interpreted in accordance with the laws of the State of New York.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have caused this instrument to be executed in duplicate by their proper officers thereunto duly authorized.

HAZELTINE CORPORATION,

By Jack Binns
President.

ATTEST:

Lawrence B Dodds
Assistant Secretary.

AUTOMATIC RADIO MANUFACTURING COMPANY, INC.

By Harold Lyman
President.

ATTEST:

John J. Grady
Secretary.

State of New York
County of New York } ss.:

On this 18th day of September, 1942, before me personally came Jack Dennis, to me known, and who being by me duly sworn, did depose and say: that he is the President of Hazeltine Corporation, one of the corporations described in and which executed the above instrument, and that he knows the seal of said corporation, and the seal affixed to said instrument is said corporate seal, and that it was so affixed by authority of the Board of Directors of the said corporation, and that he signed his name thereto by like authority.

Peggy Coyle
Notary Public.

PEGGY COYLE
NOTARY PUBLIC Kings County
Kigns Co. Clk's No. 61. Reg. No. 4080
N. Y. Co. Clks' No. 128. Reg. No. 4070
Commission expires March 30, 1944

State of Mass.
County of Suffolk } ss.:

On this 17th day of September, 1942, before me personally came David Houseman, to me known, and who being by me duly sworn, did depose and say: that he is the President of Automatic Radio Mfg Co., Inc. one of the corporations described in and which executed the above instrument, and that he knows the seal of said corporation, and the seal affixed to said instrument is said corporate seal, and that it was so affixed by authority of the Board of Directors of the said corporation, and that he signed his name thereto by like authority.

Hyman Bentzel
Notary Public.

My Commission Expires 9/1/47

Schedule A.

HAZELTINE CORPORATION

United States Letters Patent and Applications

Patent No.	*Issued*
1,524,580	Jan. 27, 1925
1,524,581	Jan. 27, 1925
1,533,858	April 14, 1925
1,535,189	April 28, 1925
1,562,952	Nov. 24, 1925
1,577,421	Mar. 16, 1926
1,582,460	April 27, 1926
1,605,411	Nov. 2, 1926
1,605,627	Nov. 2, 1926
1,625,776	April 19, 1927
1,639,698	Aug. 23, 1927
1,640,710	Aug. 30, 1927
1,648,808	Nov. 8, 1927
1,649,589	Nov. 15, 1927
1,658,638	Feb. 7, 1928
1,660,930	Feb. 28, 1928
1,672,641	June 5, 1928
1,677,355	July 17, 1928
1,680,424	Aug. 14, 1928
1,683,202	Sept. 4, 1928
1,692,257	Nov. 20, 1928
1,695,842	Dec. 18, 1928
1,698,364	Jan. 8, 1929
1,710,035	April 23, 1929
1,721,520	July 23, 1929
1,733,504	Oct. 29, 1929
Re. 17,530	Dec. 17, 1929
1,755,114	April 15, 1930
1,755,115	April 15, 1930
1,757,494	May 6, 1930
1,762,431	June 10, 1930
1,763,380	June 10, 1930
1,763,796	June 17, 1930
1,776,592	Sept. 23, 1930
1,781,759	Nov. 18, 1930
1,798,962	Mar. 31, 1931

Patent No.	*Issued*
1,823,327	Sept. 15, 1931
1,823,331	Sept. 15, 1931
1,829,058	Oct. 27, 1931
1,831,431	Nov. 10, 1931
1,844,374	Feb. 9, 1932
1,845,306	Feb. 16, 1932
1,846,701	Feb. 23, 1932
1,855,054	April 19, 1932
1,855,055	April 19, 1932
1,855,619	April 26, 1932
1,857,055	May 3, 1932
1,866,687	July 12, 1932
1,868,155	July 19, 1932
1,869,894	Aug. 2, 1932
1,873,236	Aug. 23, 1932
1,875,837	Sept. 6, 1932
1,878,614	Sept. 20, 1932
1,878,653	Sept. 20, 1932
1,878,740	Sept. 20, 1932
1,878,741	Sept. 20, 1932
1,878,742	Sept. 20, 1932
1,878,743	Sept. 20, 1932
1,879,861	Sept. 27, 1932
1,879,862	Sept. 27, 1932
1,881,235	Oct. 4, 1932
1,881,284	Oct. 4, 1932
1,883,794	Oct. 18, 1932
1,888,278	Nov. 22, 1932
1,892,354	Dec. 27, 1932
1,893,813	Jan. 10, 1933
1,894,503	Jan. 17, 1933
1,895,091	Jan. 24, 1933
1,896,500	Feb. 7, 1933
1,904,185	April 18, 1933
1,907,916	May 9, 1933
1,908,934	May 16, 1933
1,910,399	May 23, 1933
1,910,827	May 23, 1933
1,910,870	May 23, 1933
1,913,604	June 13, 1933
1,913,693	June 13, 1933

Patent No.	*Issued*
1,921,067	Aug. 8, 1933
1,921,068	Aug. 8, 1933
1,927,672	Sept. 19, 1933
1,930,784	Oct. 17, 1933
1,931,338	Oct. 17, 1933
1,931,596	Oct. 24, 1933
1,933,402	Oct. 31, 1933
1,934,722	Nov. 14, 1933
1,942,587	Jan. 9, 1934
1,942,786	Jan. 9, 1934
1,943,405	Jan. 16, 1934
1,951,685	Mar. 20, 1934
1,958,027	May 8, 1934
Re. 19,170	May 15, 1934
1,960,984	May 29, 1934
1,961,154	June 5, 1934
1,961,574	June 5, 1934
1,968,973	Aug. 7, 1934
1,977,745	Oct. 23, 1934
1,997,665	April 16, 1935
2,000,084	May 7, 1935
2,000,113	May 7, 1935
2,001,950	May 21, 1935
2,007,253	July 9, 1935
2,013,121	Sept. 3, 1935
2,014,086	Sept. 10, 1935
2,015,327	Sept. 24, 1935
2,016,760	Oct. 8, 1935
2,018,526	Oct. 22, 1935
2,018,540	Oct. 22, 1935
2,018,545	Oct. 22, 1935
Re. 19,744	Oct. 29, 1935
2,020,166	Nov. 5, 1935
2,021,692	Nov. 19, 1935
Re. 19,765	Nov. 26, 1935
2,022,067	Nov. 26, 1935
2,022,068	Nov. 26, 1935
2,022,085	Nov. 26, 1935
2,022,514	Nov. 26, 1935
2,024,002	Dec. 10, 1935
2,024,017	Dec. 10, 1935

Patent No.	*Issued*
2,026,075	Dec. 31, 1935
2,026,102	Dec. 31, 1935
Re. 19,823	Jan. 14, 1936
2,028,511	Jan. 21, 1936
2,034,013	Mar. 17, 1936
2,034,014	Mar. 17, 1936
2,036,319	April 7, 1936
2,036,343	April 7, 1936
2,038,253	April 21, 1936
2,038,294	April 21, 1936
2,038,338	April 21, 1936
2,038,359	April 21, 1936
2,039,136	April 28, 1936
2,041,273	May 19, 1936
2,041,291	May 19, 1936
2,042,571	June 2, 1936
2,045,569	June 30, 1936
2,045,910	June 30, 1936
2,048,527	July 21, 1936
2,048,528	July 21, 1936
2,049,147	July 28, 1936
2,050,679	Aug. 11, 1936
2,050,680	Aug. 11, 1936
2,052,183	Aug. 25, 1936
2,052,184	Aug. 25, 1936
2,054,412	Sept. 15, 1936
2,054,424	Sept. 15, 1936
2,056,390	Oct. 6, 1936
2,058,565	Oct. 27, 1936
2,061,991	Nov. 24, 1936
2,064,774	Dec. 15, 1936
2,064,775	Dec. 15, 1936
2,066,777	Jan. 5, 1937
2,072,679	Mar. 2, 1937
2,072,708	Mar. 2, 1937
2,073,038	Mar. 9, 1937
2,073,344	Mar. 9, 1937
2,073,345	Mar. 9, 1937
2,075,683	Mar. 30, 1937
2,077,045	April 13, 1937
2,077,049	April 13, 1937

Patent No.	*Issued*
2,080,115	May 11, 1937
2,080,560	May 18, 1937
2,080,646	May 18, 1937
2,081,861	May 25, 1937
Re. 20,400	June 8, 1937
2,084,647	June 22, 1937
2,092,709	Sept. 7, 1937
2,093,416	Sept. 21, 1937
2,099,156	Nov. 16, 1937
2,100,402	Nov. 30, 1937
2,100,733	Nov. 30, 1937
2,103,022	Dec. 21, 1937
2,103,079	Dec. 21, 1937
2,103,097	Dec. 21, 1937
2,105,902	Jan. 18, 1938
Re. 20,632	Jan. 18, 1938
2,110,664	Mar. 8, 1938
2,111,483	Mar. 15, 1938
2,115,463	April 26, 1938
2,115,676	April 26, 1938
2,118,352	May 24, 1938
2,118,977	May 31, 1938
2,129,727	Sept. 13, 1938
2,129,740	Sept. 13, 1938
2,137,123	Nov. 15, 1938
2,137,266	Nov. 22, 1938
2,137,318	Nov. 22, 1938
2,147,509	Feb. 14, 1939
2,148,604	Feb. 28, 1939
2,148,633	Feb. 28, 1939
2,150,044	Mar. 7, 1939
2,151,109	Mar. 21, 1939
2,152,470	Mar. 28, 1939
2,152,481	Mar. 28, 1939
2,152,482	Mar. 28, 1939
2,152,514	Mar. 28, 1939
2,152,515	Mar. 28, 1939
2,152,618	Mar. 28, 1939
2,153,857	Apr. 11, 1939
2,154,141	Apr. 11, 1939
2,154,907	April 18, 1939

Patent No.	*Issued*
2,156,137	April 25, 1939
2,159,240	May 23, 1939
2,163,234	June 20, 1939
2,165,468	July 11, 1939
Re. 21,153	July 18, 1939
2,166,522	July 18, 1939
2,167,134	July 25, 1939
2,167,135	July 25, 1939
2,167,136	July 25, 1939
2,167,137	July 25, 1939
2,167,400	July 25, 1939
2,167,405	July 25, 1939
2,168,193	Aug. 1, 1939
2,168,461	Aug. 8, 1939
2,168,874	Aug. 8, 1939
2,169,830	Aug. 15, 1939
2,169,831	Aug. 15, 1939
2,169,837	Aug. 15, 1939
2,169,838	Aug. 15, 1939
2,169,840	Aug. 15, 1939
Re. 21,176	Aug. 15, 1939
2,172,750	Sept. 12, 1939
2,172,858	Sept. 12, 1939
2,172,859	Sept. 12, 1939
2,173,084	Sept. 19, 1939
2,173,173	Sept. 19, 1939
2,173,234	Sept. 26, 1939
2,173,235	Sept. 26, 1939
Re. 21,222	Oct. 3, 1939
2,174,566	Oct. 3, 1939
2,174,580	Oct. 3, 1939
2,177,162	Oct. 24, 1939
2,177,688	Oct. 31, 1939
2,177,713	Oct. 31, 1939
2,177,761	Oct. 31, 1939
2,181,499	Nov. 28, 1939
2,182,329	Dec. 5, 1939
2,183,966	Dec. 19, 1939
2,183,980	Dec. 19, 1939
2,185,388	Jan. 2, 1940
2,185,389	Jan. 2, 1940

Patent No.	*Issued*
2,187,978	Jan. 23, 1940
2,188,498	Jan. 30, 1940
2,188,504	Jan. 30, 1940
2,188,658	Jan. 30, 1940
2,188,970	Feb. 6, 1940
2,189,287	Feb. 6, 1940
2,189,310	Feb. 6, 1940
2,189,848	Feb. 13, 1940
2,189,849	Feb. 13, 1940
2,190,816	Feb. 20, 1940
2,191,796	Feb. 27, 1940
2,192,971	Mar. 12, 1940
2,192,991	Mar. 12, 1940
2,194,292	Mar. 19, 1940
2,195,438	April 2, 1940
2,196,881	April 9, 1940
2,197,239	April 16, 1940
2,197,516	April 16, 1940
2,198,969	April 30, 1940
2,198,983	April 30, 1940
2,201,365	May 21, 1940
2,201,770	May 21, 1940
2,203,519	June 4, 1940
2,203,520	June 4, 1940
2,203,521	June 4, 1940
2,203,528	June 4, 1940
2,204,216	June 11, 1940
2,204,712	June 18, 1940
2,205,190	June 18, 1940
2,205,738	June 25, 1940
2,206,954	July 9, 1940
2,206,989	July 9, 1940
2,206,990	July 9, 1940
2,208,374	July 16, 1940
2,208,382	July 16, 1940
2,209,394	July 30, 1940
2,210,089	Aug. 6, 1940
2,211,352	Aug. 13, 1940
2,211,458	Aug. 13, 1940
2,211,718	Aug. 13, 1940
2,212,173	Aug. 20, 1940

Patent No.	*Issued*
2,212,420	Aug. 20, 1940
2,214,846	Sept. 17, 1940
2,214,847	Sept. 17, 1940
2,216,160	Oct. 1, 1940
2,216,874	Oct. 8, 1940
2,216,997	Oct. 8, 1940
2,216,998	Oct. 8, 1940
2,217,948	Oct. 15, 1940
2,217,957	Oct. 15, 1940
2,218,980	Oct. 22, 1940
2,221,015	Nov. 12, 1940
2,221,452	Nov. 12, 1940
2,221,665	Nov. 12, 1940
2,221,666	Nov. 12, 1940
2,222,387	Nov. 19, 1940
2,226,648	Dec. 31, 1940
2,226,706	Dec. 31, 1940
2,227,815	Jan. 7, 1941
Re. 21,691	Jan. 14, 1941
2,228,725	Jan. 14, 1941
2,230,284	Feb. 4, 1941
2,231,704	Feb. 11, 1941
2,231,829	Feb. 11, 1941
2,233,470	Mar. 4, 1941
2,235,131	Mar. 18, 1941
2,235,816	Mar. 25, 1941
2,235,817	Mar. 25, 1941
2,235,859	Mar. 25, 1941
2,236,364	Mar. 25, 1941

Application Serial No.	*Application Serial No.*
679,997	276,594
46,081	276,736
63,577	277,861
84,861	277,862
134,477	278,316
152,487	282,470
177,663	287,912
195,955	289,116
196,885	294,583
200,647	294,848
205,293	296,220
209,442	296,339
212,691	297,081
221,497	297,326
227,629	298,010
233,358	298,205
233,371	302,556
233,372	304,939
234,741	305,049
238,757	308,152
244,190	309,929
248,245	311,374
250,141	311,901
250,914	313,360
253,040	314,573
254,290	314,822
256,033	317,622
259,380	317,628
259,546	321,610
261,910	321,659
262,146	321,811
262,846	323,290
264,716	324,510
264,935	325,566
265,953	326,149

Application Serial No.
326,154
326,163
328,351
330,277
330,278
330,491
331,406
331,570
335,617
335,238
337,569
337,653
340,647
343,939
344,648
345,289
345,726
346,907
347,389
347,817
349,541
350,722
352,211
352,212

Application Serial No.
352,757
352,805
352,988
353,814
355,442
355,547
355,942
357,729
358,223
358,620
358,981
358,988
360,249
361,700
364,499
365,442
365,459
367,248
372,091
372,988
375,574
380,447
380,448

MICRO CARD
TRADE MARK ®

1673

MATTHEW BENDER & COMPANY MB 49

LATOUR CORPORATION

UNITED STATES LETTERS PATENT

Patent No.	*Issued*
1,507,725	Sept. 9, 1924
1,522,305	Jan. 6, 1925
1,524,645	Jan. 27, 1925
1,524,646	Jan. 27, 1925
1,545,502	July 14, 1925
1,563,754	Dec. 1, 1925
1,592,529	July 13, 1926
1,601,313	Sept. 28, 1926
Re. 16,461	Nov. 9, 1926
1,607,466	Nov. 16, 1926
1,607,467	Nov. 16, 1926
1,614,136	Jan. 11, 1927
1,615,808	Jan. 25, 1927
1,625,125	April 19, 1927
1,627,707	May 10, 1927
1,630,346	May 31, 1927
1,631,213	June 7, 1927
1,637,828	Aug. 2, 1927
1,643,075	Sept. 20, 1927
1,663,712	Mar. 27, 1928
1,669,059	May 8, 1928
1,673,009	June 12, 1928
1,687,253	Oct. 9, 1928
1,687,298	Oct. 9, 1928
1,710,170	April 23, 1929
1,791,965	Feb. 10, 1931
1,801,774	April 21, 1931
1,834,408	Dec. 1, 1931

ATWATER KENT MANUFACTURING COMPANY

United States Letters Patent and Applications

(Pursuant to rights acquired from Atwater Kent Manufacturing Company)

Patent No.	*Issued*
1,548,832	Aug. 11, 1925
1,639,042	Aug. 16, 1927
1,639,414	Aug. 16, 1927
1,646,471	Oct. 25, 1927
1,656,901	Jan. 24, 1928
1,666,480	April 17, 1928
1,672,123	June 5, 1928
1,672,493	June 5, 1928
1,689,948	Oct. 30, 1928
1,726,100	Aug. 27, 1929
1,738,575	Dec. 10, 1929
1,741,691	Dec. 31, 1929
1,749,423	Mar. 4, 1930
1,751,854	Mar. 25, 1930
1,755,310	April 22, 1930
1,760,506	May 27, 1930
1,767,837	June 24, 1930
1,771,127	July 22, 1930
1,771,381	July 22, 1930
1,777,500	Oct. 7, 1930
1,779,777	Oct. 28, 1930
1,787,732	Jan. 6, 1931
1,787,950	Jan. 6, 1931
1,790,165	Jan. 27, 1931
1,791,123	Feb. 3, 1931
1,795,090	Mar. 3, 1931
1,796,975	Mar. 17, 1931
1,810,355	June 16, 1931
1,812,349	June 30, 1931
1,814,270	July 14, 1931
1,814,774	July 14, 1931
1,819,299	Aug. 18, 1931
1,828,688	Oct. 20, 1931
1,829,015	Oct. 27, 1931

Patent No.	*Issued*
1,833,085	Nov. 24, 1931
1,835,801	Dec. 8, 1931
1,836,076	Dec. 15, 1931
1,846,616	Feb. 23, 1932
1,849,499	Mar. 15, 1932
1,850,105	Mar. 22, 1932
1,859,518	May 24, 1932
1,867,037	July 12, 1932
1,872,487	Aug. 16, 1932
1,885,301	Nov. 1, 1932
1,885,307	Nov. 1, 1932
1,886,571	Nov. 8, 1932
1,887,329	Nov. 8, 1932
1,888,430	Nov. 22, 1932
1,889,018	Nov. 29, 1932
1,890,426	Dec. 6, 1932
1,895,809	Jan. 31, 1933
1,896,825	Feb. 7, 1933
1,906,452	May 2, 1933
1,908,381	May 9, 1933
1,909,239	May 16, 1933
1,915,926	June 27, 1933
1,916,129	June 27, 1933
1,925,828	Sept. 5, 1933
1,926,173	Sept. 12, 1933
1,934,940	Nov. 14, 1933
1,960,599	May 29, 1934
1,966,805	July 17, 1934
1,971,497	Aug. 28, 1934
1,972,279	Sept. 4, 1934
1,973,293	Sept. 11, 1934
1,983,047	Dec. 4, 1934
1,986,641	Jan. 1, 1935
1,991,221	Feb. 12, 1935
2,001,076	May 14, 1935
2,021,321	Nov. 19, 1935

Application Serial No.
150,571
572,927

ZENITH RADIO CORPORATION

UNITED STATES LETTERS PATENT

(Pursuant to rights acquired from Zenith Radio Corporation)

Patent No.	*Issued*
1,521,380	Dec. 30, 1924
1,521,777	Jan. 6, 1925
1,522,136	Jan. 6, 1925
1,565,942	Dec. 15, 1925
1,571,964	Feb. 9, 1926
1,572,504	Feb. 9, 1926
1,588,248	June 8, 1926
1,589,979	June 22, 1926
1,590,198	June 29, 1926
1,590,635	June 29, 1926
1,591,417	July 6, 1926
1,617,452	Feb. 15, 1927
1,637,051	July 26, 1927
1,670,149	May 15, 1928
Re. 17,002	June 19, 1928
1,695,919	Dec. 18, 1928
1,697,778	Jan. 1, 1929
Re. 17,531	Dec. 17, 1929
1,772,077	Aug. 5, 1930
1,774,619	Sept. 2, 1930
1,806,796	May 26, 1931
1,828,529	Oct. 20, 1931
1,836,461	Dec. 15, 1931
1,906,106	Apr. 25, 1933

The license hereby granted under the foregoing patents listed under the heading "Zenith Radio Corporation" is granted pursuant to rights acquired from Zenith Radio Corporation by an agreement which limits the grant as follows:

1. Zenith Radio Corporation hereby grants to Hazeltine Corporation a personal, nondivisible, nontransferable and nonexclusive license to manufacture and to sell only for radio amateur reception,

radio experimental reception and radio broadcast reception throughout the United States, its territories and possessions, radio receivers so manufactured by Hazeltine Corporation under the United States Letters Patent which are listed on Exhibit "A", identified by the signatures of the President and Assistant Secretary of Zenith Radio Corporation attached to and made a part of this memorandum of agreement.

Zenith Radio Corporation further grants to Hazeltine Corporation the right to license all of its own licensees, present and future, under said Letters Patent, subject to the conditions hereinbefore set forth. In the event Hazeltine Corporation shall so license any of its own present or future licensees, Hazeltine Corporation shall furnish Zenith Radio Corporation with a list of all such licensees of Hazeltine Corporation, and will at all times keep said list up to date.

Nothing herein contained shall be considered as conveying any license, express or implied, by estoppel or otherwise, under any patent of Zenith Radio Corporation in countries foreign to the United States.

Zenith Radio Corporation shall have the right to terminate the licenses, rights and privileges herein granted upon the insolvency of Hazeltine Corporation or the appointment of a receiver for its property by giving Hazeltine Corporation notice of termination, such termination to take effect thirty (30) days after such notice. Such notice or notification must be in writing, and may be either by delivering the notice or notification to Hazeltine Corporation in any manner, or by mailing by registered mail such written notice or notification, properly addressed to Hazeltine Corporation's place of business last known to Zenith Radio Corporation. In the event that notice is given by mailing as herein provided, the time of notice shall be the time of mailing.

Bankruptcy of Hazeltine Corporation shall automatically terminate the licenses, rights and privileges herein granted to Hazeltine Corporation.

None of the rights or privileges under said Letters Patent hereinbefore granted to Hazeltine Corporation shall be, directly or indirectly, by operation of law or otherwise, assigned, transferred, divided or shared by Hazeltine Corporation with any person, firm or corporation whatsoever, without the written consent of Zenith Radio Corporation, except that, as hereinbefore provided, Hazeltine Corporation may license its own licensees, present and future, under said Letters Patent.

UNITED AMERICAN BOSCH CORPORATION

United States Letters Patent

(Pursuant to rights acquired from United American Bosch Corporation)

Patent No.	*Issued*
1,687,133	Oct. 9, 1928
1,702,926	Feb. 19, 1929
1,770,131	July 8, 1930
1,773,573	Aug. 19, 1930
1,792,822	Feb. 17, 1931
1,818,693	Aug. 11, 1931
1,856,774	May 3, 1932
1,877,228	Sept. 13, 1932
1,891,369	Dec. 20, 1932
1,898,835	Feb. 21, 1933
1,908,119	May 9, 1933
1,913,586	June 13, 1933
1,920,743	Aug. 1, 1933
1,944,687	Jan. 23, 1934
1,960,479	May 29, 1934

The license hereby granted under the foregoing patents listed under the heading "United American Bosch Corporation" is granted pursuant to rights acquired from United American Bosch Corporation by an agreement which limits the grant as follows:

"American Bosch further grants to Latour the right to grant to each of its own or Hazeltine Corporation licensees, present and future, a personal, non-divisible, non-transferable and non-exclusive license to manufacture and to sell only for radio amateur reception, radio experimental reception and radio broadcast reception throughout the United States, its Territories and Possessions, radio receivers manufactured under The Patents. Promptly upon the grant of the license to each licensee as aforesaid, Latour shall furnish American Bosch with the name and address of said licensee and will at all times keep such information up to date.

American Bosch further grants to Latour the right to grant, in connection with any license granted under the licensing power hereby conveyed, a full and complete release for all claims whatsoever of Amer-

ican Bosch against said licensee for past infringement of any Letters Patent included in such license, arising out of the manufacture, use or sale by said licensee of any radio apparatus and or parts designed by Latour or by its associated or controlling companies. No release shall be granted with respect to any device or arrangement not so designed by Latour or its associated or controlling companies, although some or all of the other apparatus with which said device or arrangement is used was so designed.

Nothing herein contained shall be considered as conveying any license, expressed or implied, by estoppel or otherwise, under any of The Patents in any country foreign to the United States.

American Bosch shall have the right to terminate the licenses, rights and privileges herein granted upon the insolvency of Latour or the appointment of a Receiver for its properties by giving Latour a notice of termination, said termination to take effect thirty (30) days after such notice, provided that such notice or notification is in writing and delivered in any manner or mailed by registered mail, properly addressed to Latour's place of business last known to American Bosch. In the event that notice is given by mailing as herein provided, the time of notice shall be the time of mailing.

Bankruptcy of Latour shall automatically terminate the licenses, rights and privileges herein granted to Latour.

None of the rights and privileges under The Patents hereinbefore granted to Latour shall be, directly or indirectly, by operation of law or otherwise, assigned, transferred, divided or shared by Latour with any person, firm or corporation whatsoever without the written consent of American Bosch, except that Latour may grant licenses and releases under said patents as hereinbefore provided."

MISCELLANEOUS UNITED STATES LETTERS PATENT

(Pursuant to limited rights acquired from their respective owners)

Patent No.	*Issued*
2,063,814	Dec. 8, 1936
2,089,270	Aug. 10, 1937
2,089,271	Aug. 10, 1937
2,146,068	Feb. 7, 1939
2,212,968	Aug. 27, 1940

Schedule B.

ADDITIONAL PATENT RIGHTS AND PRIVILEGES

Licensee is hereby notified that the Hazeltine Corporation and Latour Corporation have entered into an agreement with A. Atwater Kent and Atwater Kent Manufacturing Company whereby "A. Atwater Kent and Atwater Kent Manufacturing Company agree not to sue Hazeltine Corporation and/or Latour Corporation and/or the present and future licensees of said corporation and/or said licensees' distributors, jobbers, dealers, vendees, customers and/or users and/or any one acting by or under the authority of them or any of them, for infringement of letters patent relating to radio now owned or controlled by said Kent and of letters patent which may issue on applications for letters patent relating to radio now owned or controlled by said Kent, by reason of the design of radio apparatus by Hazeltine Corporation and/or Latour Corporation for manufacturers of radio apparatus or by reason of the manufacture, use and sale of radio apparatus and/or parts manufactured and sold by said Hazeltine Corporation and/or Latour Corporation and/or said licensees."

Licensor is informed that the following United States Letters Patent and applications for United States Letters Patent come within the terms of the foregoing agreement with A. Atwater Kent and Atwater Kent Manufacturing Company:

PATENTS OWNED OR CONTROLLED BY ARTHUR ATWATER KENT

Patent No.	*Issued*
1,445,324	Feb. 13, 1923
1,485,931	Mar. 4, 1924
1,514,322	Nov. 4, 1924
1,519,621	Dec. 16, 1924
1,523,832	Jan. 20, 1925
1,524,258	Jan. 27, 1925
1,534,267	Apr. 21, 1925
1,582,826	Apr. 27, 1926
1,583,071	May 4, 1926

Patent No.	*Issued*
1,583,105	May 4, 1926
1,583,471	May 4, 1926
1,587,136	June 1, 1926
1,588,474	June 15, 1926
1,597,901	Aug. 31, 1926
1,619,911	Mar. 7, 1927
1,650,754	Nov. 29, 1927
1,651,012	Nov. 29, 1927
1,655,372	Jan. 3, 1928
1,658,562	Feb. 7, 1928
1,668,117	May 1, 1928.
1,668,155	May 1, 1928
1,668,320	May 1, 1928.
1,673,461	June 12, 1928
1,679,310	July 31, 1928
1,683,012	Sept. 4, 1928
1,705,925	Mar. 19, 1929
1,710,482	Apr. 23, 1929
1,713,134	May 14, 1929
1,719,014	July 2, 1929
1,719,057	July 2, 1929
1,719,956	July 9, 1929
1,727,604	Sept. 10, 1929
1,730,010	Oct. 1, 1929
1,743,145	Jan. 14, 1930
1,757,719	May 6, 1930
1,775,399	Sept. 9, 1930
1,783,292	Dec. 2, 1930
1,794,855	Mar. 3, 1931
1,796,375	Mar. 17, 1931
1,829,007	Oct. 27, 1931
1,978,514	Oct. 30, 1934

HAZELTINE CORPORATION
15 EXCHANGE PLACE
JERSEY CITY, N. J.

September 18, 1942.

Automatic Radio Manufacturing Co., Inc.,
122 Brookline Ave.,
Boston, Mass.

Gentlemen:

In connection with the Hazeltine Standard License Agreement granted to your company as of September 1, 1342 and executed concurrently herewith, Hazeltine Corporation agrees that, during the period in which the manufacture of apparatus of the type licensed thereunder is suspended by Government action, if at the end of any fiscal license year the major portion of which falls within such period the royalties due and payable by your company for such fiscal year shall not have aggregated the minimum royalty payment of Ten Thousand Dollars ($10,000) due at that time under the provisions of Article IV, Section 4, of said Agreement, it will waive such minimum royalty payment for that year provided that your company shall have faithfully and fully performed all of its obligations under the Agreement.

Very truly yours,
HAZELTINE CORPORATION

By Jack Binns
President.

JB:lw

40

HAZELTINE CORPORATION
15. EXCHANGE PLACE
JERSEY CITY, N. J.

September 15, 1942.

Automatic Radio Manufacturing Co., Inc.,
122 Brookline Ave.,
Boston, Mass.

Gentlemen:

This letter is written in connection with the Hazeltine Standard License Agreement granted to your Company as of September 1, 1942 and executed concurrently herewith, for the manufacture and sale of radio broadcast receivers and related apparatus and is to record a supplemental understanding between the parties reached in order more nearly to give effect to the intention of the parties with respect to the reduction in royalty rates specified in said Standard License Agreement relative to those specified in your previous Hazeltine License Agreement.

It is hereby agreed between the parties, effective as of September 1, 1942:

(1) For the purpose of royalty computation, there may be deducted from the sales price of combination radio-phonograph apparatus sold by your Company under said Standard License Agreement an amount equal to the excess of the cost of the cabinet plus a selling price mark-up of thirty-three and one-third per cent. (33-1/3%) over Twenty-Two and 50/100 Dollars ($22.50).

(2) In determining the selling price of apparatus identified in Article IV, Section 1, subsections (a) and (b), of the aforesaid License Agreement, upon which royalties are payable, there may be deducted from the actual selling price thereof, in addition to any deductions provided in said Section 1, an amount corresponding to licensee's manufacturing cost or purchase price of the mechanical portion of electric phonograph apparatus including automatic record-changing apparatus, if such be included, plus a selling price mark-up of thirty-three and one-third per cent. (33-1/3%). The term "manufacturing cost" as used herein shall be determined in accordance with the latest edition at the time of "Uniform Accounting Manual - Electrical Manufacturing Industry" issued by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

HAZELTINE CORPORATION
18 EXCHANGE PLACE
JERSEY CITY, N. J.

Automatic Radio Manufacturing Co., Inc.

This letter is written in duplicate and, upon acceptance by a duly authorized officer of your company, becomes a part of the aforesaid Hazeltine Standard License Agreement executed concurrently herewith.

Very truly yours,

HAZELTINE CORPORATION

By Jack Binns
President.

ATTEST:

Laurence B. Dodds
Assistant Secretary.

ACCEPTED:

AUTOMATIC RADIO MANUFACTURING CO., I

By Harold Huss

ATTEST:

John J. Grady Jr.

JB:lw

42

HAZELTINE CORPORATION
15 EXCHANGE PLACE
JERSEY CITY, N. J.

September 1, 1942.

Automatic Radio Manufacturing Co., Inc.,
122 Brookline Ave.,
Boston, Mass.

Gentlemen:

This letter is written in connection with the Hazeltine Standard License Agreement between your company as Licensee and Hazeltine Corporation as Licensor and executed concurrently herewith, and is to record the further following understandings between the parties:

1. The existing Hazeltine Standard License Agreement in the field of radio broadcast receivers issued to your company and dated as of October 1, 1937 is hereby terminated by mutual consent as of August 31, 1942.

2. Licensor waives its rights of inspection of your company's books and records relative to sales and royalty payments made by your company prior to September 1, 1942, and releases your company from any claim it may have for additional royalties on apparatus sold by your company prior thereto.

3. Your company hereby accepts the aforesaid Hazeltine Standard License Agreement executed concurrently herewith in full satisfaction and accord of any rights or claims of any nature whatsoever which it may have now or at any time in the future arising out of any prior license, agreement, or understanding between your company and Hazeltine Corporation or arising out of a certain Letter Agreement between Hazeltine Corporation and Radio Corporation of America dated December 15, 1937, by which Hazeltine Corporation undertook, upon the occurrence of certain events and the fulfillment of specified conditions, to grant to its licensees a new Hazeltine Standard License at reduced rates of royalty and your company hereby waives any right it may now or hereafter have to any further or other reductions in royalty rates in said License Agreement executed concurrently herewith or to any other or further License Agreement under the provisions of such Letter Agreement.

HAZELTINE CORPORATION
18 EXCHANGE PLACE
JERSEY CITY, N. J.

Automatic Radio Manufacturing Co., Inc.

This letter is written in duplicate and, upon acceptance by you, shall be taken in conjunction with and considered as a part of the aforesaid Hazeltine Standard License Agreement.

Very truly yours,

HAZELTINE CORPORATION

By Jack Binns
President.

ATTEST:

Laurence A. Hyde
Assistant Secretary.

ACCEPTED:

AUTOMATIC RADIO MANUFACTURING CO., IN

By Daniel McGinnis

ATTEST:

John J. Grady Secy

JB:lw

At the same term, on April 28, 1947, the following Answer was filed by defendant:

ANSWER.

[Filed April 28, 1947.]

1. Defendant is without knowledge or information sufficient to enable it to form a belief as to the truth of the allegations of paragraph 1 of the complaint.

2. Defendant admits the allegations of paragraph 2.

3. Defendant denies the allegations of paragraph 3.

4. Defendant admits that on or about September 18, 1942 it entered into an agreement in writing effective September 1, 1942, a copy of which is annexed to the complaint and marked Exhibit A.

5. Defendant admits that some of the terms and conditions of said agreement, Exhibit A, are correctly stated in paragraph 5 of the complaint but denies that it is now or ever was obligated to pay plaintiff "in any event" a minimum sum of ten thousand dollars ($10,000) for each year ending August 31; admits that Order No. L-265 of the War Production Board prohibited from on or about April 12, 1942 to on or about August 30, 1945 the manufacture for civilian use of all the types of apparatus specified in Section 2 of Article III of said agreement that defendant manufactured or was equipped to manufacture; and admits that defendant agreed to render to plaintiff monthly written statements of defendant's sales of such apparatus of the types specified in said Section 2 of Article III of said agreement that defendant might make and sell under the terms of said agreement, but avers that no such apparatus was made or sold by it between September 1, 1942 and the date of filing of the complaint herein.

6. Defendant admits that on or about August 30, 1945 said Order No. L-265 was revoked but is without knowledge or information sufficient to enable it to form a belief as to the truth of the other allegations of paragraph 6 of the complaint.

7. Defendant admits that since on or about August 30, 1945, to the date of filing of the complaint herein, defendant has been

engaged in the manufacture and sale of apparatus in the general nature of that outlined in said subsections (a) (c) and (d) of Section 2 of Article III of said agreement, but denies that any of said apparatus is covered by any of the patents set out in Schedules A and B, which form a part of said agreement of September 18, 1942; denies that defendant failed to pay to Hazeltine Corporation or plaintiff any monies due as royalty under said agreement and denies that it has failed or refused to render to said Hazeltine Corporation or plaintiff statements of any of defendant's sales that are required by said agreement and avers that the agents of Hazeltine Corporation or plaintiff were fully advised orally on several occasions during the years 1945, 1946 and 1947 at defendant's factory by defendant's president that no such statements were rendered Hazeltine Corporation or the plaintiff because defendant had neither made nor sold radio apparatus of any of the types covered by said agreement from September 1, 1942 to the dates of the several interviews with said agents.

8. Defendant is without knowledge or information sufficient to enable it to form a belief as to the truth of the allegations of paragraph 8 of the complaint.

Further answering, defendant avers:

9. That from the effective date of said agreement, to wit: September 1, 1942, to the date of the complaint herein, it has not made or sold radio apparatus of any type whatsoever covered by the claims of plaintiff's patents listed in Schedules A and B, which form a part of said agreement, Exhibit A; that from the effective date of said agreement, none of the radio apparatus made and sold by defendant has been marked with the license notice required by Section 2 of Article VI of said agreement for all licensed apparatus made and sold under said agreement; and that none of defendant's catalogs, circulars, or price lists includes the notation "Licensed Under Hazeltine Corporation Patents" required by Section 4 of Article VI for all apparatus to be sold under said agreement.

10. That the plaintiff, in an illegal endeavor to eliminate all competition and secure an unlawful monopoly in violation of the antitrust laws of the United States, acquired the approximately 425 United States letters patent and the approximately 120 applications for United States letters patent on and for alleged inventions listed in said Schedules A and B from its employees, from Latour Corporation; from Atwater Kent Manufacturing Company; from Zenith Radio Corporation; from United American Bosch Corporation; from certain others not named in said Schedules (page 32 of said agreement) and from Arthur Atwater Kent; and hence plaintiff is not entitled to the aid of this Court in maintaining this action.

11. That prior to the effective date of the license, Exhibit A, and at all times from and after said date, defendant has been and now is licensed under the United States letters patent and applications for United States letters patent owned or controlled by the Radio Corporation of America, exceeding, so defendant is advised, about five thousand (5,000) in number, and that plaintiff's radio apparatus of the types specified in subsections (a) (c) and (d) of Section 2 of Article III of said agreement, Exhibit A, embodies the inventions disclosed in some of the patents and applications of the Radio Corporation of America under which it is licensed and in some of the patents owned by defendant, and does not embody any of the elements or combinations of elements or methods or modes of procedure recited in any of the claims of the patents or patent applications listed in said schedules A and B, and that defendant has performed all of the obligations under its license agreement with said Radio Corporation of America by it to be performed.

12. On information and belief, that many of the patents listed in said Schedules A and B are for small, narrow and unimportant improvements on the radio circuits and systems disclosed and claimed in the patents of the Radio Corporation of America under which defendant is licensed and are neither desirable nor essential to the production of merchantable radio receiving sets of the types

specified in subsections (a), (c) and (d) of Section 2 of Article III of said agreement.

13. On information and belief, that many of the patents listed in Schedules A and B accompanying the agreement, Exhibit A, had expired prior to September 1, 1942; that many others prior to said date had been held invalid by the United States District Courts, the Cirtuit Courts of Appeals, and the Supreme Court of the United States; that, prior to said date, many of the applications listed in Schedule A accompanying said agreement had become abandoned, and that many of Hazeltine Corporation's and plaintiff's licensees have long since ignored their respective license agreements with Hazeltine Corporation and plaintiff.

Wherefore, defendant prays that the complaint be dismissed with costs.

AUTOMATIC RADIO
MANUFACTURING COMPANY, INC.,
by GEO. K. WOODWORTH,
Its Attorney,
19 Congress Street,
Boston 9, Mass.

On the same day, defendant filed the following Interrogatories:

DEFENDANT'S INTERROGATORIES TO PLAINTIFF.

[Filed April 28, 1947.]

Defendant propounds the following interrogatories to be answered under oath by any officer of the plaintiff corporation having knowledge, or who may acquire knowledge, of the facts concerning which inquiry is made.

1. Which of the fifteen (15) models of radio apparatus of the type listed in Section 2 or Article III of the agreement, Exhibit A, annexed to the complaint, which were made by defendant since September 1, 1942 are claimed by plaintiff to embody the alleged inventions of the patents listed in Schedules A and B accompanying said agreement, respectively?

2. If any of said fifteen (15) models are claimed by plaintiff

to embody the alleged inventions of the patents listed in answer to interrogatory 1, state by number the claim or claims of each of said patents which are claimed by plaintiff to specify the elements or combinations of elements or the methods or modes of procedure that are embodied or employed in each of said models, respectively.

3. Have any of the applications listed on pages 24, 25, and 28, of Schedule A accompanying said agreement matured into letters patent?

4. If the answer to interrogatory 3 is "Yes" state the patent numbers and the respective issue dates of such patents.

5. If, in answer to interrogatory 4, patents are identified by their numbers and their respective issue dates, which of the fifteen (15) models of radio apparatus of the type listed in Section 2 of Article III of the agreement, Exhibit A, annexed to the complaint, which were made by defendant since September 1, 1942 are claimed by plaintiff to embody the alleged inventions of the patents stated in answer to said interrogatory 4, respectively.

6. If any of said fifteen (15) models are claimed by plaintiff to embody the alleged inventions of the patents listed in answer to interrogatory 4, or any of them, state by number the claim or claims of each of said patents which are claimed by plaintiff to specify the elements or combinations of elements or the methods or modes of procedure that are embodied or employed in each of said models, respectively.

7. Have any of the applications listed on pages 24, 25, and 28, of Schedule A accompanying said agreement become abandoned?

8. If the answer to interrogatory 7 is "Yes," identify said applications by their respective serial numbers.

AUTOMATIC RADIO
MANUFACTURING COMPANY, INC.,
by GEO. K. WOODWORTH,
Its Attorney,
19 Congress Street,
Boston 9, Massachusetts.

A copy of the foregoing interrogatories to plaintiff was served on plaintiff's counsel by leaving the same at the office of Roberts, Cushman & Grover, 31 Milk Street, Boston 9, Massachusetts, this twenty-eighth day of April, 1947.

GEO. K. WOODWORTH.

At the same term, on May 27, 1947, the plaintiff filed the following Answers to Defendant's Interrogatories:

PLAINTIFF'S ANSWERS TO INTERROGATORIES PROPOUNDED BY DEFENDANT.

[Filed May 27, 1947.]

Plaintiff, Hazeltine Research, Inc., by Laurence B. Dodds, its Executive Vice-President, voluntarily answers as follows defendant's Interrogatories served on plaintiff's attorney April 28, 1947, with answers to Interrogatories Nos. 1, 2, 5 and 6 directed solely to defendant's broadcast receivers Models Nos. C-60X, 601-602, 611, 612X, 614X-616X, 620, 640, 660, 670, 677, 720, F-790, and A.T.T.P., which said models have been represented by defendant to plaintiff as constituting all the models of radio apparatus of the type listed in Section 2 of Article III of the license agreement, filed with the complaint herein and identified as Exhibit A, which have been made by defendant since September 1, 1942, and with answers to said Interrogatories Nos. 1, 2, 5 and 6 based solely upon the schematic circuit diagrams for said models, photostat copies of which are attached hereto and marked Exhibits B through N, respectively, which said diagrams have been furnished or referenced by defendant to plaintiff for plaintiff's use in answering said Interrogatories and have been represented by defendant as accurately representing said models:

1. In answer to Interrogatory No. 1, the following models of radio apparatus of the type listed in Section 2 of Article III of the license agreement, filed with the complaint herein and identified as Exhibit A, made by defendant since September 1, 1942, embody the inventions of one or more of the patents owned by

plaintiff and listed in Schedules A and B of said agreement: C-60X, 601-602, 611, 612X, 614X-616X, 620, 640, 660, 670, 677, 720, F-790, and A.T.T.P.

2. In answer to Interrogatory No. 2, the following models of radio apparatus referred to in the foregoing answer to Interrogatory No. 1 come within at least the claim or claims of the patents referred to in the foregoing answer to Interrogatory No. 1, as specified below:

(a)

Model Nos.	Patent Nos.	Claims
C-60X)	1,958,027	3, 15 and 17
601-602)	2,015,327	All claims
611)	2,041,291	18 and 20
612X)	1,951,685	1, 2, 3, 5, 6, and 8
614X-616X)	2,041,273	All claims
620)		
640)		
660)		
670)		
677)		
720)		
F-790)		
A.T.T.P.)		

(b) In addition to the patents and claims enumerated in paragraph (a) above:

Model Nos.	Patent Nos.	Claims
601-602)	Re. 19,765	5, 14, and 20
611)		
612X)		
614X-616X)		
640)		
670)		
677)		
F-790)		

(c) In addition to the patents and claims enumerated in paragraph (a) above:

Model Nos.	Patent Nos.	Claims
660	1,913,604	1, 6, and 7
	2,022,514	2, 5, 11, 16, and 22
	2,021,692	7 and 8
	Re. 20,400	19, 22, and 25

3. Yes.

4. The patent applications listed in Schedule A of aforesaid license agreement filed with the complaint herein and identified as Exhibit A which have matured into United States Letters Patents with the respective numbers and dates of issue thereof are as follows:

Serial No.	Patent No.	Issue Date
679,997	2,278,159	Mar. 31, 1942
46,081	2,255,690	Sept. 9, 1941
63,577	2,262,707	Nov. 11, 1941
84,861	2,255,050	Sept. 9, 1941
134,477	2,261,762	Nov. 4, 1941
152,487	2,246,172	June 17, 1941
177,663	2,249,532	July 15, 1941
195,955	2,240,533	May 6, 1941
200,647	2,313,952	Mar. 16, 1943
205,295	2,243,599	May 27, 1941
209,442	2,239,136	Apr. 22, 1941
212,691	2,254,435	Sept. 2, 1941
221,497	2,249,533	July 15, 1941
227,629	2,247,512	July 1, 1941
233,358	2,240,593	May 6, 1941
233,371	2,240,507	May 6, 1941
233,372	2,240,490	May 6, 1941
234,741	2,240,534	May 6, 1941
238,757	2,242,934	May 20, 1941
244,190	2,259,538	Oct. 21, 1941

Serial No.	Patent No.	Issue Date
248,245	2,242,952	May 20, 1941
250,141	2,240,700	May 6, 1941
250,914	2,255,691	Sept. 9, 1941
253,040	2,255,692	Sept. 9, 1941
254,290	2,273,709	Feb. 17, 1942
256,033	2,250,170	July 22, 1941
259,380	2,253,312	Aug. 19, 1941
259,546	2,239,776	Apr. 29, 1941
261,910	2,259,520	Oct. 21, 1941
262,146	2,416,424	Feb. 25, 1947
262,846	2,252,599)	Aug. 12, 1941)
	Re.22,390)	Nov. 9, 1943)
264,716	2,264,781	Dec. 2, 1941
264,935	2,255,403	Sept. 9, 1941
265,953	Re.22,195	Oct. 6, 1942
276,594	2,269,540	Jan. 13, 1942
276,736	2,258,370	Oct. 7, 1941
277,861	2,251,966	Aug. 12, 1941
277,862	2,279,543	Apr. 14, 1942
278,316	2,254,114	Aug. 26, 1941
282,470	2,254,721	Sept. 2, 1941
287,912	2,269,590	Jan. 13, 1942
289,116	2,253,313	Aug. 19, 1941
294,583	2,261,800	Nov. 4, 1941
294,848	2,264,782	Dec. 2, 1941
296,220	2,253,355	Aug. 19, 1941
296,339	2,253,338	Aug. 19, 1941
297,081	2,247,898	July 1, 1941
297,326	2,280,191	Apr. 21, 1942
302,556	2,271,181	Jan. 27, 1942
304,939	2,269,524	Jan. 13, 1942
305,049	2,291,277	July 28, 1942
308,152	2,251,929	Aug. 12, 1941
311,374	2,291,450	July 28, 1942

Serial No.	Patent No.	Issue Date
311,901	2,245,710	June 17, 1941
313,360	2,247,538	July 1, 1941
314,573	2,304,091	Dec. 8, 1942
317,622	2,302,619	Nov. 17, 1942
317,628	2,293,233	Aug. 18, 1942
321,610	2,257,092	Sept. 30, 1941
321,659	2,255,839	Sept. 16, 1941
321,811	2,269,570	Jan. 13, 1942
324,510	2,300,082	Oct. 27, 1942
325,566	2,284,131	May 26, 1942
326,149	2,294,182	Aug. 25, 1942
326,154	2,271,964	Feb. 3, 1942
326,163	2,308,375	Jan. 12, 1943
328,351	2,271,322	Jan. 27, 1942
330,277	2,292,765	Aug. 11, 1942
330,278	2,270,539	Jan. 20, 1942
331,406	2,309,852	Feb. 2, 1943
335,617	Re.21,826	June 17, 1941
335,238	2,263,825	Nov. 25, 1941
337,569	2,277,192	Mar. 24, 1942
337,653	2,271,203	Jan. 27, 1942
340,647	2,303,184	Nov. 24, 1942
343,939	2,251,397	Aug. 5, 1941
344,648	2,280,187	Apr. 21, 1942
345,289	2,280,181	Apr. 21, 1942
345,726	2,250,862	July 29, 1941
346,907	2,289,948	July 14, 1942
347,389	2,295,038)	Sept. 8, 1942
	Re.22,275)	Feb. 23, 1943
347,817	2,265,848	Dec. 9, 1941
349,541	2,290,517	July 21, 1942
350,722	2,285,938	June 2, 1942
352,211	2,265,826	Dec. 9, 1941
352,757	2,277,850	Mar. 31, 1942

Serial No.	Patent No.	Issue Date
352,805	2,273,163	Feb. 17, 1942
355,442	2,252,148	Aug. 12, 1941
355,942	2,295,816	Sept. 15, 1942
357,729	2,300,451	Nov. 3, 1942
358,223	2,294,328	Aug. 25, 1942
358,620	2,264,018	Nov. 25, 1941
358,981	2,401,481	June 4, 1946
358,988	2,263,667	Nov. 25, 1941
360,249	2,283,106	May 12, 1942
361,700	2,300,452	Nov. 3, 1942
364,499	2,343,561	Mar. 7, 1944
365,442	2,276,488	Mar. 17, 1942
365,459	2,264,019)	Nov. 25, 1941
	Re.22,302)	Apr. 20, 1943
367,248	2,284,219	May 26, 1942
372,091	2,300,942	Nov. 3, 1942
375,574	2,280,139	Apr. 21, 1942
380,447	2,305,842	Dec. 22, 1942
380,448	2,303,987	Dec. 1, 1942

5. In answer to Interrogatory No. 5, the following model of radio apparatus referred to in the foregoing answer to Interrogatory No. 1 embodies the inventions of one or more of the patents enumerated in the foregoing answer to Interrogatory No. 4: Model A.T.T.P.

6. In answer to Interrogatory No. 6, the following model of radio apparatus referred to in the foregoing answer to Interrogatory No. 1 comes within at least the claim or claims of the patents enumerated in the foregoing answer to Interrogatory No. 4, as specified below:

Model No.	Patent No.	Claims
A.T.T.P.	Re. 22,195	1, 2, 3, 10, 11, 12, 13 and 14

7. Yes.

8. The following, of the applications listed in Schedule A of aforesaid license agreement filed with the complaint herein and identified as Exhibit A, have become abandoned:

Serial No.	Serial No.
196,885	330,491
298,010	331,570
298,205	352,212
309,929	352,988
314,822	353,814

LAURENCE B. DODDS.

STATE OF NEW YORK
COUNTY OF NEW YORK, ss:

On this twenty-third day of May, 1947, there personally appeared before me, a Notary Public in and for the County and State aforesaid, Laurence B. Dodds, who, being duly sworn, deposed and said that he is executive vice-president of Hazeltine Research, Inc., plaintiff in the above-entitled action, and that the foregoing answers subscribed to by him are true to the best of his information and belief.

PEGGY COYLE,
Notary Public.

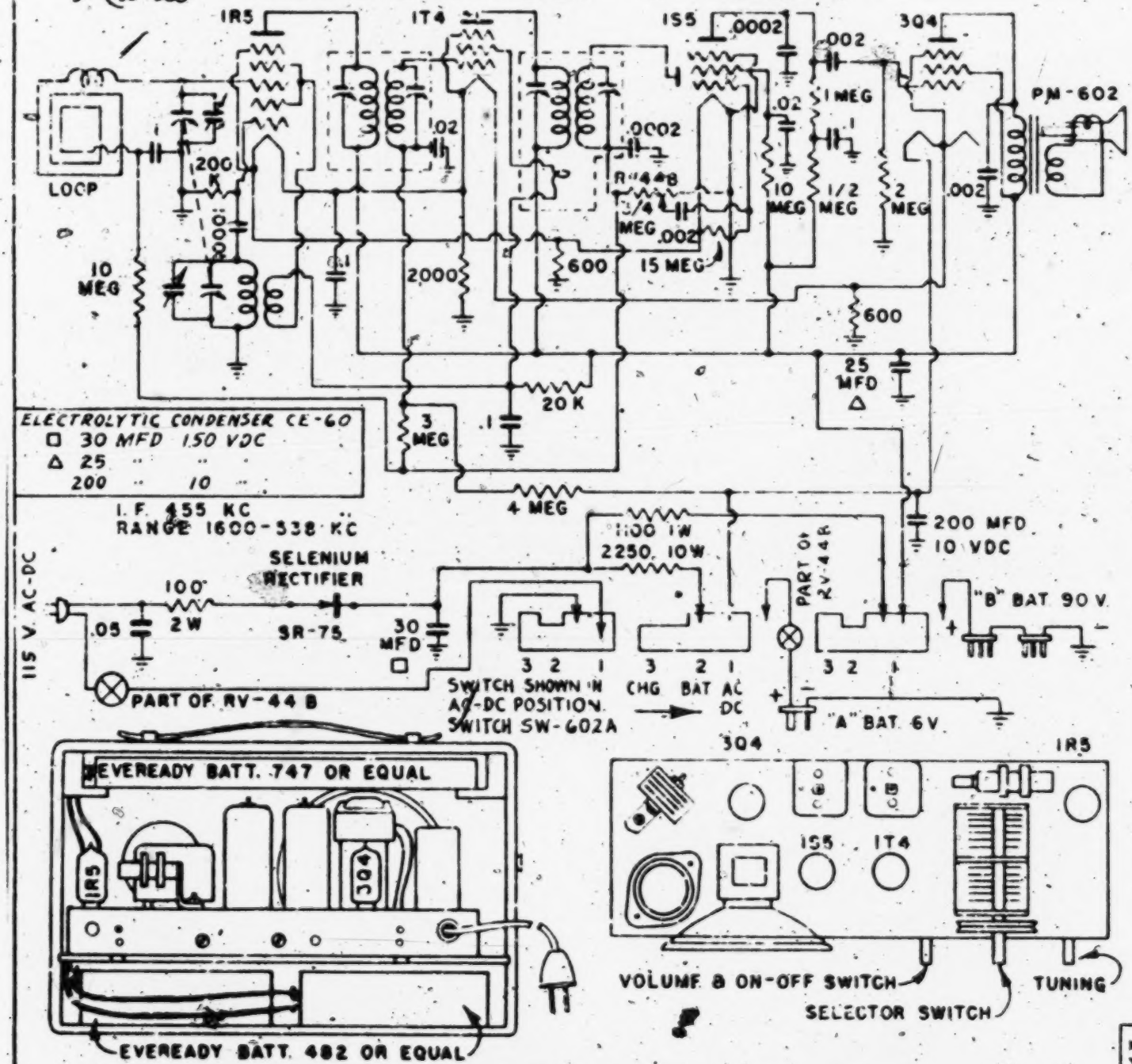
[SEAL]

Commission Expires March 30, 1948

I hereby certify that service of the above plaintiff's answers to interrogatories propounded by defendant has been made this twenty-seventh day of May, 1947 by my delivering in hand to George K. Woodworth, attorney of record for the defendant, a copy thereof.

JOHN D. WOODBERRY.

Automatic Radio MODEL NO. C-60X

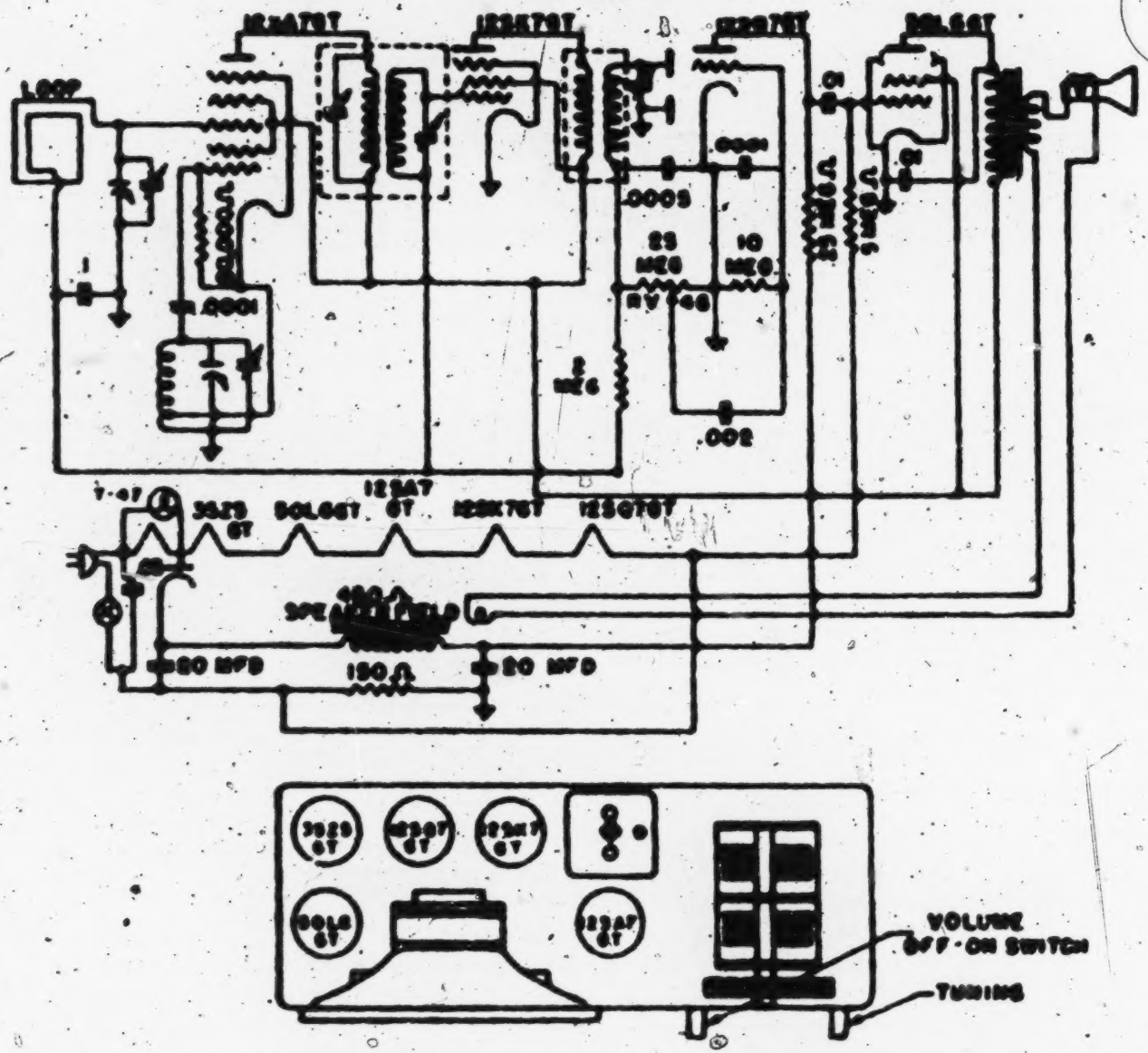


AUTOMATIC RADIO MFG. CO., INC.

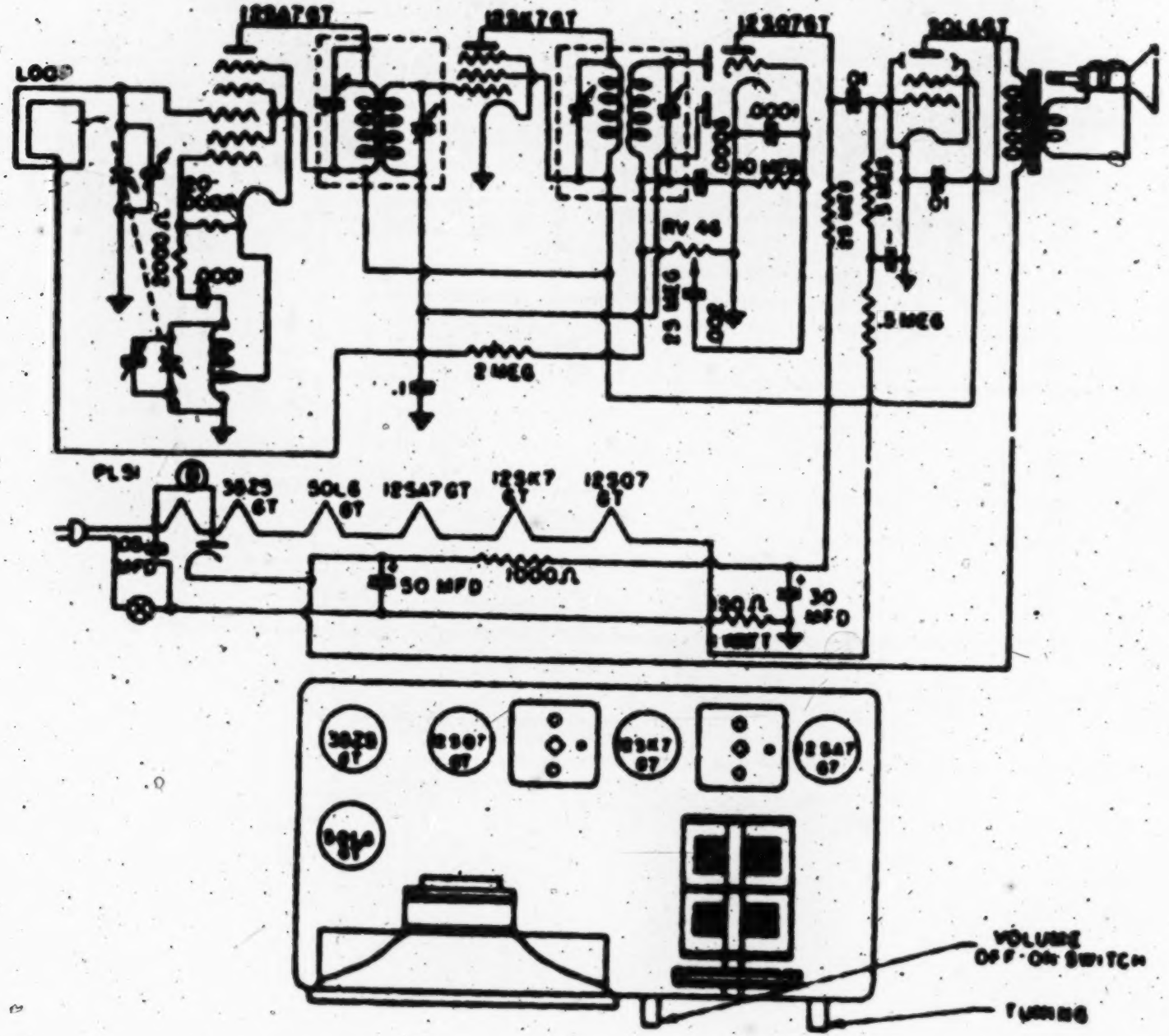
122 BROOKLINE AVE. BOSTON, 15, MASS.

13SMF-147

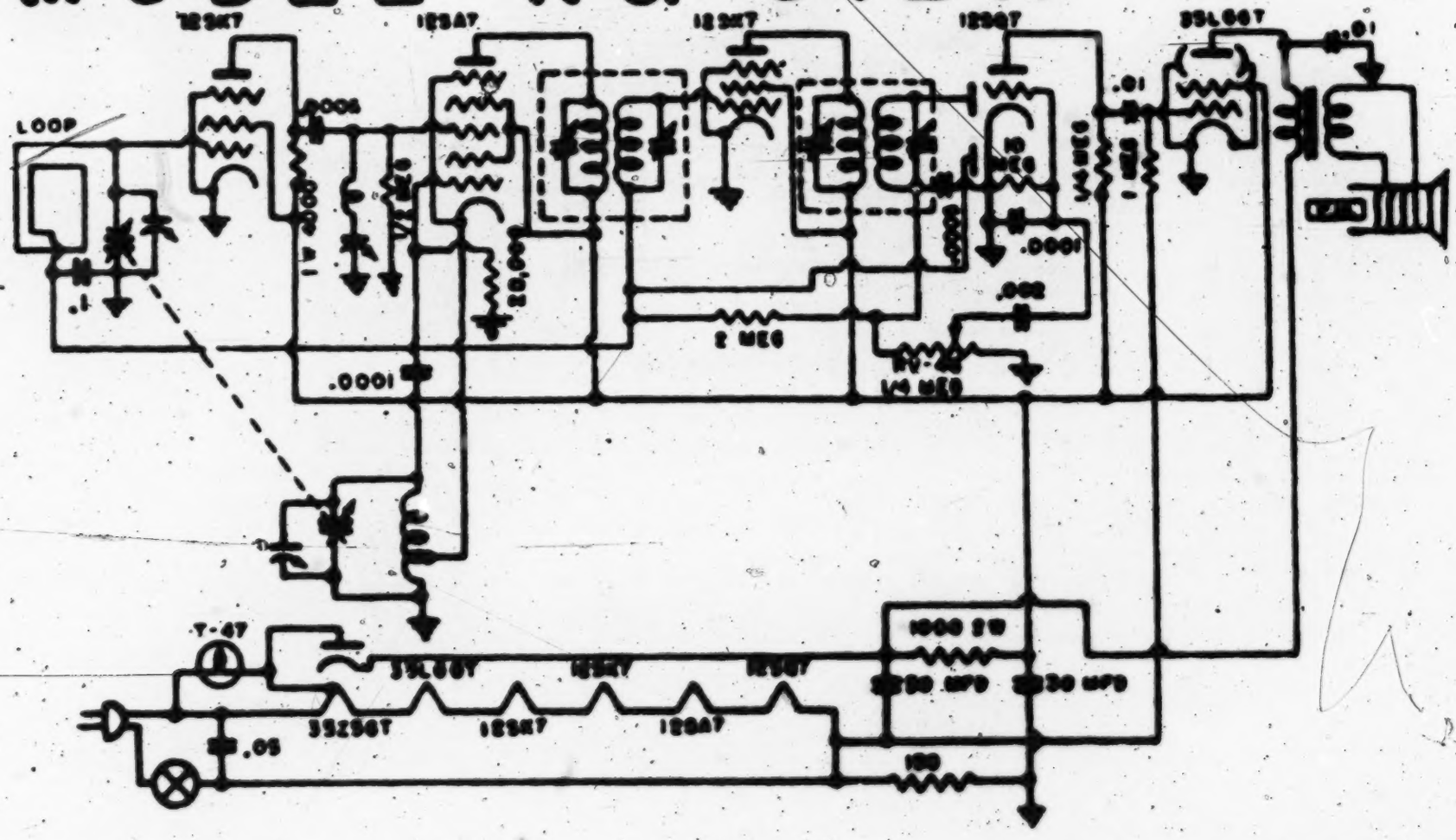
Automatic Radio 601-602

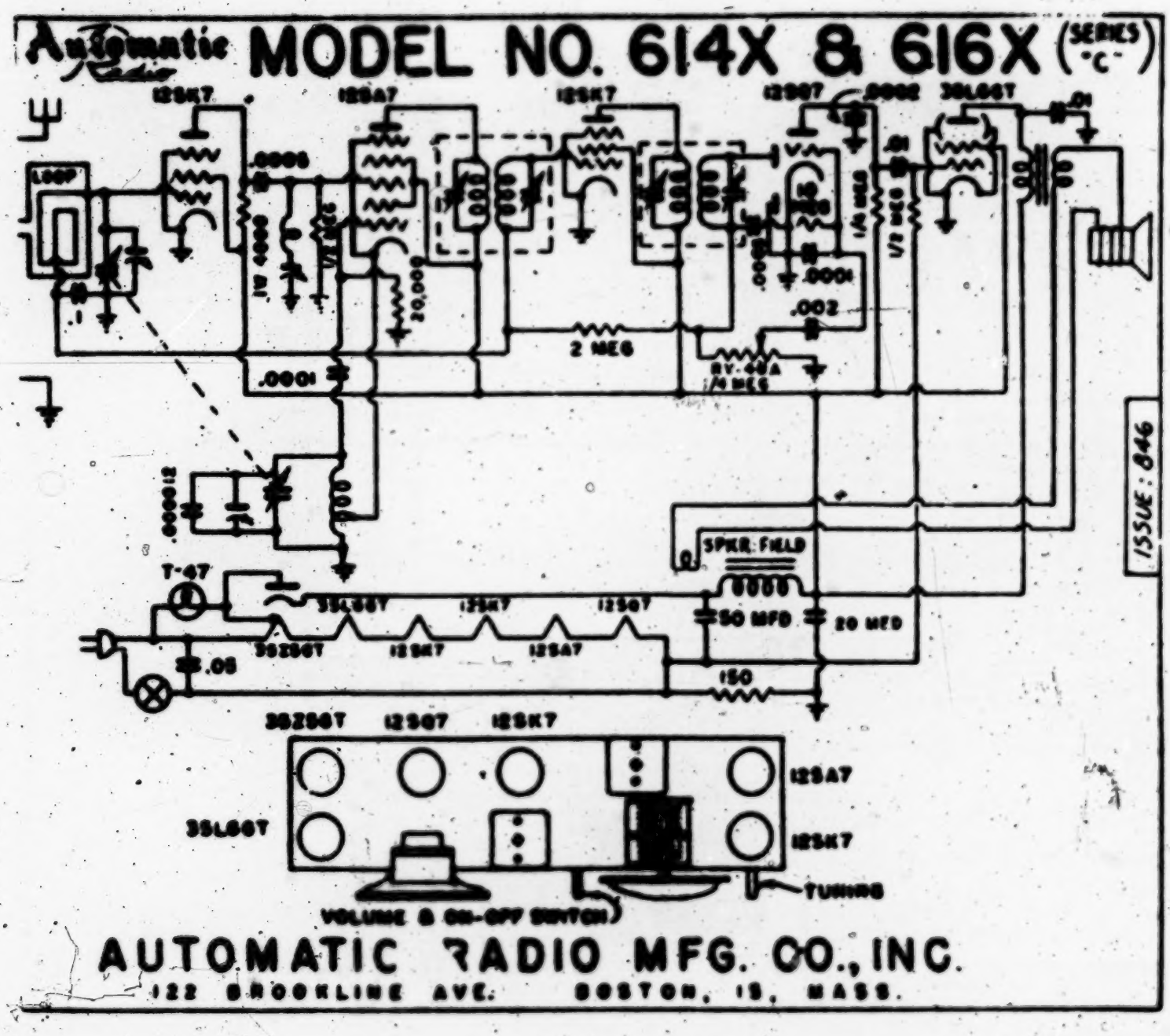


Automatic Radio Model 611

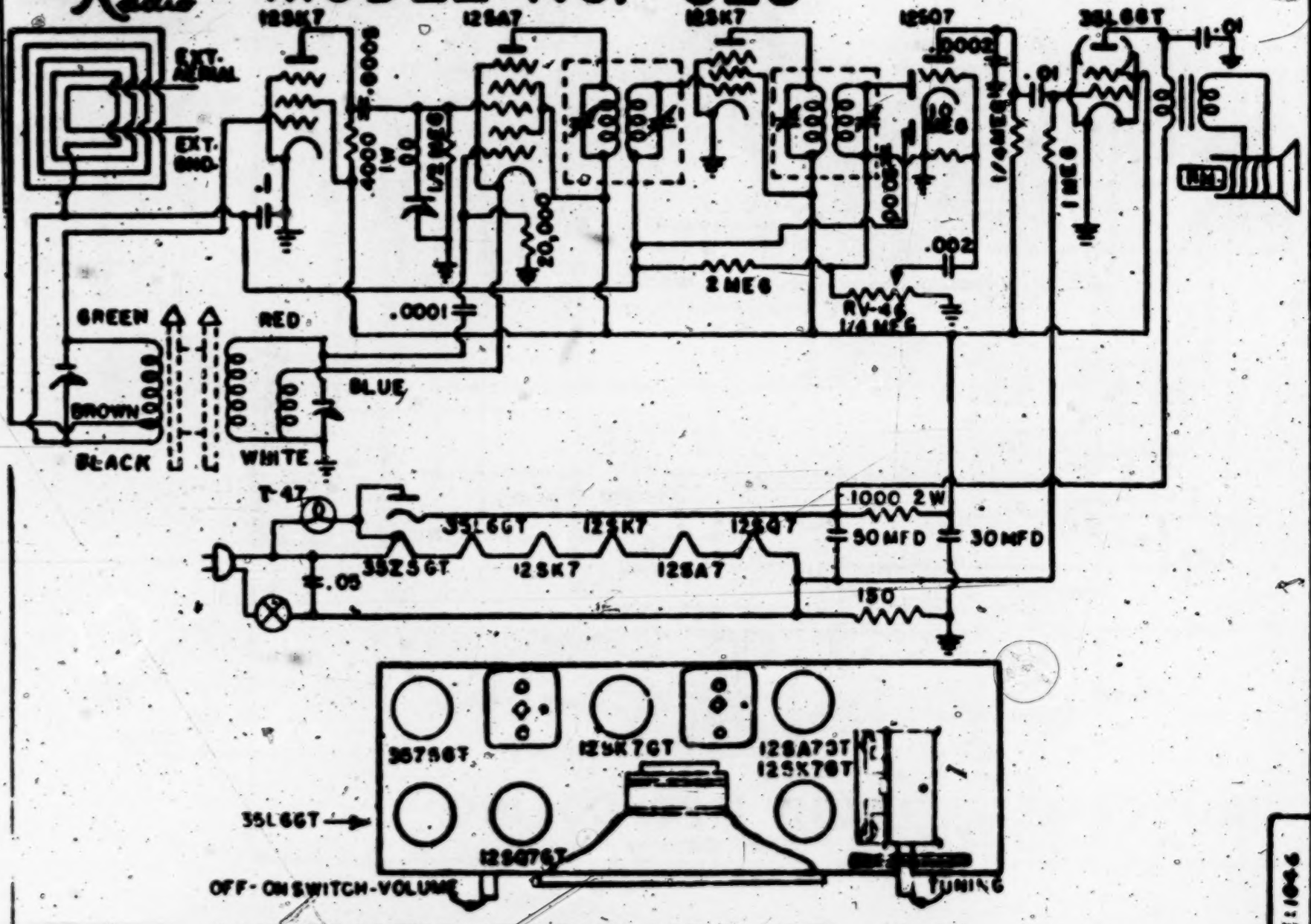


MODEL NO. 612X




Automatic
MODEL NO. 614X & 616X (SERIES "C")
12SK7
12SA7
12SK7
12SQ7
35L6GT
.01
LOOP
.0005
.0001
.002
2 MEG
.00025
.0001
SPKR. FIELD
T-47
35L6GT
12SK7
12SQ7
50 MFD
20 MFD
35Z5GT
12SK7
12SA7
.05
150
35Z5GT
12SQ7
12SK7
12SA7
35L6GT
12SK7
TUNING
VOLUME & ON-OFF SWITCH
ISSUE: 846
AUTOMATIC RADIO MFG. CO., INC.
122 BROOKLINE AVE. BOSTON, 15, MASS.

Automatic Radio MODEL NO. 620

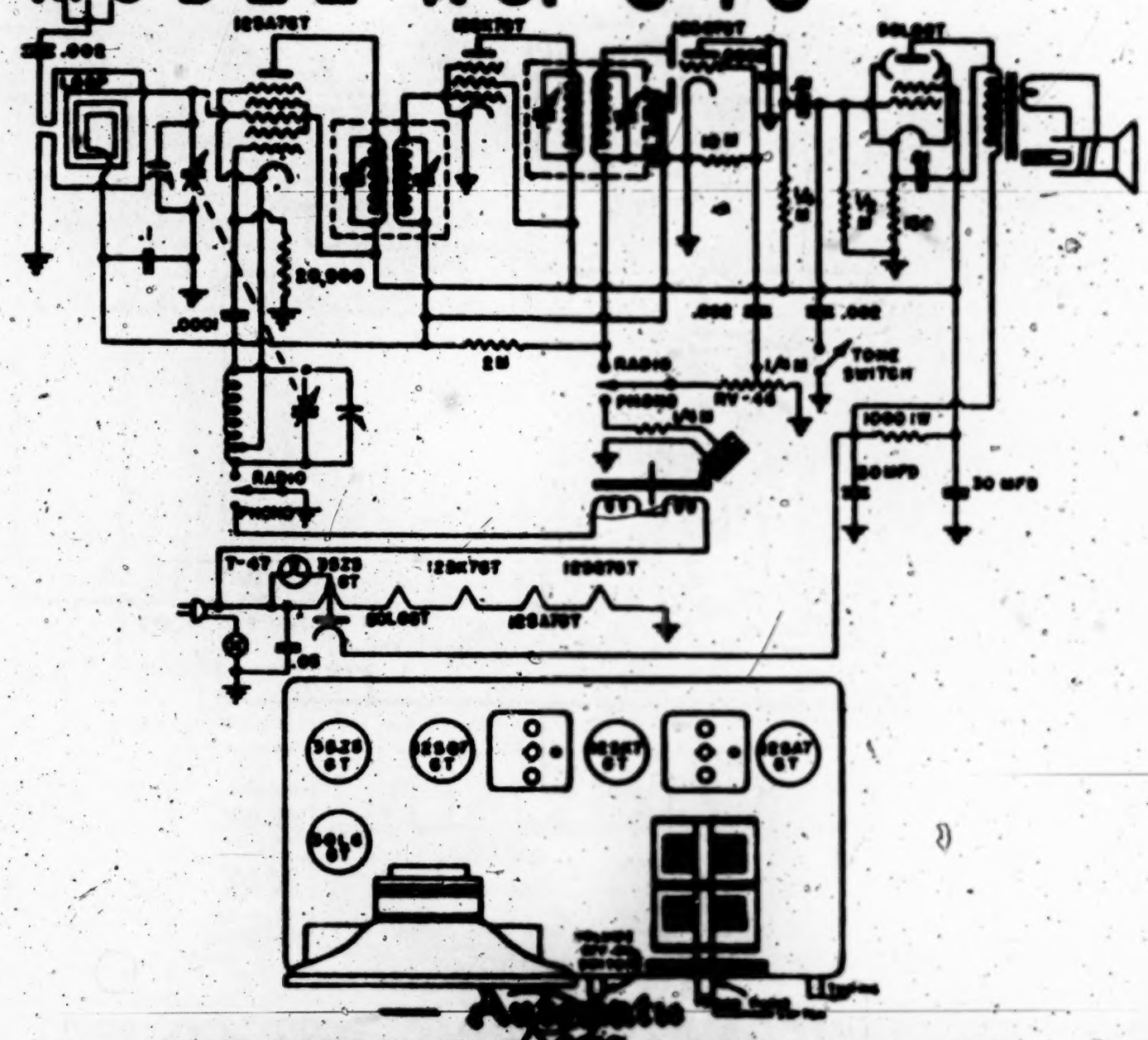


AUTOMATIC RADIO MFG. CO., INC.

122 BROOKLINE AVE. BOSTON, 15, MASS.

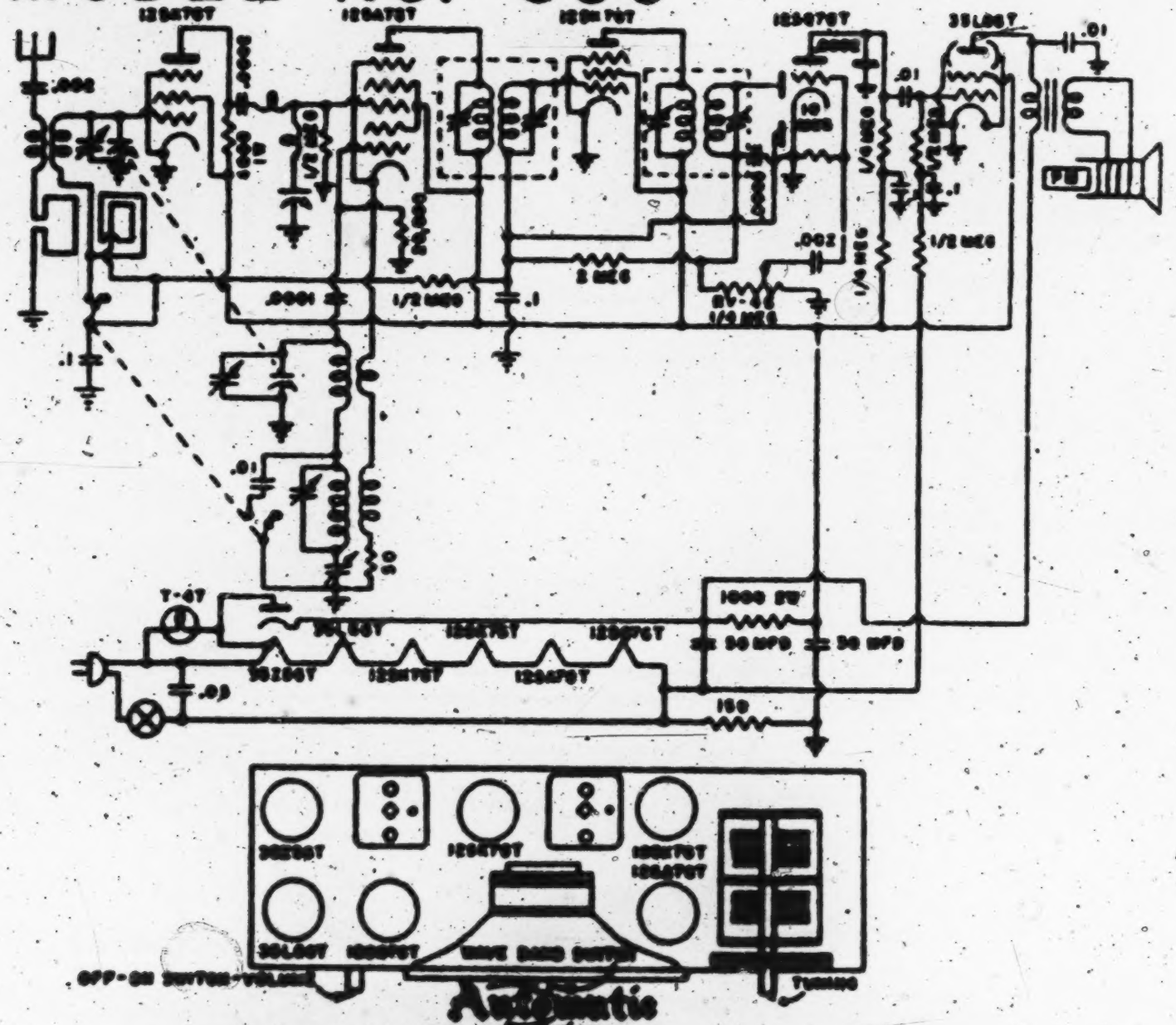
ISSUE: 1046

MODEL NO. 640



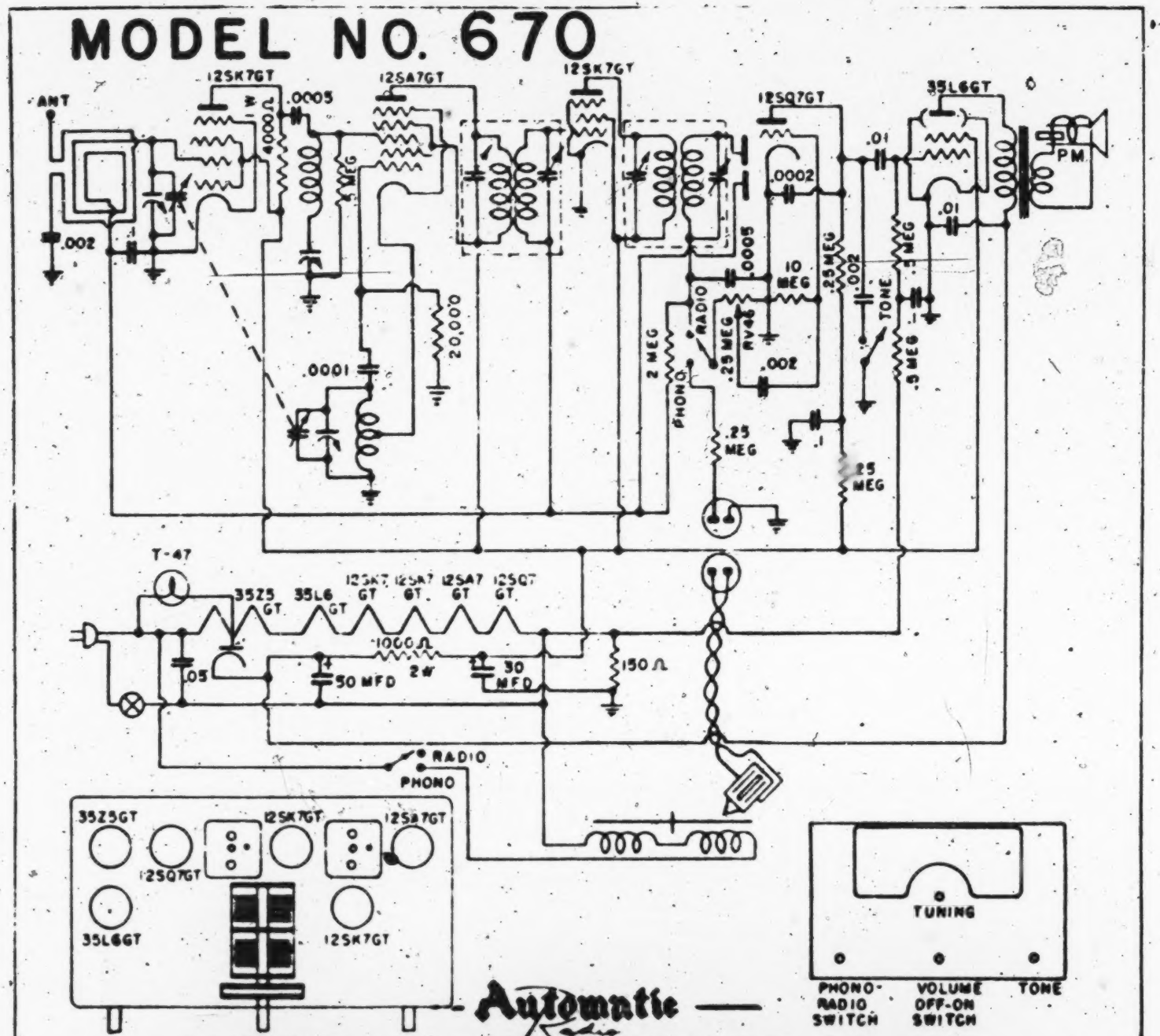
AUTOMATIC RADIO MFG. CO., INC.
122 BROOKLINE AVE., BOSTON, 15, MASS.
COMPILED BY M. N. BEITMAN, SUPREME PUBLICATIONS

MODEL NO. 660



AUTOMATIC RADIO MFG. CO., INC.
122 BROOKLINE AVE., BOSTON. 15, MASS.

MODEL NO. 670



Automatic

AUTOMATIC RADIO MFG. CO., INC.

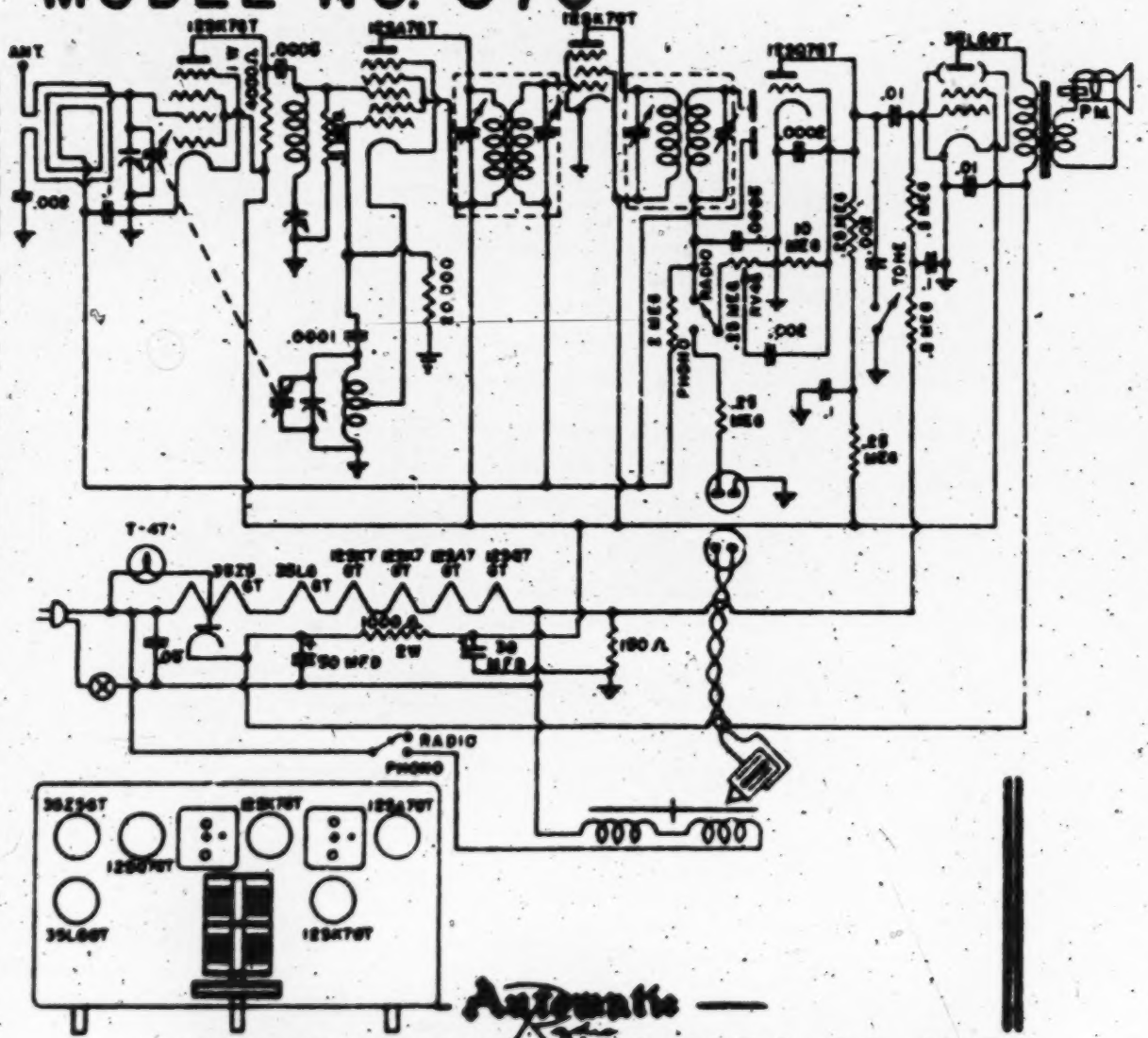
122 BROOKLINE AVE., BOSTON, 15, MASS.

RMA NO. _____

81

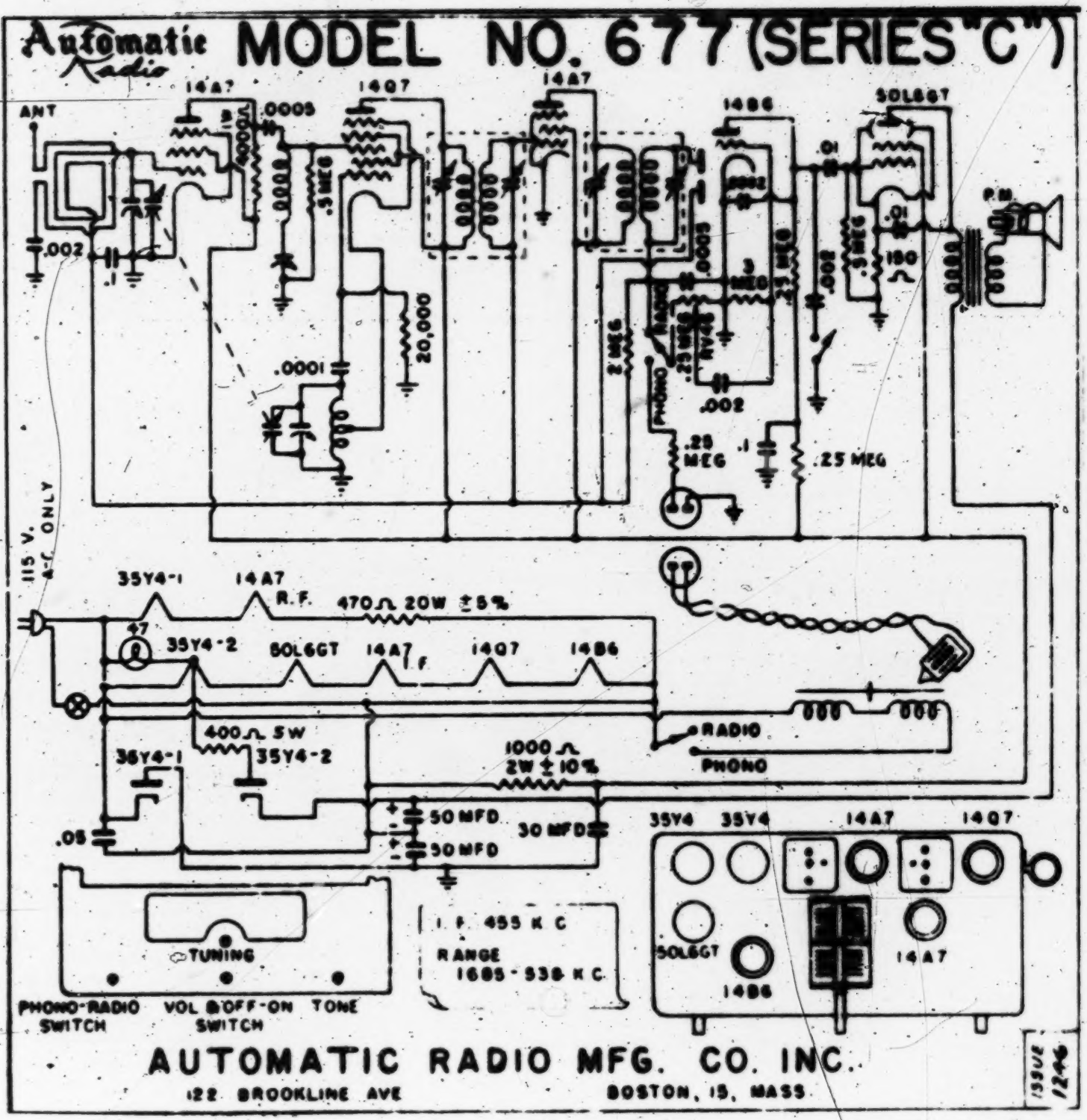
— Automatic —
AUTOMATIC RADIO MFG. CO. INC.
122 BROOKLINE AVE., BOSTON, 15, MASS.

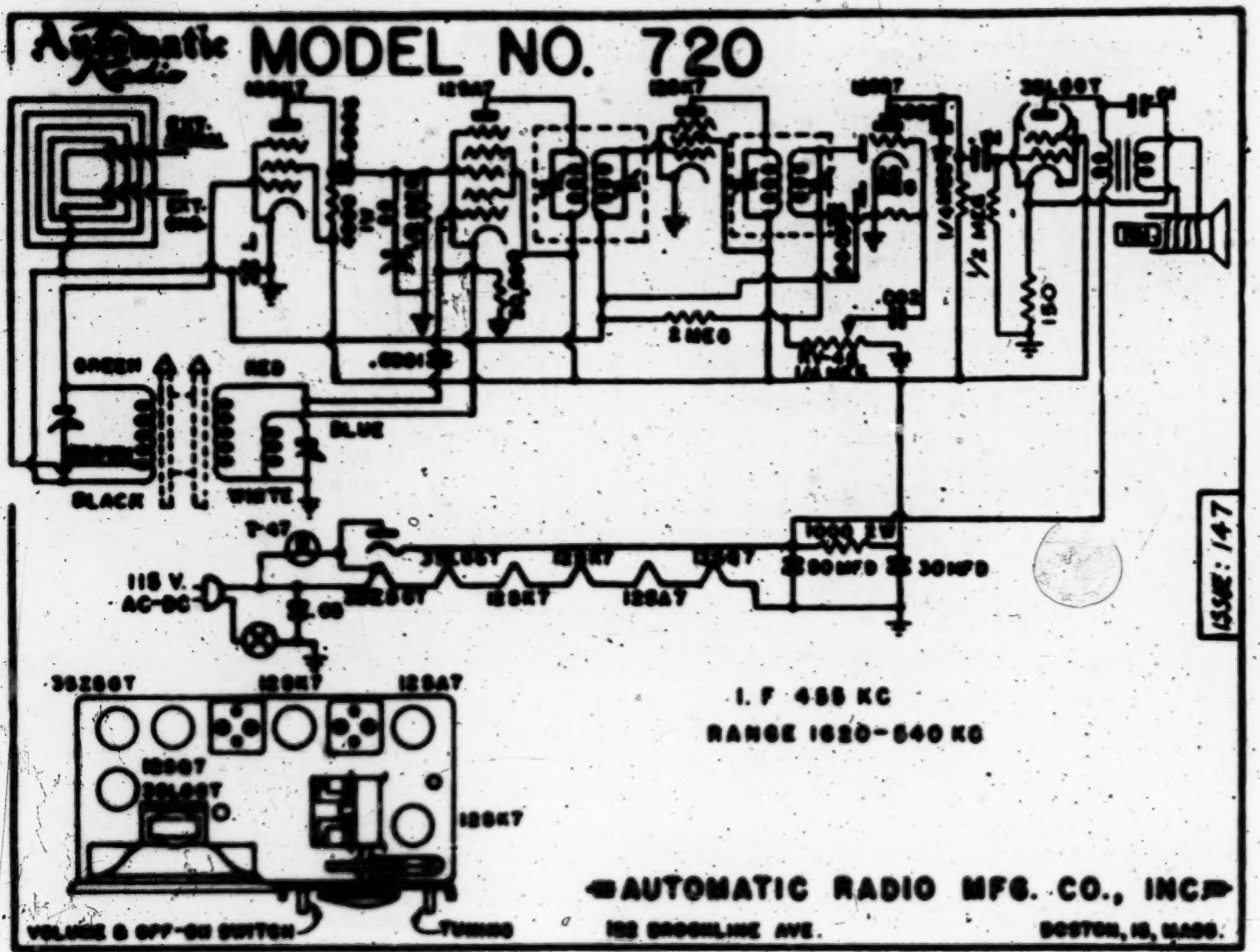
MODEL NO. 670



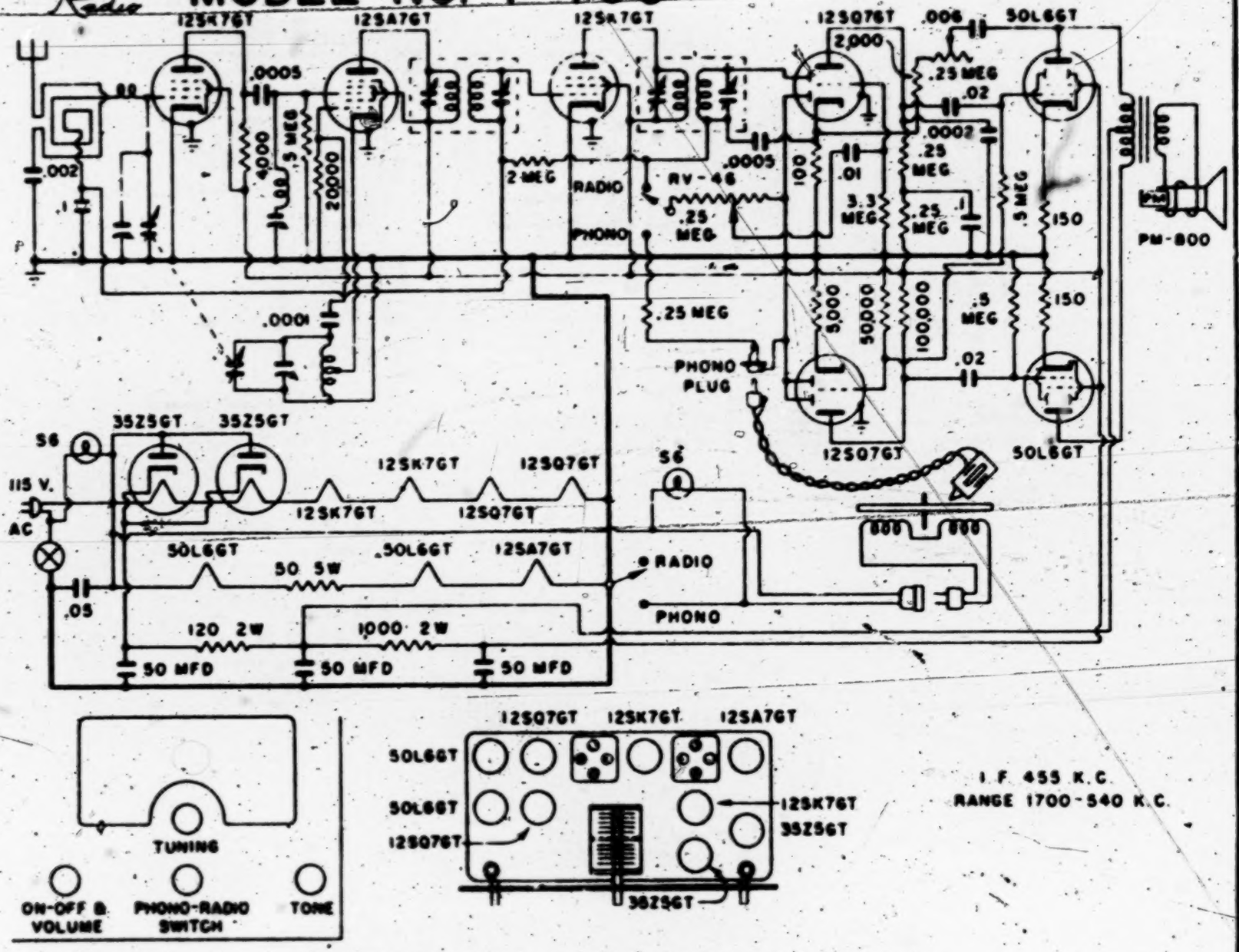
COMPILED BY M. N. BEITMAN, SUPREME PUBLICATIONS

— Automatic —
AUTOMATIC RADIO MFG. CO., INC.
122 BROOKLINE AVE., BOSTON, 15, MASS.


Automatic Radio
MODEL NO. 677 (SERIES "C")
ANT
14A7
1407
14A7
1486
50L6GT
.002
.1
.0005
.3MEG
.0001
20,000
2 MEG
.25 MEG
.01
150
P.M.
115 V. A-C ONLY
35Y4-1
14A7
R.F.
470Ω 20W ±5%
47
35Y4-2
50L6GT
14A7
I.F.
1407
1486
400Ω 5W
1000Ω 2W ±10%
RADIO
PHONO
50 MFD
30 MFD
50 MFD
.05
TUNING
I. F. 455 K.C.
RANGE
1685 - 538 K.C.
PHONO-RADIO SWITCH
VOL & OFF-ON SWITCH
TONE
AUTOMATIC RADIO MFG. CO. INC.
122 BROOKLINE AVE
BOSTON, 15, MASS


Automatic
MODEL NO. 720
GREEN
RED
BLUE
BLACK
WHITE
115 V.
AC-DC
1.F 455 KC
RANGE 1620-540 KC
AUTOMATIC RADIO MFG. CO., INC.
ISSUE: 147

Automatic Radio MODEL NO. F-790

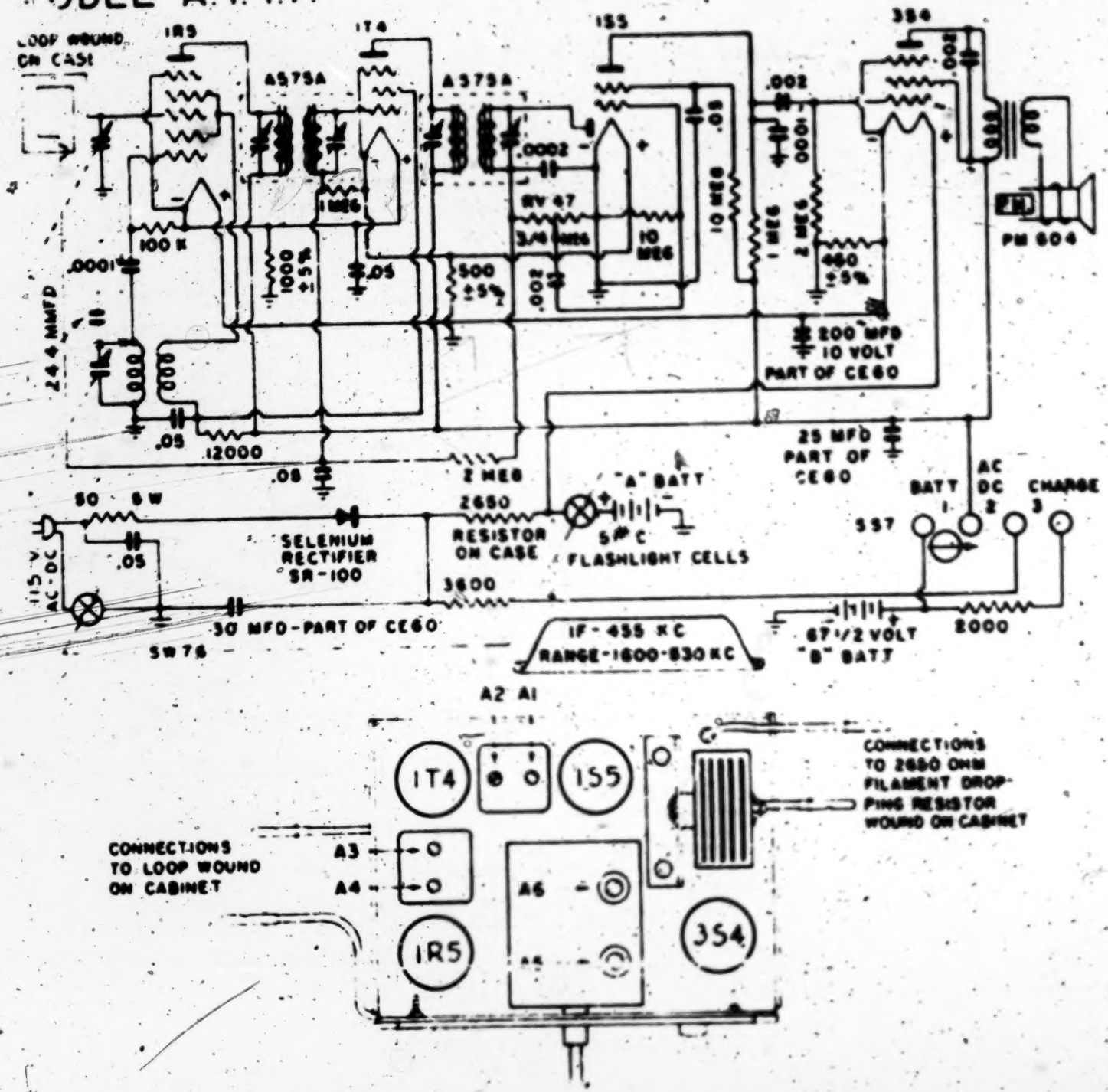


AUTOMATIC RADIO MFG. CO., INC.

122 BROOKLINE AVE

BOSTON, 15, MASS.

MODEL A.T.T.P.


LOOP WOUND ON CASE
1R5
1T4
A575A
A575A
1S5
3S4
.002
.0002
.0001
100 K
.0001
.05
.05
.12000
.08
500 ±5%
.002
.05
1 MEG
.05
8V 47
3/4 WATT
10 MEG
10 MEG
10 MEG
.002
.0001
.05
.002
460 ±5%
200 MFD 10 VOLT PART OF CE60
25 MFD PART OF CE60
PM 604
2 MEG
"A" BATT
5 #C FLASHLIGHT CELLS
50 5W
.05
SELENIUM RECTIFIER SR-100
2650 RESISTOR ON CASE
3600
115 V AC-DC
SW 76
30 MFD - PART OF CE60
IF - 455 KC
RANGE - 1600-830 KC
BATT 1
AC DC 2
CHARGE 3
SS7
67 1/2 VOLT "B" BATT
2000
A2 A1
1T4
1S5
1R5
3S4
A3
A4
A6
A5
CONNECTIONS TO LOOP WOUND ON CABINET
CONNECTIONS TO 2650 OHM FILAMENT DROPPING RESISTOR WOUND ON CABINET

The cause was then continued from term to term to the September Term, 1947, when on September 30, 1947, the defendant filed the following Motion to Amend Its Answer:

MOTION BY DEFENDANT TO AMEND ITS ANSWER.

[Filed September 30, 1947.]

Now comes defendant, by its attorney, and upon the annexed affidavit of David Housman moves to amend its answer in the following respects:

1. By the addition of Paragraph 14, as follows:

"14. Further answering the complaint, defendant, on information and belief, alleges that defendant was induced to enter into the said agreement in writing of September 18, 1942, through the fraud, misrepresentation and concealment of material facts by plaintiff, in that a number of the patents enumerated in Schedule A thereof which induced defendant to sign said agreement were represented by plaintiff to be valid and enforceable whereas, as a matter of fact, said patents had been adjudicated to be invalid by United States Courts, including the Supreme Court of the United States, which fact was concealed from defendant by plaintiff."

2. By the addition of Paragraph 15, as follows:

"15. That if the said agreement of September 18, 1942 was a valid and enforceable license agreement under patent rights of plaintiff, defendant has been evicted of its license by the adjudication by United States Courts of the invalidity of the patents which induced defendant to enter into the said agreement, whereby the said agreement is not enforceable against defendant, and is void for failure of consideration."

3. By the addition of Paragraph 16, as follows:

"16. Further answering the complaint, defendant, on information and belief, alleges that plaintiff has waived the minimum royalty provisions of the said agreement referred

to in Paragraph 5 of the said complaint, whereby plaintiff is not entitled to the relief prayed for with respect thereto."

AUTOMATIC RADIO MANUFACTURING COMPANY, INC.,

By GEO. K. WOODWORTH,

Its Attorney.

Dated September 30, 1947.

AFFIDAVIT

COUNTY OF SUFFOLK,

STATE OF MASSACHUSETTS, ss:

David Housman, being first duly sworn, deposes and says as follows:

I am an officer of Automatic Radio Manufacturing Company, Inc., defendant in the above entitled cause.

When I was induced to accept the license under the patents of Hazeltine Corporation I was primarily concerned with patents represented to me to be owned by the Hazeltine Corporation covering subject matter known by various technical names which my company desired to use in the radio receivers it manufactured and sold. The said patents were included among those listed in Schedule A attached to and forming part of the license agreement. These patents were all represented to me as outstanding with presumption of validity and presumed enforceability.

Recently in consulting additional counsel particularly familiar with patents relating to radio circuits and equipment, and particularly with the patents of Hazeltine Corporation, I found to my surprise that at the time I was induced to acquire the patent license the principal patents with which I was concerned had been held to be invalid, the most important of all of them by the Supreme Court of the United States, which facts were not made known to me. Specifically, and having in mind that the license agreement was executed as of September 1, 1942:

Letters Patent No. 1,648,088, according to my information and

belief, was held invalid on September 14, 1931, as reported in 52 F. (2d) 504; and also in 79 F. (2d) 238 on August 16, 1935;

Letters Patent No. 1,710,035 was held invalid on July 29, 1942, as reported in 129 F. (2d) 580;

Letters Patent No. 1,755,114 was held invalid on August 16, 1935, as reported in 79 F. (2d) 238;

Letters Patent No. 1,755,115 was held invalid on August 16, 1935, as reported in 79 F. (2d) 238;

Letters Patent No. 1,913,604 was held invalid on August 28, 1942, and on a petition for rehearing counsel for Hazeltine stated in open court that the effect of the decision of non-infringement was to invalidate the patent because, as limited by the court, it would be inapplicable to any practical equipment (130 F. (2d) 344);

Reissue Patent No. 19,744 was invalidated by the Supreme Court of the United States on May 12, 1941, as reported in 313 U.S. 259.

Additionally, since the date of the agreement the remaining Hazeltine patents of any materiality to the radio receivers that my company makes and desires to continue to make have been held invalid whereby my company has thus been effectively evicted from its license under the only patents which induced my company to accept a license. These patents are as follows:

Patent No. 2,111,483 held invalid on October 19, 1942, as reported in 131 F. (2d) 34;

Patent No. 1,951,685 held invalid on June 23, 1947, as reported in 72 F. Supp. 138;

Patent No. 2,041,273 held invalid on June 23, 1947, as reported in 72 F. Supp. 138.

To the best of my information and belief the Hazeltine Corporation has not received favorable adjudication of any patents affecting or alleged to affect the radio receivers manufactured by my company.

Additionally I recently learned, upon consulting with counsel, that Hazeltine Corporation by its actions and by unrestrained dis-

semination of information has waived, with respect to all of its licensees, the minimum royalty provision of its license agreements and notoriously has never enforced said provision with respect to any of its licensees and notoriously has advised its licensees and all others interested that it would not enforce or seek to enforce that provision of its license agreements.

Since the foregoing facts were made known to me I instructed counsel to take appropriate and prompt steps to amend the pleadings in this cause so as to present these matters by way of defense in this action.

DAVID HOUSMAN.

Sworn to and subscribed before me this thirtieth day of September, 1947.

Margaret B. Budden,
Notary Public.

[SEAL]

At the same term, on October 30, 1947, the following Stipulation *re* defendant's motion to amend its answer was filed:

STIPULATION.

[Filed October 30, 1947.]

It is stipulated and agreed by and between counsel, that defendant's Motion, filed on or about September 30, 1947 to amend its answer, may be allowed, the Honorable Court approving.

RICHARD F. WALKER,
Attorney for Plaintiff, without waiver of all proper objections to the affidavit of David Housman verified September 30, 1947, which is annexed to said Motion, and without admitting the truth of the allegations contained therein.

GEO. K. WOODWORTH,
Attorney for Defendant.

The stipulation is hereby approved and the motion allowed.

ARTHUR D. HEALEY,
United States District Judge.

On the same day, the foregoing stipulation was approved, and the defendant's motion to amend its answer was allowed by the court, the Honorable Arthur D. Healey, District Judge, sitting.

At the same term, on November 7, 1947, the following Stipulation *re* certain of defendant's models was filed:

STIPULATION.

[Filed November 7, 1947.]

Defendant represents that in addition to its models of radio broadcast receiving sets heretofore disclosed to plaintiff, in connection with its interrogatories to plaintiff filed in April, 1947, as constituting its prior production, defendant also produced and sold through at least parts of the calendar year of 1946 models designated as Nos. 662 and 666, which sets were identical in interior apparatus and circuit arrangements with defendant's set designated as Model No. 660, and differed from said Model No. 660 only in the container cabinets; wherefore it is stipulated that in and in connection with plaintiff's answers to defendant's said interrogatories as previously filed herein, Model No. "660" shall be treated and read as "660, 662 and 666".

RICHARD F. WALKER,
Attorney for Plaintiff.

GEO. K. WOODWORTH,
Attorney for Defendant.

Boston, Massachusetts
October 28, 1947

At the same term, on November 10, 1947, the following Motion for Summary Judgment was filed by the plaintiff:

PLAINTIFF'S MOTION FOR SUMMARY JUDGMENT.

[Filed November 10, 1947.]

Now comes plaintiff, under the provisions of Rule 56 of the Rules of Civil Procedure, and moves for entry of a summary judgment that defendant is indebted to plaintiff for minimum royalty as alleged and demanded in the complaint and, subject to credit for such minimum royalty, is further indebted to plaintiff for the specified royalty in an amount constituting 1.05% of its selling price of all radio broadcast receivers sold by defendant since September 1, 1942, and further providing that, on the sole issue of the amount of recovery due plaintiff from defendant as royalty according to such adjudication, this action be placed on the trial calendar for trial, or, in the alternative, be referred to a Master.

This motion is made on the grounds that there is no genuine issue as to any material fact necessary to support this motion except as to the extent of defendant's said sales, wherefore plaintiff is entitled to such summary judgment as a matter of law.

In support of this motion, plaintiff relies upon:

(a) The complaint herein;

(b) The license agreement between the parties, copy of which was filed with said complaint as Exhibit A, which provides for the payment of royalties on all radio broadcast receivers manufactured and sold by defendant and for certain minimum annual royalties;

(c) Defendant's answer as amended;

(d) Motion by defendant to amend its answer, and without any admission of the truth of its allegations, the affidavit of David Housman annexed thereto;

(e) Plaintiff's answers to defendant's Interrogatories together with Exhibits B through N thereto annexed; and

(f) The affidavits, together with the documentary exhibits an-

nexed thereto, of John R. Binns, John K. Gowen, Jr., and Harold A. Wheeler which are filed herewith.

Respectfully submitted,

CLARENCE H. PORTER,
ROBERTS, CUSHMAN & GROVER,
Attorneys for Plaintiff.

LAURENCE B. DODDS,
Of Counsel.

Due and sufficient notice of a copy of the foregoing Motion, together with copies of the affidavits filed in support thereof, is hereby acknowledged this tenth day of November, 1947.

GEO. K. WOODWORTH,
Attorney for Defendant.

On the same day, the following Affidavits annexed to plaintiff's motion for summary judgments were filed:

AFFIDAVIT OF JOHN K. GOWEN, JR.

[Filed November 10, 1947.]

STATE OF NEW YORK
COUNTY OF NEW YORK, ss:

John K. Gowen, Jr., being duly sworn, deposes and says:

1. That since May 27, 1946, he has been in the employ of plaintiff, Hazeltine Research, Inc., as licensee representative negotiating license agreements with radio manufacturers and maintaining business contacts with licensees under such agreements;

2. That in August of 1946, the accounting department of plaintiff called to his attention the fact that defendant had failed to make any reports or payments under their Hazeltine Standard License Agreement dated September 1, 1942, since the termination of World War II, and requested him to contact defendant with a view to inducing it to perform its obligations under its license agreement;

3. That on August 14, 1946, he stopped at the general office

of defendant at 122 Brookline Avenue, Boston, Massachusetts, and talked to Jack Housman, Vice-President of defendant, and explained to him defendant's aforesaid delinquency and requested that reports and payments due under aforesaid license agreement be made by defendant, but he was advised by said Jack Housman that such matters were handled by his brother, David Housman, President of defendant, and that the latter was out of the city but Jack Housman promised to take up the matter with said David Housman on his return;

4. That, having failed to receive any further response from any representative of defendant, during the month of November, 1946, he made several long distance telephone calls to defendant, finally making an appointment with aforesaid David Housman for December 3, 1946, and, on that date, accompanied by Laurence B. Dodds, Executive Vice-President of plaintiff, he went from New York to Boston and conferred with aforesaid David Housman in his office. At that conference, defendant's violations of aforesaid license agreement were again explained to said David Housman and a demand was made for royalty reports and payments, but said David Housman then refused to state whether or not his company would fulfill its obligations under aforesaid license agreement without discussing the matter further with its patent counsel, George K. Woodworth, but he agreed to write by December 15, 1946, giving his final decision in the matter; and

5. That on or about January 2, 1947, having had no response from defendant, he telephoned said David Housman by long distance and was advised by said David Housman that defendant refused to, and would not, make royalty reports and payments under aforesaid license agreement.

JOHN K. GOWEN, JR.,

Subscribed and sworn to before me, this first day of October, 1947.

PEGGY COYLE,
Notary Public.

[SEAL]

Commission Expires March 30, 1948

AFFIDAVIT OF JOHN R. BINNS IN SUPPORT OF PLAINTIFF'S MOTION FOR SUMMARY JUDGMENT.

[Filed November 10, 1947.]

STATE OF NEW YORK
COUNTY OF NEW YORK, SS:

John R. Binns, being duly sworn, deposes and says:

1. That he has been an officer of plaintiff and its predecessor, Hazeltine Corporation, since 1924; that he is now and has been since the organization of plaintiff in March, 1946, President of plaintiff and that during such periods he has been familiar with all of the licensing activities of plaintiff and its predecessor, Hazeltine Corporation;

2. That in March, 1946, plaintiff Corporation was organized as a corporation of the State of Illinois and as a wholly-owned subsidiary of Hazeltine Corporation of Washington, D. C., a corporation of Delaware, and that, upon such organization, all of the United States patents and patent applications and all of the license agreements between Hazeltine Corporation and the United States manufacturers of radio and allied equipments were assigned by Hazeltine Corporation to plaintiff for a large and valuable consideration, a copy of such assignment being attached hereto as Exhibit 0;

3. That plaintiff now owns or has the right to grant licenses under some 570 United States patents and some 200 United States patent applications; that these patents and patent applications are largely directed to radio and television transmitters and receivers, including broadcast radio receivers of the type manufactured by defendant, and that these patent rights are now and have been since long prior to 1935, the date of defendant's first license from plaintiff, described hereinafter, generally recognized by the manufacturers of such equipments, plaintiff now having some 130 licensees in this field including such leaders in the industry as General Electric Company, Westinghouse Electric Corporation, Zenith Radio Corporation, Stromberg-Carlson Company, etc.; and that

plaintiff has received large sums in royalties from such licensees each year since long prior to 1935; that Radio Corporation of America, though itself a holder of a large number of patents, as alleged in paragraph 11 of defendant's answer herein, has operated under license from plaintiff and has, during the last ten years, paid plaintiff and its predecessor approximately One Million Dollars ($1,000,000) in royalties and recently renewed its license in the broadcast receiver field for an additional period ending December 31, 1950, and is paying very substantial royalties to plaintiff under a group of patents which is substantially the same patents as those under which defendant is licensed and which include those patents enumerated in plaintiff's answer to defendant's Interrogatory No. 2;

4. That for more than twenty (20) years plaintiff's affiliate company, Hazeltine Electronics Corporation and its predecessor, has operated extensive laboratories engaged in fundamental research, development, engineering design and testing and consulting services for the benefit of the licensees of plaintiff and has spent many millions of dollars in this activity, the budget of Hazeltine Electronics Corporation for the current year for this purpose being Five Hundred Thousand Dollars ($500,000) and that the majority of the aforesaid patents and patent applications owned by plaintiff have resulted from such research and development activities and that such activities are financed solely from royalties received from aforesaid licenses under such inventions;

5. That defendant has persistently violated the rights of plaintiff and its predecessor, Hazeltine Corporation, in the aforesaid inventions and the patents and patent applications based thereon as indicated by the following chronological summary;

(a) On or about October 1, 1935, plaintiff's predecessor, Hazeltine Corporation, entered into a license agreement with defendant for a period ending June 30, 1939, by which Hazeltine Corporation as licensor granted to defendant a non-exclusive license to manufacture and sell certain radio apparatus including broadcast radio receivers at a royalty rate of three per cent. (3%) of the

selling price of the chassis portion of such receivers with usual provisions relative to patent marking, the keeping of records subject to examination by licensor, and the making of reports and royalty payments by licensee to licensor.

(b) From the date of said agreement of October 1, 1935, defendant violated and failed to perform its obligations under said agreement and by letter of March 9, 1936, advised plaintiff's counsel, Medina & Sherpick, of New York, New York, ". . . that it is our present belief that our product does not embody any of the inventions described and claimed in the patents set forth in the license.".

(c) On or about December 18, 1936, plaintiff's predecessor, Hazeltine Corporation, brought an action in equity against defendant in the Massachusetts Superior Court for Suffolk County, Equity No. 47229, seeking to enjoin defendant from manufacturing licensed apparatus without applying proper patent markings and without paying royalties due and without performing its other obligations under such license and seeking also an accounting for royalties past due.

(d) On or about September 24, 1937, there was entered in said action, Equity No. 47229, a consent decree, a certified copy of which is attached hereto and marked Exhibit P, which adjudged that defendant's entire production constituting some twenty-seven (27) models of broadcast radio receivers manufactured and sold by defendant embodied the inventions of a large number of patents owned by Hazeltine Corporation and that each of those patents was valid and infringed by one or more of said twenty-seven models of broadcast radio receivers.

(e) Concurrently with the entry of aforesaid consent decree on September 24, 1937, defendant entered into a settlement agreement with Hazeltine Corporation in the form attached hereto and marked Exhibit Q and the sum of Four Thousand Dollars ($4,000), referred to in such agreement, was paid to Hazeltine Corporation by defendant.

(f) Concurrently with the entry of aforesaid c[illegible] sent decree on

September 24, 1937, defendant also entered into a new license agreement with Hazeltine dated October 1, 1937, for a period of five (5) years and in its then current standard form and which was in substantially the same form as the previous license agreement dated October 1, 1935, except that the 1935 agreement provided for the payment of royalties at stated percentages "on each piece of licensed apparatus sold by Licensee", while the 1937 agreement, for convenience of accounting, provided for royalties based on sales of "each piece of apparatus identified in Article II, Section 2, sold by Licensee", which is identical to the royalty payment obligation contained in Article IV, Section 1, of the current form of license agreement, Exhibit A, and that, with the exception of defendant, all licensees under licenses of the form of said 1937 agreement and of the form of said current license agreement have reported and paid royalties on the basis of all broadcast receivers manufactured and sold by them without raising with plaintiff or its predecessor any question as to whether such receivers embodied any one or more, or none, of the several hundred patents under which the license was granted.

(g) For a certain period, beginning October 1, 1937, the date of the second aforesaid license agreement, and extending until February, 1940, defendant paid royalties to Hazeltine Corporation under said agreement on the basis of its entire production of broadcast receivers but such payments and reports were made belatedly in nearly every instance and only after, and as a result of, insistent and continued demands on defendant; thereafter defendant again became delinquent and failed and refused to pay royalties and to fulfill its other obligations under the said agreement of October 1, 1937, and, on application of plaintiff, on or about December 3, 1941, there was entered in the said action, Equity No. 47229, a final decree, a certified copy of which is attached and marked Exhibit R, which in substance continued the provisions of aforesaid consent decree of September 24, 1937.

(h) On May 12, 1941, the United States Supreme Court held invalid one of plaintiff's important patents, Re. 19,744 Wheeler,

directed to an automatic-volume-control system for radio receivers, reversing decisions of the Sixth Circuit Court of Appeals and the United States District Court, Eastern District of Michigan, which had held that patent valid and infringed; thereupon plaintiff, by letter of May 14, 1941, notified each of its licensees of such decision, copy of such notice to defendant being attached hereto as Exhibit R1, which notice defendant acknowledged by its letter of May 16, 1941, a photostatic copy of which is attached hereto as Exhibit R2; that in view of such decision of the Supreme Court and promptly thereafter plaintiff offered to each of its licensees a new license at rates of royalty thirty per cent. (30%) below those then in effect, such offer to defendant being made by a letter to defendant dated August 25, 1941; that on or about September 18, 1942, pursuant to extended negotiations following the entry of said final decree of December 3, 1941, Hazeltine Corporation entered into a further settlement with defendant as a result of which it granted to defendant, and defendant accepted, the new license carrying the lower royalty rates, which then was the current Hazeltine standard license agreement and is the agreement now in force with defendant, a copy of which is attached to the complaint herein as Exhibit A.

(i). That on or about April 30, 1942, by various executive orders culminating in Limitation Order No. L-265 of the War Production Board, the Government prohibited the manufacture and sale for civilian use of all radio apparatus covered by the agreement, which order was revoked on or about August 30, 1945; that since such revocation of Limitation Order No. L-265 on or about August 30, 1945, defendant has persistently and continuously failed and refused to perform its obligations under said agreement including, among others, the payment of royalties due under Article IV; the keeping of records, the making of reports, and permission to representatives of plaintiff or its predecessor, Hazeltine Corporation, to inspect the same under the provisions of Article V;

6. That in the negotiations of the licenses described above in paragraphs 5(f) and 5(h), in the litigation described above in paragraphs 5(c), 5(d), and 5(g), and in the settlements described

in paragraphs 5(e) and 5(h), defendant was represented by experienced patent counsel, George K. Woodworth, attorney for defendant in the present action; that said George K. Woodworth agreed to and signed the aforesaid consent decree dated September 24, 1937, after plaintiff had filed answers to a large number of Interrogatories propounded by defendant which brought out the particulars of infringement in that case;

7. That there are now due and owing plaintiff from defendant under aforesaid agreement dated September 1, 1942, the minimum annual royalty of Ten Thousand Dollars ($10,000) for the fiscal license year ending August 31, 1946, and, in addition thereto, royalties at rates specified in Article IV, Section 1, of aforesaid agreement on radio receiving apparatus manufactured and sold by defendant since September 1, 1942, the amounts of which are unknown and unascertainable to plaintiff without the accounting prayed for in the complaint herein;

8. None of the 130 licensees of plaintiff, except defendant and one other, have since August 30, 1945, ignored or are now ignoring their obligations under their respective license agreements with plaintiff although there are a few of such licensees which are undergoing financial re-organization under the bankruptcy laws or are involved in like proceedings or are otherwise in financial difficulties and are thus somewhat in arrears in their royalty payments but which have recognized their royalty obligations;

9. That a great majority of the patents and patent applications enumerated in Schedules A and B of aforesaid license agreement of September 1, 1942, resulted from the research and development work of plaintiff's affiliate Hazeltine Electronics Corporation described in paragraph 4 above; that of the Latour Corporation patents enumerated in said Schedule A only three (3) are unexpired and those are not presently in commercial use; that the rights under the patents of the Atwater-Kent Manufacturing Company, Zenith Radio Corporation, and United American Bosch Corporation enumerated in said Schedule A were acquired by plaintiff as an incident to settlements for past infringement at the time those companies respectively were granted and accepted Hazeltine standard license

agreements under which they paid to Hazeltine royalties at the standard rate; that the few patents acquired from others, not named, enumerated in said Schedule A were also acquired largely incidentally in the process of settlement of various Patent Office interferences and similar controversies; it is now and always has been the policy of plaintiff and its predecessor, Hazeltine Corporation, to license any and all responsible manufacturers of radio apparatus and to include such acquired patent rights in its licenses, without any charge in addition to its standard royalty rate which for many years has been approximately one per cent. (1%); and that, in fact, plaintiff has never endeavored to eliminate competition or secure any monopoly and has not eliminated competition or achieved any monopoly or near monopoly in the patents in the radio receiver field since it owns or controls only a small fraction of the patents in this field; that Radio Corporation of America, referred to in paragraph 11 of the answer herein, owns or has the right to grant licenses under several thousand patents in this field and does grant licenses comparable to plaintiff at a basic royalty rate of two and one-quarter per cent. (2-1/4%); and that there are also other patent owners and licensors in this field, such as Major Edwin H. Armstrong, Philco Corporation, Zenith Radio Corporation, Johnson Laboratories, etc., each of which owns a substantial number of patents in this field;

10. That, of the patents referred to in plaintiff's answer to defendant's Interrogatory No. 2, namely,

Re.19,765
Re.20,400
1,913,604
1,951,685
1,958,027
2,015,327
2,021,692
2,022,514
2,041,273
2,041,291

none has been held invalid in any litigation with the exception of patents 1,951,685 and 2,041,273 which are now involved in Civil Actions No. 2426 and No. 2436, respectively, entitled *Hazeltine Research, Inc.* v. *General Motors Corporation,* (U.S.D.C. E.D. Michigan, Southern Division), which actions are now on appeal to the Circuit Court of Appeals for the Sixth Circuit, while two of such patents, Nos. 1,913,604 and 2,022,514, were held not infringed in an action entitled *Hazeltine Corporation* v. *The Crosley Corporation* by the United States Circuit Court of Appeals for the Sixth Circuit, 130 F. (2d) 344.

11. That it is, and always has been, the policy of plaintiff and its predecessor, Hazeltine Corporation, to notify all licensees of any court decisions adversely affecting the scope or validity of any of its patents, as a result of which such decisions immediately become matters of common knowledge in the radio industry.

JOHN R. BINNS.

Sworn to and subscribed before me this twenty-seventh day of October, 1947.

PEGGY COYLE,

[SEAL] *Notary Public.*

Commission Expires March 30, 1948

Exhibit O attached to and forming part of Affidavit of John R. Binns Civil Action 6677

REEL 1206 PAGE 433

PATENT ASSIGNMENT

In consideration of One Dollar ($1.00) and other good and valuable consideration, the receipt of which is hereby acknowledged, HAZELTINE CORPORATION, of Washington, D. C., a corporation organized and existing under the laws of the State of Delaware, (hereinafter called ASSIGNOR) hereby sells and assigns unto HAZELTINE RESEARCH, INC., of Chicago, Illinois, a corporation organized and existing under the laws of the State of Illinois, (hereinafter called ASSIGNEE) its successors, assigns and nominees, the following inventions, patents and patent and contractual rights:

(1) The entire right, title and interest in and to the United States Letters Patent enumerated in Schedule A attached hereto and made a part hereof and all reissues and extensions thereof, together with the right to all claims for past infringement thereof and the right to sue for and recover such claims for the exclusive benefit of ASSIGNEE.

(2) The entire right, title and interest in and to the applications for United States Letters Patent enumerated in Schedule B attached hereto and made a part hereof and all divisions and continuations thereof and all Letters Patent which may be granted therefor and all reissues and extensions thereof. ASSIGNOR agrees to authorize and request the Commissioner of Patents to issue all patents resulting from said applications to ASSIGNEE as assignee of the entire interest.

(3) The inventions disclosed or claimed in the United States Letters Patent and applications therefor enumerated in aforesaid Schedules A and B, but excluding the right to apply for Letters Patent thereon in all countries foreign to the United States and any and all Letters Patent issuing on such foreign applications.

(4) ASSIGNOR'S entire rights and interest in to and under the United States Letters Patent enumerated in Schedule C attached hereto and made a part hereof, pursuant to the respective agreements identified therein.

(5) All rights of ASSIGNOR under certain Employment and Retainer Agreements between HAZELTINE ELECTRONICS CORPORATION, a subsidiary of ASSIGNOR, and employees and inventors, including the respective inventor or inventors named in each of the Letters Patent and applications therefor enumerated in Schedules A and B.

(6) All contractual rights of ASSIGNOR stated in or resulting from assignments or contracts to assign by which ASSIGNOR acquired the Letters Patent enumerated in Schedule A, the applications enumerated in Schedule B and the inventions thereof, insofar as the same relate to the United States.

The foregoing assignments are subject to the following reservations:

(a) The outstanding license rights identified in a certain License Assignment executed by ASSIGNOR and ASSIGNEE concurrently herewith.

(b) Licenses under the patents entitled "Miscellaneous" of Schedule C to the respective parties to the Agreements identified therein.

(c) Certain licenses to the United States Government under the Letters Patent and applications therefor so identified in Schedules A and B.

(d) A license to the United States Government under a certain License Agreement dated as of July 1, 1942, under certain of the Letters Patent and applications therefor of Schedules A, B, and C, such license continuing during a period ending six (6) months after cessation of hostilities between the United States and the countries with which it was at war on July 1, 1942.

(e) The foregoing assignments are also subject to the assumption by ASSIGNEE of all obligations now or hereafter resting upon ASSIGNOR under or by virtue of the assignments or agreements by which ASSIGNOR acquired the Letters Patent and applications therefor and the inventions and rights hereby assigned and such performance thereof by ASSIGNEE that ASSIGNOR shall hereafter be free and clear of all such obligations and liability for the performance thereof.

(f) ASSIGNOR further agrees to execute any and all further documents reasonably necessary to effectuate the transfer to ASSIGNEE of the rights recited herein.

IN WITNESS THEREOF, the parties hereto have caused this instrument to be executed in duplicate by their proper officers thereunto duly authorized.

HAZELTINE CORPORATION

By Jack Binns
President

ATTEST:

Hamlet Page
Assistant Secretary

HAZELTINE RESEARCH, INC.

By Lawrence B. Odds
Executive Vice-President.

ATTEST:

Paul Armstrong
Secretary

State of New York)
) ss.:
County of New York)

On this 28th day of March, 1946; before me personally came JACK BIRNS, to me known, and who being by me duly sworn, did depose and say: that he is the President of Hazeltine Corporation, one of the corporations described in and which executed the above instrument, and that he knows the seal of said corporation, and the seal affixed to said instrument is said corporate seal, and that it was so affixed by authority of the Board of Directors of the said corporation, and that he signed his name thereto by like authority.

Peggy Coyle
Notary Public

PEGGY COYLE
NOTARY PUBLIC Kings County
Kings County Clerk's No. 78
New York Co. Clerk's No. 94
Commission Expires March 30, 1946

State of New York)
) ss.:
County of New York)

On this 28th day of March, 1946, before me personally came Lawrence B. Dodds, to me known, and who being by me duly sworn, did depose and say: that he is the Executive Vice-President of Hazeltine Research, Inc., one of the corporations described in and which executed the above instrument, and that he knows the seal of said corporation, and the seal affixed to said instrument is said corporate seal, and that it was so affixed by authority of the Board of Directors of the said corporation, and that he signed his name thereto by like authority.

Peggy Coyle
Notary Public

PEGGY COYLE
NOTARY PUBLIC Kings County
Kings County Clerk's No. 78
New York Co. Clerk's No. 94
Commission Expires March 30, 1946

SCHEDULE A

United States Letters Patent

Patent No.	Issued	Patent No.	Issued
Re. 17,530	Dec. 17, 1929	1,866,687	July 12, 1932
Re. 19,170	May 15, 1934	1,868,155	July 19, 1932
Re. 19,744	Oct. 29, 1935	1,869,894	Aug. 2, 1932
Re. 19,765	Nov. 26, 1935	1,873,236	Aug. 23, 1932
Re. 19,823	Jan. 14, 1936	1,875,837	Sept. 6, 1932
Re. 20,400	June 8, 1937	1,878,614	Sept. 20, 1932
Re. 20,632	Jan. 18, 1938	1,878,653	Sept. 20, 1932
Re. 21,153	July 18, 1939	1,878,740	Sept. 20, 1932
Re. 21,176	Aug. 15, 1939	1,878,741	Sept. 20, 1932
Re. 21,222	Oct. 3, 1939	1,878,742	Sept. 20, 1932
Re. 21,691	Jan. 14, 1941	1,878,743	Sept. 20, 1932
Re. 21,826	June 17, 1941	1,879,861	Sept. 27, 1932
Re. 21,839	June 24, 1941	1,879,862	Sept. 27, 1932
Re. 22,055	Mar. 24, 1942	1,881,235	Oct. 4, 1932
Re. 22,112	June 9, 1942	1,881,284	Oct. 4, 1932
Re. 22,115	June 16, 1942	1,883,794	Oct. 18, 1932
Re. 22,139	July 21, 1942	1,888,278	Nov. 22, 1932
Re. 22,195	Oct. 6, 1942	1,892,554	Dec. 27, 1932
Re. 22,275	Feb. 23, 1943	1,893,813	Jan. 10, 1933
Re. 22,302	April 20, 1943	1,894,503	Jan. 17, 1933
Re. 22,390	Nov. 9, 1943	1,895,091	Jan. 24, 1933
Re. 22,576	Dec. 12, 1944	1,896,500	Feb. 7, 1933
1,710,035	April 23, 1929	1,904,185	April 18, 1933
1,721,520	July 23, 1929	1,907,916	May 9, 1933
1,733,504	Oct. 29, 1929	1,908,934	May 16, 1933
1,755,114	April 15, 1930	1,910,399	May 23, 1933
1,755,115	April 15, 1930	1,910,827	May 23, 1933
1,757,494	May 6, 1930	1,910,870	May 23, 1933
1,762,431	June 10, 1930	1,913,604	June 13, 1933
1,763,380	June 10, 1930	1,913,693	June 13, 1933
1,763,796	June 17, 1930	1,921,087	Aug. 8, 1933
1,776,592	Sept. 23, 1930	1,921,088	Aug. 8, 1933
1,781,759	Nov. 18, 1930	1,927,672	Sept. 19, 1933
1,798,962	Mar. 31, 1931	1,930,784	Oct. 17, 1933
1,823,327	Sept. 15, 1931	1,931,338	Oct. 17, 1933
1,823,331	Sept. 15, 1931	1,931,596	Oct. 24, 1933
1,829,058	Oct. 27, 1931	1,933,402	Oct. 31, 1933
1,831,431	Nov. 10, 1931	1,934,722	Nov. 14, 1933
1,844,374	Feb. 9, 1932	1,942,587	Jan. 9, 1934
1,845,306	Feb. 16, 1932	1,942,786	Jan. 9, 1934
1,846,701	Feb. 23, 1932	1,943,405	Jan. 16, 1934
1,855,054	April 19, 1932	1,951,685	Mar. 20, 1934
1,855,055	April 19, 1932	1,958,027	May 8, 1934
1,855,619	April 26, 1932	1,960,984	May 29, 1934
1,857,055	May 3, 1932	1,961,154	June 5, 1934

SCHEDULE A

United States Letters Patent

Patent No.	Issued	Patent No.	Issued
1,961,574	June 5, 1934	2,052,184	Aug. 25, 1936
1,968,973	Aug. 7, 1934	2,054,412	Sept. 15, 1936
1,977,745	Oct. 23, 1934	2,054,424	Sept. 15, 1936
1,997,665	April 16, 1935	2,056,390	Oct. 6, 1936
2,000,084	May 7, 1935	2,058,565	Oct. 27, 1936
2,000,113	May 7, 1935	2,061,991	Nov. 24, 1936
2,001,950	May 21, 1935	2,064,774	Dec. 15, 1936
2,007,253	July 9, 1935	2,064,775	Dec. 15, 1936
2,013,121	Sept. 3, 1935	2,072,679	Mar. 2, 1937
2,014,086	Sept. 10, 1935	2,072,708	Mar. 2, 1937
2,015,327	Sept. 24, 1935	2,073,038	Mar. 9, 1937
2,016,760	Oct. 8, 1935	2,073,344	Mar. 9, 1937
2,018,526	Oct. 22, 1935	2,073,345	Mar. 9, 1937
2,018,540	Oct. 22, 1935	2,075,683	Mar. 30, 1937
2,018,545	Oct. 22, 1935	2,077,045	April 13, 1937
2,020,166	Nov. 5, 1935	2,077,049	April 13, 1937
2,021,692	Nov. 19, 1935	2,080,115	May 11, 1937
2,022,067	Nov. 26, 1935	2,080,560	May 18, 1937
2,022,068	Nov. 26, 1935	2,080,646	May 18, 1937
2,022,085	Nov. 26, 1935	2,081,861	May 25, 1937
2,022,514	Nov. 26, 1935	2,084,647	June 22, 1937
2,024,002	Dec. 10, 1935	2,092,709	Sept. 7, 1937
2,024,017	Dec. 10, 1935	2,093,416	Sept. 21, 1937
2,026,075	Dec. 31, 1935	2,099,156	Nov. 16, 1937
2,026,102	Dec. 31, 1935	2,100,402	Nov. 30, 1937
2,028,511	Jan. 21, 1936	2,100,733	Nov. 30, 1937
2,034,013	Mar. 17, 1936	2,103,022	Dec. 21, 1937
2,034,014	Mar. 17, 1936	2,103,079	Dec. 21, 1937
2,036,319	April 7, 1936	2,103,097	Dec. 21, 1937
2,036,343	April 7, 1936	2,105,902	Jan. 18, 1938
2,038,253	April 21, 1936	2,110,664	Mar. 8, 1938
2,038,294	April 21, 1936	2,111,483	Mar. 15, 1938
2,038,358	April 21, 1936	2,115,463	April 26, 1938
2,038,359	April 21, 1936	2,115,676	April 26, 1938
2,039,136	April 28, 1936	2,118,352	May 24, 1938
2,041,273	May 19, 1936	2,118,977	May 31, 1938
2,041,291	May 19, 1936	2,129,727	Sept. 13, 1938
2,042,571	June 2, 1936	2,129,740	Sept. 13, 1938
2,045,569	June 30, 1936	2,137,123	Nov. 15, 1938
2,045,910	June 30, 1936	2,137,266	Nov. 22, 1938
2,048,527	July 21, 1936	2,137,318	Nov. 22, 1938
2,048,528	July 21, 1936	2,147,509	Feb. 14, 1939
2,049,147	July 28, 1936	2,148,604	Feb. 28, 1939
2,050,679	Aug. 11, 1936	2,148,633	Feb. 28, 1939
2,050,680	Aug. 11, 1936	2,150,044	Mar. 7, 1939
2,052,183	Aug. 25, 1936	2,151,107	Mar. 21, 1939

VOL L206 PAGE 441

SCHEDULE A

United States Letters Patent

Patent No.	*Issued*	*Patent No.*	*Issued*
2,152,470	Mar. 28, 1939	2,188,658	Jan. 30, 1940
2,152,481	Mar. 28, 1939	2,188,970	Feb. 6, 1940
2,152,482	Mar. 28, 1939	2,189,287	Feb. 6, 1940
2,152,514	Mar. 28, 1939	2,189,310	Feb. 6, 1940
2,152,515	Mar. 28, 1939	2,189,848	Feb. 13, 1940
2,152,618	Mar. 28, 1939	2,189,849	Feb. 13, 1940
2,153,857	April 11, 1939	2,190,816	Feb. 20, 1940
2,154,141	April 11, 1939	2,191,796	Feb. 27, 1940
2,154,907	April 18, 1939	2,192,971	Mar. 12, 1940
2,156,137	April 25, 1939	2,192,991	Mar. 12, 1940
2,159,240	May 23, 1939	2,194,292	Mar. 19, 1940
2,163,234	June 20, 1939	2,195,438	April 2, 1940
2,165,468	July 11, 1939	2,196,881	April 9, 1940
2,167,134	July 25, 1939	2,197,239	April 16, 1940
2,167,135	July 25, 1939	2,198,969	April 30, 1940
2,167,136	July 25, 1939	2,198,983	April 30, 1940
2,167,137	July 25, 1939	2,201,365	May 21, 1940
2,167,400	July 25, 1939	2,201,770	May 21, 1940
2,167,405	July 25, 1939	2,203,519	June 4, 1940
2,168,193	Aug. 1, 1939	2,203,520	June 4, 1940
2,168,461	Aug. 8, 1939	2,203,521	June 4, 1940
2,168,874	Aug. 8, 1939	2,203,528	June 4, 1940
2,169,830	Aug. 15, 1939	2,204,216	June 11, 1940
2,169,831	Aug. 15, 1939	2,204,712	June 18, 1940
2,169,837	Aug. 15, 1939	2,205,190	June 18, 1940
2,169,840	Aug. 15, 1939	2,205,738	June 25, 1940
2,172,750	Sept. 12, 1939	2,206,954	July 9, 1940
2,172,858	Sept. 12, 1939	2,206,989	July 9, 1940
2,172,859	Sept. 12, 1939	2,206,990	July 9, 1940
2,173,173	Sept. 19, 1939	2,208,374	July 16, 1940
2,174,234	Sept. 26, 1939	2,208,382	July 16, 1940
2,174,235	Sept. 26, 1939	2,209,394	July 30, 1940
2,174,566	Oct. 3, 1939	2,210,089	Aug. 6, 1940
2,174,580	Oct. 3, 1939	2,211,352	Aug. 13, 1940
2,177,162	Oct. 24, 1939	2,211,458	Aug. 13, 1940
2,177,688	Oct. 31, 1939	2,211,718	Aug. 13, 1940
2,177,713	Oct. 31, 1939	2,212,172	Aug. 20, 1940
2,177,761	Oct. 31, 1939	2,212,420	Aug. 20, 1940
2,181,499	Nov. 28, 1939	2,214,846	Sept. 17, 1940
2,182,329	Dec. 5, 1939	2,214,847	Sept. 17, 1940
2,183,966	Dec. 19, 1939	2,216,160	Oct. 1, 1940
2,183,980	Dec. 19, 1939	2,216,874	Oct. 8, 1940
2,185,388	Jan. 2, 1940	2,216,997	Oct. 8, 1940
2,185,389	Jan. 2, 1940	2,216,998	Oct. 8, 1940
2,187,978	Jan. 23, 1940	2,217,948	Oct. 15, 1940
2,188,498	Jan. 30, 1940	2,217,957	Oct. 15, 1940

REEL L206 PAGE 442

5

SCHEDULE A

United States Letters Patent

Patent No.	Issued	Patent No.	Issued
2,218,980	Oct. 22, 1940	2,253,355	Aug. 19, 1941
2,221,015	Nov. 12, 1940	2,254,114	Aug. 26, 1941
2,221,452	Nov. 12, 1940	2,254,435	Sept. 2, 1941
2,221,665	Nov. 12, 1940	2,254,721	Sept. 2, 1941
2,221,666	Nov. 12, 1940	2,255,050	Sept. 9, 1941
2,222,387	Nov. 19, 1940	2,255,403	Sept. 9, 1941
2,226,648	Dec. 31, 1940	2,255,645	Sept. 9, 1941
2,226,706	Dec. 31, 1940	2,255,690	Sept. 9, 1941
2,228,725	Jan. 14, 1941	2,255,691	Sept. 9, 1941
2,230,284	Feb. 4, 1941	2,255,692	Sept. 9, 1941
2,231,704	Feb. 11, 1941	2,255,839	Sept. 16, 1941
2,231,829	Feb. 11, 1941	2,257,092	Sept. 30, 1941
2,233,470	Mar. 4, 1941	2,258,370	Oct. 7, 1941
2,235,131	Mar. 18, 1941	2,259,520	Oct. 21, 1941
2,235,816	Mar. 25, 1941	2,259,349	Oct. 21, 1941
2,235,817	Mar. 25, 1941	2,261,762	Nov. 4, 1941
2,235,859	Mar. 25, 1941	2,261,800	Nov. 4, 1941
2,236,364	Mar. 25, 1941	2,262,707	Nov. 11, 1941
2,239,136	April 22, 1941	2,263,067	Nov. 25, 1941
2,239,776	April 29, 1941	2,263,085	Nov. 25, 1941
2,240,490	May 6, 1941	2,264,018	Nov. 25, 1941
2,240,507	May 6, 1941	2,264,781	Dec. 2, 1941
2,240,533	May 6, 1941	2,264,782	Dec. 2, 1941
2,240,534	May 6, 1941	2,265,826	Dec. 9, 1941
2,240,593	May 6, 1941	2,265,848	Dec. 9, 1941
2,240,700	May 6, 1941	2,269,524	Jan. 13, 1942
2,242,934	May 20, 1941	2,269,540	Jan. 13, 1942
2,242,952	May 20, 1941	2,269,570	Jan. 13, 1942
2,243,599	May 27, 1941	2,269,590	Jan. 13, 1942
2,245,710	June 17, 1941	2,269,539	Jan. 20, 1942
2,246,172	June 17, 1941	2,271,181	Jan. 27, 1942
2,247,511	July 1, 1941	2,271,203	Jan. 27, 1942
2,247,512	July 1, 1941	2,271,964	Feb. 3, 1942
2,247,538	July 1, 1941	2,273,163	Feb. 17, 1942
2,247,898	July 1, 1941	2,273,709	Feb. 17, 1942
2,249,532	July 15, 1941	2,276,488	Mar. 17, 1942
2,249,533	July 15, 1941	2,277,192	Mar. 24, 1942
2,250,170	July 22, 1941	2,277,850	Mar. 31, 1942
2,250,962	July 29, 1941	2,278,159	Mar. 31, 1942
2,251,307	Aug. 5, 1941	2,279,543	April 14, 1942
2,251,929	Aug. 12, 1941	2,280,139	April 21, 1942
2,251,966	Aug. 12, 1941	2,280,181	April 21, 1942
2,252,148	Aug. 12, 1941	2,280,187	April 21, 1942
2,253,312	Aug. 19, 1941	2,280,191	April 21, 1942
2,253,313	Aug. 19, 1941	2,282,106	May 12, 1942
2,253,338	Aug. 19, 1941	2,284,131	May 26, 1942
		2,284,219	May 26, 1942

SCHEDULE A

United States Letters Patent

Patent No.	Issued	Patent No.	Issued
2,285,038	June 2, 1942	2,305,842	Dec. 22, 1942
2,285,957	June 9, 1942	2,308,375	Jan. 12, 1943
2,288,486	June 30, 1942	2,309,852	Feb. 2, 1943
2,289,948	July 14, 1942	* 2,312,687	Mar. 2, 1943
2,290,517	July 21, 1942	2,313,952	Mar. 16, 1943
2,290,748	July 21, 1942	* 2,316,317	April 13, 1943
2,291,277	July 28, 1942	* 2,321,478	June 8, 1943
2,291,450	July 28, 1942	2,322,528	June 22, 1943
2,292,765	Aug. 11, 1942	* 2,324,548	July 20, 1943
2,293,233	Aug. 18, 1942	2,324,776	July 20, 1943
2,294,182	Aug. 25, 1942	2,327,248	Aug. 17, 1943
2,294,328	Aug. 25, 1942	2,335,983	Dec. 7, 1943
2,294,820	Sept. 1, 1942	2,336,555	Dec. 14, 1943
2,295,443	Sept. 8, 1942	2,343,263	Mar. 7, 1944
2,295,816	Sept. 15, 1942	2,343,561	Mar. 7, 1944
2,300,082	Oct. 27, 1942	2,343,745	Mar. 7, 1944
2,300,451	Nov. 3, 1942	2,343,825	Mar. 7, 1944
2,300,452	Nov. 3, 1942	2,347,064	April 18, 1944
2,300,942	Nov. 3, 1942	2,347,529	April 25, 1944
2,302,124	Nov. 17, 1942	2,384,717	Sept. 11, 1945
2,302,619	Nov. 17, 1942	2,388,001	Oct. 30, 1945
2,302,876	Nov. 24, 1942	2,395,615	Feb. 26, 1946
2,303,184	Nov. 24, 1942	* 2,396,831	Mar. 19, 1946
2,303,987	Dec. 1, 1942	* 2,396,832	Mar. 19, 1946
2,304,091	Dec. 8, 1942		

Note: * Non-exclusive licenses to the Government under these patents terminate on their respective dates.

SCHEDULE B

United States Patent Applications

Application Serial No.	Application Serial No.	Application Serial No.	Application Serial No.
282,146	*503,072	*554,197	*597,777
323,290	*503,073	*554,231	599,002
356,547	503,766	554,232	*599,372
*358,981	507,284	*554,233	*599,985
372,988	507,859	554,238	*599,986
391,480	507,880	*557,953	*599,987
395,172	507,881	*558,531	*600,356
*399,637	508,447	*558,532	*600,864
*401,080	*509,718	*561,613	600,868
407,732	*514,071	563,713	608,038
*411,624	*514,072	*563,714	608,664
414,050	*516,394	563,715	608,686
416,986	*516,914	563,716	608,743
*418,541	*520,016	*565,828	609,790
418,712	520,615	565,947	*614,542
420,772	520,617	*571,610	615,891
*423,514	*521,637	573,436	*615,892
*423,515	*521,926	*579,909	*615,893
432,430	*521,931	*579,954	*615,894
*432,669	*521,932	*579,955	*617,020
433,173	*523,085	*579,975	*619,755
*433,219	524,065	580,375	*621,479
*435,441	*524,078	*581,655	*623,939
*441,024	*525,431	*582,283	625,159
*443,117	*525,523	*582,284	625,171
444,193	527,406	*582,285	*625,895
*444,732	*527,753	*582,662	*626,357
449,393	*531,029	*585,662	*627,473
*460,645	*531,759	*586,348	*627,732
*470,785	*538,518	586,869	631,953
*470,786	540,389	*589,432	632,534
*474,257	*541,747	591,906	632,535
*487,007	542,374	591,907	*633,206
*499,769	542,375	592,639	634,011
*499,770	*547,389	593,217	*639,086
*502,511	*547,636	594,691	643,287
*503,045	549,604	595,291	643,288
*503,069	549,615	597,029	*646,357
*503,070	549,616	*597,035	*649,344
*503,071	549,743	*597,036	*649,345
	549,843	*597,037	*649,346
	*551,733	*597,655	

Note: * Non-exclusive licenses to the Government under these applications terminate on their respective filing dates.

SCHEDULE C

United States Letters Patent
of Latour Corporation

(Rights Acquired Pursuant to
Agreement dated March 31, 1925)

Patent No.	Issued	Patent No.	Issued
1,710,170	April 23, 1929	1,801,774	April 21, 1931
1,791,965	Feb. 10, 1931	1,834,408	Dec. 1, 1931

United States Letters Patent
of Arthur Atwater Kent

(Rights Acquired Pursuant to
Agreement dated March 27, 1924)

Patent No.	Issued	Patent No.	Issued
1,710,482	April 23, 1929	1,757,719	May 6, 1930
1,713,134	May 14, 1929	1,775,399	Sept. 9, 1930
1,719,014	July 2, 1929	1,783,292	Dec. 2, 1930
1,719,057	July 2, 1929	1,794,855	Mar. 3, 1931
1,719,956	July 2, [illegible]	1,796,375	Mar. 17, 1931
1,727,604	Sept. 10, 1929	1,829,007	Oct. 27, 1931
1,730,910	Oct. 1, [illegible]	1,878,514	Oct. 30, 1931
1,743,145	Jan. 14, 1930		

United States Letters Patent
of [illegible] Radio Corporation

(Rights Acquired Pursuant to
Agreement dated January 15, 1934)

Patent No.	Issued	Patent No.	Issued
Re. 17,931	Dec. 17, 1929	1,829,529	Oct. 20, 1931
1,772,077	Aug. 5, 1930	1,836,461	Dec. 15, 1931
1,906,796	May 2, 1933	1,906,106	Apr. 25, 1933
1,774,619	Sept. 2, 1930		

SCHEDULE C

United States Letters Patent of United American Bosch Corporation

(Rights Acquired Pursuant to Agreement dated January 2, 1935)

Patent No.	Issued	Patent No.	Issued
1,770,131	July 8, 1930	1,898,835	Feb. 21, 1933
1,773,573	Aug. 19, 1930	1,908,119	May 9, 1933
1,792,822	Feb. 17, 1931	1,913,586	June 13, 1933
1,818,693	Aug. 11, 1931	1,920,743	Aug. 1, 1933
1,856,774	May 3, 1932	1,944,687	Jan. 23, 1934
1,877,228	Sept. 13, 1932	1,960,479	May 29, 1934
1,891,369	Dec. 20, 1932		

Miscellaneous United States Letters Patent and Application

(Rights Acquired Pursuant to Agreements dated as indicated)

Patent No.	Issued	Agreement Dated
1,890,426	Dec. 6, 1932	Jan. 31, 1941
1,93[illegible],940	[illegible]. 1[illegible], 193[illegible]	Jan. 31, 1941
2,0[illegible],8[illegible]4	Dec. 8, 193[illegible]	July 19, 1935
2,089,270	[illegible]. 10, 1937	Mar. 2, 1936
2,089,271	Aug. 10, 1937	Mar. 2, 1936
2,146,068	Feb. 7, 193[illegible]	Mar. 28, 1938
2,212,968	Aug. 27, 1940	Dec. 10, 1940
2,269,678	Jan. 13, 1942	Apr. 11, 1944
2,333,809	Nov. 9, 1943	Apr. 11, 1944
2,373,601	Apr. 10, 194[illegible]	Jan. 18, 1943

Application Serial No.	Agreement Dated
525,3[illegible]	Apr. 20, 1944

LIBER L206 PAGE 447

SCHEDULE 2

United States Letters Patent
of Atwater Kent Manufacturing Company

(Rights Acquired Pursuant to
Agreement dated May 2, 1941)

Patent No.	Issued	Patent No.	Issued
1,726,100	Aug. 27, 1929	1,867,037	July 12, 1932
1,738,575	Dec. 10, 1929	1,872,487	Aug. 16, 1932
1,741,691	Dec. 31, 1929	1,885,304	Nov. 1, 1932
1,749,423	Mar. 4, 1930	1,885,307	Nov. 1, 1932
1,751,854	Mar. 25, 1930	1,886,571	Nov. 8, 1932
1,755,310	April 22, 1930	1,887,329	Nov. 8, 1932
1,760,506	May 27, 1930	1,888,430	Nov. 22, 1932
1,767,837	June 24, 1930	1,889,018	Nov. 29, 1932
1,771,127	July 22, 1930	1,895,809	Jan. 31, 1933
1,771,381	July 22, 1930	1,896,825	Feb. 7, 1933
1,777,500	Oct. 7, 1930	1,906,452	May 2, 1933
1,779,777	Oct. 28, 1930	1,908,381	May 9, 1933
1,787,732	Jan. 6, 1931	1,909,239	May 16, 1933
1,787,950	Jan. 6, 1931	1,915,926	June 27, 1933
1,790,165	Jan. 27, 1931	1,916,129	June 27, 1933
1,791,123	Feb. 3, 1931	1,925,828	Sept. 5, 1933
1,795,090	Mar. 3, 1931	1,926,173	Sept. 12, 1933
1,796,975	Mar. 17, 1931	1,960,599	May 29, 1934
1,810,355	June 16, 1931	1,966,805	July 17, 1934
1,812,349	June 30, 1931	1,971,497	Aug. 28, 1934
1,814,270	July 14, 1931	1,972,279	Sept. 4, 1934
1,814,774	July 14, 1931	1,973,293	Sept. 11, 1934
1,819,299	Aug. 18, 1931	1,983,047	Dec. 4, 1934
1,828,688	Oct. 20, 1931	1,986,641	Jan. 1, 1935
1,829,015	Oct. 27, 1931	1,991,221	Feb. 12, 1935
1,833,085	Nov. 24, 1931	2,001,076	May 14, 1935
1,835,801	Dec. 8, 1931	2,021,321	Nov. 19, 1935
1,836,076	Dec. 15, 1931	2,036,709	April 7, 1936
1,846,616	Feb. 23, 1932	2,257,272	Sept. 30, 1941
1,849,499	Mar. 15, 1932		
1,850,105	Mar. 22, 1932		
1,859,518	May 24, 1932		

RECORDED
U.S. PATENT OFFICE
MAR 30 1946
COMMISSIONER OF PATENTS

LIBER L206 PAGE 433

Exhibit P attached to and forming part of Affidavit of John R. Binns Civil Action 6677

COMMONWEALTH OF MASSACHUSETTS.

Suffolk, ss. Superior Court.
In Equity.
No. 47229

HAZELTINE CORPORATION

vs.

AUTOMATIC RADIO MANUFACTURING COMPANY

DECREE

This cause came on to be further heard at this sitting of the Court and all parties being represented by counsel and consenting to the making and entering of this decree and after hearing thereon, thereupon, upon consideration thereof, it is hereby ordered, adjudged and decreed:—

1. That the defendant has executed and entered into the license agreement which is made a part of the bill of complaint.

2. That pursuant to said agreement and since October 1st, 1935 the defendant has manufactured and sold and is continuing to manufacture and sell apparatus including radio broadcast receivers of sound, as defined in said agreement, all of which embody and employ the inventions of one or more patents owned and controlled by the plaintiff, as enumerated in said license agreement.

3. That the apparatus manufactured and sold by the defendant since October 1st, 1935 and which the defendant is continuing to manufacture and sell pursuant to said agreement includes complete radio broadcast receivers of sound, as defined in said agreement, which receivers have been identified by the type or model designations set forth below and in which are employed and embodied the inventions and improvements of the patents, the numbers of which are set forth opposite said respective type or model designations:

Auto Models described by Diagrams A, B and C respectively attached to plaintiff's interrogatories, 5 Tube Super Midget, 4 (and 5) Tube T. R. F. Midget, Models S-6, C-4, C-41, D-5, D-50, D-50A, J-50, J-60, A-5, J-80, B-30 Series I, B-30 Series II, B-40, B-50, B-70, B-80, M-10, M-20, M-60, M-80, R-6, R-61.	Re 16,461 1382738 1405523 1572,504 1710035 1755114 1755115
Auto Models described by Diagrams A, B, and C respectively attached to plaintiff's interrogatories, 5 Tube Super Midget, Models J-50, J-60, A-5, J-80, B-30 Series I, B-30 Series II, B-40, B-50, B-70, B-80, M-10, M-20, M-60, M-80, R-6, R-61.	Re 19,744 1951,685 2041,273
Auto Models described by Diagrams B and C respectively attached to plaintiff's interrogatories, 5 Tube Super Midget, 4 (and 5) Tube T. R. F. Midget Models S-6, C-4, C-41, D-5, D-50, D-50A, J-50, J-60, A-5, J-80, B-30 Series I, B-30 Series II, B-40, B-50, B-70, B-80, M-80, R-6, R-61.	1913604 2022514
Auto Models described by Diagrams B and C attached to plaintiff's interrogatories, 5 Tube Super Midget, Models S-6, J-50, J-60, A-5, J-80, B-30 Series I, B-30 Series II, B-40, B-50, B-70, B-80, M-10, M-20, M-60, M-80, R-6, R-61.	1958027 2015327 2041291
Auto Models, described by Diagrams A, B, and C attached to plaintiff's interrogatories, 5 Tube Super Midget, 4 (and 5) Tube T. R. F. Midget, Models S-6, D-5, D-50, D-50A, J-50, J-60, A-5, J-80, B-30 Series I, B-30 Series II, B-40, B-50, B-70, B-80, M-10, M-20, M-60, M-80, R-6, R-61.	1991221
4 (and 5) Tube T. R. F. Midget	Re 19,823

Auto Models described by Diagrams A, B and C attached to plaintiff's interrogatories, Models S-6, J-50, J-60, A-5, M-10, M-20, M-60.	1614136
5 Tube Super Midget, 4 (and 5) Tube T. R. F. Midget, Models S-6, C-4, C-41, D-5, D-50, D-50A, M-60.	1763,380
4 (and 5) Tube T. R. F. Midget, Models C-4, C-41, D-5, D-50, D-50A, M-80.	1798,962
4 (and 5) Tube T. R. F. Midget, Models D-5, D-50, D-50A.	1833085
Models S-6, C-4, C-41, B-40, B-50, R-6, R-61.	1857055
Auto Models described by Diagram C attached to plaintiff's interrogatories, 5 Tube Super Midget, 4 (and 5) Tube T. R. F. Midget, Models S-6, C-4, C-41, D-5, D-50, D-50A, J-50, J-60, A-5, J-80.	1892354
Auto Models described by Diagrams B and C attached to plaintiff's interrogatories, 5 Tube Super Midget, Models S-6, J-50, J-60, A-5, J-80, D-30 Series I, D-30 Series II, B-40, B-50, B-70, B-80, M-10, M-20, M-60, M-80, R-6, R-61.	1878614
5 Tube Super Midget, 4 (and 5) Tube T. R. F. Midget, Models S-6, C-4, C-41, D-5, D-50, D-50A.	1920743
5 Tube Super Midget, 4 (and 5) Tube T. R. F. Midget, Models S-6, C-4, C-41, D-5, D-50, D-50A, B-30 Series I, B-30 Series II, B-40, B-50, B-70, B-80, R-6, R-61.	1927672
Models J-50, J-60, A-5, B-50, B-70, B-80.	2080646

and other radio broadcast receivers of sound employing apparatus, circuits and circuit arrangements substantially similar to those employed in the above-identified types and models, or any of them.

4. That the defendant has admitted and does admit for the respective terms thereof the validity of all the patents owned or controlled by the plaintiff and that the claims or several of them of patents Nos.:

Re.16,461	1,878,614
Re.19,744	1,892,354
Re.19,823	1,913,604
1,382,738	1,920,743
1,405,523	1,927,672
1,572,504	1,951,685
1,614,136	1,958,027
1,710,035	1,991,221
1,755,114	2,015,327
1,755,115	2,022,514
1,763,380	2,041,273
1,798,962	2,041,291
1,833,085	2,080,646
1,857,055	

cover all the radio broadcast receivers of sound which the defendant has manufactured and sold since October 1st, 1935 and which the defendant is now manufacturing and selling.

5. That the defendant has not paid the plaintiff any royalties under the aforesaid agreement and is indebted to the plaintiff therefor and the plaintiff is entitled to recover herein said royalties on all the radio broadcast receivers of sound manufactured and sold by the defendant from October 1st, 1935 to the present.

6. That the plaintiff shall be entitled to an accounting to determine said indebtedness, and for said purpose is to have access to all contracts, books of account, sales records and any and all memoranda which may serve to establish the debt, and the defendant, its officers, agents, attorneys and servants, are hereby en-

joined from disposing in any manner of any of said contracts, books of account; sales records and memoranda which may serve to establish the debt until the accounting has been had, the debt established, and execution has been issued thereon in common form.

7. That no order for an accounting is made herein, but such order may be had upon application by the plaintiff.

8. That the defendant be and is hereby enjoined from selling or in any manner disposing of any radio broadcast receivers of sound which by this court is determined to embody and employ the inventions or patents owned and controlled by the plaintiff without properly marking same, as required by said license agreement.

9. That unless an accounting is ordered herein prior to April 1, 1939 or some other matter herein is pending before the Court on April 1, 1939, then the plaintiff shall be awarded one dollar ($1.00) damages and costs and this decree shall become final.

By the Court, (Williams, J.)

D. PULSIFER COLVILLE
Asst. Clerk.

Sept. 24, 1937

Assented to:

Hazeltine Corporation, Plaintiff
By
Vice-President and Treasurer

Goldkrand & Goldkrand
Plaintiff's Attorneys

Automatic Radio Manufacturing Company, Defendant
By
President

Geo. K. Woodworth
Meyer F. Englander
Defendant's Attorneys

Copy,

Attest:

JOSEPH R. CLEARY,
Ass't Clerk.

[SEAL]

No. 47229 Eq.

HAZELTINE CORPORATION

vs.

AUTOMATIC RADIO MFG. CO.

DECREE

Williams, J.

Sept. 24, 1937

Copy,

Attest:

Clerk.

From the office of
Goldkrand & Goldkrand
73 Tremont Street
Boston, Massachusetts

Exhibit Q attached to and forming part of Affidavit of John R. Binns Civil Action 6677

A G R E E M E N T

Agreement made this seventeenth day of September, 1937 by and between Hazeltine Corporation, a corporation organized and existing under the laws of the State of Delaware, hereinafter called HAZELTINE and Automatic Radio Manufacturing Company, a corporation organized and existing under the laws of the State of Massachusetts, hereinafter called AUTOMATIC.

WHEREAS the parties hereto have of even date agreed to the making and entering of a decree in the suit now pending between said parties in the Superior Court for the County of Suffolk, Commonwealth of Massachusetts, entitled Hazeltine Corporation vs. Automatic Radio Manufacturing Company and numbered 47229 Equity on the docket of said court, involving a license agreement between said parties which is incorporated in the bill of complaint in said suit and is dated October 1, 1935 and is hereinafter referred to by said date, and

WHEREAS AUTOMATIC is desirous of entering into a new license agreement with HAZELTINE,

NOW THEREFORE, in consideration of the premises and other good and valuable consideration paid, receipt whereof is hereby acknowledged, it is agreed as follows:

1. AUTOMATIC agrees to pay HAZELTINE on or before October 1, 1937 ONE THOUSAND ($1,000.00) DOLLARS in cash and to deliver to HAZELTINE six (6) promissory notes duly executed by it each in the amount of FIVE HUNDRED ($500.00) DOLLARS payable on November 1, 1937, December 1, 1937, January 1, 1938, February 1, March 1, 1938, 1938 and April 1, 1938 respectively. Further, AUTOMATIC agrees to obtain the endorsements on each of said notes of David Housman and Abraham J. Housman, which endorsers shall waive notice of demand, protest, notice of dishonor and of non-payment.

2. Hazeltine upon receipt of said one thousand dollars ($1000)and of said six (6) promissory notes agrees to execute and deliver to AUTOMATIC a new license agreement effective as of October 1,1937, two copies of which have this day been executed by AUTOMATIC.

3. Upon the delivery by Hazeltine to Automatic of said new license agreement, the said license agreement of October 1st,1935 will be terminated as of October 1,1937, but the termination of said license agreement of October 1,1935 will not in any manner or way be a release to AUTOMATIC from any of the liabilities of said license of October 1st, 1935 accruing to HAZELTINE prior to October 1st, 1937.

4. HAZELTINE agrees that it will not apply to the aforesaid Court for an accounting of any royalties due it under the aforesaid license agreement of October 1,1935 so long as AUTOMATIC renders the reports, pays the royalties, and performs all its obligations and duties under said new license agreement, and pays the said promissory notes as they mature.

5. That upon any default by AUTOMATIC in the payment of royalties, rendering of reports, or any of its other obligations or duties under the aforesaid new license agreement, excepting those created by Article III, Section 4 thereof, HAZELTINE may upon THIRTY (30) days notice given by registered letter, of its intention to do so at any time prior to April 1, 1939, but not after said date, apply to the aforesaid Court to determine the existence of such default, and should such determination be adverse to AUTOMATIC and the default not rectified within three (3) days thereafter, HAZELTINE may then apply to the aforesaid court fo the accounting provided in the consent decree in the above entitled case. Provided, However, that if such default consists in the failure to pay said promissory notes or any of them, HAZELTINE may apply to the aforesaid Court to order said accounting without a judicial determination that such default exists. Provided further that, if the amount found by such accounting to be due and owing to HAZELTINE exceeds the sum paid by AUTOMATIC under paragraph 1 hereof the amount so paid by AUTOMATIC shall be credited against the sum so found to be due and owing to HAZELTINE.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have caused this instrument to be executed in duplicate by their proper officers thereunto duly authorized.

AUTOMATIC RADIO MANUFACTURING COMPANY

By David Houseman
Pres. & Treas

Asst Secretary

HAZELTINE CORPORATION

By W. A. MacDonald
Vice Pres

Asst Secretary

State of Mass)
County of Suffolk) ss.:

On this 18th day of Sept, 1937, before me personally came David Houseman, to me known, and who being by me duly sworn, did depose and say; that he is the President of Automatic Radio Manufacturing Company, one of the corporations described in and which executed the above instrument, and that he knows the seal of said corporation, and the seal affixed to said instrument is said corporate seal, and that it was so affixed by order of the Board of Directors of the said corporation, and that he signed his name thereto by like order.

Meyer F. Englander
Notary Public.

State of N.Y.)
County of N.Y.) ss.:

On this 21st day of September, 1937, before me personally came W. A. MacDonald, to me known, and who being by me duly sworn, did depose and say; that he is the Vice President of Hazeltine Corporation, one of the corporations described in and which executed the above instrument, and that he knows the seal of said corporation, and the seal affixed to said instrument is said corporate seal, and that it was so affixed by order of the Board of Directors of the said corporation, and that he signed his name thereto by like order.

D. L. Reinschmidt
Notary Public.

Exhibit R attached to and forming part of Affidavit of John R. Binns Civil Action 6677

COMMONWEALTH OF MASSACHUSETTS

Suffolk: ss.

Superior Court
In Equity
No. 47229

HAZELTINE CORPORATION

vs

AUTOMATIC RADIO MANUFACTURING COMPANY

FINAL DECREE

This cause came on to be further heard at this sitting of the Court and all parties being represented by counsel, and after hearing thereon, thereupon, upon consideration thereof, it is hereby Ordered, Adjudged and Decreed:—

That the defendant has entered into and executed the license agreement which is a part of the Bill of Complaint;

That pursuant to said license agreement and since October 1, 1935, the defendant has manufactured and sold and is continuing to manufacture and sell apparatus including radio broadcast receivers of sound, as defined in said license agreement, all of which embody and employ the inventions of one or more patents owned and controlled by the plaintiff and enumerated in said license agreement;

That said apparatus manufactured and sold by the defendant since October 1, 1935, and which the defendant is continuing to manufacture and sell pursuant to said agreement, includes complete radio broadcast receivers of sound, as defined in said agreement, and are identified by the type or model designations hereinafter set forth and in which are employed and embodied the inventions and improvements of the patents, the numbers of which are set forth opposite said respective type or model designations, to wit:—

Auto Models described by Diagrams A, B, and C respectively attached to plaintiff's interrogatories, 5 Tube Super Midget, 4 (and 5) Tube T. R. F. Midget, Models S-6, C-4, C-41, D-5, D-50, D-50A, J-50, J-60, A-5, J-80, B-30 Series I, B-30 Series II, B-40, B-50, B-70, B-80, M-10, M-20, M-60, M-80, R-6, R-61.	)	Re 16,461 1382738 1405523 1572,504 1710035 1755114 1755115
Auto Models described by Diagram A, B, and C respectively attached to plaintiff's interrogatories, 5 Tube Super Midget, Models J-50, J-60 A-5, J-80, B-30 Series I, B-30 Series II, B-40 B-50, B-70, B-80, M-10, M-20, M-60, M-80, R-6, R-61.	)	Re 19,744 1951,685 2041,273
Auto Models described by Diagrams B and C respectively, attached to plaintiff's interrogatories, 5 Tube Super Midget, 4 (and 5) Tube T. R. F. Midget Models, S-6, C-4, C-41, D-5, D-50, D-50A, J-50, J-60, A-5, J-80, B-30 Series I, B-30 Series II, B-40, B-50, B-70, B-80, M-80, R-6, R-61.	)	1913604 2022514
Auto Models described by Diagrams B and C attached to plaintiff's interrogatories, 5 Tube Super Midget, Models S-6, J-50, J-60, A-5, J-80, B-30 Series I, B-30 Series II, B-40, B-50, B-70, B-80 M-10, M-20, M-60, M-80, R-6, R-61.	)	1958027 2015327 2041291
Auto Models, described by Diagrams A, B, and C attached to plaintiff's interrogatories, 5 Tube Super Midget, 4 (and 5) Tube T. R. F. Midget, Models S-6, D-5, D-50, D-50A, J-50, J-60, A-5, J-80, B-30 Series I, B-30 Series II, B-40, B-50, B-70, B-80, M-10, M-20, M-60, M-80, R-6, R-61.	)	1991221

4 (and 5) Tube T. R. F. Midget	Re 19,823
Auto Models described by Diagrams A, B and C attached to plaintiff's interrogatories, Models S-6, J-50, J-60, A-5, M-10, M-20, M-60.	1614136
5 Tube Super Midget, 4 (and 5) Tube T. R. F. Midget, Models S-6, C-4, C-41, D-5, D-50, D-50A, M-60	1763,380
4 (and 5) Tube T. R. F. Midget, Models C-4, C-41 D-5, D-50, D-50A, M-80.	1798,962
4 (and 5) Tube T. R. F. Midget, Models D-5, D-50, D-50A.	1833085
Models S-6, C-4, C-41, B-40, B-50, R-6, R-61.	1857055
Auto Model described by Diagram C attached to Plaintiff's interrogatories, 5 Tube Super Midget, 4 (and 5) Tube T. R. F. Midget, Models S-6, C-4, C-41, D-5, D-50, D-50A, J-50, J-60, A-5, J-80.	1892354
Auto Models described by Diagrams B and C attached to plaintiff's interrogatories, 5 Tube Super Midget, Models S-6, J-50, J-60, A-5, J-80, D-30 Series I, D-30 Series II, B-40, B-50, B-70, B-80, M-10, M-20, M-60, M-80, R-6, R-61.	1878614
5 Tube Super Midget, 4 (and 5) Tube T. R. F. Midget, Models S-6, C-4, C-41, D-5, D-50, D-50A.	1920743
5 Tube Super Midget, 4 (and 5) Tube T. R. F. Midget, Models S-6, C-4, C-41, D-5, D-50, D-50A, B-30 Series I, B-30 Series II, B-40, B-50, B-70, B-80, R-6, R-61.	1927672
Models J-50, J-60, A-5, B-50, B-70, B-80.	2080646

and other radio broadcast receivers of sound employing apparatus, circuits and circuit arrangements substantially similar to those employed in the above-identified types and models, or any of them.

That the defendant has admitted and does admit for the respective terms thereof the validity of all the patents owned or controlled by the plaintiff and that the claims of several of them of Patents Nos.:

Re.16,461	1,798,962	2,015,327
Re.19,744	1,833,085	2,022,514
Re.19,823	1,857,055	2,041,273
1,382,738	1,878,614	2,041,291
1,405,523	1,892,354	2,080,646
1,572,504	1,913,604	
1,614,136	1,920,743	
1,710,035	1,927,672	
1,755,114	1,951,685	
7,755,115	1,958,027	
1,763,380	1,991,221	

cover all the radio broadcast receivers of sound which the defendant has manufactured and sold since October 1, 1935, and which the defendant is now manufacturing and selling.

That the defendant is hereby enjoined from selling or in any manner disposing of any radio broadcast receivers of sound which embody and employ the inventions or patents owned and controlled by the plaintiff as herein set forth without properly marking same as required by said license agreement.

By the Court, (Giles, J.)

CLESSON S. CURTICE
Asst. Clerk

Entered Dec. 3, 1941.

Copy,

Attest:—

JOSEPH R. CLEARY,
Ass't Clerk.

Same letter to:

Ansley	Majestic	Setchell-Carlson	Noblitt-Sparks
Automatic	Midwest	Sparks-Trav-ler	Farnsworth
DeWald	National	Warwick	Stromberg-Belmont
Electrical	Philharmonic	Watterson	Gilfillan
Espey	Phonovision	Wilcox-Gay	Mission Bell
Fada	Radia	Zenith	Philco
Garod	RCA (Schaine- (Hartman- (Morton		
General			
Hallicrafters			
Hamilton	Radio Mfg.	G.E.	
Harvarlund	Radio Prod.	Stewart-Warner	
Howard	Remler	Wells-Gardner	
Kingston	Simplex	Galvin	

May 14, 1941

Jacob P. Lieberman, President
Air-King Products Company, Inc.
1523-29 Sixty-Third Street
Brooklyn, New York

Dear Mr. Lieberman:

This letter will confirm that on May 12, 1941, the United States Supreme Court rendered a decision in the case of Hazeltine v. Zenith, holding Wheeler Reissue patent 19,740 invalid and not infringed by Defendant's apparatus.

Further, on May 9, 1941 Judge Fields, of the District Court of Delaware, handed down a decision in the case of Hazeltine v. General Motors holding Trube patent No. 2,111,183 invalid and not infringed by Defendant's apparatus. An appeal from this decision is under consideration.

With every good wish,

Sincerely yours,

HAZELTINE CORPORATION

By _____
Vice President-Treasurer

JBrah

[redacted]

Exhibit R 2.

AUTOMATIC RADIO MANUFACTURING CO. INC.

[illegible] AIRCRAFT MARINE RADIO APPARATUS

[illegible] BOSTON, MASSACHUSETTS

May 16, 1941

Mr. Jack Binns
Haseltine Corporation
15 Exchange Place
Jersey City, N. J.

Dear Mr. Binns:

I note from your letter of May 14th that the United States Supreme Court has rendered a decision in the Wheeler Patent in favor of the Detrola Co.

In view of the fact that it has been our understanding that this particular Patent is practically the only one under which we operate, we would like to know how we are affected by this decision.

Please advise so that we may govern ourselves accordingly.

With kindest regards and best wishes,

Cordially yours,

AUTOMATIC RADIO MFG. CO. INC.

DH:B

[illegible]

[illegible] attached to and forming
[illegible] the Affidavit of John R. Binns
[illegible] Action 6677

AFFIDAVIT OF HAROLD A. WHEELER

[Filed November 10, 1947.]

STATE OF NEW YORK
COUNTY OF NEW YORK ss.:

Harold A. Wheeler, being duly sworn, deposes and says:

1. That he graduated from George Washington University in 1925, with a degree of Bachelor of Science in Physics and continued post-graduate work for three years thereafter in the Physics Department of Johns Hopkins University; that he has been active in the development, design and testing of radio communication apparatus, particularly radio broadcast receivers, since 1921; that he has a practical familiarity with patents in the radio field having been granted some 139 patents in his own name and having served as an expert and fact witness in numerous patent litigations; that he is at present a consulting radio physicist having a laboratory at 259-09 Northern Boulevard, Great Neck, Long Island, New York;

2. That he has examined the circuit diagrams of the radio broadcast receivers identified as Exhibits B-N, inclusive, attached to plaintiff's answers to defendant's interrogatories filed herein on May 27, 1947, and the circuit diagrams identified as Diagrams A-J, inclusive, involved in an action between plaintiff's predecessor, Hazeltine Corporation, and defendant herein in the Massachusetts Superior Court for Suffolk County, Equity No. 47229, and, further, he has familiarized himself with the patents referred to in plaintiff's answer to interrogatory No. 2 filed May 27, 1947, and has compared the circuits described and claimed in such patents with aforesaid Diagrams A-J, inclusive, involved in aforesaid action Equity No. 47229 and with aforesaid circuit diagrams Exhibits B-N, inclusive, involved herein; that it is shown by such circuit diagrams that the radio broadcast receivers now being manufactured and sold by defendant as represented by aforesaid circuit diagrams Exhibits B-N, inclusive, are, in the respects noted hereinafter, the same as those found to embody

certain of the inventions of patents owned by plaintiff's predecessor, Hazeltine Corporation, in a final decree entered on or about December 3, 1941 in aforesaid action, Equity No. 47229 and, further, that the radio broadcast receivers now being manufactured and sold by defendant as represented by aforesaid circuit diagrams Exhibit B-N, inclusive, embody each of the elements of certain of the claims of such patents as follows:

(1) The oscillator—modulator circuit of each of the models of radio broadcast receivers enumerated in plaintiff's answer to interrogatory No. 2 filed herein May 27, 1947, is in all material respects the same as that of each of the several broadcast receivers identified at page 2, last three lines, of aforesaid final decree, Exhibit R, as Diagrams B, C, 5 Tube Super Midget (Diagram D), and Models S-6 (Diagram F) J-50, J-60 and A-5 (Diagram I) and J-80 (Diagram J), certified copies of which diagrams are attached hereto as Exhibits S-X, inclusive, which receivers were held to constitute infringements of these same patents, and embodies each of the elements of claims 3, 15, and 17 of patent 1,958,027, a copy of which is attached hereto as Exhibit Y and also embodies each of the elements of all of the claims of patent 2,015,327, a copy of which is attached hereto as Exhibit Z;

(2) The detector and detecting and amplifying system of each of the models of radio broadcast receivers enumerated in plaintiff's aforesaid answer to interrogatory No. 2 is in all material respects the same as that of each of the several broadcast receivers manufactured by defendant and identified at page 2, lines 10–14, inclusive, of aforesaid final decree, Exhibit R, as Diagrams B, C, 5 Tube Super Midget (Diagram D), and Models J-50, J-60 and A-5 (Diagram I) and J-80 (Diagram J), certified copies of which diagrams are attached hereto as Exhibits S, T, U, W, and X, respectively, which receivers were held to constitute in-

fringements of these same patents, and embodies each of the elements of claims 1, 2, 3, 5, 6, and 8 of patent 1,951,685, a copy of which is attached hereto as Exhibit AA and also embodies each of the elements of all of the claims of patent 2,041,273, a copy of which is attached hereto as Exhibit BB;

3. That the oscillator—modulator circuits and devices embodies in the above-mentioned radio broadcast receivers of defendant and described and claimed in aforesaid patents 1,958,027 and 2,015,327 are features essential to the construction of current commercial receivers of the superheterodyne type, which is the type in general use, while the detector and detecting and amplifying system embodied in the above-mentioned radio broadcast receivers of defendant and described and claimed in aforesaid patents 1,951,685 and 2,041,273 are essential features of all current commercial broadcast receivers.

HAROLD A. WHEELER.

Sworn to and subscribed before me, this twenty-seventh day of October, 1947.

PEGGY COYLE,
Notary Public.

Commission Expires March 30, 1948

[SEAL]

COMMONWEALTH OF MASSACHUSETTS

Suffolk, ss. Superior Court.

No. 47229 Equity.

HAZELTINE CORPORATION

vs.

AUTOMATIC RADIO MFG. CO.

I hereby certify that the photostats attached hereto are true copies of original diagrams appended to interrogatories propounded by the plaintiff to the defendant, in the above entitled action.

EDWARD J. KELLEY,
Ass't Clerk.

[SEAL]

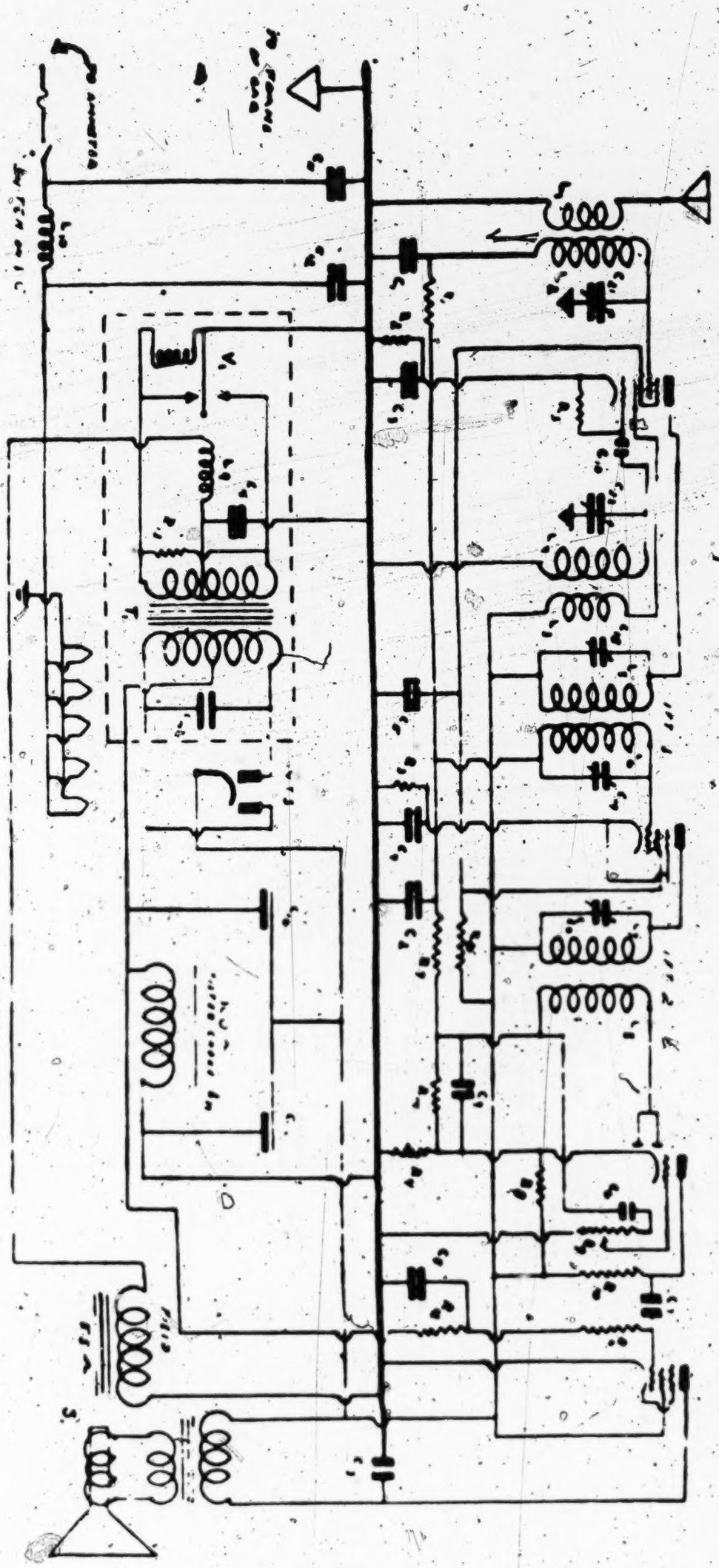


Diagram B..

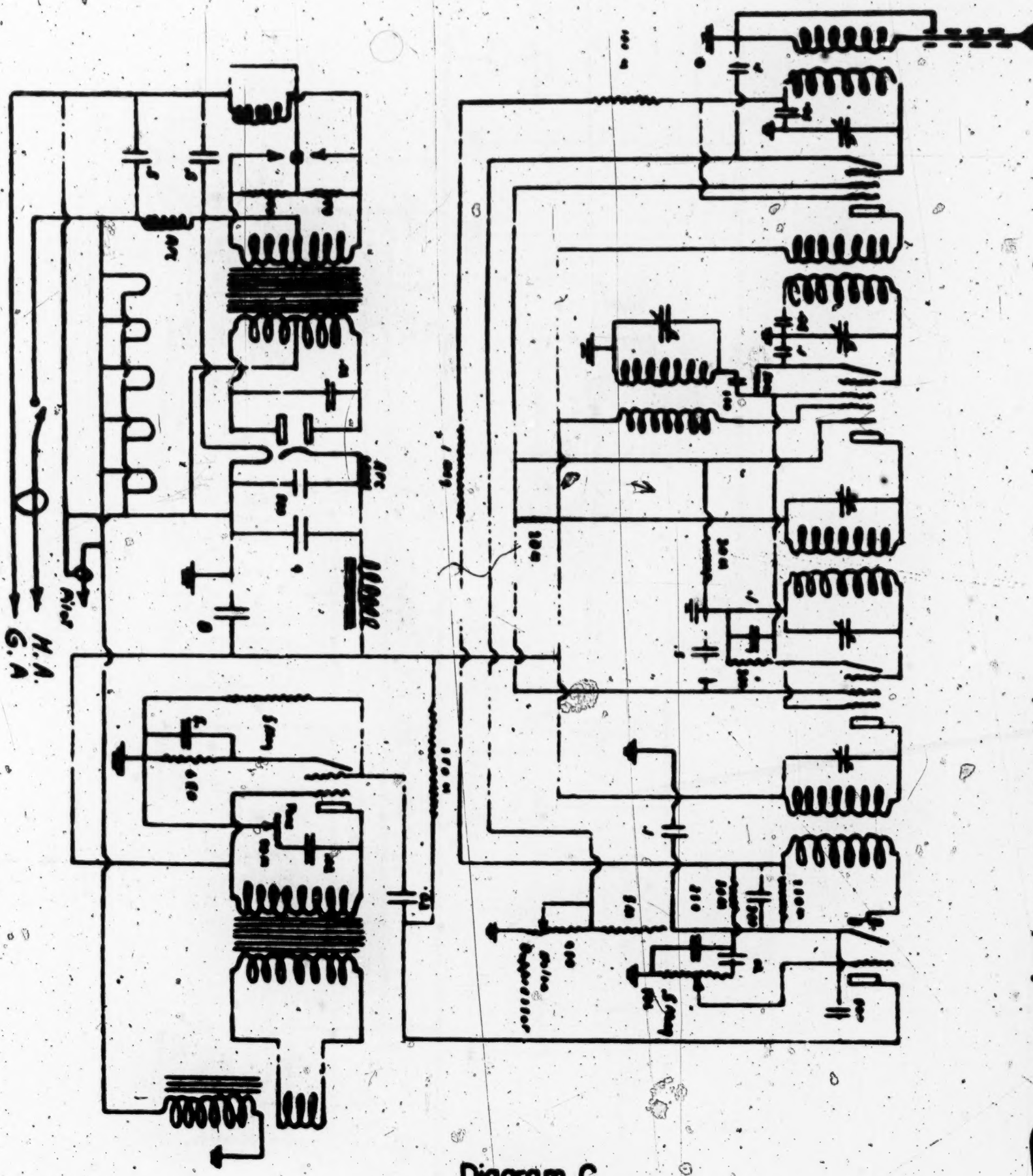


Diagram C.

AUTOMATIC 5 TUBE SUPER MIDGET

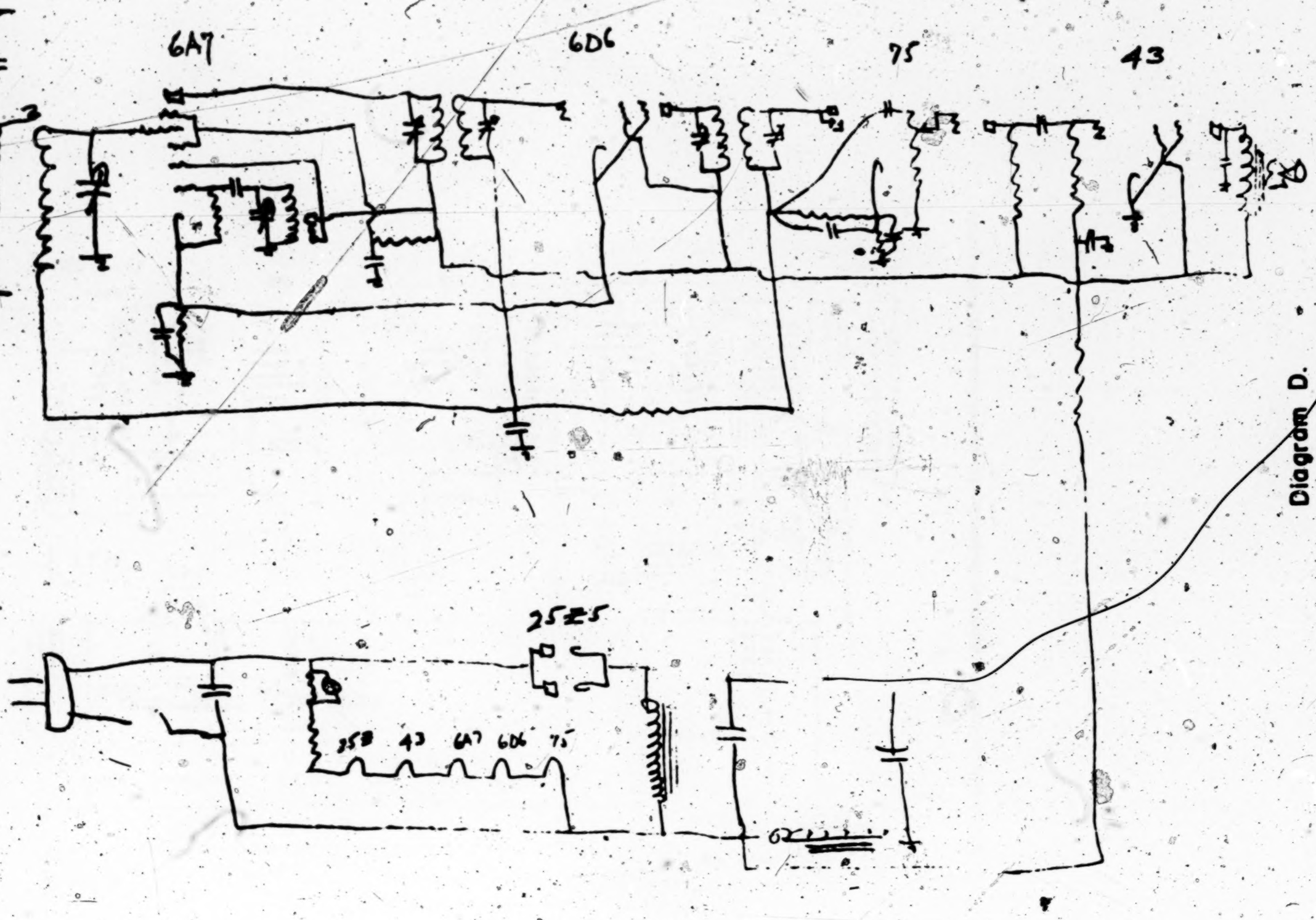
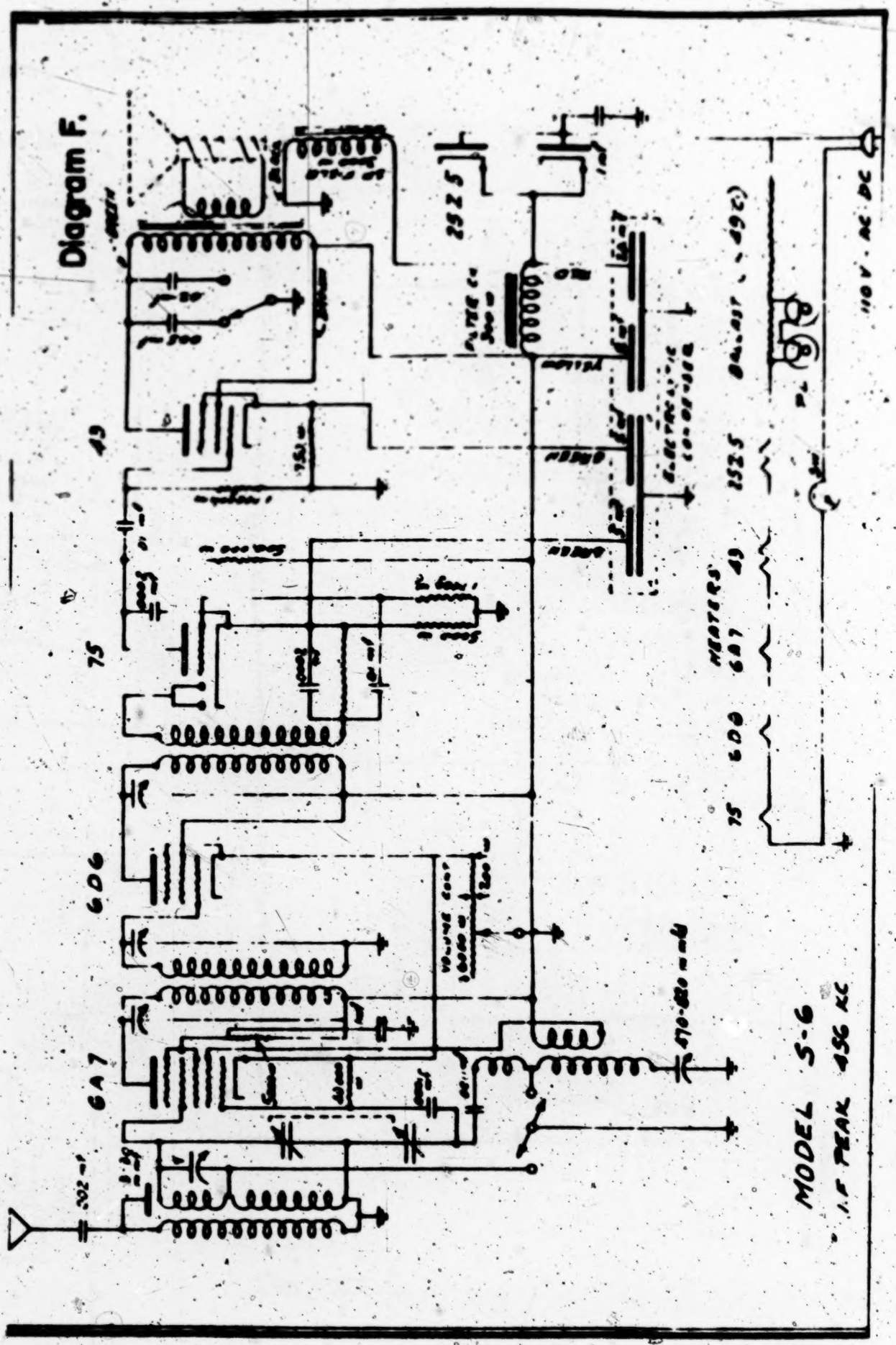


Exhibit U. Diagram D.

Exhibit V.

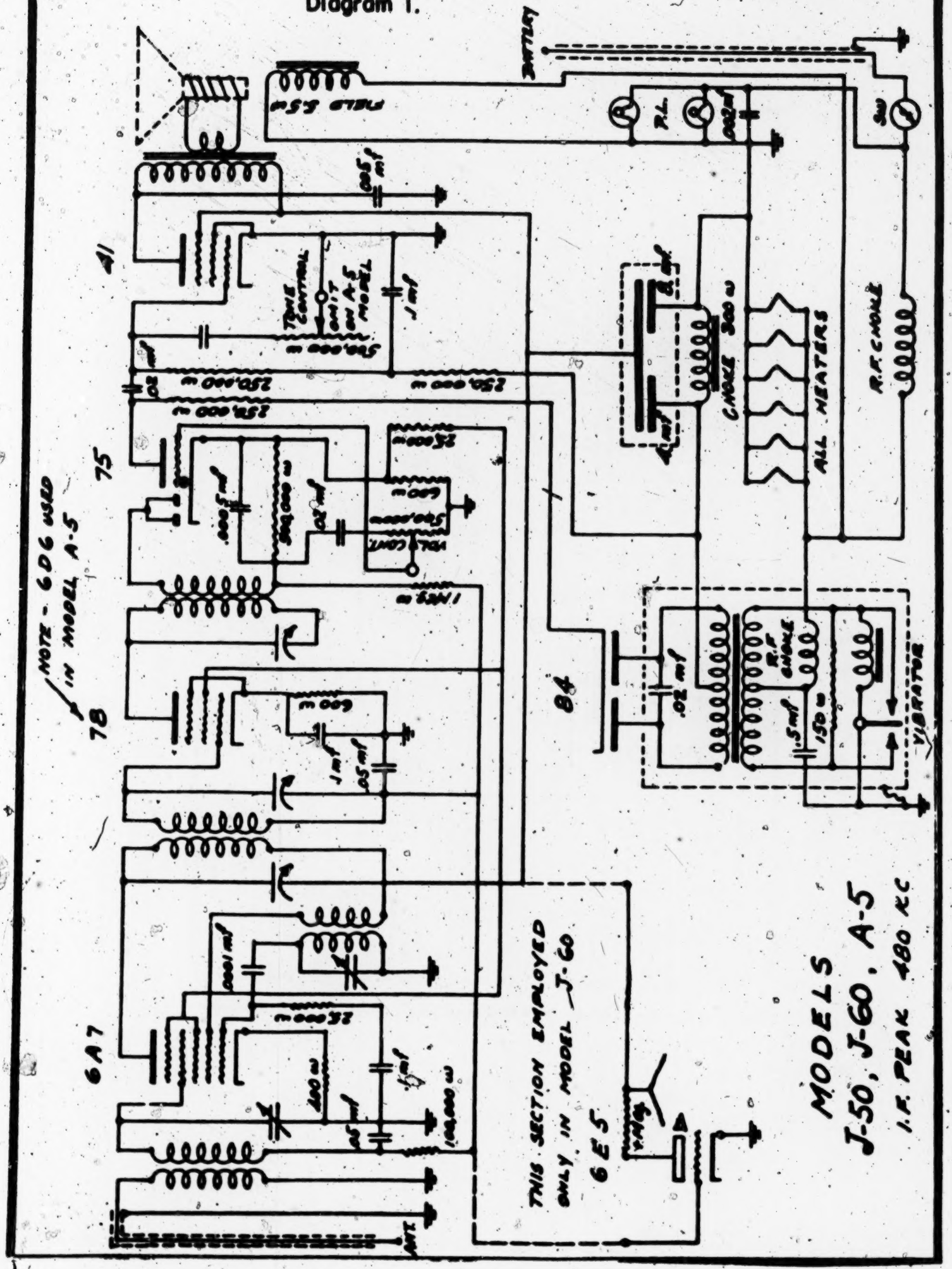


AUTOMATIC PAGE 7-8

AUTOMATIC RADIO MFG. CO., INC.

MODELS J-50, J-60
A-5
Schematic

Diagram 1.

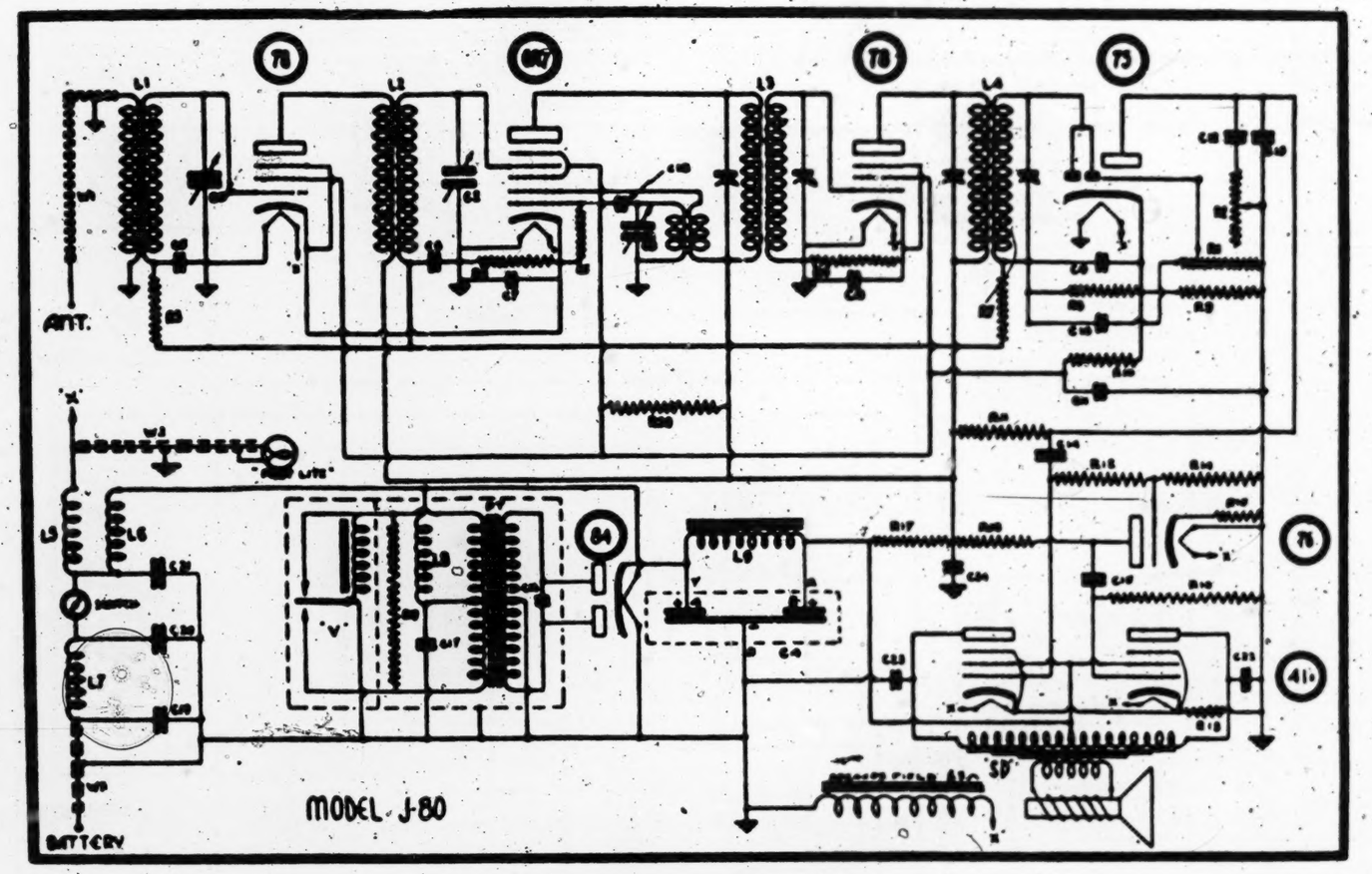


MODEL J-80
Schematic, Parts
Alignment

AUTOMATIC RADIO MFG. CO., INC.

MODEL J-80 AUTO RADIO

Diagram J.



ALIGNMENT PROCEDURE

I. F. Alignment. Connect a signal generator set at 450kc to the 6A7 input and connect an output meter to the speaker output. Using a weak signal tune the two I. F. condensers on the composite coil and the two I. F. condensers on the output I. F. coil for maximum response.

Connect the signal generator set at 1400kc to the antenna lead using a dummy antenna of 150 mmf. Tune the set by means of the dial to 1400kc position. Adjust oscillator trimmer for this frequency. Then

Exhibit Y attached to and forming part
of Affidavit of Harold A. Wheeler
Civil Action 6677

130

May 8, 1934. H. A. WHEELER 1,958,027

EMISSION VALVE MODULATION SYSTEM

Filed Jan. 30, 1933 3 Sheets-Sheet 1

Fig. 1.

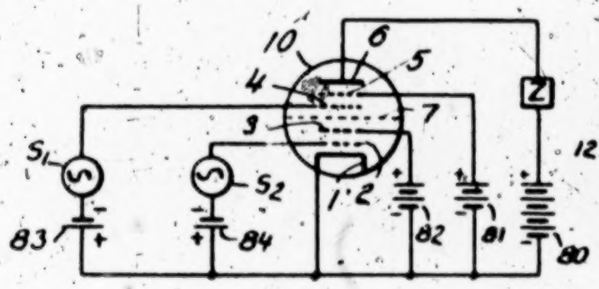


Fig. 4.

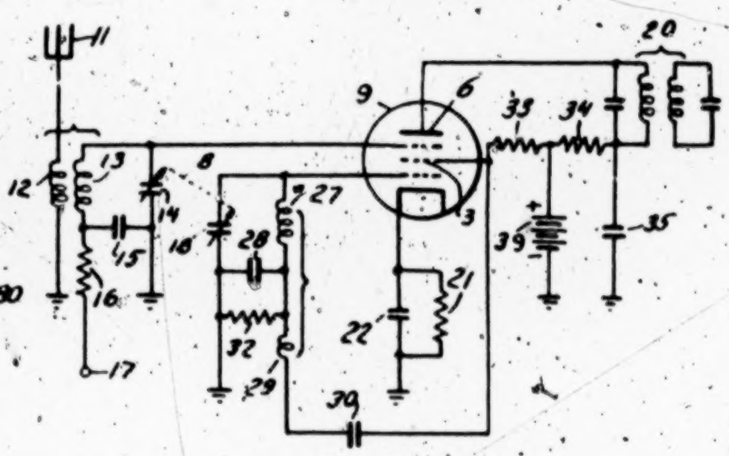


Fig. 2.

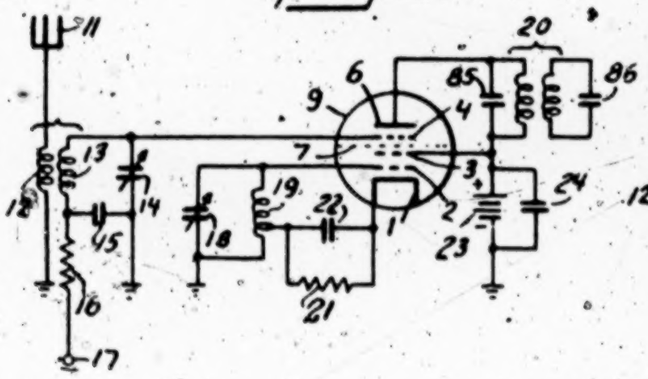


Fig. 5.

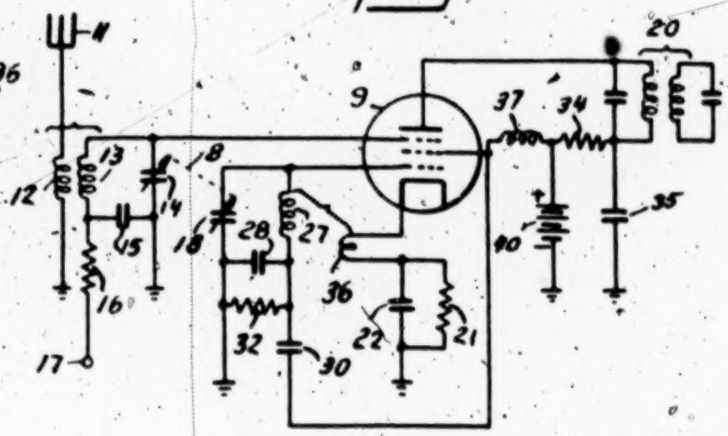


Fig. 3.

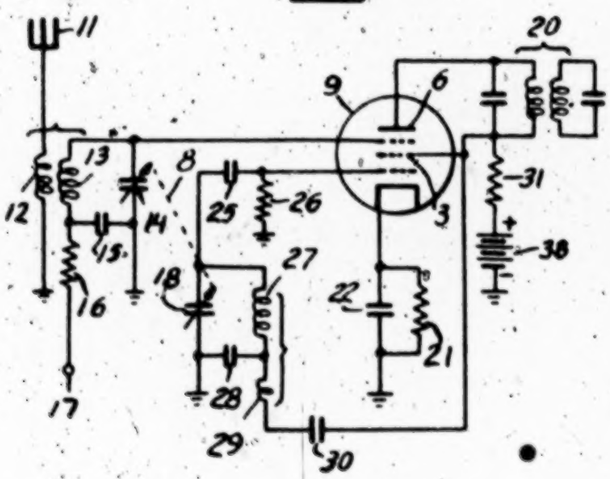
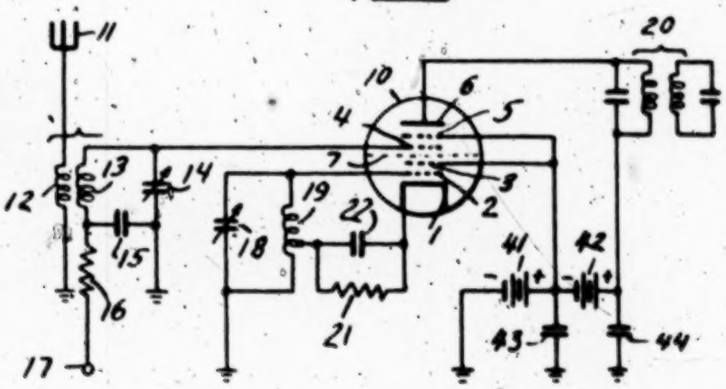


Fig. 6.



INVENTOR
Harold A. Wheeler
BY
Pennie, Davis, Marvel & Wood
ATTORNEY.

May 8, 1934. H. A. WHEELER 1,958,027

EMISSION VALVE MODULATION SYSTEM

Filed Jan. 30, 1933 3 Sheets-Sheet 2

Fig. 9.

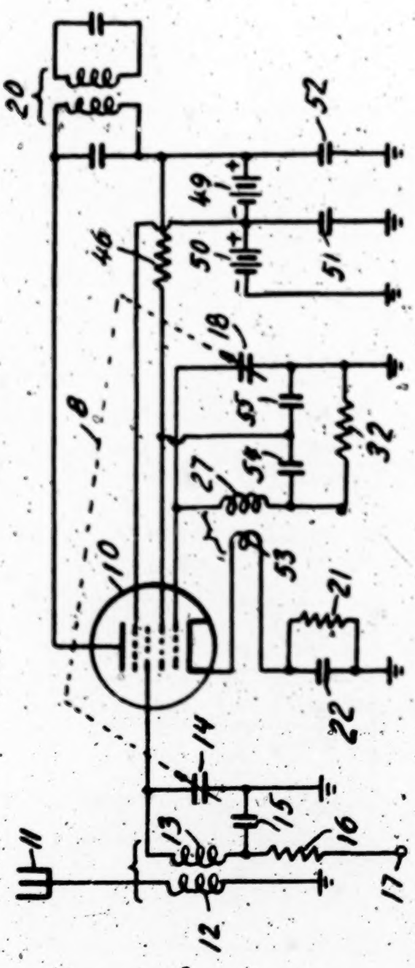


Fig. 11.

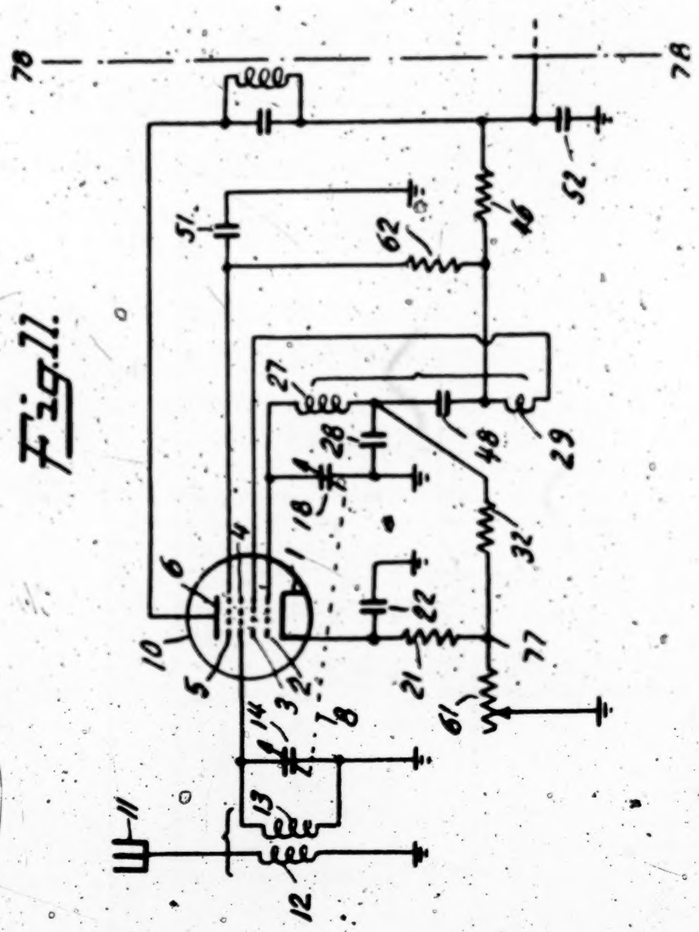


Fig. 7.

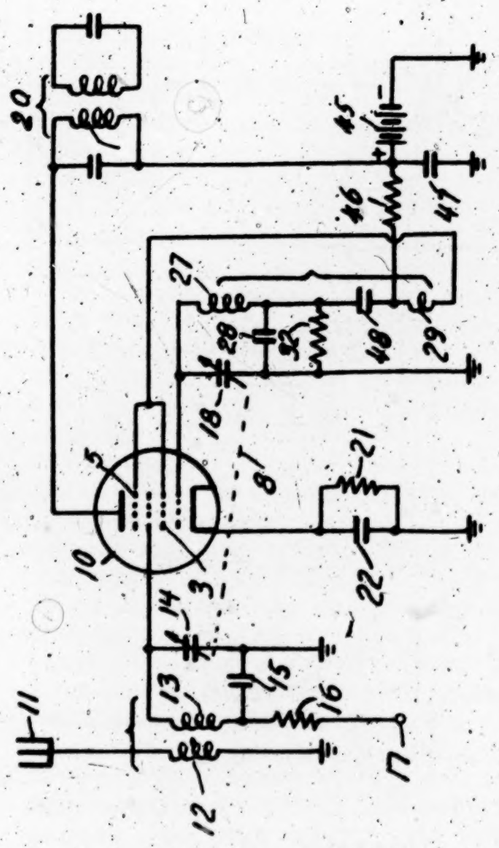
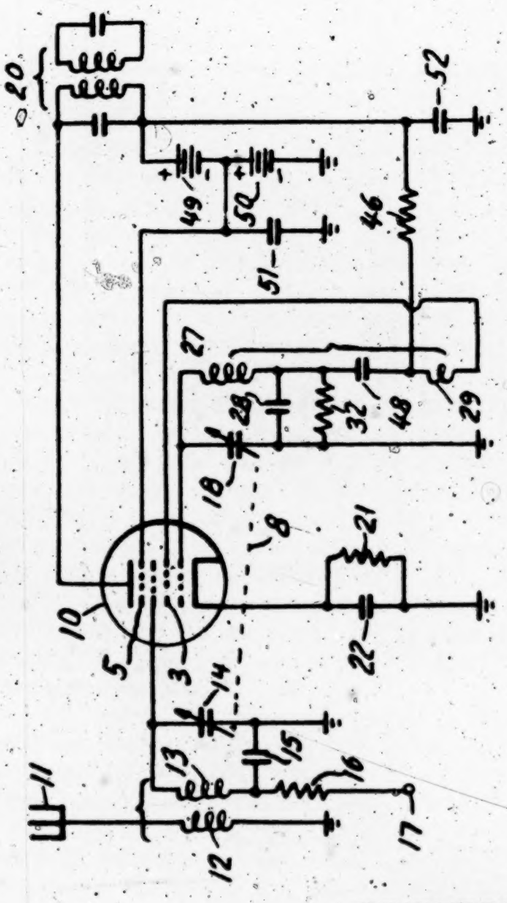


Fig. 8.



INVENTOR
Harold A. Wheeler
BY
Pennie, Davis, Marvin and Edmonds
ATTORNEYS

May 8, 1934. H. A. WHEELER 1,958,027

EMISSION VALVE MODULATION SYSTEM

Filed Jan. 30, 1933 3 Sheets-Sheet 3

Fig. 10.

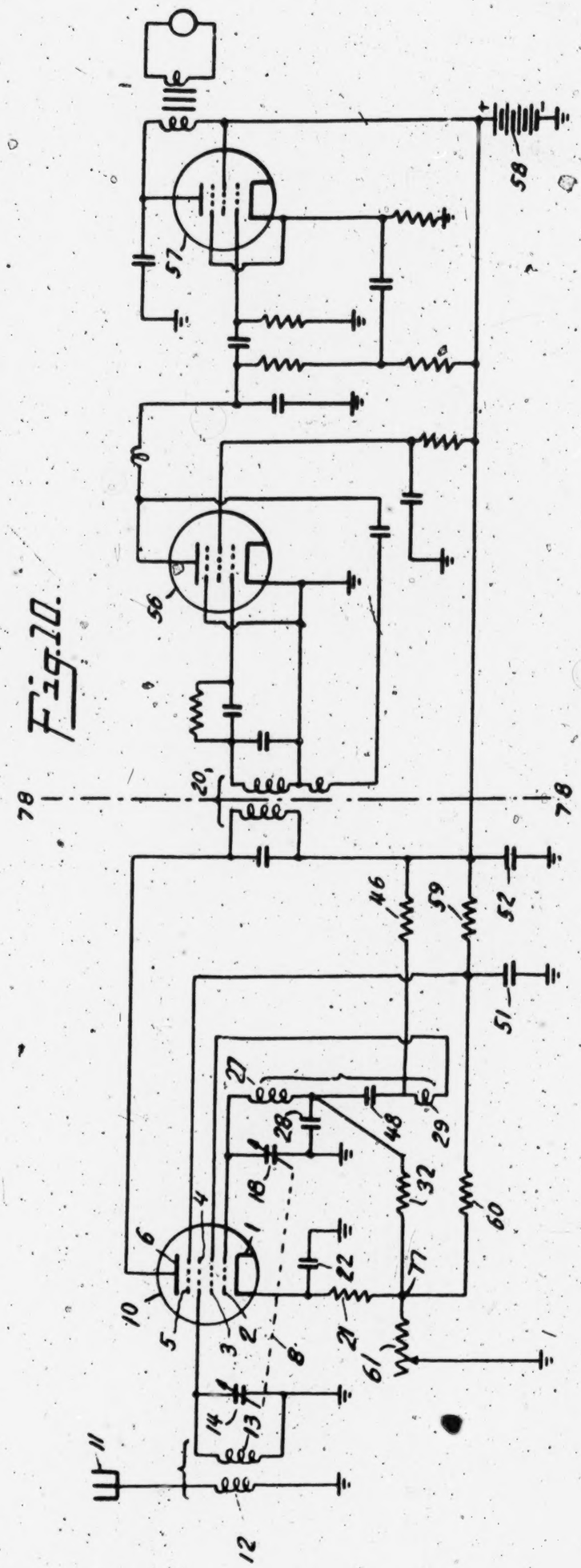
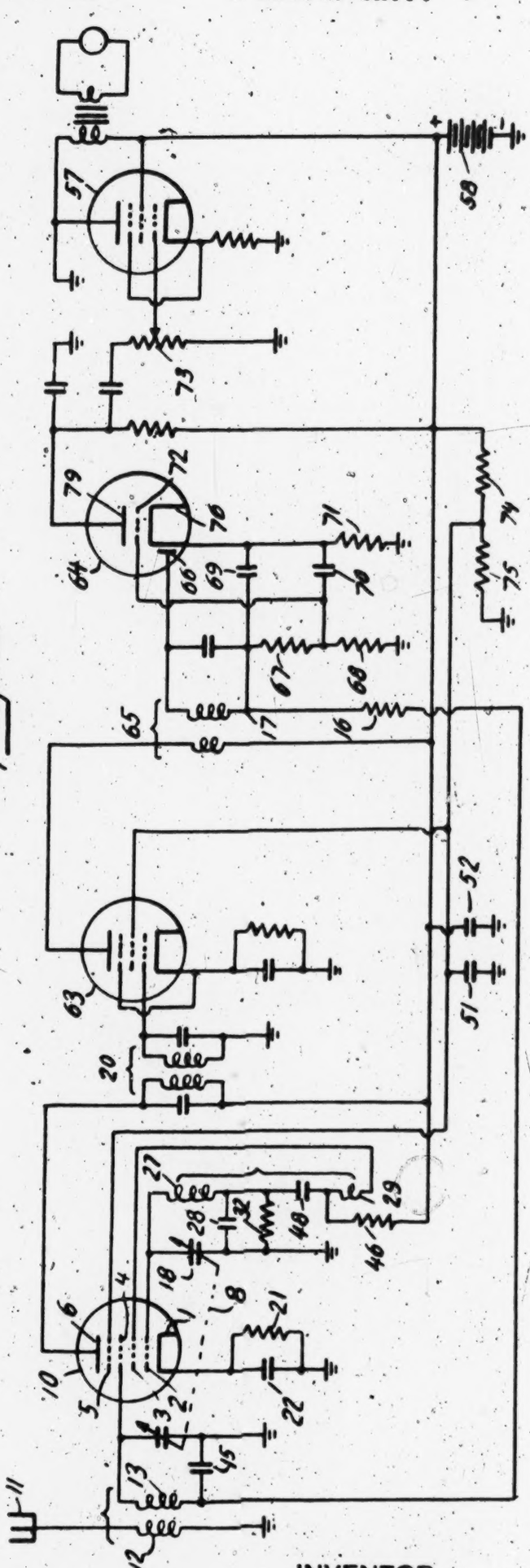


Fig. 12.



INVENTOR
Harold A. Wheeler
BY
Penne, Davis, Marvin and Edmonds
ATTORNEYS

Patented May 8, 1934 1,958,027

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE

1,958,027

EMISSION VALVE MODULATION SYSTEM

Harold A. Wheeler, Great Neck, N. Y., assignor to Hazeltine Corporation, a corporation of Delaware

Application January 30, 1933, Serial No. 654,326

19 Claims. (Cl. 250—20)

This invention relates to vacuum tube circuits, and more particularly to circuits for controlling the electronic flow in vacuum tubes.

In the use of thermionic vacuum tube circuits, particularly radio receiving circuits, it is common practice to impress alternating signal voltage upon the input electrodes of a tube and to apply another oscillating voltage in such a way that the currents at the output of the tube are modulated. An example of this type of modulation is found in the well-known vacuum tube valve modulator system.

The invention is preferably effected by utilizing a tube having a cathode, an anode and a modulator control grid therebetween upon which is impressed a source of signal voltage. Whereas the actual cathode furnishes the electron emission for the entire tube, the modulator control grid operates more directly on the virtual cathode, which is a cloud of electrons transferred from the cathode to a position nearer the modulator control grid. The virtual cathode is formed just outside of a screen located between cathode and modulator control grid, this screen being held at a positive voltage relative to the actual cathode. The number of electrons reaching the virtual cathode is controlled, and hence its density is caused to fluctuate, by the valve action of an inner control grid located between the actual cathode and the virtual cathode.

An important embodiment of this invention lies in its application to a combined oscillator and modulator. In this arrangement, the screen is inserted in the space path between the inner and outer control grids, the screen acting also as the anode of an oscillator. Thus, the device has, in effect, two anodes with the outer or modulator control grid situated therebetween. An appropriate oscillatory circuit is associated with the cathode, the inner control grid and the screen to produce the oscillations. The effect thus produced in the space path causes by its valve action a modulation of the signal voltage impressed upon the outer or modulator control grid; there is thus provided an oscillator-modulator requiring the use of only one tube having a single actual cathode in a unitary electrode structure. An advantage of this form of oscillator-modulator lies in the fact that only a single tube is required to perform the two functions of producing oscillations and modulation. Although these two functions have previously been performed in a single tube, they have not been performed by controlling the properties of a virtual cathode, as ume control is employed.

A particular advantage is realized in the oscillator-modulator form of the invention when a varying biasing potential, such as that of an automatic volume control is used to control the output of the modulator; for the control can readily be applied to the outer control grid or to some other outer electrode without affecting the performance of the oscillatory system.

A very useful form of the invention is one which utilizes a modulator tube in which there is provided a modulator control element which provides a "gradual cut-off"; that is, the characteristic of gain versus biasing potential has the form of a gradual curve. This is generally known as a "variable-mu" characteristic, and may have an exponential variation.

The various embodiments of the invention may conveniently be carried out by the use of an emission-valve modulator tube having five or six, or more, electrodes.

The output of the modulator system can be greatly increased by the use of an outer positive screen in the modulator section of the tube, between anode and outer control grid.

The term "grid" or "grid-like electrode" as used in this specification and in the claims denotes an electrode by, or through, which electrons may pass. The term "screen", as used in the specification and claims, denotes an electrode by, or through, which electrons may pass and which is ordinarily maintained at a sub-

DISCLAIMER

1,958,027.—*Harold A. Wheeler*, Great Neck, N. Y. EMISSION VALVE MODULATION SYSTEM. Patent dated May 8, 1934. Disclaimer filed September 25, 1940, by the inventor; the assignee, *Hazeltine Corporation*, assenting.

Hereby enters this disclaimer to claims 1, 2, 4 to 14, inclusive, 16, 18, and 19 of said patent.

[*Official Gazette October 22, 1940.*]

stantial positive potential with respect to the actual cathode.

The above and other features and advantages of the invention will become more apparent from the following detailed description when considered with the accompanying drawings of which:

Figure 1 is a schematic circuit diagram illustrating the principles and operation of the invention;

Fig. 2 illustrates an oscillator-modulator system in accordance with the invention, employing a pentode tube coupled to an antenna, the tube circuit being arranged to produce self-oscillations;

Fig. 3 shows a system similar to Fig. 2, but varying in details of the oscillatory system;

Figs. 4 and 5 show systems somewhat similar to Fig. 3, but differing therefrom in providing different operating potentials for the anode and for the oscillator screen;

Fig. 6 illustrates an arrangement similar to Fig. 2 except that a hexode tube is employed instead of the pentode of Fig. 2;

Fig. 7 is in general similar to Fig. 3, but employs a hexode type of modulator tube;

Fig. 8 is similar to Fig. 7, but in this arrangement the modulator screen is provided with a voltage different from that of the oscillator screen;

Fig. 9 shows a system like Fig. 8 except for details in the oscillator feedback arrangement;

Fig. 10 illustrates a complete superheterodyne radio receiver employing a manual grid bias type of gain control applied to a hexode oscillator-modulator system in accordance with this invention;

Fig. 11 shows the oscillator-modulator portion of the receiver of Fig. 10 to the left of dividing line 78—78, which may be used if desired instead of the arrangement shown in Fig. 10; and

Fig. 12 shows a complete superheterodyne receiver equipped with an automatic volume control system applied to the modulator control grid of a hexode oscillator-modulator system in accordance with this invention.

Figure 1 is a schematic circuit diagram presented to illustrate the principle and operation of the circuit of the invention in a generalized way. There is shown an emission-valve modulator tube 10 provided with an electron-emitting cathode 1, and an anode 6. In the space path between the cathode and anode there are placed four grid-like electrodes 2, 3, 4 and 5, these four electrodes being situated in the space path at increasing distances, in the order named, from the cathode toward the anode. The schematic diagram shows the cathode and anode located at opposite sides of the tube, but this conventional form of illustration is only for the purpose of schematic representation. Any tube actually used for this purpose would be likely to have a more orthodox construction, such as a centrally located cathode, helical grids surrounding the cathode, the successive grids having increasing diameters with respect to each other, and an anode in the form of a cylindrical plate surrounding the grid structures, such as that described in my copending application Serial No. 654,327 filed concurrently herewith.

A source of signals, designated S_1, is connected between the grid 4 and the cathode 1, while a source of local oscillations S_2 is connected between the grid 2 and the cathode. The output circuit of the tube is designated Z and is connected to the anode 6 and the cathode. For the purpose of rendering the system operative, there are provided sources of operating voltage making anode 6 and screens 5 and 3 positive relative to cathode. There are also provided voltage sources making grids 4 and 2 negative relative to cathode. Batteries 80, 81 and 82 represent sources of positive voltage for anode 6, screen 5 and screen 3, respectively; and batteries 83 and 84 indicate sources of negative potential for grids 4 and 2, respectively.

The positive voltage on screen 5 should generally be less than that on anode 6 with respect to the cathode. This screen may often be omitted, but in many embodiments of the invention its inclusion serves to improve the general operation.

In the operation of the above-described system, electrons emitted from the cathode 1 are attracted through the meshes of grid 2 to the screen 3, by virtue of the positive voltage applied to the latter. The electrons approaching screen 3 are traveling at high speed and most of them, therefore, pass on through the screen and approach the grid 4 which is ordinarily negative. The grid 4 therefore serves to retard the progress of the electrons and many of them are attracted back toward the positive screen 3. This cloud of retarded electrons hovering between the electrodes 3 and 4 may be said to constitute a "virtual cathode" with respect to the succeeding electrodes 4, 5 and 6 of the modulator, because of the fact that electrons can be easily drawn away from the cloud in the same manner that they were originally drawn away from the actual cathode. Electrodes 3 and 4 are a pair of electrodes relatively close together, the said electrode nearer the actual cathode having impressed thereon a substantially more positive voltage than the other of said electrodes. The "virtual cathode" and its approximate position is indicated by the dotted line 7, it being understood that the line 7 does not represent a physical element of the tube. The positive potential of the anode 6 and screen 5 serve to attract electrons from the virtual cathode to the anode, through the input grid 4 and the screen 5, in the usual manner. The tube therefore has, in effect, two anodes, namely elements 3 and 6, with the inner grid alone controlling the entire emission from cathode 1 and the space current to both anodes. It will therefore be observed that the electrodes 4, 5 and 6 together with the virtual cathode 7 function as an ordinary signal translating vacuum tube of which the input circuit is the source S_1 and the output circuit Z is connected between anode 6 and the "virtual cathode" (in so far as alternating currents are concerned). The signal translating electrodes are 4 and 6.

Modulation results in the system in the following manner. When the grid 2 is only slightly negative, or is somewhat positive, there is an abundant supply of electrons at the virtual cathode 7 available to supply an electron stream in the modulator section of the tube. When the grid 2 swings considerably negative, the virtual cathode, and therefore the anode 6, are momentarily deprived of their electron supply, thereby interrupting the output current. It will be observed, then, that the output current of the modulator varies in accordance with the oscillations of source S_2. This is the valve action by which the oscillations from source S_2 modulate the signals from source S_1 in the tube, producing the well-known beat note in the output circuit, hav-

ing a frequency equal to the sum or difference of the source frequencies.

The elements of the tube, other than the actual cathode, may be considered to be situated in two groups: (1) elements 4, 5 and 6 associated with source S_1; and (2) elements 2 and 3 associated with source S_2. The elements within each group are mutually adjacent, but all the elements of group (1) lie beyond those of group (2).

It is possible to control the output or conversion gain of the modulator over a wide range of intensities by varying the negative bias applied to the modulator grid 4. It will be observed that this type of control does not materially affect the behavior of the oscillatory portion of the system because the grid 4, regardless of its potential, is incapable of cutting off the electron current to the oscillator screen 3, which is the current required to maintain oscillations. It is therefore an easy matter to effect automatic volume control by automatically biasing modulator grid 4 more negative when the received signal strength increases. This type of automatic volume control is shown in detail in subsequent figures.

The operation of the system can often be improved, particularly when a bias operating volume controlling system is applied to modulator grid 4, by making this modulator grid of the "variable-mu" or "gradual cut-off" type. This can be easily done, for example, by constructing the grid 4 with a mesh which varies from one end to the other. The result is that the modulator is provided with a characteristic of gain versus grid bias which is in the form of a gradual curve, such as an exponential curve. This kind of grid gives a gradual variation of space current when the bias voltage is varied; and there is a very gradually changing output with varying bias voltage, over a wide range of output and bias voltages. This type of characteristic permits a wide range of negative biasing potentials to be employed, even very high negative potentials, without rendering the modulator inoperative or subject to excessive distortion.

The reason for the above satisfactory results can be readily shown by considering what would happen in the case of a "constant-mu" or "sharp cut-off" tube. In such a case, a high negative biasing potential produces operation below the relatively sharp bend of the tube characteristic curve, whereupon variations of the anode current are greatly reduced and the tube is rendered inoperative.

Figure 2 illustrates an oscillator-modulator system constructed in accordance with this invention, employing a pentode or five-electrode type of signal translating tube 9 which is similar to the hexode or six-electrode tube 10 of Fig. 1, except that the screen 5 is omitted. The system is associated directly with the antenna system of a radio receiver. The antenna 11 is connected to ground through the usual form of antenna coil 12 which is inductively coupled with the tunable input circuit of the receiver, comprising the tuning condenser 14, a fixed condenser 15 and an inductance 13, the latter being coupled to the antenna coil. The tunable input circuit is connected with the modulator control grid 4 of the oscillator-modulator tube 9 and is likewise effectively connected through ground to the cathode 1 of the tube, by virtue of the grounding of the cathode system through resistance 21, condenser 22, and the lower end of a coil 19.

A portion of the tube 9 likewise forms an integral part of an oscillatory system which comprises a tuned oscillatory circuit including inductance 19 and a variable condenser 18, this oscillatory circuit being connected between the oscillator grid 2 and the cathode 1. For the purpose of producing an electron flow from the cathode, and also to complete the oscillatory system, the oscillator screen 3 is connected through the voltage source 23, shunted by a bypass condenser 24, to ground; so that there is a complete circuit from the screen 3 through ground to the cathode 1, through part of coil 19 and the condenser-resistance connection 22, 21. The mutual inductance between the two portions of coil 19, and also condenser 18, constitute an oscillation-producing feed-back coupling because they are common to the cathode-screen circuit and the cathode-grid circuit of the oscillator, so there is produced feedback of energy from the screen 3 to the oscillator grid 2 which produces constant sustained oscillations. The auxiliary electrodes 2 and 3 may therefore be designated the oscillation-producing electrodes, or means for modulating the signal. It will be observed that in so far as the oscillatory system is concerned, the screen 3 acts as an anode. It is noted that the control grid and anode are located in the space path beyond said oscillation-producing electrodes.

By virtue of the negative bias applied to control grid 4, the "virtual cathode" exists at 7, from whence space path current flows to the modulator anode 6. The modulator anode circuit is completed through the primary winding of a modulator output transformer 20, and the voltage source 23 bypassed by condenser 24.

In operation, a signal voltage across the signal tuned circuit is impressed on the control grid 4, and modulation between the signal frequency and the frequency of the oscillatory system is produced by virtue of the valve action of the oscillator upon the electron emission stream. The oscillatory system is a means for causing the electron density of the virtual cathode to fluctuate periodically and thereby modulate the signal voltage. This may be called space path modulation. The resulting products of modulation appear across transformer 20 which lies in the modulated signal output circuit. In this case, the transformer 20 is tuned by the fixed condensers 85 and 86, across the transformer windings, to the well-known intermediate frequency produced in superheterodyne receivers, this intermediate frequency being the difference between the signal frequency and oscillator frequency.

Tube 9 may be subjected to gain control or volume control by applying a bias control voltage to grid 4 which is negative relative to cathode 1. One way of connecting this bias voltage is indicated in Fig. 2 as follows. The bias voltage is connected to point 17, and impressed on the amplification, or gain-control grid 4 through resistor 16 and coil 13. This constitutes a bias-voltage control of amplification; and the arrangement may be termed a bias controlled modulator stage. Condenser 15 prevents the flow of alternating currents in the bias circuit.

It is usually desirable to incorporate in radio receivers an automatic volume control system, now well-known in the art. Such a system is claimed and described in my United States Patent 1,879,863, issued September 27, 1932. In accordance with the operation of the automatic volume control system there is produced a uni-

directional bias voltage which varies with the tuned signal strength. This variable bias voltage is impressed upon a gain-control element of a vacuum tube. It is desirable to impress such an automatic volume control on oscillator-modulator tubes used in superheterodyne receivers, particularly in those receivers employing very few tubes, as where the oscillator-modulator tube is the first tube of the receiver, as shown in Figure 2. Figure 2 is accordingly adapted for this type of automatic volume control, the negative automatic volume control bias voltage, variable with the signal strength, being connected at terminal 17 and impressed upon the modulator control grid 4 through resistance 16.

Automatic volume control as applied to the system of Figure 2 is made practicable for the reason that the volume control bias is not applied to the oscillator grid 2, but only to the modulator control grid 4. In the previously known types of oscillator-modulator utilizing only a single tube, the oscillator grid and modulator grid are identical, or at least are interrelated in such manner that any biasing voltage applied to the control grid affects the oscillations, and even stops the oscillations when this grid becomes greatly negative.

Figure 3 illustrates a system quite similar to Figure 2, like elements being designated by the same numerals as in Figure 2. The system of Figure 3, however, has certain refinements or modifications not found in Figure 2. There is employed in the oscillator system a grid-leak 26 and grid condenser 25 which develop a negative average bias on the oscillator grid 2, relative to the cathode, which serves to limit the amplitude of oscillation and the oscillator grid current.

In place of the single tapped oscillatory coil 19 of Fig. 2 there is provided in Fig. 3 a pair of inductively coupled coils 27 and 29, the coil 27 being included in the oscillatory circuit. Feedback from the screen 3 (oscillator anode) is conveyed through a condenser 30 to coil 29 and fixed condenser 28 to ground, the condenser 28 and the coupling between coils 27 and 29 producing combined capacitive and inductive feedback in aiding phase. In this arrangement, the amplitude of oscillation is better sustained at the lower frequencies by virtue of condenser 28, and is preferably held uniform over the tuning range. The condenser 30 serves to convey the feedback currents and yet insulate the oscillatory circuit from the voltage source 38. A resistance 31 is provided to prevent the voltage source from shunting the feedback elements 28, 29 and 30.

Condenser 28 also makes possible the use of like condensers 14 and 18, ganged together by a uni-control device as indicated by the dotted line 8, while maintaining a uniform frequency difference between signal and oscillator circuits.

In this arrangement, the feedback voltage is incidentally applied to the anode 6, but this circumstance produces no great effect on the performance.

Figure 4 illustrates a system similar to that of Figure 3 but differing in two details. In Figure 4, the arrangement is such that the source of operating voltage 39 applies separate voltages to the anode 6 and to the screen 3, these different voltages being provided by means of resistances 34 and 33 connected respectively to the two electrodes 6 and 3, the battery 39 being connected to the other ends of these resistances which are joined together. Condensed 35 bypasses the resistor 34 and voltage source 39 in the anode circuit. In this figure, also, a grid leak 32 is connected across condenser 28 of the oscillatory circuit, and no separate grid condenser is required as in the case of Figure 3.

Figure 5 is similar to Figure 4 except that the feedback coil 29 of Fig. 4 is replaced by a coil 36 in series with the cathode and coupled to the inductance 27 in the oscillatory circuit. In this figure, also, a choke coil 37 is used to replace the resistance 33 of Fig. 4, the use of the choke coil in this position preventing a loss of operating voltage. This permits the use of a voltage source 40 having a lower voltage than source 39 in Fig. 4.

Figure 6 illustrates the embodiment of Figure 2 except that the hexode type of tube 10 is employed in place of the pentode tube 9, the extra electrode of tube 10 being the modulator screen 5 positioned between the modulator control grid 4 and the anode 6. In this embodiment, the same voltage source 41 is applied to the two screens 3 and 5. An additional voltage source 42 is used in series with source 41 and applied to the anode 6. The voltage sources are bypassed by condensers 43 and 44.

The arrangement of Figure 7 is generally similar to that of Figure 3, the main difference being that Figure 7 employs the hexode form of modulator tube 10. In this embodiment, the feedback coil 29 is separated from the oscillatory tuned circuit by a fixed condenser 48, this arrangement providing somewhat improved results. Oscillator screen current is supplied through resistor 46 from voltage source 45 bypassed by condenser 47. The screens 3 and 5 are provided with the same voltage. It will be noted that the feedback operates simultaneously on both screens, although this circumstance produces no great difference in the resulting performance.

It is sometimes desirable to impress different voltages on the two screens, in which case, the arrangement of Figure 8 may be employed, Figure 8 being similar to Figure 7 except for the use of the separate screen voltage for screen 5. Voltage source 45 in Fig. 7 is replaced by voltage sources 49 and 50 in series in Fig. 8, bypassed by condensers 51 and 52.

Figure 9 shows an arrangement which is in general similar to that of Figure 8, the principal feature of Figure 9 residing in the rearrangement of the oscillator feedback system. In Figure 9, two condensers 54 and 55, in series, are used to replace the feedback coupling condenser 28 of Figure 8, the condensers 54 and 55 therefore each being made larger than condenser 28, but having the same resultant capacity. The voltage across only one of the condensers, namely condenser 55, is used for capacitive feedback in the oscillator screen circuit. The inductive feedback, in this embodiment, is provided by the coil 53 in the cathode lead, coupled to the oscillatory tuned coil 27, as in the case of Figure 5.

Figure 10 illustrates a complete superheterodyne receiver employing a hexode oscillator-modulator system essentially like that of Figure 8. In this receiver, a manual amplification or gain control is provided in the form of a rheostat 61 connected between ground and a point 77 in the cathode circuit. When the rheostat 61 is adjusted for zero resistance, that is, for maximum gain, point 77 is grounded and the resulting circuit is exactly like that of Figure 8, in so far as the oscillator-modulator performance is concerned. A slight difference from the arrangement of Figure 8 lies in the use of two resistors 59 and 60 connected in series across the voltage source 58.

the modulator screen voltage being taken from the point between these resistors. This arrangement avoids the use of the two batteries 49 and 50 shown in Figure 8.

In the operation of the receiver, when the resistance of rheostat 61 is increased, the principal effect is to make the cathode voltage more positive with respect to ground, at the same time leaving the bias on modulator grid 4 connected to ground. The effect is that of placing an increased negative bias on the modulator grid relative to cathode, thereby reducing the gain of the tube. The general operation of the system is not otherwise affected by this manual gain control.

The remainder of the receiver is of a conventional type and comprises a second detector 56 having signal rectifying electrodes for developing the audio signals by rectifying the intermediate frequencies present in the output transformer 20 of the oscillator-modulator. An audio amplifier 57 having signal amplifying electrodes is coupled to the output of the detector 56 from whence the signals are utilized in any desired manner such as by a loudspeaker coupled to the output thereof.

Figure 11 illustrates a form of oscillator-modulator system well adapted for use in the receiver of Figure 10. In Figure 11, only that portion of the receiver to the left of the dividing line 78—78 in Figure 10 is shown. The oscillator-modulator of Figure 11 is very similar to that of Figure 10 with the exception that the biasing potential on the oscillator screen 3 is applied to the modulator screen 5 through a resistor 62 connected between the modulator screen and resistor 46. This arrangement obviates the use of the two resistors 60 and 59 of Fig. 10, but still prevents appreciable shunting of the feedback elements 28 and 48.

Figure 12 illustrates a superheterodyne receiver embodying the invention, complete with an automatic volume control system applied to the oscillator-modulator tube. The oscillator-modulator system is similar to that of Figures 8 and 10. The intermediate-frequency output transformer 20 serves to couple the oscillator-modulator 10 with an intermediate frequency amplifier 63. The output of amplifier 63 in turn is coupled through transformer 65 to a diode type of rectifier in tube 64. This tube is a well-known type of tube comprising both a diode and a triode having a common cathode 76, the diode elements being anode 66 and cathode 76, and the triode elements being cathode 76, control grid 72 and anode 79. A form of a satisfactory diode rectifier is more fully described in my above-mentioned Patent 1,879,863 and in my copending application Serial No. 526,857, filed April 1, 1931. The output of the diode detector is coupled to an audio frequency amplifier 57 in any well-known manner.

By virtue of the rectifying action of the diode detector, there is developed at point 17 a unidirectional rectified signal bias voltage which varies in accordance with the signal strength impressed upon the diode. When the signal strength increases, the rectified current flowing through resistances 67 and 68 makes the bias voltage of point 17 more negative with respect to ground. This bias is applied through resistor 16 and inductance 13 to the gain-control grid 4 of modulator 10, thereby biasing the modulator grid in proportion to the signal strength. As previously explained, the automatic volume control arranged in this manner is especially satisfactory since it does not noticeably affect the oscillatory system associated with the modulator.

Any of a number of circuits may be employed to produce the bias voltage at point 17 for automatic volume control. In Fig. 12 the voltage across the secondary coil of transformer 65 is impressed between the diode anode 66 and the point 17, the latter point being connected to the diode cathode 76 through resistors 67, 68 and 71 in series. These resistors are bypassed for radio-frequency currents by condensers 69 and 70, both having very high impedance at audio frequencies. The rectified audio-frequency voltage, freed of radio-frequency compounds, which exists across resistor 68, is connected to the grid 72 of the triode section of tube 64. The cathode 76 of tube 64 is biased positively relative to ground by resistor 71. This bias prevents grid current in tube 64 and also renders the diode inoperative at very small signal intensities where static or noise interference is objectionable. The audio voltage is amplified in the triode portion of tube 64, and applied from the anode 79 to voltage divider 73 which controls the volume level in the succeeding audio-frequency circuits, the volume level in tube 64 being controlled automatically.

Resistors 74 and 75 in series furnish a reduced positive voltage for the screens of tubes 10 and 63, relative to the anodes.

In the arrangements described herein, the precise structure and number of electrodes may be varied over a wide range. The diagrams indicate tubes of five and six electrodes (pentodes and hexodes). Additional electrodes may be provided without departing from the spirit of the invention and without destroying its advantages.

Pentode tubes of type 57 or type 58 are operative in the circuits of Figures 2, 3, 4 and 5. These tubes are characterized by having a cathode and an anode separated by three successive grid-like electrodes, the middle electrode being a screen of fine mesh, which serves well as the oscillator screen 3 in the pentode circuits described herein. The grid adjacent to the anode in these tubes has a uniform wide mesh and serves well as modulator control grid only in those cases where a wide range of gain control is not required in the modulator tube.

Best results are obtainable with special six-electrode tubes or hexodes. Referring to Fig. 1, grid 2 may be of uniform or varying mesh, but uniform mesh is generally preferred. Screens 3 and 5 are preferably of fine mesh. The preferred mesh of grid 4 depends on whether a high gain or a wide range of gain control is required. For high gain, grid 4 is preferably of uniform fine mesh. For a wide range of gain control, as with automatic volume control, grid 4 has preferably a non-uniform mesh varying from fine mesh at the ends to coarse mesh in the middle, that is, has a gradual cut-off characteristic.

There are a number of preferred circuit relations which improve the performance but are not essential in the circuits described herein. These relations will now be outlined.

The voltages on grid 4, screen 5 (if present) and anode 6 are preferably chosen to hold the average anode current less than one-half the average screen current, or less than one-third the average cathode current, the cathode current being substantially the sum of the screen and anode currents. This relation provides that changes in anode current have a negligible effect on the performance of the oscillator circuit.

The average negative bias on grid 2 relative to

cathode 1, which is provided by resistor 26 or 32 in Figures 3, 4, 5, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11 and 12, is preferably related to the voltage on the oscillator screen 3, to provide that the space current in the tube is substantially zero during the negative half-cycles of the oscillator voltage on grid 2, that is, the space current is periodically reduced to zero. For this purpose, the oscillator control grid 2 having the constant alternating voltage thereon should be of the common sharp cut-off type. This insures a complete valve action of the oscillator voltage as affecting the density of the virtual cathode and the performance of the modulator. This condition is referred to as "complete modulation" in the oscillator-modulator tube.

In Figures 3, 4, 5, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11 and 12, combined capacitive feedback 28 (55 in Fig. 9) and inductive feedback 29 (36 in Fig. 5 and 53 in Fig. 9) are utilized to maintain oscillations. These two feedback elements are preferably related to maintain the oscillation voltage on grid 2 nearly uniform over the tuning range. In the same figures, a condenser 30 or 48 (55 in Fig. 9) is shown in the feedback circuit. This condenser relative to all other elements in the oscillator screen circuit, is preferably proportioned to maintain the impedance between screen 3 and ground as small as possible without too far reducing the oscillator feedback or weakening the oscillations.

Figs. 2 and 6 have a negligible impedance in the oscillator screen circuit, the cathode and oscillator grid being associated with the oscillator tuned circuit in a feedback relation. This arrangement minimizes the coupling of oscillator currents to the tuned antenna circuit which would otherwise occur through inter-electrode capacitive coupling between grid 4 and screen 3. This arrangement, however, is somewhat less effective as a modulator circuit, compared with the other arrangements shown.

In Figs. 10, 11 and 12, it is noted that the bias between grid 2 and cathode 1 is distinctly independent of the volume-control bias between grid 4 and cathode. This feature is desirable in most cases and is often essential to the successful operation of the oscillator-modulator system in the presence of gain control means.

I claim:

1. In a modulation system, a vacuum tube comprising an actual cathode, means for producing a virtual cathode composed of a cloud of electrons, said means comprising a pair of electrodes relatively close together, the said electrode nearer said actual cathode having impressed thereon a substantially more positive voltage than the other of said electrodes, an anode near said virtual cathode, a grid between said anode and said virtual cathode, a source of signal voltage coupled to said grid, and means independent of said grid and anode for causing the electron density of said virtual cathode to fluctuate periodically and thereby modulate said signal voltage, said means comprising an electrode interposed between said actual cathode and said virtual cathode.

2. In a signal translating arrangement, an oscillator-modulator system comprising a cathode, an anode and a grid between said cathode and anode, a source of signal voltage coupled to said grid, an output circuit coupled to said anode, and oscillation-producing means for modulating said signal in said tube, said means including two auxiliary electrodes interposed between said cathode and said grid, the said auxiliary electrode furthest from said cathode having a positive voltage applied thereto, and a tuned circuit coupled between one of said auxiliary electrodes and said cathode.

3. In a modulator vacuum tube having a cathode and a gradual-cutoff control grid, means for effecting complete modulation which comprise a sharp cut-off control grid interposed between said cathode and gradual cut-off control grid, and a source of constant alternating voltage impressed on the interposed grid which periodically reduces to zero the space current of said vacuum tube.

4. In a signal receiving and translating arrangement, an oscillator-modulator system comprising a vacuum tube having a cathode, an anode and a first, second and third grid positioned in the space path in the order named, from said cathode to said anode, a source of positive voltage relative to said cathode impressed upon said second grid for creating an electron stream from said cathode, a signal input circuit connected between said third grid and said cathode, an output circuit connected between said cathode and said anode, and a tuned circuit connected to said cathode and coupled to said first and second grids for producing sustained oscillations.

5. In a superheterodyne receiver, an oscillator-modulator system comprising a vacuum tube having an actual cathode, an anode electrode and first, second and third grid-like electrodes located at respectively increasing distances from said actual cathode in the space path between said actual cathode and said anode, a voltage source impressing a positive voltage on said second electrode, and a voltage source impressing a negative voltage on said third electrode, whereby a virtual cathode with respect to said anode is created between said second and third electrodes, a tuned circuit system connected to said actual cathode and having oscillation-producing coupling to said first and second electrodes, and a source of signals connected between said third electrode and said actual cathode, and an output circuit connected between said cathode and an electrode located beyond said third electrode.

6. In a signal receiving and translating system, a bias controlled modulator stage comprising a vacuum tube having a cathode, an anode and at least two grids interposed between the anode and cathode, one of said grids having a variable-mu structure and having impressed thereon the signal voltage and the bias control voltage, said other grid having impressed thereon an alternating voltage, whereby space-path modulation is effected in said tube, means responsive to the output of said modulator for causing said bias voltage to automatically vary in proportion to the received signal intensity, whereby the output of said modulator stage is maintained more nearly constant than the input over a wide range of received signal intensities.

7. In a superheterodyne receiver, an oscillator-modulator system comprising a vacuum tube having a cathode and two oscillation-producing electrodes near said cathode, impedance means including a tuned circuit coupled between said two electrodes and connected to said cathode for producing sustained oscillations in said tube, said tube including a control grid and an anode located beyond the path between said cathode and said two oscillation-producing electrodes in said tube, a source of signal voltage coupled between said control grid and said cathode, and means for applying a bias control voltage on said control grid, whereby the anode current is controlled and any effects of the bias voltage on

the oscillations are minimized by the location of said grid and anode.

8. In a superheterodyne receiver, an oscillator-modulator system comprising a vacuum tube having a cathode and two oscillation-producing electrodes near said cathode, impedance means including a tuned circuit coupled between said two electrodes for producing sustained oscillations, said tube including a control grid and an anode located in the space path beyond said oscillation-producing electrodes, a source of signal voltage coupled between said control grid and said cathode, means for developing a bias control voltage which automatically varies with the intensity of said signal source and means for applying said bias voltage to said control grid, whereby the intensity of the modulated signal in the anode circuit is maintained more nearly constant than said signal voltage over a considerable range of signal voltage at said source, without substantially affecting the intensity of said oscillations.

9. A modulation system comprising a vacuum tube having a cathode, an anode and first, second and third grid-like electrodes interposed in the space path, in the order named, from said cathode to said anode, a signal input circuit connected between said third electrode and said cathode, a modulated-signal output circuit connected between said cathode and said anode, a source of positive voltage applied to said second electrode, a source of oscillations connected between said first electrode and said cathode, and means for applying a variable bias voltage upon said third electrode, whereby the output of said tube may be varied over a wide range.

10. In a superheterodyne receiver, an oscillator-modulator system comprising a vacuum tube having a cathode, an anode and at least three grids located in the space path between said cathode and anode, oscillation-producing feedback coupling between two of said grids causing sustained oscillatory currents to flow in said space path between said cathode and at least one of said two grids, a signal input circuit coupled between a third of said grids and said cathode, and an output circuit coupled to said anode, causing said oscillatory currents to modulate the signal from said input circuit, means for developing a bias voltage which becomes more negative when the signal intensity increases, and means for impressing said bias voltage on said third grid, thereby maintaining the output intensity in said output circuit more nearly constant than the input intensity over a considerable range of input signal intensities, and at the same time preventing any substantial variation of said oscillatory currents.

11. A modulation system comprising a vacuum tube having an input circuit and an output circuit, said vacuum tube having a space-current path in which are included a cathode and at least two grids, one of said grids having a source of alternating voltage connected thereto, the other of said grids having said input circuit connected thereto and having impressed thereon a variable bias voltage more negative than said cathode, said other grid being of the type giving a gradual variation of space current when said bias voltage is varied.

12. A modulation system comprising a vacuum tube having a cathode, an anode and first, second and third grid-like electrodes interposed in the space path, in the order named, from said cathode to said anode, a signal input circuit connected between said third electrode and said cathode, an output circuit connected between said cathode and said anode, a source of oscillations connected between said first electrode and said cathode, a source of positive voltage connected to said second electrode, and a source of variable negative bias voltage applied to said third electrode for controlling the output of said system, said third electrode being of the type which provides a very gradually changing output with varying bias voltage over a wide range of output and bias voltage.

13. A modulation system comprising a vacuum tube having a cathode, an anode and first, second, third and fourth grid-like electrodes interposed in the space path, in the order named, from said cathode to said anode, a signal input circuit connected between said third electrode and said cathode, a modulated-signal output circuit connected between said cathode and said anode, a source of positive voltage applied to each of said second and fourth electrodes, a source of oscillations connected between said first electrode and said cathode, and means for applying a variable bias voltage upon said third electrode, whereby the output of said tube may be varied over a wide range.

14. Means for performing on an electric signal wave in one vacuum-tube space path the combined operations of modulation, amplification, and bias-voltage control of amplification, said means comprising a cathode, an inner grid, an inner screen, an outer grid, an outer screen and an anode, all situated in said space path in the order named, said grids having a negative average bias relative to said cathode, said screens and anode being considerably positive relative to said cathode, said inner grid and inner screen having oscillation-producing coupling therebetween, said outer grid having a signal-voltage source coupled thereto, said anode having an output circuit coupled thereto responsive to the difference between the signal and oscillation frequencies, said amplification being controlled by the outer grid bias.

15. Means for performing on a signal in one vacuum-tube space path the combined functions of complete modulation, amplification, and gradual control of amplification, said means comprising a cathode, a sharp-cutoff inner grid, an inner screen, a gradual-cutoff outer grid, an outer screen and an anode, all situated in said space path in the order named, said grids having a negative average bias relative to said cathode, said screens and anode being considerably positive relative to said cathode, said inner grid and inner screen having oscillation-producing coupling therebetween which periodically reduces the space current to zero, said outer grid having a signal-voltage source coupled thereto, said anode having an output circuit coupled thereto responsive to the difference between the signal and oscillation frequencies, said amplification being controlled gradually by a variation of the negative bias on said outer grid.

16. A system having the means according to claim 14 in combination with means for causing the outer grid bias to increase automatically with increasing signal intensity, thereby maintaining the amplified signal voltage more nearly uniform than the signal voltage of said source.

17. A system having the means according to claim 15 in combination with means for causing the outer grid bias to increase automatically with increasing signal intensity, thereby maintaining

the amplified signal voltage more nearly uniform than the signal voltage of said source.

18. The method of modulating a signal in a vacuum tube having a cathode, an anode and a space path therebetween, which comprises attracting an electron stream to an intermediate position in said path, retarding said stream to form a virtual cathode just beyond said position, modulating the density of the virtual cathode by varying the attraction of said stream, further attracting a part of said stream from said virtual cathode to said anode, and causing said signal to vary the further attraction of said part of said stream, the modulation of the density of the virtual cathode thereby causing modulation of the signal in said vacuum tube.

19. The method of modulating a signal in, and controlling the modulated output of, a vacuum tube having an actual cathode, an anode and a space path therebetween, which comprises attracting an electron stream to an intermediate position in said path, retarding said stream to form a virtual cathode just beyond said position, producing oscillations in the space path between said actual and virtual cathodes by varying the attraction of said stream, further attracting a part of said stream from said virtual cathode to said anode as output current, causing the signal to vary the further attraction of said part of said stream and thereby to produce in the output current path a current fluctuation of the frequency difference between signal and oscillation, and controlling the current in said output path by controlling said further attraction without substantially affecting the oscillations in the space between said actual and virtual cathodes.

HAROLD A. WHEELER.

CERTIFICATE OF CORRECTION.

Patent No. 1,958,027. May 8, 1934.

HAROLD A. WHEELER.

It is hereby certified that error appears in the printed specification of the above numbered patent requiring correction as follows: Page 4, line 74, for "Condensed" read Condenser; page 5, line 89, for "compounds" read components; and page 6, line 10, for "out-off" read cut-off; and that the said Letters Patent should be read with these corrections therein that the same may conform to the record of the case in the Patent Office.

Signed and sealed this 19th day of June, A. D. 1934.

Bryan M. Battey

(Seal) Acting Commissioner of Patents.

Exhibit Z attached to and forming part
of Affidavit of Harold A. Wheeler
Civil Action 6677

P. 142

Sept. 24, 1935. H. A. WHEELER 2,015,327

ELECTRON DISCHARGE DEVICE

Filed Jan. 30, 1933

Fig. 1.

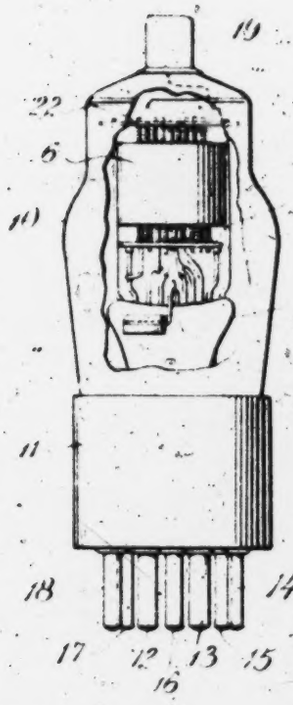


Fig. 2.

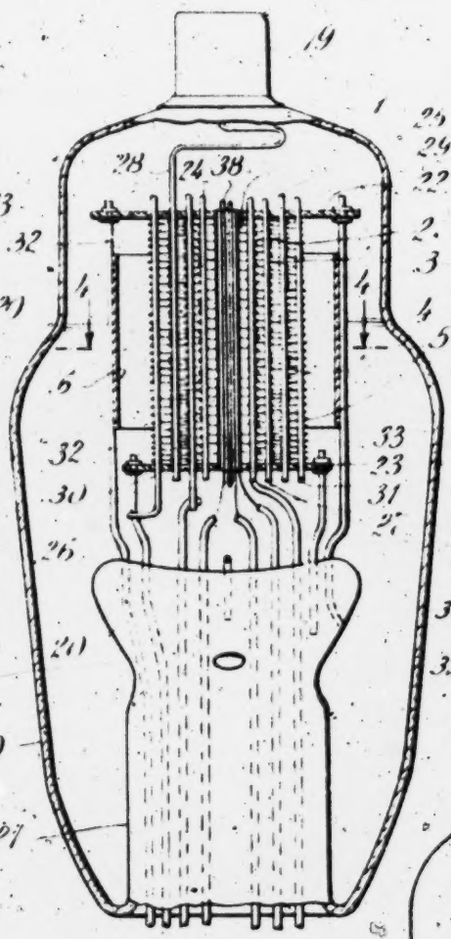


Fig. 3.

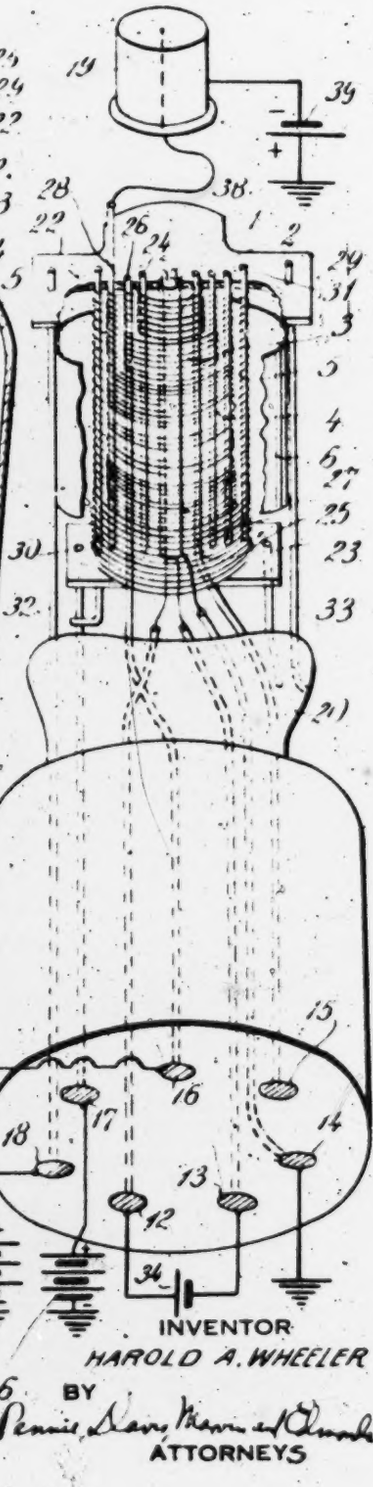


Fig. 5.

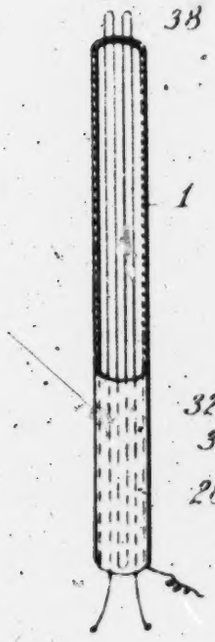
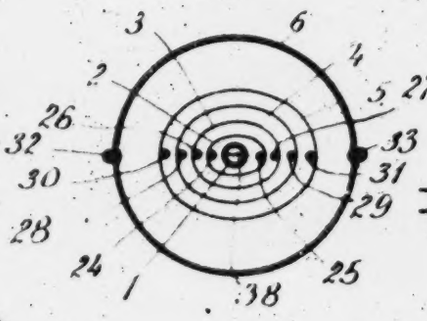


Fig. 4.



INVENTOR
HAROLD A. WHEELER

BY
Pennie, Davis, Marvin & Edmonds
ATTORNEYS

Patented Sept. 24, 1935 2,015,327

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE

2,015,327

ELECTRON DISCHARGE DEVICE

Harold A. Wheeler, Great Neck, N. Y., assignor to Hazeltine Corporation, a corporation of Delaware

Application January 30, 1933, Serial No. 654,327

5 Claims. (Cl. 250—27)

This invention relates to electron discharge devices, and more particularly to devices of this character having five or more electrodes.

It is an object of this invention to provide a device which is particularly well-adapted to perform the function of modulation. A related object is to provide a modulator valve which can be readily controlled by means of a grid bias voltage.

In a preferred embodiment for carrying out the above objects, there is provided a vacuum tube having six electrodes, namely, an electron-emitting cathode and a plate, or anode element, in the space path between which are located four other electrodes. These four latter electrodes are in the form of screens and grids and are located at successively increasing distances from the electron-emitting element, the first of these screens and grids being designated as closest to the said emitting element.

The term "grid" or "grid-like electrode", as used in the specification and claims, denotes an electrode by which, or through which, electrons may pass. The term "screen" denotes a form of grid-like electrode by which, or through which, electrons may pass and which ordinarily is maintained at a substantial positive potential with respect to the actual cathode.

A feature which makes the device according to this invention particularly well suited as a modulator is the construction of the grid which is the third of these screens and grids in point of distance from the cathode; this grid is formed of a mesh having a variable spacing or pitch. It is preferable that the greater portion of this third grid be of relatively fine mesh, or pitch, although a substantial portion may be of much coarser mesh.

The second of these interposed electrodes in point of distance from the cathode is a screen preferably constructed with a fine mesh or pitch.

The fourth of these interposed screens is incorporated for use as an ordinary screen-grid; and it is found that the device is operative when this fourth screen is omitted.

In the drawing:

Figure 1 illustrates an electron discharge device in accordance with this invention, a portion of the glass-enclosing vessel being cut away to show more clearly the position of the electrodes within;

Fig. 2 is a vertical sectional view of the device showing in detail its construction and the positions of the elements;

Fig. 3 is a broken diagram showing in perspective the construction of the elements and also indicating the manner of connecting operating voltages which place the device in an operative condition;

Fig. 4 is a plan view, in section, of the electrode construction; and

Fig. 5 is an enlarged illustration, partially in section, of the cathode electrode and the means for heating the same.

Referring to Figure 1, the device comprises an evacuated glass bulb 10, the stem end of which is fitted into a bakelite base 11 in which are embedded seven projecting terminal lugs, numbered 12 to 18, respectively, adapted to fit into a suitable socket. An eighth terminal 19 is situated at the top of the bulb in the form of a metallic cap cemented to the glass. The electrodes of the device are supported by a number of vertical supporting wires embedded in a glass stem 20 formed on a reentrant portion 21 at the stem end of the bulb (see Fig. 2). For the purpose of maintaining the supporting wires rigidly in their upright position, there are provided two flat guides 22 and 23 of an insulating material, such as mica, through which the supporting wires project. The upper guide 22 is constructed to snugly fit within the dome-like end of the glass bulb.

The following electrode construction is employed: A cathode 1 in the form of a sleeve of very small diameter is centrally located within the bulb. This sleeve is preferably constructed of nickel coated with strontium and barium oxides for the purpose of causing it to copiously emit electrons when heated. For the purpose of heating the cathode sleeve, there is located within the sleeve a heater filament 38 of fine wire, preferably of tungsten, coated with ceramic insulation and threaded back and forth within the sleeve in the form of a W as shown in Fig. 5. The ends of the heater filament are connected to the large-diameter terminal lugs 12 and 13 at the base.

Surrounding the cathode at a small distance therefrom is an inner grid electrode 2 in the shape of an elliptical cylinder formed by a helix of fine wire and supported on two of the vertical supporting wires 24 and 25. This grid or grid-like electrode is preferably wound with a relatively small pitch (distance between adjacent turns) which is uniform throughout. The construction of this particular grid, however, is not critical. Fig. 4, which is a plan view of the electrode construction, shows the elliptical form of grid-electrode 2 and also of the remaining electrodes about to be described. The major axis of

each ellipse is only slightly greater than the minor axis.

A second grid-like electrode 3, here called an inner screen, is constructed in the form of an elliptical cylinder by winding a helix of wire which surrounds the first grid 2, the second grid-like electrode being supported on the two supporting wires 26 and 27. This second helix is of fine mesh, that is, has a small pitch, which is preferably uniform throughout.

A third grid electrode 4, here called an outer grid, surrounds the electrode 3, and is likewise formed by a helix of wire in the shape of an elliptical cylinder supported on supporting wires 28 and 29; but the pitch or mesh of this electrode is not uniform throughout its extent. Throughout the greater portion, the pitch is very fine, but in one or more small ranges, the pitch is substantially increased. A construction of this third grid which has been found very satisfactory is one in which fifty turns of .004-inch diameter wire are wound so that the major axis is 0.360 inch and the minor axis 0.316 inch, the component turns, numbered from one end to the other, having the pitch indicated in the following table:

Turn	Pitch
1-18	.014 inch
19-20	.018
21	.025
22-23	.018
24	.042
25-26	.018
27	.050
28-29	.018
30	.034
31-32	.018
33-50	.014

Surrounding this third grid, and supported on supporting wires 30 and 31, is a fourth grid-like electrode 5, here called an outer screen, also constructed of a helix in the form of an elliptical cylinder. This fourth grid-like electrode preferably has a relatively fine mesh which is uniform throughout.

Finally, a plate 6, in the form of an elliptical cylinder, is provided which surrounds the entire grid-electrode structure, this plate being supported on supporting wires 32 and 33. The plate is preferably constructed of carbonized nickel and its axial length is not as great as that of the other electrodes.

From the foregoing description, it is observed that the first, second, third and fourth grid-like electrodes, designated 2, 3, 4 and 5, respectively, are located at succeedingly increasing distances, in the order named, from the cathode in the space path between the actual cathode and the anode.

Constructional data for the electrodes other than the third grid electrode, or outer grid 3, which have been found very satisfactory, are as follows:

Inner grid 2—major axis, 0.121 inch; minor axis, 0.96 inch; wound with 25 turns of .004 inch diameter wire with a .033 inch uniform pitch.

Inner screen 3—major axis, 0.236 inch; minor axis, 0.167 inch; wound with 33 turns of .005 inch wire with a .025 inch uniform pitch.

Outer screen 5—major axis, 0.460 inch; minor axis, 0.460 inch; wound with 33 turns of .005 inch diameter wire, with a .025 inch uniform pitch.

The connection of operating voltages which place the device in a very advantageous operative condition, particularly for use as a modulator, is illustrated in Figure 3. There is connected across terminal lugs 12 and 13 a battery 34 (or other source of filament heating current) which serves to heat a W-type filament 35 within the cathode sleeve, the said cathode itself being nominally grounded by the ground connection at terminal 14. Batteries 35, 36 and 37, or other sources of direct voltage are connected between ground and the terminals 16, 17 and 18, respectively, for applying positive voltages to the inner screen 3, the outer screen 5 and the plate 6, respectively. A negative bias battery 38 is connected between ground and the cap 19 for placing a negative bias upon the non-uniform mesh, outer grid 4.

With the above-described system of operating voltages, the action of the device is as follows: The heated cathode 1 emits electrons which are attracted to the inner screen 3 by virtue of the positive voltage applied to the latter. The electrons upon reaching the screen 3 are traveling at a high speed so that most of them pass on through the screen and approach the outer grid 4, the negative potential of which retards the electrons and causes most of them to be attracted back to the positive screen 3. This retarding action causes a cloud of slowly-moving electrons to accumulate between the electrodes 3 and 4. Hence, the position of this cloud may be termed a "virtual cathode" because of the fact that the electrons can be easily drawn away from the cloud in the same manner that they were originally drawn away from the vicinity of the actual cathode 1. Since the screen 5 and plate 6 are at a positive voltage, a stream of electrons is drawn from the "virtual cathode", through the meshes of the grid-like electrodes 4 and 5 to the plate. Electrodes 4, 5 and 6 function similarly to the respective control grid, screen and plate of screen-grid tetrode tubes. The outer screen 5 will usually have applied to it a source of positive voltage somewhat less than that of the plate in the preferred manner of screen-grid tubes.

The electron-discharge device in accordance with this invention has been found to be very useful where it is desired to exert a control upon the action of a vacuum tube without actually introducing into a circuit or space path of that tube external elements which would not very successfully cooperate. For example, the repeating portion of the tube may be considered to have input terminals which are the outer grid 4 and the virtual cathode, and to have output terminals which are the plate 6 and the virtual cathode. Since the potential of the virtual cathode is the same as that of the actual cathode, it is found that input signals impressed between terminals 14 and 19 will be repeated at the output between terminals 18 and 14.

The desired modification of the input signals can then be effected by applying the modifying voltage to the inner grid 2, that is, between terminals 14 and 15. This modifying voltage may often be a simple alternating voltage, which then causes the entire device to operate as a modulator. The effect of the voltage on the grid 2 is to modify the electron stream which flows to the virtual cathode and hence indirectly to modify the space current between the virtual cathode and the plate.

Since the electrodes 4, 5 and 6 exert very little effect on the space current to electrodes 2 and 3, the inner and outer control grids 2 and 4 may be operated quite independently of each other. For

example, it is quite possible and convenient to vary the negative bias applied to the outer control electrode 4; and this may be easily accomplished without affecting the action of any modifying voltage applied to inner grid 2. This variation of the negative bias of the outer grid 4 is a very convenient expedient inasmuch as it permits a very simple control of the responsiveness of the device.

The non-uniform size of the meshes of control grid 4, commonly known as the variable-mu or gradual-cutoff type of grid, permits a wide range of bias voltage to be applied without causing signal distortion and without interfering with the normal action of electrodes 2 and 3.

The outer screen 5 may be omitted, but its presence greatly improves the results, particularly in obtaining the greatest responsiveness. This screen, in general, performs the function of a similar screen in the well-known screen-grid tetrode, and is therefore usually given a positive voltage somewhat less than that of the plate.

It is usually desirable to carbonize the inner wall of the glass bulb or vessel, as indicated in Figure 1 by the dotted portion of the glass; this, however, is a refinement which may be omitted.

I claim:

1. An electron discharge device adapted to function as a bias controlled signal translating device comprising a closed evacuated vessel containing a centrally located cathode, at least three substantially concentric cylindrical grid-like electrodes surrounding said cathode and being of succeedingly increasing diameters, and a cylindrical plate surrounding said electrodes, the third from the cathode of said electrodes having non-uniform grid spacings and having impressed thereupon a negative potential, and the second from the cathode of said electrodes having impressed thereupon a positive potential, whereby electrons drawn from said cathode form, in effect, a virtual cathode between said second and third electrodes, the non-uniform grid spacings of said third electrode serving to permit a wide range of bias voltage to be applied thereto without causing signal distortion and without interfering with the normal action of the innermost two grid-like electrodes.

2. An electron discharge device adapted to function as a bias controlled signal translating device comprising a closed evacuated vessel containing a centrally located cathode, four substantially concentric cylindrical grid-like electrodes surrounding said cathode and of succeedingly increasing diameters, and a cylindrical anode surrounding the said electrodes, the third from the cathode of said grid-like electrodes having a grid spacing which is non-uniform and having impressed thereupon a negative potential, and the second from the cathode of said grid-like electrodes having impressed thereupon a positive potential, whereby electrons drawn from said cathode form, in effect, a virtual cathode between said second and third electrodes, and a positive potential being applied to the fourth electrode from the cathode and to said anode, whereby electrons are drawn to said anode from said virtual cathode, the non-uniform grid spacings of said third electrode serving to permit a wide range of bias voltage to be applied thereto without causing signal distortion and without interfering with the normal action of the two grid-like electrodes nearest the cathode.

3. An electron discharge device according to claim 2 in which the grid spacing of each of said electrodes, except said third electrode, is uniform.

4. An electron discharge device adapted to function as a bias controlled signal translating device, comprising a closed vessel containing a cathode, at least three grid-like electrodes near said cathode and located at succeedingly increasing distances from said cathode, and a plate substantially surrounding said cathode and said electrodes, the third from the cathode of said electrodes having non-uniform grid spacings and having impressed thereupon a negative potential, and the second from the cathode of said electrodes having impressed thereupon a positive potential, whereby electrons drawn from said cathode form, in effect, a virtual cathode between said second and third electrodes, the non-uniform grid spacings of said third electrode serving to permit a wide range of bias voltage to be applied thereto without causing signal distortion and without interfering with the normal action of the innermost two grid-like electrodes.

5. An electron discharge device adapted to function as a bias controlled signal translating device comprising a closed evacuated vessel containing a cathode, four grid-like electrodes near said cathode and located at succeedingly increasing distances from said cathode, and an anode substantially surrounding said cathode and said electrodes, the third from the cathode of said grid-like electrodes having a grid spacing which is non-uniform and having impressed thereupon a negative potential, and the second from the cathode of said grid-like electrodes having impressed thereupon a positive potential, whereby electrons drawn from said cathode form, in effect, a virtual cathode between said second and third electrodes, and a positive potential applied to the fourth from the cathode of said grid-like electrodes and to said anode, whereby electrons are drawn to said anode from said virtual cathode, the non-uniform grid spacings of said third electrode serving to permit a wide range of bias voltage to be applied thereto without causing signal distortion and without interfering with the normal action of the two grid-like electrodes nearest the cathode.

HAROLD A. WHEELER.

March 20, 1934. H. A. WHEELER 1,951,685

PEAK DETECTOR

Filed April 1, 1931 4 Sheets-Sheet 1

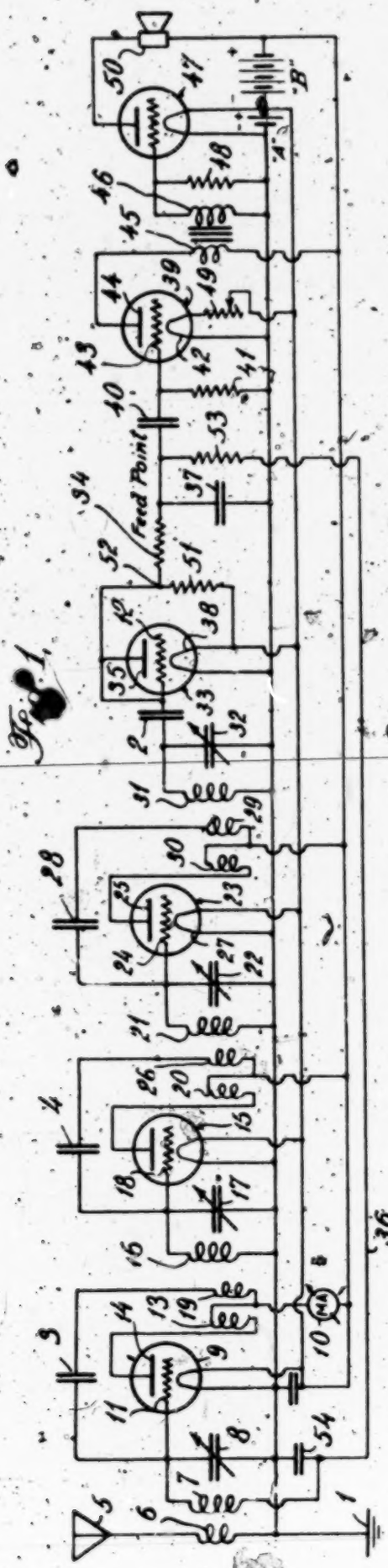


Fig. 1.

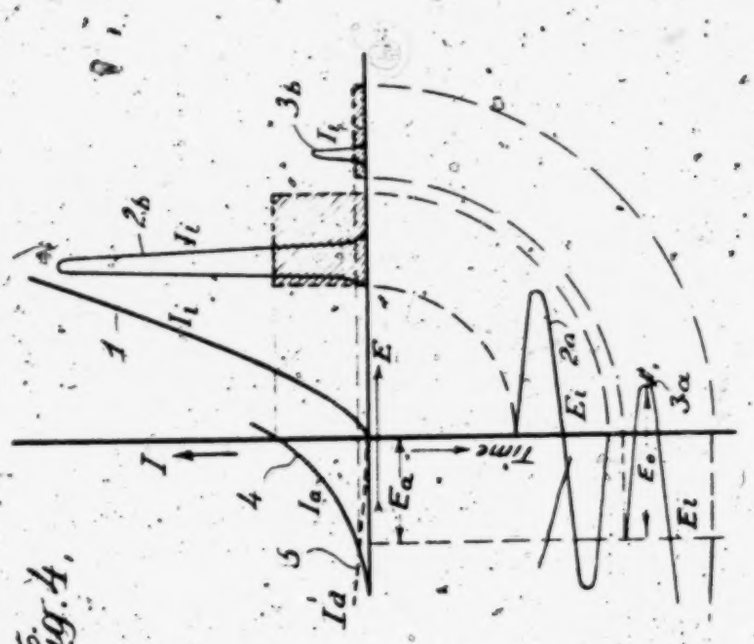


Fig. 4.

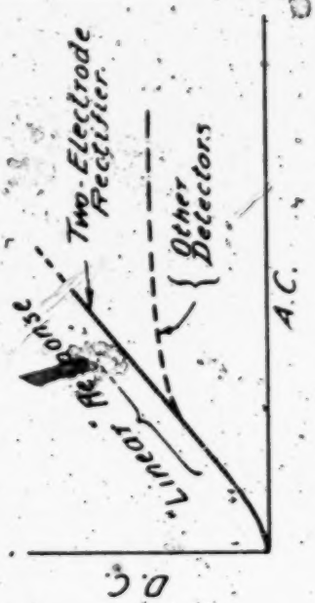


Fig. 2.

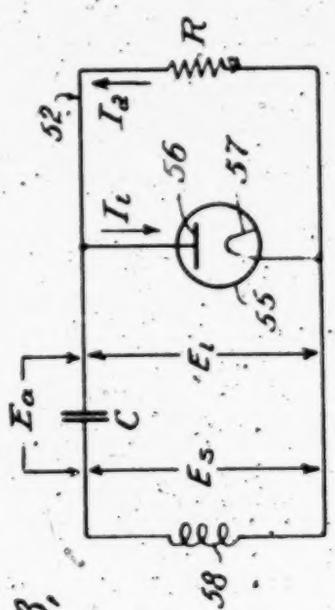


Fig. 3.

INVENTOR
HAROLD A WHEELER
BY
Pennie, Davis, Marvin and Edmonds
ATTORNEYS

March 20, 1934. H. A. WHEELER 1,951,685

PEAK DETECTOR

Filed April 1, 1931 4 Sheets-Sheet 2

Fig. 5,

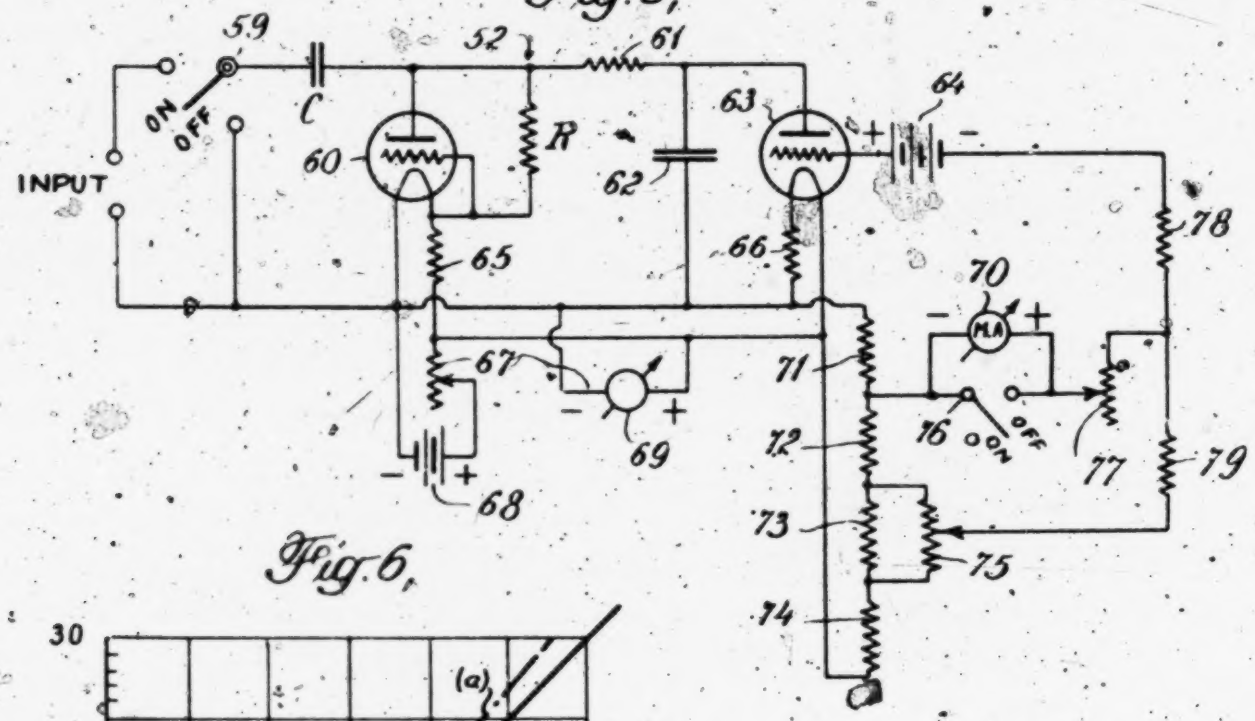


Fig. 6,

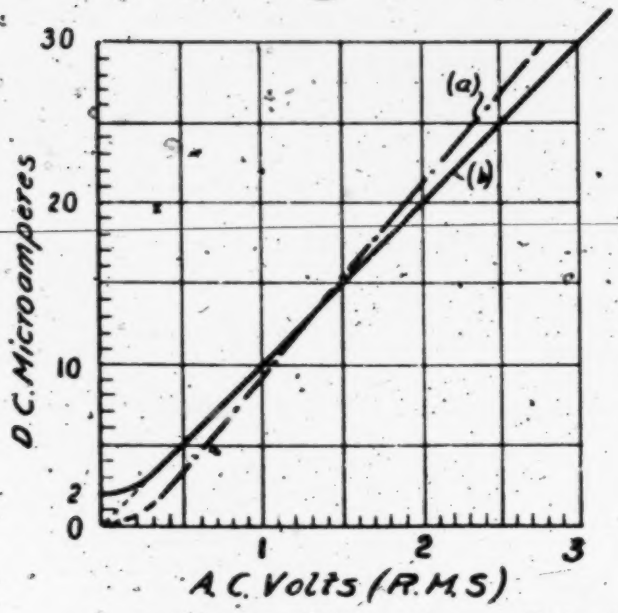
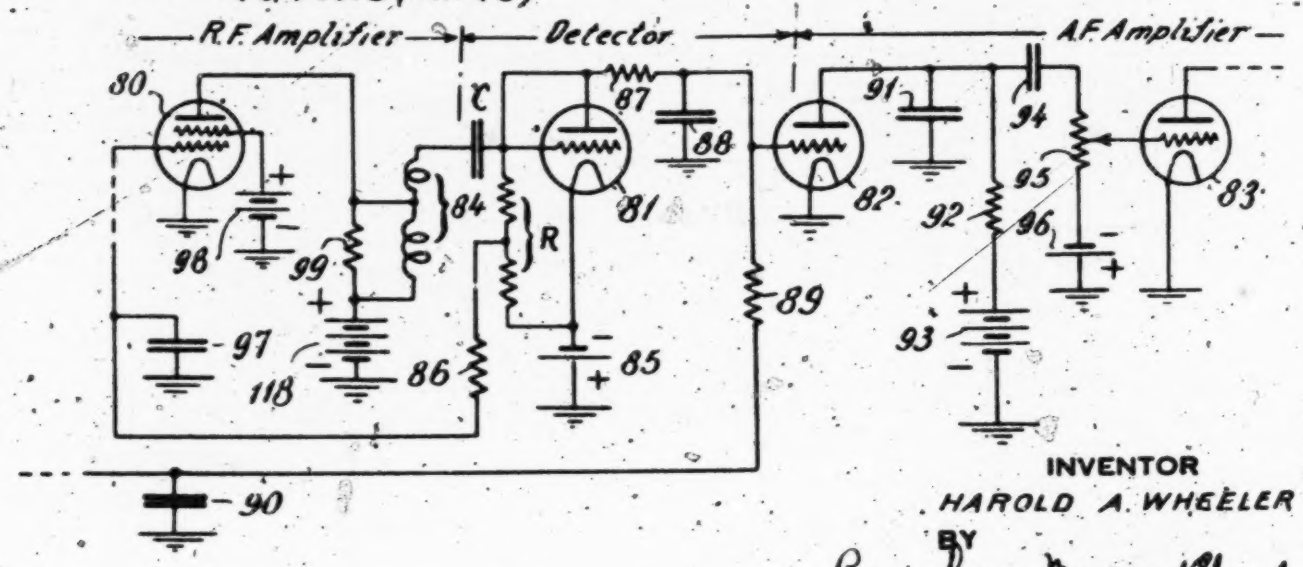


Fig. 7,



INVENTOR
HAROLD A. WHEELER
BY
Pennie, Davis, Marvin & Edmonds
ATTORNEYS

150

March 20, 1934. H. A. WHEELER 1,951,685

PEAK DETECTOR

Filed April 1, 1931 4 Sheets-Sheet 3

Fig. 8,

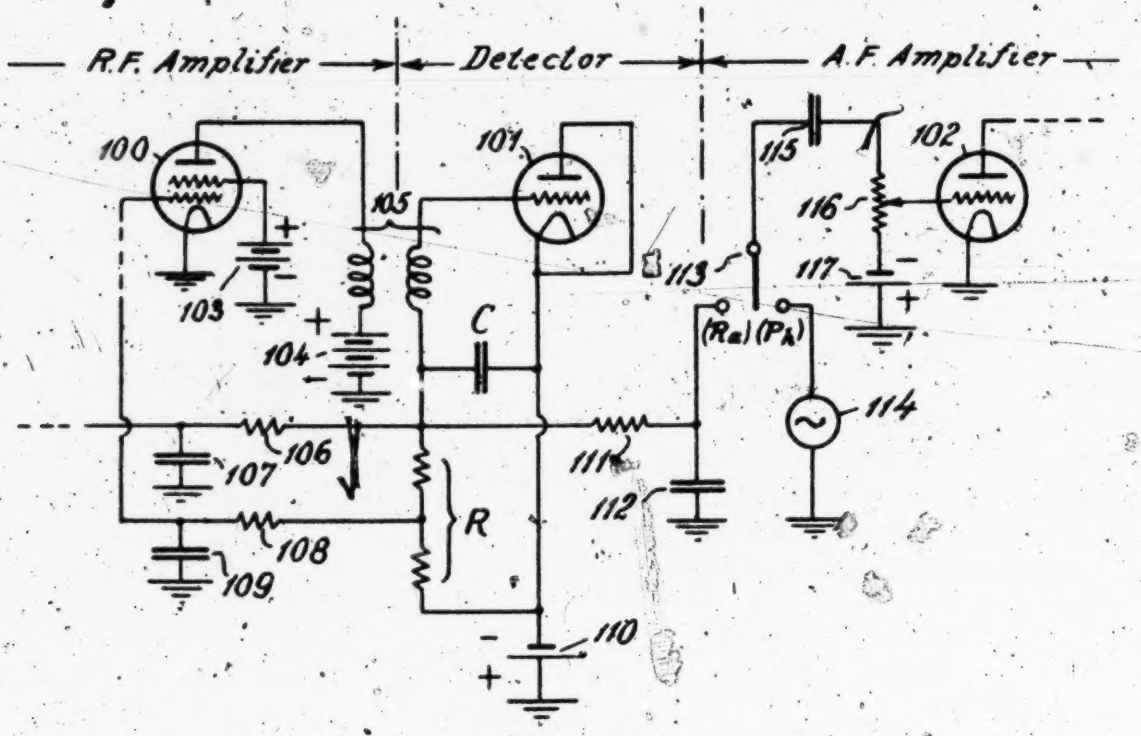
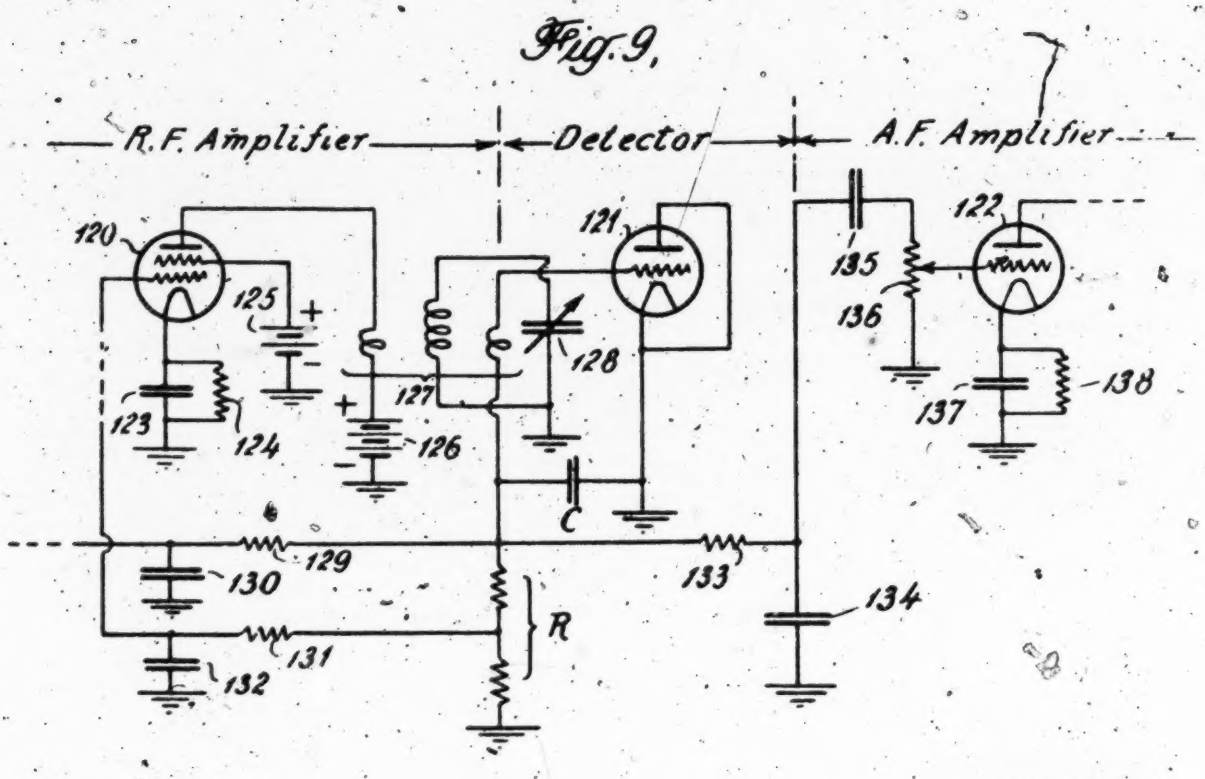


Fig. 9,



INVENTOR
HAROLD A. WHEELER

BY
Pennie, Davis, Marvin & Edmonds
ATTORNEYS

March 20, 1934. H. A. WHEELER 1,951,685

PEAK DETECTOR

Filed April 1, 1931 4 Sheets-Sheet 4

Fig. 10a,

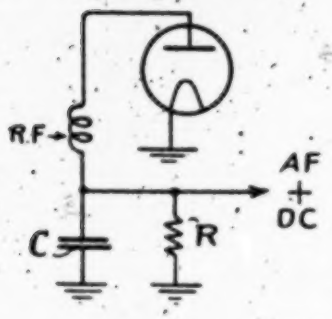


Fig. 10b,

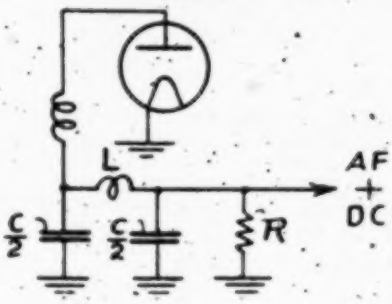


Fig. 10c,

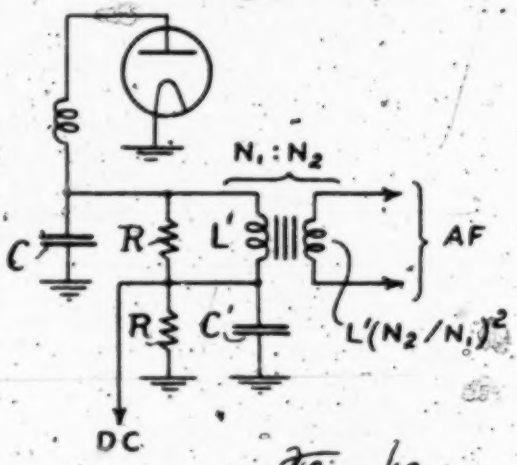


Fig. 10d,

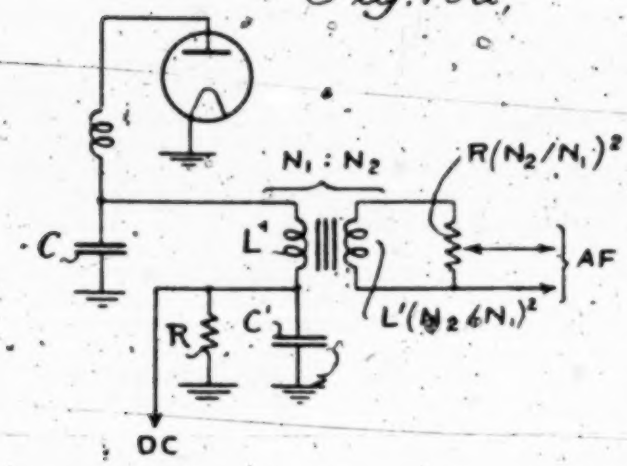


Fig. 10e,

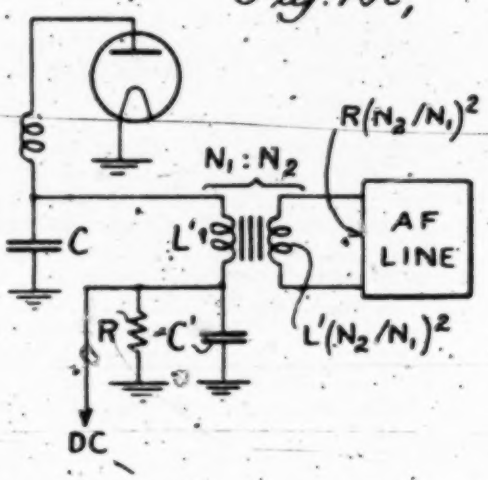


Fig. 10f,

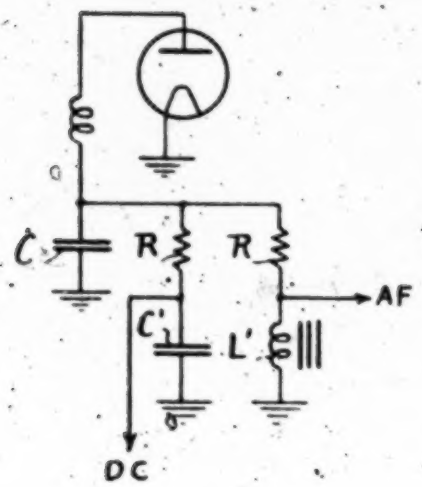


Fig. 10g,

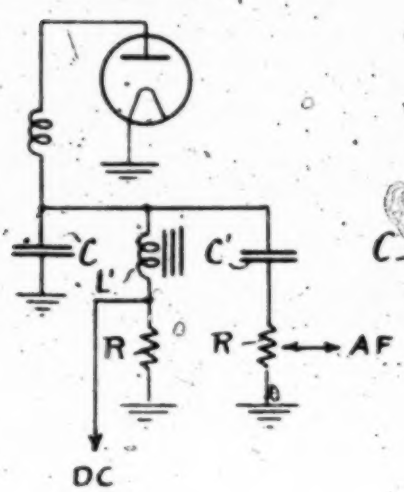
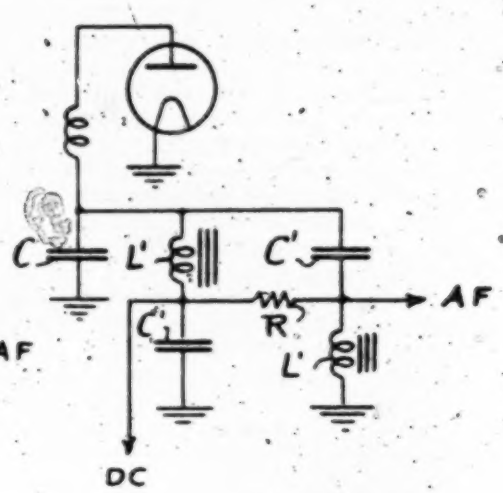


Fig. 10h,



INVENTOR
HAROLD A. WHEELER
BY
Pierce, Scheffler, Mitchell & Edwards
ATTORNEYS

Patented Mar. 20, 1934 1,951,685

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE

1,951,685

PEAK DETECTOR

Harold A. Wheeler, Great Neck, N. Y., assignor to Hazeltine Corporation, a corporation of Delaware

Application April 1, 1931, Serial No. 526,857
In Great Britain July 3, 1928

8 Claims. (Cl. 250—27)

This invention relates to signal detection and more particularly to rectifying or detecting arrangements adapted to rectify radio or carrier wave signals.

This application is a continuation in part of my copending application Serial No. 203,879, filed July 7th, 1927.

The detectors contemplated herein are of a type in which the rectified response is directly proportional to the amplitude of the applied carrier wave.

In its broadest aspect, the invention comprises a rectifying element having in series therewith a capacity across which a modulation or audio-frequency component is developed, and having in shunt therewith a high impedance through which the direct current component of the rectified response flows.

A feature of the operation of detectors of the type of this invention is that the rectifying action is effected by the peaks of the signal waves; hence they will be referred to as "peak" detectors.

Advantages derived from the use of such detecting devices are:

(1) The substantially direct proportionality or "linear" relation, between the signal voltage and the direct current component of the rectified voltage or current;

(2) The undistorted reproduction in the rectified output of the envelope of a modulated carrier signal input;

(3) The absence of undesirable overload limitations;

(4) The simplicity of operation, requiring no polarizing voltages; and

(5) Improved circuit arrangements by means of which the detector is made to respond alike to rapidly and slowly modulated carrier waves.

Detecting devices characterized by the above noted advantages are particularly well-adapted for detecting the signals at the output of a carrier-frequency amplifier which is provided with an automatic amplification regulating arrangement for maintaining substantially constant signal strength at the amplifier output. Such a combination of a carrier-frequency amplifier, a "linear" type detector and an automatic volume controlling arrangement is described in my said copending original application Serial No. 203,879, and is claimed in my United States Letters Patent No. 1,879,863 which is a division of my said application Serial No. 203,879.

By virtue of the use of a linear type detector, the carrier wave can be maintained at a substantially constant level at the output of the amplifier, and the modulation or audio-frequency component of the rectified response has the same wave form as the modulation component of the applied carrier signal.

While some of the present improvements are applicable to detectors having three or more electrodes, the invention will be described with reference to the diode detector, which has the merit of simplicity.

An important application of the invention is a vacuum tube voltmeter which comprises a "peak" detector, a direct current amplifier and a current responsive indicator which may be calibrated to measure directly the voltage applied to the voltmeter. This arrangement will be hereinafter described in detail.

An important feature of the invention is a filtering system associated with the rectifier and so arranged that the direct current component and modulation current component of the rectified response may be separated, while at the same time, the load impedance applied to the rectifier is substantially the same for both of said rectified components.

Another feature of the invention is the use as a diode of a vacuum tube having more than two electrodes. In one of these arrangements a pair of inner electrodes are utilized as the electrodes of the diode and an outer electrode is used as a shield between the inner electrodes and the surrounding space.

Fig. 1 is a circuit diagram of a complete radio receiver which includes parts of the present invention, and comprises a three-stage radio-frequency amplifier followed by a rectifier, a two-stage audio-frequency amplifier, and a loud speaker or other suitable indicating device;

Fig. 2 shows graphically a comparison between the performance of the two-electrode valve or rectifier, and that of the ordinary three-electrode detector;

Fig. 3 is a fragmentary diagram of the detector of Fig. 1.

Fig. 4 shows graphically the behavior of the diode detector of the type of this invention;

Fig. 5 is a circuit diagram of a vacuum-tube voltmeter comprising a diode detector and a direct current amplifier;

Fig. 6 shows the calibration curves of the voltmeter of Fig. 5;

Fig. 7 is a partial circuit diagram of a radio receiver having a diode detector which receives the output of an auto-transformer-coupled untuned radio-frequency amplifier stage;

Fig. 8 is a partial circuit diagram of a radio

receiver having a diode detector which receives the output of a transformer-coupled untuned radio-frequency amplifier stage;

Fig. 9 is a partial circuit diagram of a radio receiver having a diode detector receiving the output of a tuned radio-frequency amplifier stage; and

Figs. 10a to 10h are fragmentary diagrams of detectors showing various types of output networks which are equivalent to a pure resistance load insofar as audio-frequency and direct current reactions are concerned.

It may be here noted that throughout the present specification and claims the terms "rectifier" and "detector" are, in general, used interchangeably, the terms "rectifying" and "converting" being employed in the general sense to include the process of changing alternating current into a form of direct current or pulsating unidirectional current. No distinction is made between batteries and other power supply devices, which, it it well understood, can be used with substantially identical results. It is also well known that vacuum-tube cathodes may be directly heated filaments or indirectly heated cathodes, with similar results.

Referring in detail to Fig. 1, there is shown an antenna 5 connected to ground 1 through the primary winding 6 of a radio-frequency transformer, the secondary winding 7 of which, tuned by a variable condenser 8, is connected at one point to the filament of the vacuum tube 9 in the first radio-frequency amplifying stage and at another point to the grid 11 of this vacuum tube. The output circuit of this vacuum tube extends from the filament system, through a high-voltage battery "B", a milliammeter 10, primary winding 13 of a second radio-frequency transformer to the anode or plate 14 of this vacuum tube. In order to neutralize the inherent capacity between the grid 11 and the plate 14, and thereby to prevent oscillations, a neutralizing winding 19, electromagnetically coupled to winding 13, and neutralizing condenser 3 are employed in the manner described in the U. S. patents to Hazeltine, Nos. 1,489,228 and 1,533,858.

A second stage of radio-frequency amplification including the vacuum tube 15 neutralized by cooperation of coil 26 and condenser 4, like the first stage, comprises the secondary winding 16 of the last-mentioned radio-frequency transformer tuned by a variable condenser 17 connected between the filament system of the vacuum tube 15 and the grid 18 thereof. The output circuit of this vacuum tube also includes the high-voltage battery B and a primary winding 20 of a second radio-frequency transformer, while the secondary winding 21 of this transformer tuned by a variable condenser 22 is included in the input circuit of a third stage of radio-frequency amplification which includes vacuum tube 23. The inherent capacity effective between the electrodes 24 and 25 is neutralized by a network including the neutralizing condenser 28 and the neutralizing winding 29 as described in the mentioned patents. The output circuit of the vacuum tube 23 includes the primary winding 30 of a third radio-frequency transformer and the high-voltage battery B. The secondary winding 31 of this last mentioned transformer, tuned by a variable condenser 32, is connected in the input circuit of a rectifier 33 which input circuit includes the fixed condenser 2. The rectifier employed may be of the type commonly known in the art as a two-electrode "Fleming" valve, or may consist of an equivalent such as a three-electrode vacuum tube, as shown, having its grid 12 and its plate or anode 35 directly connected together to comprise in effect a single anode.

The three-stage amplifier functions in a manner well-known in the art to amplify the incoming signal intercepted on the antenna 5. The output circuit of the rectifier 33 includes what may be termed a "rejector" circuit for stopping radio-frequency currents which have passed through the rectifier, and consists of a network including a resistance 34 and a bypass condenser 37, connected between the anode 25 and the filament 38 of the rectifier. The output circuit of the rectifier is coupled to the input circuit of an audio-frequency amplifying vacuum tube 39 through an audio-frequency-pass filter including a fixed condenser 40 and an impedance 41 connected between the filament 42 and the grid 43 of this vacuum tube. The output circuit of this amplifier is connected between the filament 42 and plate 44 through the high-voltage battery B and the primary winding 45 of an audio-frequency transformer the secondary winding 46 of which is connected in the input circuit of a second audio-frequency tube 47, while a resistance 48 connected across the winding 46 serves to give the audio amplifier substantially uniform amplification over the desired frequency range. Instead of employing resistance 48, a closed copper band of suitable size may be placed around the transformer winding so as to be electromagnetically coupled thereto. A loud speaker or other reproducing device 50, or if required, a coupling device for a telephone system, is connected in the output circuit of the last audio-frequency amplifying tube 47. It is presumed that adequate precautions against undesired electromagnetic coupling between the various radio-frequency coupling transformers are included in all of the arrangements herein disclosed.

In accordance with one of the main features of my said copending application Serial No. 203,879, means are provided to control automatically the degree of amplification effected in the radio-frequency amplifying stages. These means include a resistance 51, connected between the filament 38 and the anode 35 of the rectifier, through which the pulsating rectified or converted current flows, thereby developing a negative voltage at terminal 52 with respect to the cathode 38. This negative voltage is applied over conductor 36 through the impedance 53 and the secondary winding 7 of the first radio-frequency transformer to grid 11 of the first radio-frequency stage. Impedance 53, together with blocking condenser 54, is effective to filter out and reject any audio-frequency currents which otherwise might be present in the conductor 36.

To complete the description of the system illustrated in Fig. 1 certain design data or constants are given herewith. It should be understood, however, that these, as well as all other constants appearing in the present specification, are mentioned merely by way of example in describing certain specific embodiments which in practice have proved eminently satisfactory, and are not intended to suggest any specific limitations as to the scope of this invention. Accordingly, fixed condenser 2 may be of 0.0005 microfarads; 37 of 0.0001 microfarads; 54 of 0.01 microfarads; 40 of 0.005 microfarads; resistance 51 of 1 megohm; 34 of 1 megohm; and 41 and 53 of 2 megohms each.

In the operation of the receiver shown in Fig.

1, a signal intercepted on the antenna 5 is successively amplified through the neutralized radio-frequency stages indicated by the vacuum tubes 9, 15 and 23. This amplified signal voltage is then rectified by the rectifier 33, and the rectified pulsating current is successively amplified by the audio amplifying stages including vacuum tubes 39 and 47, after which it may be reproduced as sound by the loud speaker 50. When the rectified or converted signal current flowing through the resistance 51 is greater than a predetermined value, there is developed at the terminal 52 sufficient negative biasing voltage which in turn is impressed, through the conductor 36, upon the grid 11 of the vacuum tube 9, to reduce the amplification of this tube. It will be apparent that as the magnitude of the rectified current flowing through resistance 51 decreases, the voltage at terminal 52 becomes less negative, and the negative biasing voltage impressed upon the grid 11 also diminishes so that the vacuum tube 9 effects an increased degree of amplification. In this manner, the radio-frequency voltage applied to the input of the rectifier is maintained at a nearly constant predetermined value, and the volume of the reproduced signal is substantially uniform under all conditions. The degree of volume of the reproduced signal is then determined by adjustment of rheostat 49 which controls the heating current in the filament 42 of the first audio-frequency amplifying tube 39. The neutralization of the grid-plate capacity of the radio-frequency amplifying tubes is particularly valuable in that it allows an increase in the effectiveness of the amplification control, because such neutralization prevents radio-frequency energy from passing through the grid-plate capacity of the tubes. Thus the relay action of the tubes is almost entirely subject to the control by grid bias voltage.

The time required for operation of the control system would ordinarily be determined by the lowest audio-frequency modulation which must be reproduced. Fading, for example, might be considered a form of modulation; the frequency of the rise and fall of signals due to fading being the frequency of modulation. If this frequency of modulation be increased sufficiently, the effect will be audio-frequency modulation. It will thus be seen that if the automatic control attained by the present invention be allowed to respond too quickly, it will tend to smooth out the desired modulation of the signals at the lower audio-frequencies. Hence, a time constant of operation is chosen which will be greater than the period of the audio-frequencies which the system is intended to amplify. This time constant of the control circuit is equal to the product of the series resistance and the shunt capacitance of the grid bias circuit, represented in Fig. 1 by resistance 53 and capacitance 54. However, since the time constant can always be reduced to a value equal to the period of the lowest modulation frequency, it may readily be set to meet the requirements of nearly any special case which may arise. For example, a value of two million ohms resistance and of 0.1 microfarad capacitance gives a time constant of one-fifth of a second, which does not appreciably affect the modulation at frequencies above five cycles. While this constant is less than required from the point of view of satisfactory audio-frequency quality in the reproduction of music, there appears to be no need for more rapid control under the conditions usually encountered. The use in this connection of condensers of large capacitance, such as one-tenth microfarad, likewise introduces another convenience in that the condensers may also serve to by-pass radio-frequencies in order to prevent undesired coupling between the detector circuit and the first radio-frequency amplifying tube because of some impedance common to those two portions of the apparatus.

There are advantages attending the use, in connection with the invention of my said copending application, of the two-electrode rectifier circuit typified by Fig. 1, which may not be apparent from the foregoing discussion. It is impossible to overload this type of rectifier, and the rectified output voltage is directly proportional to the applied alternating signal voltage when this voltage is large, say over two volts. The control system in the circuits of the figures referred to requires a large operating voltage, say ten volts, so that the latter condition of large signal voltage is realized. No such simple relationship is possible in a three-electrode detector whose rectified output never exceeds a limiting upper value, and is never proportional to the applied voltage, except over a very small range of voltages. This distinction will be seen from Fig. 2, where the abscissæ "A. C." represent the alternating signal voltages, and the ordinates "D. C." represent the rectified output voltages. It is well known that the linear curve is much more desirable when minimum distortion of a modulated signal is desired, and it will be observed from Fig. 2 that the preferred type of curve is obtained from the two-electrode rectifier.

The three-electrode detector is useful for relatively small applied voltages, and the rectified output voltage is then approximately proportional to the square of the applied voltage, i. e., to the power associated with the applied voltage. For this reason the rectified voltage increases with the carrier wave modulation. When such a detector is used in the control system, the total power from the radio-frequency amplifier is maintained at a substantially constant level, the amplitude of the carrier wave being decreased in the presence of modulation. It is desirable to maintain the carrier wave at a constant amplitude at the output of the amplifier, and this is accomplished by the two electrode rectifier as shown in Fig. 1. The control system maintains constant the average signal amplitude which is equal to the carrier wave amplitude and independent of the degree of modulation.

It will be observed that in a system employing a two-electrode rectifier such as represented by valve 33 of Fig. 1, the control bias voltage is independent of the B battery voltage.

In the foregoing description, a tuned radio receiver of the neutralized type has been used as an example. It should be pointed out, however, that the present invention may be employed with equal effectiveness in any radio receivers or carrier-current devices in wire-transmission or space-transmission systems. It has been found especially applicable to receivers of the superheterodyne type.

The behavior of the diode detector of Fig. 1 will now be explained in more detail, with reference to Figs. 3 and 4. In Fig. 3, the diode detector 55 comprises an anode 56 and cathode 57. The signal voltage E_s is supplied from the terminals of coil 58, and is applied to the detector through condenser C. This condenser may be called a "blocking condenser" because it prevents any electric charge on the anode 56 discharging

through any other path except the high resistance leakage path R. Condenser C has a value such that its impedance to carrier frequency currents is much smaller than that of the tube 55 with R in parallel; but also such that its impedance to modulation-frequency currents is much larger than that of tube 55 with R in parallel. The former condition allows E_s to be applied to the detector terminals without loss; the latter condition allows a rectified voltage E_a across condenser C to fluctuate in accordance with modulation of the signal.

Curve (1) of Fig. 4 shows the relation between instantaneous current I_i and instantaneous voltage E_i at the detector terminals. The curve shown is a 3/2-power curve, which is the theoretical relation of the vacuum tube. This relation is most closely attained in tubes having a unipotential cathode heated by indirect means, but the particular shape of this curve does not materially affect the results described herein. It is only necessary that the detector have practically uni-lateral conductivity.

The following theoretical discussion will serve to establish more definitely the mode of operation of the detector in the presence of a modulated carrier signal.

When there is no signal voltage E_s, the anode voltage E_i is held at or near that of the cathode by the leakage path R. Consider a sine-wave signal applied to the detector, of the form

$$E_s = E_o \sin \omega t$$

where E_o represents the maximum voltage of the wave; ω is 2π times the frequency of the signal wave; and t represents time.

The first cycle produces a voltage swing E_i shown by curve (2a). During the positive half of the cycle, the current I_i reaches a high value as shown by curve (2b). The condenser C is thereby charged negatively at an average rate indicated by the shaded area under curve (2b). This shaded area is equal to the area within curve (2b). As the condenser receives an increasing negative charge, the condenser bias voltage E_a grows in magnitude, and the positive swing of E_i is decreased both in amplitude and duration, as indicated by curve (3a). The charging rate is thereby rapidly decreased, as indicated by curve (3b). The current curves (2b) and (3b) are drawn on a time base as indicated by the broken line arcs extending from the corresponding voltage waves. The relation between the bias voltage E_a and the average rate of charge I_a is shown by curve (4). The charging rate I_a in curve (4) obviously approaches zero as the bias voltage E_a approaches the signal peak voltage E_o, because then there would be no positive swing of the anode voltage E_i.

During this process, the average rate of discharge I_d through R, is steadily increased as indicated by curve (5) and the equation

$$I_d = E_a/R$$

When the charging rate I_a reaches equality with the discharging rate I_d, the voltage on condenser C is increased no further. This final value of E_a is indicated by the intersection of curves (4) and (5).

It is to be noted that the final value of E_a is nearly as great as the signal peak voltage E_o. This results from the high value of R and the resulting small slope of curve (5) in Fig. 4. Greater values of R cause E_a to approach E_o more closely, but other factors make it necessary to keep the value of R within a reasonable upper limit. One of these factors is the requirement, stated above that the impedance of condenser C to modulation frequency currents must be much greater than that of the tube with R in parallel.

It is apparent that Fig. 4 illustrates the determination of the rectified voltage E_a for only one value of signal peak voltage E_o. A similar determination can be made either graphically or experimentally for various signal voltages, and the rectified direct current output plotted against the alternating current signal as in Fig. 2. This determination has been made both graphically and experimentally for a number of different practical cases, and the results can be summarized as follows: When the signal voltage is relatively large, the rectified voltage E_a is only slightly less than the signal peak voltage E_o, as in the example of Fig. 4. This near-proportionality between the rectified output and the signal, is a linear relationship, and this is a kind of "linear detection". This mode of operation may also be called "peak detection", in order to distinguish from other types of linear detection. Peak detection, it is noted, does not require a linear curve of instantaneous current and voltage, since curve (1) of Fig. 4 is not linear, but is a 3/2-power. The requirements for peak detection are quite different, as will be outlined below in more detail.

The first prerequisite of peak detection is a rectifier whose conductance in one direction is very much smaller than that in the other direction. This is very well satisfied by the diode vacuum tube, whose conductance in the reverse direction is zero, except for capacity currents. This is shown by curve (1) in Fig. 4.

The second prerequisite of peak detection is a leakage path or load whose conductance is very much smaller than that of the rectifier in the direction of greater conductance. This is shown by curve (5) as compared with curve (1) in Fig. 4. The extent to which this relationship is satisfied determines the degree to which the rectified voltage E_a approaches the peak voltage E_o. It is apparent that, in the limiting case of zero leakage current, curve (5) would coincide with the horizontal axis and E_a would equal E_o. It is also apparent that condenser C must be made sufficiently small to prevent additional audio frequency currents through this condenser, if the detector is to follow the envelope of a signal modulated at audio frequencies.

The third prerequisite of linear detection is a signal voltage sufficiently great to extend beyond the transition region of the rectifier curve (1), which is a small region (at the origin of Fig. 4) where the rectifier conductance is not sufficiently different in the two directions. Since Fig. 4 is intended to illustrate the behavior with high signal voltages, this transition region is drawn so small as not to be apparent. Its importance depends not only on the type of rectifier, but also on the magnitude of the leakage of load conductance.

The transition region is very small and relatively unimportant in the case of diodes having indirectly heated equipotential cathodes, but is somewhat greater in the case of diodes having filament cathodes directly heated by direct current.

The following rule, which has been derived on logical assumptions, expresses approximately the minimum value of peak signal voltage required

in most cases to extend beyond the transition region of curve (1):

$$E_o = \frac{2\left(\frac{dI_i}{dE_i} + \frac{I}{R}\right)}{\frac{d^2I_i}{dE_i^2}}$$

The first and second derivatives in the equation are those of curve (1) at its intersection with curve (5). (This intersection need not occur exactly at the origin, and frequently does not in practical cases.) The term 1/R is, of course, the conductance of the leakage path or load. This value of E_o is smaller when R is increased or when the curvature term (denominator) is increased. It is not within the scope of this application to describe the derivation of this rule.

The initial value of signal voltage required to give substantially linear detection in practical circuits ranges from 0.1 to 1 volt, and may be obtained from the above rule or by experiment. In the case of a modulated carrier, the carrier voltage must be much greater than this initial voltage because the signal voltage is at times much smaller than the average or carrier voltage. For example, the value of 2 volts mentioned above was the computed carrier voltage required to give a signal always greater than 0.5 volt when modulated up to 75%.

When the above prerequisites of peak detection are met in practice, as in the automatic volume control receiver of Fig. 1, the performance of the detector is ideal. The rectified voltage closely follows the modulation envelope of the signal voltage, and therefore the modulation wave form is not distorted in the process of rectification. (The contrary is true of the common square-law detectors, and of any ordinary detectors when operated at saturation or overload levels.) The diode detector operated to give peak detection does not have any important overloading effects because the peaks of the waves never become greatly positive; in fact, its operation is somewhat better at higher signal voltages, within reasonable limits.

Fig. 5 is the circuit diagram of a rectifying and indicating system which takes advantage of peak detection and other refinements and which has been found eminently satisfactory for many purposes. It is used principally to measure sinusoidal alternating voltages of commercial, audio or radio frequencies. Electrical constants will be given which have been employed in practice, but these may vary within wide limits without departing from the inherent improvements.

Vacuum tubes 60 and 63 may be of the 171A type having 20-ohm filaments and the triode structure of elements. Tube 60 is operated as a diode peak detector. The grid is tied to the positive filament terminal, and partly neutralizes the space charge around the filament, without serving any other function. Tube 63 is a direct-current amplifier in which the usual functions of the grid and plate are interchanged, the plate serving as control electrode and the grid as output electrode.

The unknown sinusoidal voltage to be measured is applied to the input terminals. The rectifier is thrown in operation by switch 59, and the unknown voltage is applied to the rectifier through condenser C (0.5 mfd.) which has a negligible impedance at frequencies of voltages to be measured, but prevents the flow of direct-current between input terminals and rectifier. Resistor R (5 megohms) is connected between the anode and the positive filament terminal, and serves to supply about one microampere initial anode current for tube 60. The rectifier current flows through R and builds up at point 52 a rectified voltage nearly equal to the peak of the unknown voltage.

The rectified voltage is applied to resistor 61 (1 megohm) and condenser 62 (0.1 mfd.) which filter out the alternating current component and supply a steady negative rectified voltage to the amplifier tube 63. Hence, this arrangement may properly be called a fluctuation-rejector; it tends to prevent over-loading of amplifier 63 by preventing the alternating current component of the rectified voltage from being impressed thereon.

Battery 64 (9 volts) supplies the space current of tube 63. Resistor 78 (22,000 ohms) is connected in series to make the total output resistance of tube 63 more nearly uniform thereby decreasing any distortion in the amplifying process. The microammeter 70 (100 microamperes full scale) carries the output current (about 400 microamperes) together with a nearly equal balancing current through resistor 79 (6200 ohms). Rheostat 77 (2500 ohms) is permanently adjusted to correct the slope of the calibration curve, as will be described below in more detail, but does not affect the current balance existing when switch 59 is disconnected. The meter is protected by switch 76 when not in use. The balancing current is controlled by voltage divider 75 (400 ohms).

The filaments are heated by battery 68 (6 volts). The rheostat 67 (2 ohms) is so adjusted that voltmeter 69 reads 5.5 volts. The filament voltages are further decreased by resistors 65 and 66 (each 6 ohms). The latter resistor 66 is so connected that the control electrode (plate) of tube 63 receives a slight initial negative bias through tube 60 and resistor 61. Resistors 71, 72, 73 and 74 (respectively 300, 210, 30 and 10 ohms) serve to divide the voltmeter voltage in required parts for output and balancing circuits. The filament battery therefore serves also to furnish the grid bias voltage and balancing current.

Because of the high resistance external circuits of tubes 60 and 63, the performance varies very little with tube variations, and battery voltages need not be maintained precisely constant.

The essential operation of the vacuum tube voltmeter of Fig. 5 will be described with reference to the curves of Fig. 6, which show the relations between the input alternating-current voltage and the amplified-rectified current change in meter 70. The full scale of this meter (100 microamperes) is not shown because the curves are simply linear at higher values.

As originally constructed, rheostat 77 was absent, and the initial reading of meter 70 was adjusted to zero by voltage divider 75. The calibration curves then secured were like the dot-dash curve (a), in that the meter readings did not correspond exactly to input-alternating-current voltages. It was noted that two corrections were required, one for the curvature near the origin, and another for the slope of the linear part of the curve.

In a subsequent design, correction was made for the curvature at the origin by supplying an excess balancing current of 2 microamperes in meter 70, and the slope was decreased to the correct value by the permanently adjusted rheostat 77. The rheostat 77 is therefore a sensitivity adjusting means. The final calibration

curve (b), drawn in a solid line, then shows an exact correspondence between meter current and input voltage, except at voltages below 5% of full scale. The result is a tube voltmeter which requires no reference to a calibration curve and is very accurate for measuring sinusoidal voltages from 0.5 to 16 volts (root-mean-square values). The input circuit has such a high impedance that the source of the unknown voltage may have as high as 3000 ohms impedance without causing any important error of calibration.

Because of the low filament temperatures and non-critical circuit values, there is only a minute required to reach temperature equilibrium. Thereafter, no readjustment is required during hours of use. An excessive overload does not injure the sensitive meter 70, because the plate current of tube 63 cannot fall below zero and therefore the net meter current on overload cannot exceed the balancing current, which is only about four times full scale deflection. Also the meter is not subjected to mechanical shock on overload because of the slight time lag in charging condensers C and 62 up to the rectified voltage.

Fig. 7 is a partial circuit diagram of a radio receiver employing peak detection but differing somewhat from Fig. 1. Individual batteries are shown in place of the more complex alternating current rectifiers, ripple filters and voltage dividers; it is understood that either may be employed with equal effectiveness in such circuits. Tube 80 is a screen-grid tube in the last stage of a multi-stage radio-frequency amplifier. Tube 81 is a triode with grid and plate tied together, so as to be equivalent to a diode, and is used to obtain peak detection. Tubes 82 and 83 are triodes used in the first two stages of the audio-frequency amplifier. Since the diode detector does not also amplify, it is necessary to employ one more audio-frequency stage than is customary with triode detectors. The tubes shown all have indirectly heated cathodes, the heating circuits being omitted from the diagram. Like Fig. 1, this receiver also has automatic volume control.

The voltage for the screen-grid of tube 80 is supplied by battery 98. The plate circuit includes battery 118 and auto-transformer 84. The transformer is broadly resonant over the broadcast band, and the primary is shunted by resistor 99 to make the response more nearly uniform.

The rectifier 81 receives the secondary voltage of transformer 84 through condenser C (50$\mu\mu$f.). Resistor R (0.2 megohm) is the leakage path between anode and cathode. Resistor 87 (0.25 megohm) and condenser 88 (250$\mu\mu$f.) serve to reject the radio-frequency component, but to pass the audio-frequency and direct current components of the rectified voltage to the grid of tube 82. The grid, or input, circuit of tube 82 operates as a voltage responsive device having a very high input impedance and little or no input current flow.

An automatic volume control arrangement supplies automatic grid bias voltages to the various tubes as follows: An initial negative voltage is applied to the entire detector circuit by battery 85 (3 volts). Added to this bias is a second negative component due to the rectified voltage across R. The second component serves to reduce the gain of certain tubes in the presence of a strong signal. The total bias voltage is applied to the grid of tube 82 through the radio-frequency rejector circuit 87, 88, and then also to the grids of the radio-frequency tubes preceding tube 80, through the audio-frequency rejector circuit including resistor 89 (0.5 megohm) and condenser 90 (0.01 to 0.1 mfd.). Since the radio-frequency tube 80 is required to maintain a fairly high gain, it is supplied with a smaller bias from a center tap on R, through the radio-frequency and audio-frequency rejector circuit including resistor 86 (0.5 megohm) and condenser 97 (0.01 to 0.1 mfd.).

The first two audio-frequency stages include tubes 82 and 83. Condenser 91 serves to suppress any residual radio-frequency fluctuations accompanying the amplified output of the detector. Battery 93 supplies the space current of tube 82, and battery 96 the grid bias of tube 83. Condenser 94 and resistors 92 and 95 are a resistance coupling network between tubes 82 and 83. The latter resistor 95 has a variable tap for use as a volume level control, in conjunction with the automatic volume control.

It should be understood that the element values expressed in connection with Fig. 7 and with succeeding figures are given merely to indicate values which will give good results, and should not be construed as limitations upon the invention.

Fig. 8 is a partial circuit diagram of another receiver employing both peak detection and automatic volume control. The tubes have indirectly heated cathodes. Screen-grid tube 100 is in the last radio-frequency amplifier stage. Tube 101 is a triode used as a diode peak detector, or rectifier, having two terminals, namely the anode and the cathode, the grid being used as anode, and the plate being tied to cathode and used as an electrostatic shield against any electrostatic coupling which would otherwise exist between at least one of the inner electrodes and other parts of the circuit. Tube 102 is in the first audio-frequency amplifier stage.

Tube 100 has a screen voltage supplied by battery 103 and plate voltage supplied by battery 104. An inductive radio-frequency transformer 105 couples the radio-frequency amplifier to the detector, and is designed to give nearly uniform response over the broadcast band.

The detector circuit of Fig. 8 is an improvement over Fig. 7 in that the inductive transformer 105 permits the condenser C to be inserted in the cathode lead instead of in the anode lead of the diode detector. The condenser C is connected in series between the cathode of the rectifier and the transformer 105 which is a source of alternating voltage for the rectifier. The required radio-frequency voltage is thereby impressed between anode and cathode, but radio-frequency currents are confined to the detector tube and condenser C, and are nearly absent from all other parts of the detector circuit. Condenser C (100$\mu\mu$f.) and resistor R (50,000 ohms) serve the same purposes described above. Resistor R is a leakage path across the rectifier, this leakage path having a high and substantially uniform impedance to modulation frequency and direct current and being connected between the lower end of the secondary winding of transformer 105 and ground, through battery 110. The somewhat lower value of R as compared with that in the preceding circuits, serves the added purpose of increasing the anode current and thereby making the response of tranformer 105 more uniform over the broadcast band. There is not associated with the rectifier any leakage path of lower resistance than R.

In the arrangement of Fig. 8, the cathode ter-

minal of the diode detector is required to be grounded (which is accomplished through battery 110). The condenser C is connected between the detector cathode and the lower end of the secondary coil of transformer 105. Since this ungrounded secondary coil is essentially an inductance, its resistance is low in comparison with that of R. The alternating voltage to be rectified is induced in this secondary coil from the primary coil of transformer 105. The upper end of the secondary coil is connected to the other terminal (the anode) of the rectifier.

As in the case of Fig. 7, initial and rectified grid bias components are furnished to the radio-frequency tubes by battery 110 (3 volts) and detector 101. The grid bias for the radio-frequency tubes preceding tube 100 is conducted through the audio-frequency and radio-frequency rejector circuit including resistor 106 (0.5 megohm) and condenser 107 (0.01 to 0.1 mfd.). A smaller grid bias is supplied to tube 100 from a center tap on R, through the audio-frequency and radio-frequency rejector circuit including resistor 108 (0.5 megohm) and condenser 109 (0.01 to 0.1 mfd.).

The audio-frequency amplifier is a voltage-responsive device having in its input circuit a voltage divider 116. The impedance of the amplifier, including the voltage divider, is much higher than that of the leakage path R. The audio-frequency amplifier can be connected either to the radio detector 101 or to the phonograph pick-up 114, by throwing switch 113 to (R_a) or (P_h) respectively. In the former case, the audio-frequency output of the detector is passed through the added radio-frequency, or carrier-frequency, ejector circuit including resistor 111 (0.25 megohm) and condenser 112 (100$\mu\mu$f.), in order to completely remove radio-frequency fluctuations. This latter circuit is also a direct-current rejector circuit because of the condenser 115. The pure audio-frequency output is then applied through condenser 115 (0.005 mfd.) to the voltage divider 116 (1 megohm). The variable tap on 116 to the grid of the audio amplifier serves to control the volume level of the audio-frequency amplifier output, when used with either radio or phonograph excitation. The battery 117 supplies the required grid bias to audio-frequency tube 102. The remaining side, or terminal, namely the cathode, of the input circuit of the audio amplifier is required to be grounded, as shown. Also, the grid of the audio amplifier is connected (through elements 111, 115 and 116) to the junction of condenser C and the secondary coil of transformer 105. Hence, the audio amplifier, or voltage-responsive device, is connected in parallel with condenser C and resistance R.

Fig. 9 is a partial circuit diagram of a radio receiver employing peak detection and automatic volume control, in which the detector circuit arrangement differs somewhat from the previously described arrangements. The tubes have indirectly heated cathodes. Screen-grid tube 120 is in the last radio-frequency amplifier stage. Tube 121 is a triode used as a diode peak detector, the grid being used as anode, and the plate being tied to cathode and to ground and used as an electrostatic shield against any electrostatic coupling which would otherwise exist between at least one of the inner electrodes and other parts of the circuit. Tube 122 is in the first audio-frequency amplifier stage.

Tube 120 has a screen voltage supplied by battery 125 and plate voltage supplied by battery 126. A tuned inductive radio-frequency transformer 127 couples the radio-frequency amplifier to the detector. The primary (left-hand) coil of this transformer is in the output circuit of tube 120. The secondary (middle) coil is tuned to resonance by variable condenser 128. In order to achieve certain advantages, the detector is not connected to the secondary coil, but to a tertiary (right-hand) coil coupled to the secondary.

The tertiary coil conveys to the detector only about one-third of the entire secondary voltage, thereby preventing excessive damping of the tuned circuit by the detector load conductance. The use of the separate tertiary coil also allows connecting the condenser C in the cathode return lead of the detector circuit (as in Fig. 8). Condenser C (250$\mu\mu$f.) and resistor R (0.1 megohm) serve the same purposes described above.

In Fig. 9 the radio-frequency tubes are supplied with initial grid bias voltages in a customary manner, indicated for tube 120 by series resistance 124 and radio-frequency by-pass condenser 123. An additional automatic grid bias is supplied from the rectifier voltage of the detector. The radio-frequency tubes preceding tube 120 receive the entire automatic bias through the radio-frequency and audio-frequency rejector circuit including resistor 129 (0.5 megohm) and condenser 130 (0.01 to 0.1 mfd.). Tube 120 receives a smaller additional bias through the radio-frequency and audio-frequency rejector circuit including resistance 131 (0.5 megohm) and condenser 132 (0.01 to 0.1 mfd.).

The audio-frequency output of the detector is passed to the detector output circuit through the radio-frequency rejector circuit including resistor 133 (0.25 megohm) and condenser 134 (250$\mu\mu$f.), in order to completely remove radio-frequency fluctuations. The pure audio-frequency output is then applied through condenser 135 (0.01 mfd.) to the voltage divider 136 (1 megohm). The variable tap on 136 serves to control the volume level of the audio-frequency amplifier output. The first audio-frequency tube 122 has any conventional grid bias provision, such as a series resistance 138 and an audio-frequency by-pass condenser 137.

The radio receivers of Figs. 1, 7, 8 and 9 have proven eminently satisfactory, especially with reference to the absence of distortion in the process of detection. The peak detection employed provides a rectified output which follows closely the envelope of the modulated radio-frequency signal. The achievement of peak detection is aided by the automatic volume control which maintains the detector voltage within the proper operating range, regardless of the applied signal strength.

In addition to the above improvements, a further refinement has been devised which is a desirable modification for peak detection circuits. This refinement is directed to a filtering arrangement, located at the output of the tube, and is especially useful in laboratory studies, as it enables the audio-frequency behavior of a peak detector to be determined precisely by measurements made with direct-current meters and without audio-frequency modulation of the radio-frequency signal. This refinement will be explained with reference to Fig. 10.

Fig. 10a shows the detector circuit of Figs. 8 and 9, reduced to its essential elements, namely: a diode rectifier; a radio-frequency input coil; the condenser C, and the resistor R. The radio-

frequency currents flow through condenser C, but the audio-frequency and direct-current rectified components flow through the resistor R. The direct-current load and the audio-frequency load on the detector are therefore effectively the same, and are equal to the resistance R. This is a desirable condition, because all the useful modulation of signals occurs in the audio-frequency range, and the rectified automatic bias voltages lie in the sub-audio-frequency or direct-current range. This rectifier circuit behaves alike in these frequency ranges. The audio-frequency and direct-current output components are not separated, however, and exist between the terminal represented by the arrow, and ground. The separation of these components requires additional circuit elements which generally destroy this condition of identity between direct-current load and audio-frequency load.

The structure of Fig. 10*b* has, in addition to the elements of Fig. 10*a*, a low-pass filter in which

$$R^2=L/C$$
$$f_c^2=1/\pi^2LC$$

The cut-off frequency f_c is located slightly above the audio-frequency range but much below the radio-frequency range of the signals to be received. The addition of this filter (which may include several sections like the one shown) further reduces radio-frequency fluctuations in the direct-current and audio-frequency output, but has a negligible effect on the direct-current or audio-frequency load impedance.

The filters in the succeeding Figs. 10*c* to 10*h* possess advantages over the filters of Figs. 10*a* and 10*b* in that they enable the direct-current and audio-frequency components of the rectified current to be separated. While the filter of Fig. 10*b* is shown nowhere else in Fig. 10, it is understood to be equally applicable to the other circuits of Fig. 10.

Fig. 10*c* shows, in place of the simple resistor R in Fig. 10*a*, a network R, R, L', C' which is known to have an effective resistance equal to R at all frequencies when the equation of condition is satisfied, namely:

$$R^2=L'/C'$$

This network has the ability to separate rapid fluctuations of the audio-frequency component from the relatively very slow fluctuations of the direct-current component, the dividing frequency being the resonant frequency of the reactive elements L' and C'. The audio-frequency component is shown as delivered from the secondary of an inductive transformer whose turns ratio, $N_1:N_2$, may have any desired value. The audio-frequency component exists between the terminals marked AF; and the direct-current potential exists between ground and the terminal marked DC.

Fig. 10*d* is similar to Fig. 10*c* except that the resistance R in parallel with the primary inductance is replaced by a resistance R $(N_2/N_1)^2$ across the secondary coil, the result being the same. A variable tap on this resistance may be used as a volume level control if desired, without any detrimental effect.

Fig. 10*e* is similar to Fig. 10*c*, except that the resistance R across the primary L' is replaced by a transmission line of proper impedance across the secondary coil.

Fig. 10*f* is an example using a different type of constant resistance network R, R, L', C'. The direct-current component flows in one shunt path R, C' and the alternating-current component in the other path R, L'.

Fig. 10*g* is an inverted form of Fig. 10*f*; and accomplishes the same result. In addition, a variable tap audio-frequency volume level control is indicated to be used if desired.

Fig. 10*h* employs a third form of constant resistance network R, L', L', C', C'. It has points of similarity with both Figs. 10*f* and 10*g*, and accomplishes the same result.

The direct-current output components from all the above circuits can be employed to advantage as automatic grid bias for automatic volume control, after the manner of Figs. 1, 7, 8 and 9.

The same equation of condition stated above holds for all cases of Figs. 10*c* to 10*h*. This utilization of constant resistance networks is not only useful in diode rectifier circuits, but is equally applicable and often very useful in the output circuits or other rectifier circuits, a[illegible]l of amplifier circuits. In all such cases there is the same advantage of uniform behavior toward both direct-current and audio-frequency components of the rectifier or amplifier output.

Many other applications of the improvements outlined above will be apparent but need not be discussed herein. They have also been found equally useful in superheterodyne receivers and in other special examples. It is obvious that the radio-frequency amplifiers referred to in the above cases can be replaced by amplifier arrangements of the superheterodyne or other special types.

What is claimed is:

1. A rectifying system comprising, in combination, a rectifier having two terminals, a source of carrier-frequency current modulated at modulation frequencies lower than said carrier frequency, a condenser connected in series with said source and said rectifier, a leakage path across said rectifier, and a voltage-responsive device having an impedance much higher than that of said leakage path, connected in parallel with said condenser, said path having a high and substantially uniform impedance to modulation frequency and direct currents.

2. A rectifying system comprising, in combination, a rectifier having two terminals, a source of carrier-frequency current modulated at modulation frequencies lower than said carrier frequency, a capacity element connected in series with said source and said rectifier, and a leakage element and a voltage-responsive element having an impedance much higher than that of said leakage element, connected in parallel with said condenser, the three parallel elements having a low impedance to carrier-frequency current and a high and substantially uniform impedance to modulation-frequency and direct currents.

3. A rectifying system comprising, in combination, a diode rectifier having two terminals, one of which is required to be grounded, a low-resistance ungrounded coil in which is induced an alternating voltage to be rectified, a condenser connected between one end of said coil and said grounded terminal, a connection between the other end of said coil and the other said terminal, a high-resistance leakage path across said condenser, a voltage responsive device having an impedance much higher than that of said leakage path and having one side which is required to be grounded, and a connection between the other side of said device and the junction of said coil with said condenser, whereby a rectified voltage is de-

veloped across said condenser and said device substantially free of fluctuations at the frequency of said alternating voltage.

4. The method of utilizing a space-discharge triode in a diode rectifier circuit, said triode having an outer electrode and two inner electrodes, which comprises operatively connecting said two inner electrodes in said circuit and connecting said outer electrode to ground, whereby the outer electrode is caused to shield said inner electrodes from the surrounding space.

5. A rectifying system comprising, in combination, a source of carrier-frequency voltage modulated at an audio-frequency, a thermionic diode rectifier, a condenser having low reactance at said carrier frequency and high reactance at said audio frequency, a series circuit including said source, said condenser and said rectifier, a high-resistance leakage path, without any leakage path of lower resistance, across said rectifier, an output circuit coupled to said rectifier, and a carrier-frequency rejector network interposed between said rectifier and said output circuit, whereby the latter is caused to function free of interference at said carrier frequency.

6. A rectifying system comprising, in combination, a source of carrier-frequency voltage modulated at an audio frequency, a thermionic diode rectifier, a condenser having low reactance at said carrier frequency and high reactance at said audio frequency, a series circuit including said source, said condenser and said rectifier, a high-resistance leakage path, without any leakage path of lower resistance, across said rectifier, an output circuit coupled to said rectifier, and carrier-frequency and direct-current rejector networks interposed between said rectifier and said output circuit whereby the latter is caused to function free of interference from carrier-frequency or direct-current components.

7. The method of utilizing in a diode rectifier circuit a space discharge tube having more than two electrodes, which comprises operatively connecting two of the inner electrodes in said circuit, and connecting an electrode outside of both said inner electrodes to ground for shielding against undesired electrostatic coupling which would otherwise exist between at least one of said inner electrodes and other parts of said circuit.

8. A rectifying system comprising, in combination, a rectifier having two terminals, a source of carrier-frequency current modulated at modulation frequencies lower than said carrier frequency, a capacity element connected in series with said source and said rectifier, and a leakage element and a voltage-responsive element having an impedance much higher than that of said leakage element, connected effectively in parallel with said condenser, the three parallel elements having a low impedance to carrier-frequency current and a high and substantially uniform impedance to modulation frequency and direct currents, and a carrier-frequency rejector network interposed between said rectifier and said voltage-responsive element, whereby said voltage-responsive element is caused to function free of interference at said carrier frequency.

HAROLD A. WHEELER.

Exhibit BB attached to and forming part of Affidavit of Harold A. Wheeler Civil Action 6677

May 19, 1936. H. A. WHEELER 2,041,273

AMPLIFIER VOLUME CONTROL

Original Filed July 7, 1927 2 Sheets-Sheet 1

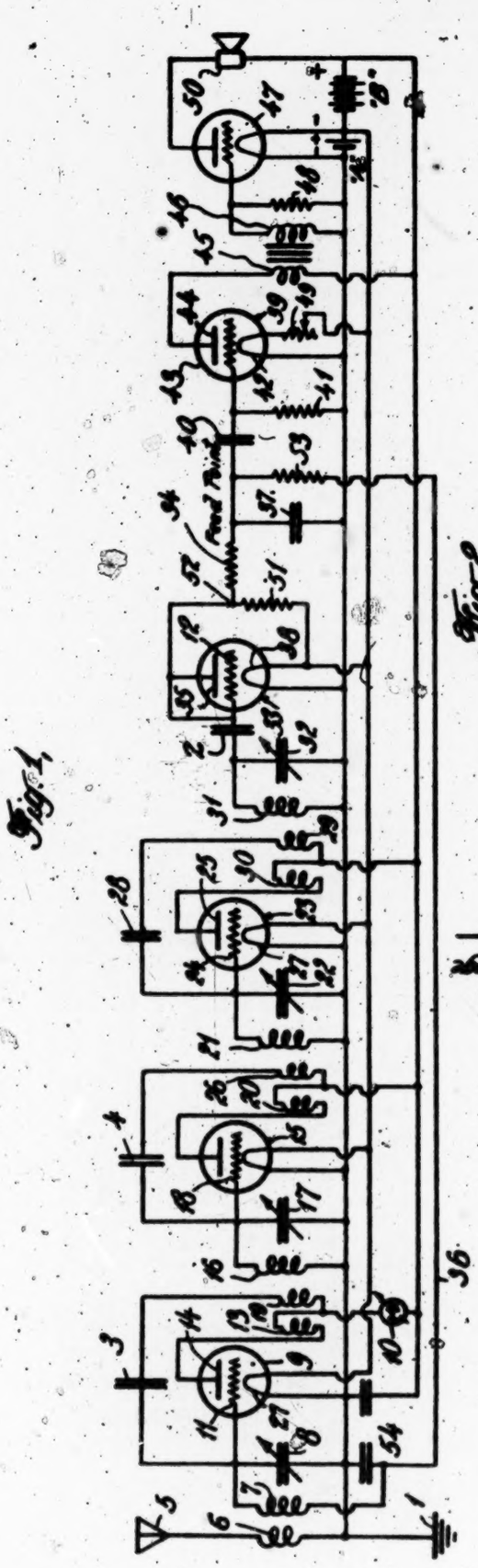


Fig. 1.

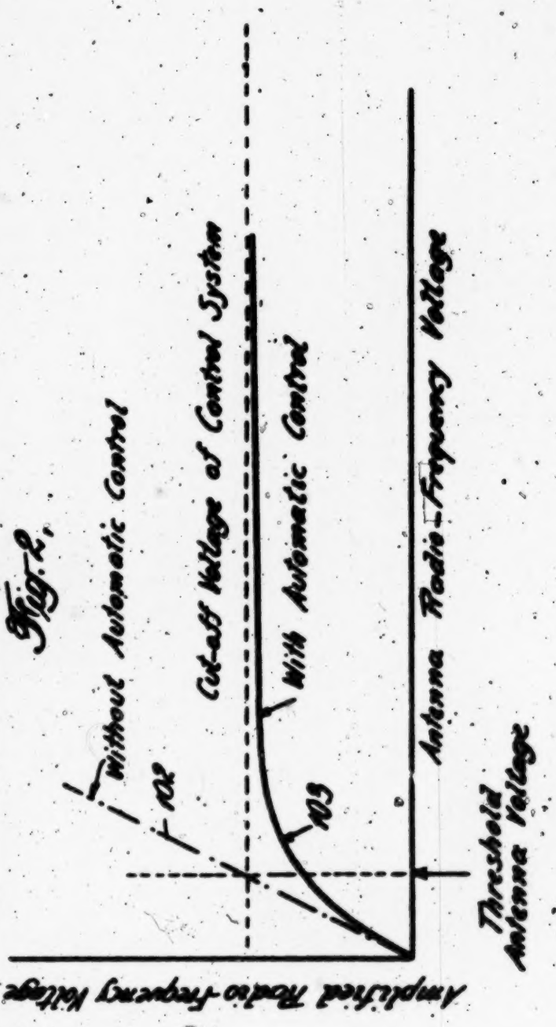


Fig. 2.

INVENTOR
Harold A. Wheeler
BY
Pennie, Davis, Marvin & Edmonds
ATTORNEYS

May 19, 1936. H. A. WHEELER 2,041,273

AMPLIFIER VOLUME CONTROL

Original Filed July 7, 1927. 2 Sheets-Sheet 2

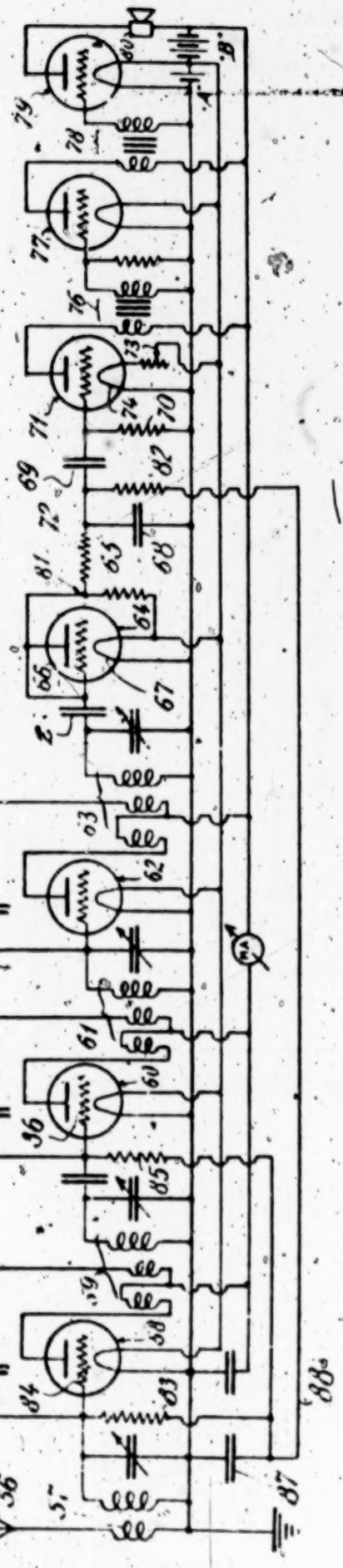


Fig. 3.

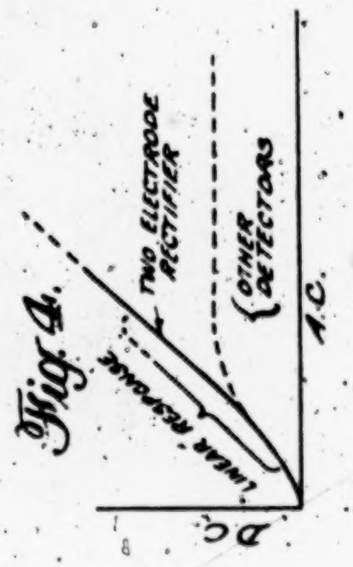


Fig. 4.

INVENTOR
Harold A. Wheeler
BY
ATTORNEYS

Patented May 19, 1936 2,041,273

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE

2,041,273

AMPLIFIER VOLUME CONTROL

Harold A. Wheeler, Great Neck, N. Y., assignor to Hazeltine Corporation, a corporation of Delaware

Original application July 7, 1927, Serial No. 203,879. Divided and this application August 27, 1932, Serial No. 630,739. Renewed June 27, 1935. In Great Britain July 3, 1928

12 Claims. (Cl. 250—20)

This invention relates to amplifiers, and more particularly to amplifiers utilized in modulated carrier-current signaling systems wherein the limit of amplification is automatically maintained substantially at a predetermined level.

This application is a division of application Serial No. 203,879, filed July 7th, 1927.

When amplifiers are employed for amplifying a signal voltage it becomes desirable for various reasons to control automatically the amplitude of this amplified signal voltage. To this end the present invention provides means for effecting automatic amplification control. Such an arrangement, for example, is particularly advantageous in radio receivers such as are employed for receiving broadcast signals, because it prevents the overloading of the last amplifier stage of the receiver, which overloading would result in distortion of the reproduced signal, as well as loud and harsh reproduction.

Another advantage resides in uniform reproduction of the amplified signal irrespective of whether the carrier-current signal is received from a nearby station or from a distant station, or from a high-power station, or a low-power station, since it has been found in former radio receivers that when the receiver was reproducing strong signals as from a nearby, or a high-power station, the audibly reproduced signal was very loud, whereas when the signal was received from a distant, or a low-power station, it was relatively weak, with the result that if signals were to be reproduced uniformly from both near and distant stations, and from high-power and low-power stations, it became necessary to readjust some volume controlling means in the receiver to compensate for these unequal signals.

It has also been a common experience in the use of former radio receivers that the reproduced signal was not uniform due to the phenomenon of "fading", whereby the received signal occasionally, or periodically, became much weaker, or faded almost to the point of inaudibility. Since the present invention provides an amplifier which automatically compensates for inequalities in the received carrier-current signal strength, when "fading" takes place the degree of amplification is correspondingly increased and the reproduced signal maintained at its former volume, so that a listener is unaware that variation of the received carrier-current signal is occurring. This automatic compensation for signal fading is especially advantageous in commercial radio telephony and like systems.

In present-day radio receivers in which operating current is derived from the municipal power system, it has been found that when there is considerable variation in the line voltage supply, the volume of the reproduced signal is not uniform. An additional advantage of the present invention is that of automatically compensating for such line voltage variations with the result that the reproduced signal is uniform in volume.

A still further advantage is the saving in plate current which is automatically effected during the reception of powerful signals, for the reason that this invention incidentally provides means for reducing the plate current of one or more amplifying tubes as the signal strength increases.

Fig. 1 is a circuit diagram of a complete radio receiver which includes the present invention, and consists of a three-stage radio-frequency amplifier followed by a rectifier, a two-stage audio-frequency amplifier, and a loud speaker, or other suitable indicating device.

Fig. 2 shows curves disclosing the relation between the radio-frequency antenna voltage and the radio-frequency amplified voltage, with and without the application of the present invention.

Fig. 3 shows a circuit diagram of a second embodiment of the invention in which there is disclosed a three-stage tuned radio-frequency amplifier, a rectifier, and a three-stage audio-frequency amplifier.

Fig. 4 shows graphically a comparison between the performance of the two-electrode valve or rectifier, and of the three-electrode detector.

Referring in detail to Fig. 1, there is shown an antenna 5 connected to ground 1 through the primary winding 6 of a radio-frequency transformer, the secondary winding 7 of which, tuned by a variable condenser 8, is connected at one point to the filament of the vacuum tube 9 in the first radio-frequency amplifying stage and at another point to the grid 11 of this vacuum tube. The output circuit of this vacuum tube extends from the filament system, through a high-voltage battery "B", a milliammeter 10, primary winding 13 of a second radio-frequency transformer to the anode or plate 14 of this vacuum tube. In order to neutralize the inherent capacity between the grid 11 and the plate 14, and thereby to prevent oscillations, and otherwise to increase the effectiveness of the present invention as hereinafter described, a neutralizing winding 16, electromagnetically coupled to winding 13, and a neutralizing condenser 3 are employed in the manner described in the U. S. patents to Hazeltine Nos. 1,489,228 and 1,533,898.

A second stage of radio-frequency amplifica-

tion including the vacuum tube 15 neutralized by cooperation of coil 26 and condenser 4, like the first stage, comprises the secondary winding 16 of the last-mentioned radio-frequency transformer tuned by a variable condenser 17 connected between the filament system of the vacuum tube 15 and the grid 18 thereof. The output circuit of this vacuum tube also includes the high-voltage battery "B" and a primary winding 20 of a second radio-frequency transformer, while the secondary winding 21 of this transformer tuned by a variable condenser 22 is included in the input circuit of a third stage of radio-frequency amplification which includes vacuum tube 23. The inherent capacity effective between the electrodes 24 and 25 is neutralized by a network including the neutralizing condenser 26 and the neutralizing winding 20 as described in the mentioned patents. The output circuit of the vacuum tube 23 includes the primary winding 30 of a third radio-frequency transformer and the high-voltage battery "B". The secondary winding 31 of this last-mentioned transformer, tuned by a variable condenser 32, is connected in the input circuit of a rectifier 33 which input circuit includes the fixed condenser 2. The rectifier employed may be of the type commonly known in the art as a two-electrode "Fleming" valve, or may consist of an equivalent such as a three-electrode vacuum tube, as shown, having its grid 12 and its plate or anode 35 directly connected together to comprise in effect a single anode.

In the absence of the present invention including the control circuit 36, to be described, the three-stage tuned radio-frequency amplifier, including the vacuum tubes 9, 15, and 23, functions in a manner well-known in the art to amplify selectively the incoming modulated-carrier signals of any carrier amplitude within a wide range, which are intercepted on the antenna 5. The output circuit of the rectifier 33 includes what may be termed a "rejector" circuit for stopping radio-frequency currents which have passed through the rectifier, and consists of a network including a resistance 34 and a by-pass condenser 37 connected between the anode 35 and the filament 38 of the rectifier. The output circuit of the rectifier is coupled to the input circuit of an audio-frequency amplifying vacuum tube 39 through an audio-frequency-pass filter including a fixed condenser 40 and an impedance 41 connected between the filament 42 and the grid 43 of this vacuum tube. As appears from the constants hereinafter given, the characteristics of this filter are such that it passes the audio-frequency component to the input circuit of the audio- or modulation-frequency amplifier, while preventing the unidirectional component from being impressed upon the input circuit thereof. The output circuit of this amplifier is connected between the filament 42 and plate 44 through the high-voltage battery "B" and the primary winding 45 of an audio-frequency transformer the secondary winding 46 of which is connected in the input circuit of a second audio-frequency tube 47, while a resistance 48 connected across the winding 46 serves to give the audio amplifier substantially uniform amplification over the desired frequency range. Instead of employing resistance 48, a closed copper band of suitable size may be placed around the transformer winding so as to be electromagnetically coupled thereto. A loud speaker or other reproducing device 50, or if required, a coupling device for a telephone system, is connected in the output circuit of the last audio-frequency amplifying tube 47. It is presumed that adequate precautions against undesired electromagnetic coupling between the various radio-frequency coupling transformers are included in all of the arrangements herein disclosed.

In accordance with the main feature of the present invention, means are provided to control automatically the degree of amplification effected in the radio-frequency amplifying stages. These means include a resistance 51, connected between the filament 38 and the anode, or output electrode, 35 of the rectifier, through which the pulsating rectified or converted current flows, thereby developing a negative voltage at terminal 52. This negative voltage is applied over conductor 36 through the resistance 53 and the secondary winding 7 of the first radio-frequency transformer to grid 11 of the first radio-frequency stage. Resistance 53, together with blocking condenser 54, is effective in producing a time constant predetermined to filter out and reject voltage fluctuations at frequencies of modulation of the selected and amplified signal, that is, any audio-frequency currents which otherwise might be applied from conductor 36 to the grid 11.

To complete the description of the system illustrated in Fig. 1 certain design data or constants are given herewith. It should be understood, however, that these, as well as all other constants appearing in the present specification, are mentioned merely by way of example in describing certain specific embodiments which in practice have proved eminently satisfactory, and are not intended to suggest any specific limitations as to the scope of this invention. Accordingly, fixed condenser 2 may be of 0.0005 microfarad; 37 of 0.0001 microfarad; 54 of 0.01 microfarad; 40 of 0.005 microfarad; resistance 51 of 1 megohm; 34 of 1 megohm; and 41 and 53 of 2 megohms each.

In the operation of the receiver shown in Fig. 1, a signal modulated-carrier intercepted on the antenna 5 is selected and successively amplified through the neutralized radio-frequency stages indicated by the vacuum tubes 9, 15, and 23 connected in cascade. This amplified signal voltage is then rectified by the rectifier 33, and the rectified pulsating current is successively amplified by the audio amplifying stages including vacuum tubes 39 and 47, after which it may be reproduced as sound by the loud speaker 50.

The high resistance 51, connected to the cathode or filament 38 and the anode 35 of the rectifier, through which a small space current flows in absence of signal output from the radio-frequency amplifier, maintains the anode normally negative relative to at least a part of the filament of the rectifier. Since all the filaments are connected in parallel, the rectifier filament is maintained at substantially the same potential as the filament 27 of the first radio-frequency amplifier tube 9. Therefore, the resistance 51 is connected effectively between the rectifier anode 35 and the amplifier filament 27, and thereby determines the normal potential of the rectifier anode negative relative to at least a part of the amplifier filament or cathode. The resistance 51, being on the order of 1 megohm, which is of a higher order than that of the resistance to current in the more conductive direction of ordinary commercial types of vacuum tubes used as diodes, is therefore a controlling factor in affecting the operation of the rectifier circuit. By virtue of the

proportions of the condenser 2 and the resistance 51, for example as given above, and the resistance of the rectifier tube 33, the rectifier circuit has a time constant substantially less than the period of the highest frequency of strong modulation.

When the rectified or converted signal voltage across the resistance 51 increases with signal output beyond a predetermined value, there is developed at the anode terminal 52 sufficient negative biasing voltage which in turn is impressed, through the conductor 36, upon the grid, or control electrode, 11 of the vacuum tube 9, to reduce the amplification of this tube. Conversely, it will be apparent that as the magnitude of the rectified current flowing through resistance 51 decreases with decreasing signal strength, the direct voltage at terminal 52 becomes less negative, and the negative biasing voltage impressed upon the grid 11 also diminishes so that the vacuum tube 9 effects an increased degree of amplification. In this manner, the radio-frequency voltage applied to the input of the rectifier is maintained at a nearly constant predetermined value, and the volume of the reproduced signal is substantially uniform under all conditions. In other words, the carrier amplitude at the rectifier is maintained above a predetermined lower limit, or within a range having a predetermined lower limit, the rectifier circuit by virtue of the aforementioned proportions of its component elements having the characteristic of linear rectification of a strongly modulated signal of any carrier amplitude within this range. The level at which the volume is maintained uniform is determined by adjustment of rheostat 48, which controls the heating current in the filament 42 of the first audio-frequency amplifying tube 39.

In the above operation it is noted that the two-electrode or diode rectifier 33 functions as the detector and also effects rectification of the carrier current to control the amplification in the carrier-current amplifier of the receiver. The audio-frequency component of the detector output is coupled to the input circuit of the audio-frequency amplifier for further amplification.

The neutralization of the grid-plate capacity of the radio-frequency amplifying tubes is, in combination with the present invention, particularly valuable in that it allows an increase in the effectiveness of the amplification control, because such neutralization prevents radio-frequency energy from passing through the grid-plate capacity of the tubes. Thus the relay action of the tubes is almost entirely subject to the control by grid bias voltage provided in accordance with this invention.

The time required for operation of the control system would ordinarily be determined by the lowest audio-frequency modulation which must be reproduced. Fading, for example, might be considered a form of modulation; the frequency of the rise and fall of signals due to fading being the frequency of modulation. If this frequency of modulation be increased sufficiently, the effect will be audio-frequency modulation. It will thus be seen that if the automatic control attained by the present invention be allowed to respond too quickly, it will tend to smooth out the desired modulation of the signals at the lower audio frequencies. Hence, a time constant of operation is chosen which will be greater than the period of the audio frequencies which the system is intended to amplify. This time constant of the control circuit is equal to the product of the series resistance and the shunt capacitance of the grid bias circuit, represented in Fig. 1 by resistance 53 between the conductor 36 and the anode terminal 52 in the direct-current connection back to the grid 11, and condenser 54 connected between the amplifier filament 27 and a point on conductor 36. Since the time constant can always be reduced to a value equal to the period of the lowest modulation frequency, it may readily be set to meet the requirements of nearly any special case which may arise. For example, a value of two million ohms resistance and of 0.1 microfarad capacitance gives a time constant of one-fifth of a second, which does not appreciably affect the modulation of frequencies above five cycles. While this constant is greater than required from the point of view of satisfactory audio-frequency quality in the reproduction of music, there appears to be no need for more rapid control under the conditions usually encountered. The use in this connection of condensers of large capacitance, such as one-tenth microfarad, likewise introduces another convenience in that the condensers may also serve to by-pass radio frequencies in order to prevent undesired coupling between the detector circuit and the first radio-frequency amplifying tube because of some impedances common to those two portions of the apparatus.

The milliammeter 16 is connected in the anode circuit of the amplifying vacuum tube 9. On receipt of an amplified signal at the detector, the effect of the control circuit is to reduce the amplification in the tube 9, and incidentally to reduce the plate current through the milliammeter 16. When the receiver is tuned to the signal frequency, a minimum amplification in this tube is required, so that the plate current of tube 9 then reaches a minimum value, and the milliammeter 16 so indicates. Thus the milliammeter visually indicates the condition of resonance.

For a better understanding of the present invention reference is made to Fig. 2 from which it will be appreciated that in a system similar to that illustrated in Fig. 1, but in which no means for automatically limiting the degree of amplification is included, the amplified radio-frequency voltage is proportional to the radio-frequency antenna voltage, as indicated by curve 102. When, however, the present invention is employed in such an amplifier, the relation between the radio-frequency antenna voltage and the amplified radio-frequency voltage is indicated by curve 103 from which it will be seen that when at least a certain predetermined radio-frequency antenna voltage is present, (herein referred to as the "threshold antenna voltage") the amplified radio-frequency voltage approaches—but is always less than—another certain predetermined voltage value (herein referred to as the "cut-off voltage").

The modification illustrated in Fig. 3 is an especially desirable form of the present invention, and includes antenna 56, connected by means of a transformer 57 to a neutralized three-stage tuned radio-frequency cascade amplifier including the vacuum tubes 58, 59, and 62 coupled by transformers 59 and 61. The last stage of the amplifier is connected by a transformer 63 to a two-electrode rectifier 64 of the type already described, the output circuit of which, including the resistance 65, is connected between the anode 66 and filament 67 of the rectifier, as previously explained. Resistance 72 and condenser 68 associated with this output

circuit, constitute a "rejector" network which filters out the radio-frequency current component in the output circuit of the rectifier 84, while the network including condenser 89 and resistance 78 constitutes an audio-frequency-pass filter for coupling the output circuit of the rectifier to the input circuit of the audio-frequency amplifier which includes vacuum tube 71. Rheostat 73 controls the heating current supplied to the filament 74 of this vacuum tube, and thereby permits a manual adjustment of the volume of the reproduced signal desired by the listener. Audio-frequency transformer 76, which is preferably of a low ratio of transformation, couples the output circuit of vacuum tube 71 to a second audio-frequency amplifying tube 77. This last vacuum tube in turn is coupled by a second audio-frequency transformer 78 to a third audio-frequency amplifying tube 79 in the output circuit of which there is included a loud speaker 80.

In this arrangement automatic amplification control is effected in the same manner as in Fig. 1, except that in this instance the radio-frequency voltage of the signals intercepted by the antenna 86 is successively amplified by three neutralized tuned radio-frequency amplifying stages including the vacuum tubes 88, 90, and 92, of which two are controlled in accordance with the present invention: The amplified radio-frequency current is rectified by the rectifying valve 94, and successively amplified at audio-frequency by the vacuum tubes 71, 77, and 79. The rectified current in the output circuit of the rectifier flows through the resistance 95, and thereby develops a negative voltage at the terminal 81, which voltage is applied through the impedances 72, 82, 83, and 85 to the grids 94 and 96 of the radio-frequency amplifying tubes 88 and 90. By thus simultaneously controlling the degree of amplification of two successive radio-frequency amplifying stages a greatly increased uniformity of regulation is attained. Resistance 82 and the condenser 87 constitute an audio-frequency-stop filter, so that substantially only direct-voltage is impressed upon the grids 94 and 96. It will be understood that the voltage developed at terminal 81 is a function of the amplified radio-frequency voltage delivered to the input circuit of the rectifier by the radio-frequency amplifying tubes 88, 90, and 92, and therefore, as the negative voltage at terminal 81 tends to increase with the increased signal, the resulting increase of biasing voltage impressed upon the grids of the tubes 88 and 90 limits the degree of amplification effected in the radio-frequency stages including those tubes.

In this arrangement the constants for the various resistances and condensers may, for example, be the same as those for the corresponding elements in Fig. 1. In addition the grid resistances 82 and 85 may have a value of 2 megohms each; and the grid condensers connected at the junction of these resistances and the grid electrodes 94 and 96 may each be of 0.001 microfarad capacity.

In Figs. 1 and 3 the variable tuning condensers are grounded in order to eliminate undesired capacity effects as well as to make it practicable to connect the condensers on a single shaft for unicontrol, if desired.

There are advantages attending the use, in connection with the present invention, of the two-electrode rectifier circuit typified by Figs. 1 and 3, which may not be apparent from the foregoing discussion. It is impossible to overload this type of rectifier, and the rectified output voltage is directly proportional to the applied alternating signal voltage when this voltage is large, say over two volts. The control system in the circuits of the figures referred to requires a large operating voltage, say ten volts, so that the latter condition of large signal voltage is realized. No such simple relationship is possible in a three-electrode detector, whose rectified output never exceeds a limiting upper value, and is never proportional to the applied voltage, except over a very small range of voltages. This distinction will be seen from Fig. 4 where the abscissae "A. C." represent the alternating signal voltages, whereas the ordinates "D. C." represent the rectified output voltages. It is well known that the linear curve is much more desirable when minimum distortion of a modulated signal is desired, and it will be observed from Fig. 4 that the preferred type of curve is obtained from the two-electrode rectifier.

A further advantage of the "linear" type detector with the automatic volume control connection and a visual resonance indicator in the anode circuit of the amplifier whose grid bias is being automatically controlled, lies in the fact that the visual resonance indicator will give an indication which is proportionate to the received signal intensity. This follows from the fact that the negative grid bias on the amplifier is directly proportional to the strength of the signal; and hence the anode current bears a similar relation to the signal.

While a three-electrode detector is useful in certain arrangements for relatively small applied voltages, the rectified output voltage is approximately proportional to the square of the applied voltage, i. e., to the power associated with the applied voltage. For this reason the rectified voltage increases with the carrier wave modulation. When such a detector is used in an automatic amplification control system, the total power from the radio-frequency amplifier is maintained at a substantially constant level, the amplitude of the carrier wave being decreased in the presence of modulation. It is desirable to maintain the carrier wave at a constant amplitude at the output of the amplifier, and this is accomplished by the diode rectifier as shown in Figs. 1 and 3. The control system maintains constant the average signal amplitude which is equal to the carrier wave amplitude and independent of the degree of modulation.

It will be observed that in a system employing a two-electrode rectifier such as represented by valve 23 of Fig. 1, and 84 of Fig. 3, the control bias voltage is independent of the "B" or anode battery voltage. Since the diode rectifier is not an amplifier, is not critical, and requires neither anode nor biasing battery, no adjusting devices are required.

In the foregoing description, tuned radio-frequency receivers of the neutralized types have been referred to. It should be pointed out, however, that the present invention may be employed with equal effectiveness to any radio receivers in wired radio and space radio systems, and that it has been found especially applicable to receivers of the super-heterodyne type.

It is well known that the common "B" battery may be replaced by a source of rectified and filtered alternating current, and, in the event that tubes having indirectly heated cathodes are used instead of those having incandescent directly heated filament cathodes, the common "A" battery may be replaced by a source of alternating current.

For these reasons the present disclosure of typical embodiments of the invention should not be construed as a limitation, but merely as illustrative of the principles of the invention, the scope of which is defined in the appended claims.

I claim:

1. An audion amplifier including an audion for signal wave amplification, an output circuit, and means limiting fluctuations in said output circuit due to variations in the strength of an incoming signal, said means comprising a diode rectifier for incoming signal energy, and means for impressing upon the grid of said audion a direct current bias voltage derived from said rectifier, said rectifier being of the type having approximately linear relation between direct current output and radio frequency input.

2. In a carrier wave receiving system, a rectifier of received signals coupled to a signal indicating device, and means automatically maintaining the output of said rectifier within a narrow range for wide variations in amplitude of the received carrier, the output of said rectifier being, throughout said narrow range, linearly related to its input, thereby to minimize distortion of signals relayed to said indicating device.

3. In a carrier wave receiving system, a rectifier of received signals coupled to a signal indicating device, the output of said rectifier being, over a limited range, linearly related to its input, and means automatically maintaining the output of said rectifier within said linear range for wide variations in amplitude of the received carrier, thereby to minimize distortion of signals relayed to said indicating device.

4. In a carrier wave receiving system in cascade, a vacuum tube having a control grid, a rectifier, and a signal indicating device, and means applying to said control grid a biasing voltage derived from said rectifier for automatically maintaining the rectified output within a narrow range for wide variations in amplitude of the received carrier, the output of said rectifier being, throughout said narrow range, linearly related to its input.

5. In a carrier wave receiving system in cascade, a vacuum tube having a control grid, a rectifier, and a signal indicating device, the output of said rectifier being throughout a limited range, linearly related to its input, and means for applying to said control grid a biasing voltage derived from said rectifier for automatically maintaining the output of said rectifier within said linear range for wide variations in amplitude of the received carrier.

6. In a carrier wave receiving system, a rectifier, means relaying high frequency signals thereto including a vacuum tube having a control grid, means applying to said control grid a biasing voltage derived from said rectifier for automatically maintaining the rectified output within a range which is small compared to variations in carrier amplitude impressed on said system, the output of said rectifier being throughout said small range, linearly related to its input, whereby said biasing voltage is determined solely by the carrier amplitude unaffected by modulation thereof.

7. In a carrier wave receiving system, a rectifier, means relaying high frequency signals thereto including a vacuum tube having a control grid, the output of said rectifier being, throughout a limited range, linearly related to its input, and means for applying to said control grid a biasing voltage derived from said rectifier for automatically maintaining the rectified output within said linear range for wide variation in amplitude of the received carrier, whereby said biasing voltage is determined solely by the carrier amplitude unaffected by modulation thereof.

8. In a modulated-carrier signal receiver for receiving a signal of any carrier amplitude within a wide range, a rectifier having the characteristic of linear rectification of a strongly modulated signal of any carrier amplitude above a predetermined lower limit, and means responsive to the carrier amplitude for automatically maintaining the carrier amplitude at said rectifier within a range determined by said lower limit and the overload point of the receiver.

9. In a modulated-carrier signal receiver for receiving a signal of any carrier amplitude within a wide range, a diode rectifier having the characteristic of linear rectification of a strongly modulated signal of any carrier amplitude above a predetermined lower limit, the circuit of said rectifier having a load impedance much greater than the diode resistance to current in the more conductive direction, and means responsive to the carrier amplitude for automatically maintaining the carrier amplitude at said rectifier within a range immediately above said lower limit and of lower order of magnitude than the range of the received signals.

10. In a modulated-carrier signal receiver for receiving a signal of any carrier amplitude within a wide range, an amplifier in which the amplification varies with a bias voltage applied thereto, a rectifier having the characteristic of linear rectification of a strongly modulated signal of any carrier amplitude above a predetermined lower limit, means for coupling the output of said amplifier to said rectifier, and means for applying to said amplifier as a bias voltage a rectified-carrier voltage from said rectifier, and thereby automatically maintaining the carrier amplitude of said amplifier output within a range predetermined by said lower limit and the overload point of the receiver.

11. In a modulated-carrier signal receiver for receiving a signal of any carrier amplitude within a wide range, an amplifier in which the amplification varies with a bias voltage applied thereto, a rectifier having the characteristic of linear rectification of a strongly modulated signal of any carrier amplitude above a predetermined lower limit, said rectifier circuit having a time constant substantially less than the period of the highest frequency of strong modulation, means for coupling the output of said amplifier to said rectifier, and a coupling circuit for applying to said amplifier a bias voltage which varies with the rectified carrier voltage from said rectifier, said amplifier, rectifier and coupling circuit being relatively proportioned to maintain the carrier amplitude at said rectifier within a range immediately above said lower limit and of a lower order of magnitude than the range of the received signals, and said coupling circuit having a time constant greater than the period of the lowest frequency of strong modulation, for causing said bias voltage to vary only with the signal carrier amplitude and not with signal modulation.

12. In a modulated-carrier signal receiver for receiving a signal of any carrier amplitude within a wide range, a diode rectifier, a condenser connected in series with said rectifier, a leakage path across said rectifier having to modulation-

frequency current and direct current a substantially uniform resistance of a higher order than that of said rectifier to current in its more conductive direction, whereby said rectifier has the characteristic of linear rectification of a strongly modulated signal of any carrier amplitude above a predetermined lower limit, and means responsive to the carrier amplitude for automatically maintaining the input carrier amplitude at the rectifier within a range immediately above said lower limit and of a lower order of magnitude than the range of the received signals.

HAROLD A. WHEELER.

No. 66 77. Daniel Patton

(9)

The cause was then continued to the December Term, 1947, when on Febuary 2, 1948, the following Countermotion for Summary Judgment was filed by the defendant:

DEFENDANT'S COUNTERMOTION FOR SUMMARY JUDGMENT.

[Filed February 2, 1948.]

Defendant moves this court for a summary judgment dismissing the complaint herein on the following grounds:

1. Plaintiff's patents have been so misused by plaintiff and its predecessor as to render them unenforceable and, hence, plaintiff is not entitled to any recovery from defendant. Said misuse has included:

(a) Requiring its licensees to apply patent marking notices to radio sets made by them, which notices include restrictions as to the permitted use of the sets by the purchasers thereof.

(b) Requiring its licensees to mark on radio sets made by them patents which are not used in said sets and which are invalid.

(c) The coercive entry of a consent decree on December 3, 1941, in the case of *Halzeltine Corporation* v. *Automatic Radio Manufacturing Company, Inc.*, Superior Court, Suffolk County, Massachusetts, Equity No. 47,229; which decree is void as being contrary to public policy.

(d) Requiring its licensees to sign license agreements which are so oppressive in their terms as to be contrary to public policy and void.

(e) Requiring its licensees to pay royalties on all radio sets sold by them, whether or not said sets employ the inventions of any of plaintiff's patents and whether or not said patents are invalid.

(f) Improperly using its patents to compel others to assign to plaintiff, or its predecessors, rights under patents owned by them.

(g) Refusing to grant a license under any one or more of its patents to anyone who refuses to take a license under all.

(h) Suing and threatening to sue, and otherwise harassing customers of radio manufacturers refusing to take a license under its patents and coercing radio manufacturers to take licenses under its patents by threats of repeated, expensive law suits.

(i) Forcing its licensees to pay royalties on radio tubes purchased by them from the Radio Corporation of America, which company has a license from plaintiff to make and sell said tubes under plaintiff's patents and which tubes were, therefore, freed from said patents at the time of their purchase, thereby enforcing the payment of royalties on unpatented tubes.

(j) Amassing a vast number of radio patents not for use, but for the purpose of coercing the payment of royalties on all radio sets.

2. The license agreement between the parties is invalid and void and unenforceable against defendant for the following reasons:

(a) Said agreement is so oppressive and unconscionable in its terms as to be void as against public policy.

(b) Said agreement was breached in its inception, and has been continuously breached since, by the failure of plaintiff and its predecessors to prosecute alleged infringers of its patents diligently.

(c) For failure of consideration, plaintiff and its predecessors having no valid patents covered by said license, and for eviction from said license due to the decisions of the courts holding the best of said patents invalid and not infringed during the term of the license.

(d) Because plaintiff's patents have been misused and are unenforceable.

(e) Said agreement requires the payment of patent royalties on devices and parts thereof not covered by plaintiff's patents; and on parts already licensed and thereby freed from plaintiff's patents.

This motion is made on the ground that there is no genuine issue as to any material fact necessary to support this motion.

In support of said motion defendant relies upon the pleadings herein, the license agreement between the parties, copy of which was filed with the complaint as Exhibit A, defendant's interrogatories and plaintiff's answers thereto, including Exhs. B through N annexed to said answers, the motion of plaintiff for a summary judgment, the affidavits supporting and opposing plaintiff's said motion, and the attached affidavit of George K. Woodworth.

GEORGE K. WOODWORTH,
Attorney for Defendant.
Office and P.O. Address
19 Congress Street
Boston 9, Massachusetts

FLOYD H. CREWS
DARBY & DARBY
Of Counsel
Office and P.O. Address
405 Lexington Avenue
New York 17, N. Y.

Dated: Boston, Massachusetts
February 2, 1948

Affidavit of George K. Woodworth in Support of Defendant's Counter Motion for Summary Judgment.

Commonwealth of Massachusetts
County of Suffolk, ss.:

George K. Woodworth, being first duly sworn, deposes and says:

1. I am an attorney at law, with an office at 19 Congress Street, Boston 9, Massachusetts, and specialize in the practice of patent law.

Automatic Radio Manufacturing Company, Inc., the defendant in this action, which is engaged in the manufacture and sale of radio receivers, has been a client of mine in connection with its patent problems arising in this business since 1925.

This affidavit is made on information and belief, except as to matters of public record and as to matters stated to be within my own knowledge.

2. (a) The Hazeltine Corporation, of which plaintiff is a wholly owned subsidiary, was organized in 1924 to exploit the invention of Professor Hazeltine, of the Stevens Institute of Technology, of the neutrodyne radio circuit. Professor Hazeltine took out three patents to cover this circuit, all of which were held valid and infringed by the courts as follows:

Hazeltine Patent No. 1,450,080 held valid and infringed at 18 Fed. (2d) 662.

Hazeltine Patent No. 1,489,228 held valid and infringed at 21 Fed. (2d) 643.

Hazeltine Patent No. 1.533,858 held valid and infringed at 21 Fed. (2d) 643
34 Fed. (2d) 635, certiorari denied 74 L. Ed. 237
47 Fed. (2d) 573
52 Fed. (2d) 504
59 Fed. (2d) 203

(b) There are several corporations bearing the name of Hazeltine. All are under common ownership and are referred to herein as "Hazeltine".

(c) Professor Hazeltine himself and Hazeltine collected millions of dollars in royalties under these neutrodyne patents.

(d) The screen grid tube was introduced commercially in 1927 and came into general use in 1929. It made Professor Hazeltine's neutrodyne patents obsolete and they have not been used in any radio set since about 1929.

(e) Hazeltine had in the meantime, however, started assembling patents by purchase and by hiring engineers in the hope that they would make patentable inventions. It had also pursued a very aggressive patent enforcement policy, filing large numbers of suits and threatening many others. On the basis of this aggressive policy and its added patents it has continued to collect royalties from the radio industry up to the present time, and still collects royalties, although no patent owned by Hazeltine has ever been held to be valid and infringed since the original Hazeltine neutrodyne patents.

(f) Hazeltine has continued through the years to be very active in assembling patents originating in its own laboratories and acquired from others, so that at the present time, as stated in Mr. Binns' affidavit, it has something like 770 patents and patent applications.

(g) Hazeltine operates on a fundamental fallacy. That fallacy is that inventions can be made to order. It hires engineers and puts them to work in the hope that they will make patentable inventions of value, and files patent applications on every engineering advance originating with its engineers on the erroneous assumption that every engineering improvement made, however trivial, is entitled to patent protection. No manufacturer has ever been accused of infringing more than 22 Hazeltine patents.

(h) Hazeltine does not, however, spend any very substantial portion of the monies received in royalties from the manufacture of radio receivers, in research looking to the improvement of radio

receivers. Indeed, during 1941, the last year prior to the war, not more than some 5% of Hazeltine's income was put into research on radio receivers and probably less than 5% was expended thereon. In that year 80% of its research money was spent on television as shown in paragraph numbered 7(a) hereof and it has paid taxes, dividends, litigation, expenses, royalty collection expenses, patent expenses and overhead, so that probably considerably less than 50% of its patent royalty income went into any kind of research. If we assume 50%, and assume that the entire balance of 20% of research money went into radio research, that makes only 20% of 50%, or 10% of radio royalties put into radio research. Even on this high figure, considering the markup from manufacturer to consumer, for every dollar paid by the public as tribute to Hazeltine patents in 1941, not more than 3 cents was spent by Hazeltine in radio research on radio receivers. During the year 1946 Hazeltine paid its officers and directors in excess of $250,000.

(i) Hazeltine has collected over the years, on the order of $50,000,000 in royalties from radio manufacturers for the manufacture of radio receiving sets. As the mark-up on any manufactured article from the manufacturer to the ultimate consumer is 3 to 1 or more, this represents some $150,000,000 that the public has paid on account of the Hazeltine patents, but only some 5% or less of this money has been paid for sets using the Hazeltine neutrodyne circuit. The remainder, or well over $100,000,000, was paid for patents which were invalid or were not being used, or both.

(j) The Bell Telephone Laboratories makes a practice of hiring regularly highly selected engineering graduates of the best engineering schools in the United States. From these engineers it derives an average of approximately one invention per man for each ten years of service. Some 1% of these engineers produce hundreds of inventions each. If these prolific inventors were eliminated from the analysis, the remaining engineers would pro-

duce something like an average of one invention for each 30 or 40 years of service, or an average of one in a lifetime, or less.

(k) It will thus be seen that inventors cannot be hired by any process of selection. It is just as difficult to predict which of a group of brilliant young men will be an inventor as it is to predict what boy will make a fortune. Inventors cannot be selected, and inventions cannot be made on order, nor, on the basis of all the evidence available, does it appear that engineering or other technical training increases the likelihood that a person will make inventions.

(l) If a company hires ten research men and puts them to work in a laboratory, there is no assurance that a valuable invention will come out of that laboratory. There is a large element of luck involved, and that element of luck includes the nature of the work to which the research men are assigned. The Patent Office records show thousands of arts which have advanced for years and then become stagnant.

(m) In the radio art, the Radiola 66 radio receiver was produced by the Radio Corporation of America in 1929, and marked with 104 patents belonging to the RCA radio patent pool, all of which have now expired. That radio receiver was a modern high quality receiver by today's standards, and could not be distinguished from a 1948 receiver in a blindfold test. It is highly questionable whether a patentable invention relating to radio receivers has been made since 1929 or for some years prior thereto. At the present time, the Radio Corporation of America does not have a single patent of its own or among the 10,000 patents of the radio patent pool which it controls, which has been adjudicated and held valid. Such improvements as have been made in radio receivers since 1929 have been in the nature of detailed engineering improvements reducing the cost of manufacture, and changes in styling of the cabinets, if these be called improvements.

3. There is now pending in the Superior Court of Suffolk County, for the Commonwealth of Massachusetts, a bill of review to set aside the final decree entered in that Court on De-

cember 3, 1941, in the case of *Hazeltine Corporation* v. *Automatic Radio Manufacturing Company, Inc.*, Equity No. 47,229, on the ground that said decree is void and of no effect for the reason that it is contrary to public policy as established by the Supreme Court of the United States in the case of *Pope* v. *Gormully*, 144 U.S. 224, in that it decrees that all of Hazeltine's hundreds of patents are valid for their entire terms and also decrees the validity and infringement of Hazeltine patents which had expired prior to the entry of said decree. A copy of said decree is Exhibit R attached to the affidavit of John R. Binns filed with plaintiff's motion for summary judgment in this case. The Hazeltine patents listed in said decree as being valid and infringed, which patents had expired at the time of the entry of said decree, with the date of expiration of each, are as follows:

Patentee	Patent No.	Issued	Expired
Latour	1,382,738	June 28, 1921	June 28, 1938
Latour	1,405,523	Feb. 7, 1922	Feb. 7, 1939

4. (a) The license agreement between the parties hereto which was entered into to be effective as of September 1, 1942 (Exhibit A attached to the complaint), contains in Article IV, Section 1, found on page 5 of said agreement, a clause requiring defendant to pay royalties on all radio sets made by it, whether said sets used any one or more, or none, of plaintiff's patents. Said provision reads as follows:

> "Section 1. Licensee agrees to pay to Licensor upon each complete apparatus identified in Article III, Section 2, sold by Licensee during continuance of this license royalties as follows: . . ."

That said provision is intended to require payment on all sets made by defendant, and has been so interpreted and enforced by plaintiff, is proved by plaintiff's motion for summary judgment, which states on page 2 that in support of the motion, plaintiff relies on—

"(b) the license agreement between the parties, a copy of which was filed with said complaint as Exhibit A, which provides for the payment of royalties on all radio broadcast receivers manufactured and sold by defendant and for certain minimum annual royalties; . . ."

(b) Further proof is found in the affidavit of John R. Binns accompanying said motion, which states at page 5:

". . . that licensees under licenses of the form of said 1937 agreement and of the form of said current license agreement have reported and paid royalties on the basis of all broadcast receivers manufactured and sold by them without raising with plaintiff or its predecessor any question as to whether such receivers embodied any one or more, or none, of the several hundred patents under which the license was granted."

(c) It is further proved by further reference to the license agreement, which provides in Article VI, Section 2, on page 10, that defendant will mark on its sets all of the Hazeltine patents which are "in the opinion of Licensor, involved in apparatus of the types licensed hereunder manufactured by one or more licensees of Licensor." Under Section 3 of said Article VI, pages 10 and 11, of said agreement, defendant was required to submit all of its models to plaintiff for such patent markings and was prohibited from the release of said models for sale until the requirements of the section had been complied with.

5. Said license agreement provides in Article VI, Section 2, page 10, that apparatus sold by defendant which does not bear the patent marking notice of Hazeltine patents as required by the agreement, "is not licensed". Defendant has, therefore, not sold any apparatus under its license from Hazeltine as it has not applied any Hazeltine patent markings to any apparatus it has sold since September 1, 1942, the effective date of said agreement. Defendant is, therefore, not subject to the payment of any royalties to Hazeltine under said license agreement.

MICRO'CARD
TRADE MARK ®

1677

MATTHEW BENDER & COMPANY
MB

49

6. (a) Said license agreement contains in Article VIII, Section 1, page 11, the following provision:

> "Section 1. Licensor agrees that it will bring and diligently prosecute such suits for infringement of the various patents under which licenses are herein granted as may in its judgment be reasonably necessary and prudent for enforcing those patents and preventing unlicensed competition in patented apparatus in the field of this license."

(b) Said provision is a vital portion of said agreement, and goes to the essence thereof, for the reason that the manufacture and sale of radio receivers is a highly competitive business and defendant cannot compete in the manufacture and sale of such receivers if it is compelled to pay royalties which its competitors do not have to pay. The royalties which defendant would be compelled to pay plaintiff for the years 1946 and 1947, if defendant were compelled to pay plaintiff Ten Thousand Dollars as royalties for each of those years, would amount to more than twenty-five per cent (25%) of defendant's net profits.

(c) Said license agreement was entered into by Hazeltine with no intention whatever of complying with the terms of said Article VIII, Section 1. On the contrary, said section was being breached by Hazeltine at the time said license agreement was signed, and has been continuously breached since that time. Indeed, Hazeltine has not only failed to prosecute infringers diligently, but it has diligently attempted to avoid prosecution of infringers, as is indicated by the following history.

(d) The following companies have made and sold radio receiving sets without paying any royalties to Hazeltine from approximately the dates placed after the name of each:

Colonial Radio Company	1927
Detrola Radio Corporation	1930
Emerson Radio & Phonograph Corporation (formerly Emerson Television-Radio Co.)	1932

Sonora Radio Corporation	1935
Motorola Radio Company	1935
General Motors Corporation	1937
The Crosley Corporation	1939
Admiral Radio Company	1939
Philco Products Corporation	1945
DeWald Radio Manufacturing Corporation	1945
Noblitt-Sparks Radio Company	June 30, 1947
Stromberg-Carlson Company	June 30, 1947
Wells-Gardner Radio Company	June 30, 1947
Wilcox-Gay Radio Company	June 30, 1947

(e) In all of the twenty years that radio companies have been operating without paying Hazeltine any royalties, only the following Hazeltine patents have been adjudicated by Hazeltine, and in every case the patents have been held invalid or not infringed, or both:

Hazeltine	1,648,808	
Thompson	1,710,035	
Hazeltine	1,755,114	
Hazeltine	1,755,115	
Wheeler	1,879,863	(Re. 19,744)
MacDonald	1,913,604	
Wheeler	1,951,685	
MacDonald	2,022,514	
Wheeler	2,041,273	
Trube	2,111,483	—

a total of ten patents in twenty years, or one patent every two years. The adjudication of ten patents in twenty years, during most of which period large companies were paying no royalties, does not constitute the diligent prosecution of such suits for infringement as would, in the judgment of Hazeltine, be reasonably necessary and prudent for enforcing its patents and preventing unlicensed competition. On the contrary, although unlicensed

competition has grown steadily through the years, Hazeltine brought only the bare minimum of suits necessary to convince those companies which had Hazeltine licenses that they would be subjected to very expensive law suits and that their customers would be subjected to harassment and intimidation if they failed to remain Hazeltine licensees and pay royalties on all sets sold. The cost of such law suits to Hazeltine licensees is indicated in the next section hereof.

(f) That Hazeltine has been diligently attempting to avoid prosecuting suits for infringement of its patents is proved conclusively by its actions with respect to Emerson and Crosley as follows:

(g) Emerson's Hazeltine license was peremptorily cancelled by Hazeltine in about the year 1933. Upon inquiry from the president of Emerson as to the reasons for this action, he was informed by Hazeltine that it was preparing a new license agreement for him to sign and which he would be permitted to sign in a few days, and that by signing the new license agreement when presented, his company would be permitted to remain in the radio business. Emerson refused to submit to such arbitrary and oppressive action, and refused to sign the new license. Emerson was thereupon sued for infringement of Wheeler patent 1,879,863 (the original of Reissue 19,744) in the Eastern District of New York, the patent being held invalid at 7 F. Supp. 908; affirmed on appeal at 79 Fed. (2d) 329.

(h) Emerson was later sued by Hazeltine for infringement of Thompson patent 1,710,035, which patent was held not infringed at 41 F. Supp. 800, and held invalid and not infringed on appeal to the Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit at 129 Fed. (2d) 580.

(i) Crosley's Hazeltine license expired at the end of 1939 and was not renewed. Crosley was thereupon sued by Hazeltine in Ohio for infringement of MacDonald 1,913,604 and 2,022,514, both patents being held not infringed by the District Court at 39 F. Supp. 775, which was affirmed on appeal at 130 Fed. (2d)

344. At the trial of that case, Mr. Laurence B. Dodds, who is the executive vice-president and trial attorney of plaintiff, made the following statement in open court, which statement is quoted from page 2 of the stenographic transcript of the trial of that case:

> "The plaintiff takes the position that defendant is using many of the plaintiff's patented inventions, but it has brought this suit on two of what we might call typical or representative of its patents in this field."

(j) Crosley and Emerson interpreted this statement by Mr. Dodds as a statement of intention on the part of Hazeltine that—

> ". . . you are going to be sued, and continue to be sued until you are out of business." *United States* v. *Hartford Empire Co.*, 46 F. Supp. 541, 580 D. C. N.D. Ohio, W.D., 1942).

(k) Crosley and Emerson thereupon, on January 13, 1941, each instituted a declaratory judgment suit against Hazeltine in Delaware, the state of incorporation of Hazeltine Corporation, (the then owner of the patents and sole owner of plaintiff in this action) Civil Actions Nos. 194 and 195, respectively, asking for a declaratory judgment of invalidity and non-infringement of all Hazeltine patents as to which they had previously been given notice of infringement but on which they had not previously been sued. Twenty (20) Hazeltine patents were named in each complaint, with a total of twenty-two patents in the two suits, as Wheeler patent 1,879,863 (Reissue 19,744) and Thompson patent 1,710,035, on which Emerson had previously been sued, were omitted from the Emerson complaint, and MacDonald patents 1,913,604 and 2,022,514, on which Crosley had previously been sued, were omitted from the Crosley complaint.

(l) Hazeltine adopted every legal tactic and procedural move the ingenuity of counsel could devise to prevent these cases from coming to trial.

(m) In the Crosley case, Hazeltine, instead of filing a compulsory counterclaim for patent infringement under Rule 13-a, first, before filing its answer, in January, 1941, filed nine suits for patent infringement against Crosley in Ohio on the same patents and failed to counterclaim against Crosley in the Delaware case on the patents involved in those Ohio suits, on the ground that the patents involved in Ohio were the "subject of a pending action" at the time its answer was filed.

(n) This necessitated a motion by Crosley in the Delaware court for an injunction restraining Hazeltine from prosecuting said Ohio suits. That motion was denied by Judge Nields in an opinion filed April 15, 1941 (38 F. Supp. 38), necessitating an appeal by Crosley to the Court of Appeals for the Third Circuit, which reversed Judge Nield's decision in an opinion filed September 11, 1941 (122 Fed. (2d) 925). Thereupon, Hazeltine filed a petition to the Supreme Court for certiorari to review the decision of the Court of Appeals, which petition was denied by the Supreme Court on March 2, 1942 (315 U.S. 813: rehearing denied March 30, 1942, 315 U.S. 831). Thereafter, on or about April 21, 1942—more than fifteen months after the complaint was filed—Hazeltine amended its answer to include a counterclaim for infringement of its patents by Crosley in the Delaware suit.

(o) On January 4, 1943, when the trial of the two cases became imminent, Hazeltine brought a motion in each suit that all further proceedings in the case be adjourned for the duration of the war and for a period of sixty days thereafter, on the ground that Hazeltine's contribution to the war effort would be impaired by trying the case, and that fact and opinion witnesses were fully engaged in the war effort, and that Crosley and Emerson would not be affected by the adjournment. This motion was denied by Judge Kirkpatrick, but, at the request of Hazeltine, Crosley and Emerson agreed and stipulated to postpone the trial of the case until May 1, 1944, without prejudice to the rights of either party, and on the agreement that said stipulation would not be used

as a basis for or in support of any application that might be made in May, 1944 for a further adjournment.

(p) On February 18, 1944, Hazeltine made another motion that the trial of the cases be postponed until May 1, 1945—again basing this motion on the war, despite the fact that Hazeltine was filing new patent applications at that time at the rate of fifty or more a year. This motion was also denied by Judge Kirkpatrick, who recommended that the parties endeavor to arrange for a mutually satisfactory date for trial during the week of May 29th.

(q) Hazeltine had previously enlisted the assistance of the Navy Department in avoiding a trial on its patents. Following Judge Kirkpatrick's latest decision not to adjourn the trial, Hazeltine informed the Navy Department that the trial of the case would require the services of some sixty Hazeltine engineers for a period of six months to a year, and that it could not work on certain Navy contracts in view of the trial. This was, of course, a ridiculous overestimate. Hazeltine then actually took a large number of engineers off war work and assigned various tasks to them ostensibly in preparation for the trial. The Navy Department then requested Crosley and Emerson to postpone the trial. Crosley and Emerson then, through their counsel, offered to take over from the Navy all Hazeltine contracts and fill them diligently without interference with the war effort or with the trial. Hazeltine thereupon, in order to avoid losing its Navy contracts, and to avoid trial of its patents, offered Crosley and Emerson a complete release from all claims of past infringement by either of those companies if Crosley and Emerson would agree to dismiss their declaratory judgment suits without prejudice. This was agreed to by Crosley and Emerson, and the suits were dismissed at that time. Crosley and Emerson were each given a release by Hazeltine which releases were identical, the Crosley release reading as follows:

"This release given this 17 day of April, 1944 by Hazeltine Corporation, a corporation of Delaware (hereinafter

referred to as "Hazeltine") to the Crosley Corporation, a corporation of Ohio (hereinafter referred to as "Crosley"), witnesseth that:

"Whereas, Hazeltine has heretofore asserted certain claims against Crosley on account of alleged infringement of certain U. S. Letters Patent, owned by Hazeltine or under which Hazeltine has the right to sue for infringement, arising out of the manufacture, use and sale by Crosley of apparatus and parts thereof; and

"Whereas, Crosley has brought an action for declaratory judgment on said Letters Patent and Hazeltine has counterclaimed therein, said action being identified as Civil Action No. 194 in the United States District Court for the District of Delaware; and

"Whereas, Hazeltine and Crosley have entered into and executed an Agreement, dated April 17, 1944 to terminate the aforesaid claims of Hazeltine against Crosley and dismiss said action:

"Now, therefore, in consideration of the foregoing premises and for other good and valuable consideration, the receipt whereof is hereby acknowledged, Hazeltine does for itself, its successors and assigns, hereby release and forever fully and completely discharge Crosley and each and all of its distributors, jobbers, dealers, vendees, customers, and users, and anyone acting by or under its authority or direction, from any and all claims whatsoever by Hazeltine for infringement of any of the Letters Patent involved in the aforesaid Civil Action arising out of the manufacture, use or sale of apparatus and parts thereof manufactured and sold by Crosley prior to the date of this Release, such release and discharge including all claims for profits, damages and interest, and all costs and payments and all other charges whatsoever by reason of the manufacture, use or sale of said apparatus.

"In witness whereof, Hazeltine has caused its corporate

seal to be hereunto affixed and these presents to be signed by its proper officer this 27th day of April, 1944.

HAZELTINE CORPORATION
By (Signed) Jack Binns

Attest:
(Signed) R. M. Adams
Asst. Secretary

State of New York)
County of New York) ss:

"On this 27 day of April, nineteen hundred and forty-four, before me came Jack Binns, to me known, who being by me duly sworn, did depose and say that he resides in the City of New York; that he is the President of Hazeltine Corporation the corporation described in, and which executed, the foregoing instrument; that he knows the seal of said corporation; that the seal affixed to said instrument is such corporate seal; that it was so affixed by order of the Board of Directors of said corporation; and that he signed his name thereto by like order.

(Signed) Peggy Coyle
Notary Public."

Thus Emerson was released from all claims for alleged infringement for 11 years and Crosley for five years.

(r) After the conclusion of the war, Emerson and Crosley resumed the manufacture of radio receivers, and threats of infringement suits by Hazeltine against these companies were again made. Crosley and Emerson thereupon filed new suits for declaratory judgment against Hazeltine Corporation in Delaware, Civil Action Nos. 783 and 784, respectively, on the same patents which had been included in their previous declaratory judgment complaints, except for the ones which had expired in the meantime. Again,

Hazeltine tried every legal tactic and procedural move it could devise to prevent these suits from coming to trial.

(s) This time the declaratory judgment suits were filed on December 19, 1945. Hazeltine first brought motions to dismiss the complaints, on the ground that there was no justifiable controversy between the parties. Judge Kirkpatrick denied these motions.

(t) Thereafter, on March 28, 1946—more than three months after the complaint was filed—Hazeltine Corporation assigned the patents in suit to a wholly-owned subsidiary (Hazeltine Research, Inc., the plaintiff here) which in the meantime it had created apparently for that purpose, in a most obvious attempt to evade being required to subject its patents to judicial scrutiny and test of validity and infringement.

(u) On May 1st Hazeltine again brought motions to dismiss, on the ground that having transferred the title to the patents from itself to its *alter ego* (its wholly-owned subsidiary, Hazeltine Research, Inc.), the controversy, if it existed, was "moot" and in any event the present owner of the patent was not before the Court and therefore the case could not be proceeded with.

(v) As might be expected of a motion of this character, on the undisputed facts the motion was denied without opinion by the order of Judge Kirkpatrick, dated August 27, 1946.

(w) Thereafter, on September 30, 1946, more than nine months after the actions were started, Hazeltine filed its answers in the cases, but did not include in those answers any counterclaim for infringement as required by Rule 13-a.

(x) (Each answer started with the contemptuous statement; "Defendant, utterly repudiating any jurisdiction of the Court over the subject matter involved in this action, and reserving exception of the null and void orders of May 23, 1946, and August 27, 1946, answers the complaint: . . .")

(y) Thereafter, again, Crosley and Emerson sought to have the cases set for trial; and when their efforts seemed approaching success, again Hazeltine made a desperate effort to avoid judicial

scrutiny of its patents. It brought a motion for a separate trial on the questions of (1) whether or not there is in the case an actual controversy between the parties (the Court previously having ruled that an actual controversy *did* exist); (2) whether or not the jurisdiction of the Court could be sustained in view of Hazeltine's assignment of its patents to its *alter ego* (a newly created, wholly-owned subsidiary) more than three months after the complaint was filed (the Court previously having ruled that the jurisdiction could be sustained); and (3) whether or not the settlement agreement in the earlier declaratory judgment suits estopped Crosley and Emerson from maintaining their actions (the Court previously having ruled that it did not).

(z) Once more, as might be expected, on a motion so utterly devoid of substance or merit, Hazeltine's motions were denied without opinion.

(aa) At the oral argument on the motion for separate trial, counsel for Crosley and Emerson again asked Judge Kirkpatrick in open Court for the setting of a trial date, and was instructed to communicate with the Court about the middle of September, 1947, for the purpose of fixing a date, depending upon Court engagements and engagements of counsel.

(ab) Thereupon, Hazeltine filed in the Court of Appeals for the Third Circuit a petition for writ of mandamus and prohibition to compel Judge Kirkpatrick to grant Hazeltine's motions and deny the motions of Crosley and Emerson. This petition was denied by the unanimous Court of Appeals in an opinion filed January 7, 1948 (76 U.S.P.Q. 80). Hazeltine then obtained from the Court of Appeals an extension of time to February 21, 1948 within which to file a petition for rehearing.

(ac) Therefore, although the new declaratory judgment complaints were filed on December 9, 1945, Hazeltine has delayed for more than 26 months in filing therein any counterclaim for infringement of any of its patents and up to the present moment has not done so.

(ad) From all the foregoing it will be clear that when, in

1941, prior to the license agreement between the parties to this litigation, the opportunity presented itself to Hazeltine, through no choice of Hazeltine, to prosecute the infringement of *all* of its patents against Emerson and Crosley, as to which it had previously given those companies notices of infringement, Hazeltine immediately thereupon, and continuously thereafter, has, with the greatest diligence attempted to avoid such prosecution, and even went to the extreme of giving Emerson and Crosley each a complete release from all claims of past infringement in 1944 in order to avoid the trial of its patents. Since the war, and continuously up to the present time, Hazeltine has continued its desperate attempts to avoid prosecution of alleged infringement of its patents by Emerson and Crosley.

(ae) It will, therefore, be evident that Article VIII, Section 1, of the license agreement between the parties to this action was breached by Hazeltine in its inception and has continuously been breached since that time.

7. (a) All Hazeltine's patents, numbering some five hundred or more, are invalid, or have no valid application to defendant's sets. In Section 6 (e) of this affidavit I listed all of the patents Hazeltine has sued on which have been held invalid or not infringed, or both, by the courts. These patents have been admitted by Hazeltine to be the best patents it owns. Since its best patents are invalid, it necessarily follows that the remainder of its patents are invalid. The admission that the patents which had been held invalid or not infringed by the courts are the best patents Hazeltine owns, is found in the statement of Mr. Laurence B. Dodds, executive vice-president and trial attorney for plaintiff, made in open court at the trial of the cases of *Hazeltine Corporation* v. *General Motors Corporation*, in Michigan, Civil Action Nos. 2426 and 2436, at 72 F. Supp. 138—which statement is quoted, as follows, from the stenographic transcript of the trial of that case, from pages 1167 to 1169:

> "Now, contrary to your Honor's impression, *it is not the weak patents which get to the court, it is the strong patents,*

and the reason for that is economics. We cannot afford, because it is economically unsound, to bring an infringement action on a minor patent. Each of these patents which has been stricken down enjoyed the prima facie validity of a grant by the Patent Office. Each was evaluated by our patent counsel highly enough to risk *an expensive infringement litigation, which we have found runs in excess of $100,000 per case.* . . .

"Now, it has been testified that we own about 450 patents. Of these somewhat less than 100 are in use, and of those *only a handful are of the importance of the patents which we have here in suit.*

"Now, the rest of that 450 patents represent various types of developments. They were inventions which were ahead of their time or inventions along lines which the art did not follow. And I cite one example:

"Just prior to the war, a large part of our research appropriation was directed towards *television.* As a matter of fact, *about 80 per cent of it.* At that time there was a battle raging among authorities as to whether television would be standardized with negative modulation or positive modulation; those two types are quite different systems, and required different types of apparatus. It was necessary for us, therefore, to carry along parallel developments in both types.

"What actually happened was Great Britain standardized on positive modulation and the Federal Communication Commission in this country standardized on negative modulation, with the result that the work we did on positive modulation was a complete nullity, at least as far as this country is concerned." (emphasis added)

(b) Furthermore, Mr. Dodds informed Mr. David Housman, president of the defendant, in Boston, in my presence, after the

filing of the complaint herein, at a conference called to settle this case, and on July 22, 1947, that Hazeltine had nothing to offer its licensees except escape from litigation and that if defendant would pay the royalties demanded by Hazeltine, defendant would have the opportunity to devote its time to its business rather than to defending law suits.

8. (a) Hazeltine has misused its patents in entering the final decree against defendant in the action in the Superior Court of Suffolk County, Massachusetts, which final decree is Exhibit B attached to Mr. Binn's affidavit.

(b) It has also misused its patents by refusing to grant licenses under any one or more of its patents to anyone who refused to take a license under all of its patents. This has been the admitted policy of Hazeltine, which policy has been euphemistically stated by Hazeltine to be that it would issue a license under any one patent to anyone who asked for it, but he would be charged full royalties therefor the same as the royalties under all of its patents, and a license under the remainder of its patents would be thrown in without extra charge. Such a refusal obviously requires the payment of royalties under invalid patents by one who wants a license under a particular patent and who is, by the license under all of the patents, estopped to deny the validity of any of them, and is clearly a misuse of patents such as to prevent enforcement of all Hazeltine patents.

(c) Hazeltine has also misused its patents by requiring its licensees to mark Hazeltine patent numbers on their sets, regardless of whether they were invalid or had no application to said sets, as required in Article VI, of its license agreement (Exhibit A attached to the complaint). Hazeltine's post-war patent marking notice contains the following patent numbers, all of which have been held by the courts to be invalid or not infringed:

Thompson	1,710,035
Hazeltine	1,755,114
Hazeltine	1,755,115
Wheeler	Re.19,744 (reissue of 1,879,863)

MacDonald	1,913,604
Wheeler	1,951,685
MacDonald	2,022,514
Wheeler	2,041,273
Trube	2,111,483

These are all the Hazeltine patents which have been held by the courts to be invalid, or not infringed, or both, except those which have expired. Wheeler, Reissue 19,744 has been held invalid by the Supreme Court of the United States, and Trube 2,111,483 has been held invalid in two circuits, the third and the seventh.

(d) Hazeltine has also misused its patents by requiring its licensees to place on their sets a restrictive notice as to the use of the sets, as required by Article VI, Section 2, page 10, of its license agreement, said notice reading as follows—as quoted from the license agreement:

> "Section 2. Licensee agrees to mark all licensed apparatus manufactured and sold by Licensee hereunder, in readily legible form, with the statement 'Licensed by Hazeltine Corporation only for use in homes, for educational purposes, and for private, non-commercial use, under one or more of the following patents and under pending applications:' followed by the word 'Patent' and the numbers of the patents which are, in the opinion of Licensor, involved in apparatus of the types licensed hereunder manufactured by one or more licensees of Licensor. The marking required by this section shall be affixed to said licensed apparatus by attaching plates bearing the required marking or by affixing said marking on said apparatus in some other form equally permanent and apparatus not bearing such marking is not licensed."

(e) Hazeltine has also misused its patents by using them to force infringers of its neutrodyne patents issued to Professor Hazeltine Nos. 1,450,080, 1,489,228, and 1,533,858 to assign their patents to Hazeltine or to grant Hazeltine, without charge, the right to grant licenses under such patents. Said infringers who

have been so required to transfer their patent rights to Hazeltine are the following:

Latour Corporation
Atwater-Kent Manufacturing Company
Zenith Radio Corporation
United American Bosch Corporation
Arthur Atwater-Kent;

and the patent rights thus coercively acquired by Hazeltine are listed in the license agreement at pages 26 to 34.

(f) Each of said companies and the individual had been sued by Hazeltine for infringement of its Hazeltine neutrodyne patents and had been held to infringe one or more of said patents. Hazeltine enforced as a condition of the settlement with those companies and the individual the royalties required by Hazeltine from all of its licensees, and, in addition thereto, the transfer to Hazeltine of the rights enumerated on pages 26 to 34 of the license agreement.

(g) References to opinions against some of those companies are as follows:

Hazeltine Corporation v. *Zenith Radio Corporation,* 100 Fed. (2d) 10, C.C.A. 7, 1938

Hazeltine Corporation v. *Atwater Kent Mfg. Co.,* 34 Fed. (2d) 50, D.C. E.D. Pa., 1929.

(h) An example of the type of coercion used is reported in the case of *Hazeltine Corporation* v. *Atwater-Kent Mfg. Co.,* 34 Fed. (2d) 50, in which Hazeltine simultaneously brought twenty-six suits against customers of Atwater-Kent Mfg. Co.

(i) Hazeltine has also misused its patents by assembling into its own hands a vast accumulation of radio patents, unused by Hazeltine, and by threatening to conduct an unlimited number of expensive law suits on said patents against anyone who refused to take a license thereunder, thereby creating a patent monopoly the whole of which is greater than the sum of its parts

and enforcing the payment of royalties on patents which are invalid or which are not used by Hazeltine or anyone else.

(j) Hazeltine has also misused its patents by requiring its licensees to sign license agreements which are so oppressive in their terms as to be contrary to public policy and void. The license agreement, Exhibit A, attached to the complaint, is an example of this.

(k) Hazeltine has also misused its patents by requiring its licensees to pay royalties on all sets sold by them whether or not said sets employ the inventions of any of Hazeltine's patents and whether or not said patents are invalid. See Section 4 hereof.

(l) Hazeltine has also misused its patents by suing and threatening to sue and otherwise harassing customers of radio manufacturing companies refusing to take licenses under its patents and coercing radio manufacturers to take licenses under its patents by threats of repeated expensive law suits. Reference is made to section 7 of this affidavit in this connection.

(m) Hazeltine has also misused its patents by forcing and attempting to force its licensees to pay royalties on radio tubes purchased by them from the Radio Corporation of America, which company has a license from Hazeltine to make and sell tubes under Hazeltine's patents and which tubes were therefore freed from said patents at the time of their purchase, thereby enforcing or attempting to enforce the payment of royalties on unpatented tubes. Reference is made to paragraph 13(b) hereof in this connection.

9. The Hazeltine license is invalid and unenforceable because it is so onerous and oppressive in its terms as to be contrary to public policy, in the following respects:

(a) It requires the licensee to manufacture only at a specified place, and not elsewhere (Article III, Section 1, page 4);

(b) It licenses the manufacturers of parts but prohibits the sale of parts under license except for bona fide repair and replacement of parts (Article III, Section 1, page 4);

(c) It requires the licensee to mark sets sold with an illegal restrictive notice stating that the set is licensed only for use in homes, use for educational purposes, and private non-commercial use (Article III, Section 2, page 4); thus attempting to compel the purchasing public to purchase additional, unnecessary radio receivers for various uses.

(d) It requires the payment of royalties on all sets, whether or not they employ the invention of any Hazeltine patent and whether or not those patents are valid (Article IV, Section 1, page 5; Section 4 of this affidavit);

(e) It permits discriminatory smaller royalties by large companies than are required from small companies (Article IV, Section 5, (a), page 7, and Article X, Sections 3, page 13);

(f) It requires the licensee to use only a particular trade mark and prohibits it from adopting a new trade mark should it so desire (Article VI, Section 1, page 10);

(g) It requires the licensee to mark on its sets all patents which "in the opinion of Licensor (Hazeltine)", apply thereto or to apparatus of the same type manufactured by another licensee (Article VI, Section 2, page 10), despite the penalty provisions of Section 4900, R.S., for false marking;

(h) It runs for a ten year period, plus an additional three years, unless the licensee has given notice of termination six months before the end of said ten years, with no provision for cancellation or termination by the licensee (Article X, Section 1, page 12), thus extending the license and requiring the payment of royalties beyond the expiration dates of a very substantial percentage of the patents;

(i) It permits Hazeltine to terminate at any time for a variety of reasons (Article X, pages 12 and 13); and

(j) It prohibits the licensee from assigning or transferring the agreement, although permitting Hazeltine to do so (Article XI, page 13).

10. The Hazeltine license is also invalid and unenforceable for failure of consideration and for eviction. There was no consideration because Hazeltine had no valid patent rights under which it would grant licenses, and defendant has been evicted from said license by the decision of the courts holding invalid and not infringed the only patents of any possible consequence owned by Hazeltine at the time said license was entered into.

11. On September 18, 1947 defendant repudiated its license with Hazeltine and said license is, therefore, no longer in effect. Said license provides in Article XII, on page 14, that it is to be governed and interpreted in accordance with the laws of the State of New York. Under the laws of New York, a patent license agreement may be terminated by repudiation by the licensee at any time. The license provides in Article XII, that "This Agreement is to be governed by and interpreted in accordance with the laws of the State of New York. Defendant, having repudiated its license, is therefore free to challenge the validity of Hazeltine's patents in this action.

12. Defendant has used no valid patents of Hazeltine in any sets made by it at any time.

13. (a) In the affidavit of Harold A. Wheeler, attached to plaintiff's motion for summary judgment, only four patents are listed as being infringed by defendant's sets. They are the following:

Wheeler	1,951,685
"	1,958,027
"	2,015,327
"	2,041,273

Of said patents, Nos. 1,951,685 and 2,041,273 were held invalid by Judge Lederle in the case of *Hazeltine Corporation v. General Motors Corporation*, reported at 72 F. Supp. 138. An invalid patent can have no valid application and cannot be infringed by any apparatus, and said two patents have, therefore, not been infringed by defendant.

(b) Patent 1,958,027 contains nineteen claims, of which all but claims 3, 15 and 17 were disclaimed by the patentee, with the assent of Hazeltine, on September 25, 1940. Said claims were disclaimed because said Wheeler patent lost a Patent Office Interference, No. 69,386, with an application of Jerome C. Smith, which application later matured into Smith Patent No. 2,223,250 and is assigned to the Radio Corporation of America. Defendant is licensed by the Radio Corporation of America thereunder. The remaining three claims of said patent are all directed to minor detailed differences from the claims lost by Wheeler and are invalid in view of the prior invention by said Smith of the subject matter of the disclaimed claims. Moreover, said claims 3, 15 and 17 of Wheeler patent 1,958,027 define structure of a vacuum tube. Defendant buys its vacuum tubes from the Radio Corporation of America, and is licensed to use said tubes by reason of such purchase, not only from Radio Corporation, but from Hazeltine for the reason that Radio Corporation of America is licensed by Hazeltine for the manufacture and sale of tubes.

(c) Patent No. 2,015,327 contains five claims. Each of these claims is directed to a vacuum tube. Again, defendant buys its tubes from the Radio Corporation of America, and is licensed to use such tubes by reason of such purchase.

(d) Mr. Wheeler's affidavit, attached to the motion for summary judgment, states on page 4 that the oscillator modulator circuit embodied in defendant's receivers and claimed in patents 1,958,027 and 2,015,327, are features essential to the construction of current commercial radio receivers of the superheterodyne type. Claims 15 and 17 of patent 1,958,027 call for an inner screen and an outer screen within the tube; patent 2,015,327 states on page 3, line 16, that the outer screen may be omitted. Said claims therefore, clearly do not define subject matter which is "essential".

GEO. K. WOODWORTH.

Sworn to and subscribed before me this thirtieth day of January, 1948.

Margaret B. Budden,
Notary Public.

[SEAL]

DEFENDANT'S AFFIDAVITS IN OPPOSITION TO PLAINTIFF'S MOTION FOR SUMMARY JUDGMENT.

[Filed February 11, 1948.]

AFFIDAVIT OF DAVID HOUSMAN IN OPPOSITION TO PLAINTIFF'S MOTION FOR SUMMARY JUDGMENT, FILED ON OR ABOUT NOVEMBER 10, 1947.

State of Florida
County of Dade, ss.

David Housman, being first duly sworn, deposes and says as follows:

I am an officer of Automatic Radio Manufacturing Company, Inc., defendant in the above entitled cause.

When I was induced to accept the license under the patents of Hazeltine Corporation, I was primarily concerned with patents represented to me to be owned by the Hazeltine Corporation covering subject matter known by various technical names which my company desired to use in the radio receivers it manufactured and sold. The said patents were included among those listed in Schedule A attached to and forming part of the license agreement. These patents were all represented to me as outstanding with presumption of validity and presumed enforceability.

Recently in consulting additional counsel particularly familiar with patents relating to radio circuits and equipment, and particularly with the patents of Hazeltine Corporation, I found to my surprise that at the time I was induced to acquire the patent license, the principal patents with which I was concerned had been held to be invalid, which facts were not made known to me. Specifically, and having in mind that the license agreement was

executed as of September 1, 1942, I am now informed and believe that,—

Letters Patent No. 1,648,088, according to my information and belief, were held invalid on September 14, 1931, as reported in 52 F. (2) 504; and also in 79 F. (2) 238, on August 16, 1935;

Letters Patent No. 1,710,035 was held invalid on July 29, 1942, as reported in 129 F. (2) 580;

Letters Patent No. 1,755,114 was held invalid on August 16, 1935, as reported in 79 F. (2) 238;

Letters Patent No. 1,755,115 was held invalid on August 16, 1935, as reported in 79 F. (2) 238;

Letters Patent No. 1,913,604 and No. 2,022,514 were held not infringed on August 28, 1942 (130 F. (2) 344), and on petition for rehearing to the Court of Appeals for the Sixth Circuit, counsel for Hazeltine made the written statement in said petition that the effect of the decision of non-infringement was to invalidate the patents because, as limited by the court, they would be inapplicable to any practical equipment. That statement, as quoted from page 7 of the petition for rehearing, is as follows:

> "When interpreted as the Court interprets them, the MacDonald patents are of no value. The antenna system to which the Court would restrict the patents was never used by the inventor, MacDonald; has never been used in commercial radio receivers; and it is improbable that it will ever be used."

The petition for rehearing was denied.

Additionally, since the date of the agreement, the remaining Hazeltine patents of any materiality to the radio receivers that my company makes and desires to continue to make have been held invalid whereby my company has thus been effectively evicted from its license under the only patents which induced my company to accept a license. These patents are as follows:

Patent No. 1,951,685, held invalid on June 23, 1947, as reported in 72 F. Supp. 138;

Patent No. 2,041,273, held invalid on June 23, 1947, as reported in 72 F. Supp. 138.

To the best of my information and belief, the Hazeltine Corporation has not received favorable adjudication of any patents affecting or alleged to affect the radio receivers manufactured by my company.

Additionally, I learned several months ago, upon consulting with my New York counsel, that Hazeltine Corporation by its actions and by unrestrained dissemination of information has waived, with respect to all of its licensees, the minimum royalty provision of its license agreements and notoriously has never enforced said provision with respect to any of its licensees and notoriously has advised its licensees and all others interested that it would not enforce or seek to enforce that provision of its license agreements.

When I was induced to enter into the license agreement, Exhibit A, effective as of September 1, 1942, the facts that at least 35 of the patents listed in Schedules A and B, annexed to said licenses had expired and that at least 10 of the patent applications listed in said Schedules had been abandoned, were withheld from me by the representatives of Hazeltine Corporation who persuaded me to sign said license on September 17, 1942.

I am informed and believe that the radio receiving sets made by my company, the circuits of which are shown in plaintiff's Exhibits B through N, are substantially identical electrically with those made and sold by Crosley Corporation and Emerson Television-Radio, Inc. I am informed and believe that these companies did not pay royalty to Hazeltine Corporation.

The mixing tubes, so called, (modulator vacuum tubes) employed in my company's radio receiving sets, namely, IR5; 12BE6; 12SA7; 14Q7; 12SA7GT, were all purchased from the Radio Corporation of America.

I am informed and believe that the Radio Corporation of America holds a license from plaintiff for the manufacture and sale of these tubes so that by purchasing them from Radio Corporation of America my company acquires a license from plain-

tiff to use them in its circuits. My company is licensed by the Radio Corporation of America under all of the patents of the so-called radio patent pool, including those of Radio Corporation of America, General Electric Company, Western Electric Company and Westinghouse Electric and Manufacturing Company, a total of more than ten thousand patents, including Smith patent No. 2,323,250.

Shortly prior to September 30, 1947, I conferred in New York with the late Samuel E. Darby, then of counsel in this case, and, in response to his questions, gave him the facts which he considered desirable to be submitted to the court in an affidavit in support of his motion to amend defendant's answer, which motion, I am informed and believe, was filed on or about September 30, 1947.

On September 30, 1947, I executed said affidavit. The statements contained therein were based solely on recollection.

In the affidavit of John R. Binns, filed in this case on or about November 10, 1947, I find in Section (h), the allegation that Hazeltine Corporation notified its licensees that Reissue patent No. 19,744 had been held invalid. Annexed to said affidavit, as Exhibit R_1, I find a photostatic copy of a letter dated May 14, 1941 by Hazeltine Corporation to its customers to the effect that said reissue patent and also patent No. 2,111,483 had been held invalid; and also as Exh. R_2, I find a photostat of my letter of May 16, 1941 in reply to said Hazeltine Corporation letter. This correspondence had escaped my attention during my conference with my New York counsel, as aforesaid, more than six years later.

Since the effective date of said license, September 1, 1942, to wit, none of the radio apparatus made and sold by my company has been marked with the license notice required by Section 2 of Article VI of said agreement and none of my company's catalogs, circulars or price lists includes the notation "Licensed under Hazeltine Corporation Patents," as required by Section 4 of Article V of said agreement for all apparatus sold thereunder.

On September 18, 1947, Automatic Radio Manufacturing Com-

pany, Inc., sent, by registered mail, to Hazeltine Research, Inc., and Hazeltine Corporation, the following letter:

September 18, 1947

Registered Mail RRR

Hazeltine Research, Inc.
325 West Huron Street
Chicago, 10, Illinois

Hazeltine Corporation
15 Exchange Place
Jersey City, N. J.

Gentlemen:

Please be advised that at a meeting of the Board of Directors of Automatic Radio Manufacturing Company, Inc., held at its principal place of business, 122 Brookline Avenue, Boston, Massachusetts, on the 17th day of September, 1947, the Board directed me formally to advise you that this corporation has repudiated and terminated the License Agreement dated as of September 1, 1942 between said Automatic Radio Manufacturing Company, Inc. and Hazeltine Corporation of Jersey City, New Jersey, a corporation of Delaware, which Agreement is alleged to have been assigned on March 28, 1946 to Hazeltine Research, Inc., a corporation incorporated under the laws of Illinois.

Very truly yours,

Automatic Radio Manufacturing Co. Inc.
(Sgd.) David Housman
President

DH/rf

This letter was duly acknowledged by Hazeltine Research, Inc.

DAVID HOUSMAN

Subscribed and sworn to before me, this twenty-sixth day of January, 1948.

Elizabeth Vradenburg
Notary Public

Notary Public, State of Florida at
My commission expires October 5, 1951
Bonded by American Surety Co. of

[SEAL]

AFFIDAVIT OF GEORGE K. WOODWORTH IN OPPOSITION TO PLAINTIFF'S MOTION FOR SUMMARY JUDGMENT.

Commonwealth of Massachusetts,
Suffolk, ss.

George K. Woodworth, being duly sworn, deposes and says,

1. I am a member of the Massachusetts bar, and together with Meyer F. Englander, Esq., represented defendant in *Hazeltine Corporation* v. *Automatic Radio Manufacturing Company, Inc.*, Commonwealth of Massachusetts, Superior Court, Suffolk, 47,229, Eq.

2. This case involved twenty-nine (29) patents, one hundred ninety-six claims (196) and twenty-seven (27) alleged infringing models involving complicated electrical structures and circuit arrangements.

After numerous lengthy conferences with defendant's expert, I reached the conclusion that not one of said twenty-seven models included the apparatus and/or circuit arrangements of any of the claims of the twenty-nine patents specified in plaintiff's answers to defendant's interrogatories; but, nevertheless, I advised the client that the expense involved in trying the case before a master of the Superior Court, to say nothing of the subsequent proceedings before a Justice of the Superior Court and the Supreme Judicial Court, would be far beyond the means of defendant, which is a comparatively small corporation, and that, therefore, settlement should be effected, if possible.

3. At my suggestion, plaintiff's New York counsel and local counsel, and defendant's counsel, together with defendant's President, David Housman, conferred at the office of said Meyer F. Englander, the morning of September 17, 1937. Entries in my diary for September 17, 1937, show that this conference lasted two hours and that in the afternoon of that day, the same persons

conferred at the office of plaintiff's local counsel, from 2:30 p.m. to 7:30 p.m. According to my present recollection, at that afternoon conference, there was prepared the agreement, a copy of which, marked Exhibit Q, is attached to and forms a part of the affidavit of John R. Binns, accompanying the motion for summary judgment, filed herein on or about November 10, 1947.

4. After the terms of said agreement had been approved by both parties, the consent interlocutory decree, copy of which marked Exhibit P is attached to and forms a part of said affidavit of said John R. Binns, was prepared in draft form, according to my present recollection. Plaintiff's New York counsel insisted that said decree should contain the paragraph now numbered "4" whereby defendant is made to admit "the validity of all the patents owned or controlled by the plaintiff," and that twenty-seven of them therein enumerated "cover all the radio receivers of sound which the defendant has manufactured and sold since October 1, 1935 and which the defendant is now manufacturing and selling," whereas in truth and in fact, prior to the date of said consent decree, at least six of plaintiff's patents had either been held void or else limited in such manner that they were valueless for all practical purposes.

5. I objected to the inclusion of said paragraph, and was told by plaintiff's New York counsel that there would be no settlement unless said paragraph remained in the decree. No such admission of validity or infringement was contained in the agreement, Exhibit Q, aforesaid. I endorsed the consent decree at the request of defendant's President, David Housman, in spite of said objectionable paragraph "4", because of the statement made by plaintiff's New York counsel that otherwise no settlement could be effected.

6. On or about July 2, 1941, I received from the Clerk of the Superior Court for the County of Suffolk, a notice under Rule 85 of said court, reading as follows:

"Commonwealth of Massachusetts

Suffolk, SS. Superior Court

Notice Under Rule 85

George K. Woodworth, Esq.

Under the provisions of Superior Court Rules, 1932, Rule 85, a copy of which is enclosed, case No. 47229, Eq., Hazeltine Corporation vs. Automatic Radio Mfg. Co. in which you appear as counsel of record, or as a party, has been marked 'Inactive.'

(Sgd.) Thomas Dorgan Clerk"

On July 10, 1941, I received from plaintiff's local counsel, a letter dated July 9, 1941, reading as follows:

"Goldkrand & Goldkrand
Attorneys & Counsellors At Law
73 Tremont Street
Boston, Mass.

July 9, 1941

George K. Woodworth, Esq.
60 Congress Street
Boston, Mass.

Re: Hazeltine Corporation
vs: Automatic Radio Manufacturing Co.
Equity No. 47229

Dear Sir:

Because of the notice received by this office in the above entitled matter under Rule 85 our client desires that the decree which was entered on September 24, 1937, be made final.

We are, therefore, enclosing copy of proposed final decree which we shall present to the Court for allowance on Monday,

July 21, 1941, at 9:30 oclock A.M. in the Motion Session of the Suffolk Superior Court.

Very truly yours,

Goldkrand & Goldkrand
By (Sgd.) Louis Goldkrand

E

LG:EE
ENC."

The proposed final decree accompanying said letter reads as follows:

"Commonwealth of Massachusetts

Suffolk: SS

Superior Court
In Equity
No. 47229

Hazeltine Corporation
vs.
Automatic Radio Manufacturing Company

Final Decree

This cause came on to be further heard at this sitting of the Court and all parties being represented by counsel, and after hearing thereon, thereupon, upon consideration thereof, it is hereby ordered, adjudged and decreed that the decree of the Court entered in this matter on the 24th day of September, 1947, be and it is hereby made final.

By the Court,

On July 10, 1941, I replied to plaintiff's local counsel as follows:

"July 10, 1941

Louis Goldkrand, Esq.
73 Tremont Street
Boston, Massachusetts

Re: Hazeltine Corp. v. Automatic Radio, 47,229 Eq.

Dear Mr. Goldkrand:

Replying to your letter of the 9th instant, I do not object to the entry of your proposed final decree.

Very truly yours,

(Sgd.) George K. Woodworth

GKW:B"

I received from plaintiff's counsel no further notice concerning said final decree, nor any further notice of hearing on the matter.

7. On or about July 22, 1947, at the office of plaintiff's present local counsel, I was informed by plaintiff's present New York counsel that a final decree was entered in the case on December 3, 1941, and he thereupon showed me what purported to be a copy of said final decree, which was identical with the decree copy of which is attached to said affidavit of said Binns and marked Exhibit R. Prior to July 22, 1947, I had no knowledge of said final decree.

GEO. K. WOODWORTH.

Subscribed and sworn to before me, this fifth day of February, 1948.

Margaret B. Budden,
Notary Public.

[SEAL]

AFFIDAVIT OF LEO A. KELLEY IN OPPOSITION TO PLAINTIFF'S MOTION FOR SUMMARY JUDGMENT FILED ON OR ABOUT NOVEMBER 10, 1947.

State of New York,)
(ss.:
County of Queens,)

Leo A. Kelley, being first duly sworn, deposes and says:

I am a consulting engineer holding degrees in electrical engineering from the Massachusetts Institute of Technology and from Harvard University; and have since my graduation had approximately thirty years of experience in electronics. I am thoroughly familiar with radio circuits of the type used in defendant's radio receivers, as shown in Exhibits B to N, inclusive, attached to plaintiff's answers to defendant's interrogatories in this case.

I have read the affidavit of Mr. Harold A. Wheeler, dated October 27, 1947, filed in this case in support of plaintiff's motion for summary judgment and have examined the exhibits attached thereto.

Two of the patents attached to Mr. Wheeler's affidavit, Exhibits AA and BB,—namely, *Wheeler* patents Nos. 1,951,685 and 2,041,273,—were the subject of a suit for infringement brought by plaintiff's predecessor, *Hazeltine Corporation*, against *General Motors Corporation* in the United States District Court for the District of Michigan, Southern Division, which patents were held invalid by District Judge Lederle, as reported in 72 F. Supp. 138. I was retained by General Motors Corporation as its consultant in connection with the trial of that case and testified at the trial as a patent expert for General Motors. I am thoroughly familiar with the two Wheeler patents involved in that suit and with the structures made by General Motors which were accused to infringe those patents in that suit. Those General Motors sets are the same in all material respects, so far as those two Wheeler patents are concerned, as the sets now being made by defendant, as shown in plaintiff's answers to defendant's interrogatories.

Said Wheeler patents were held by Judge Lederle to be invalid

over the prior art for the reason that the patentee had "mere accomplished an old result by a combination of means whic singly, or in similar combination, were disclosed by the prior art and the patentee "had made no advance over the prior art beyon that which would be accomplished by a mechanic skilled in th art." The following prior art was before the Court:

U. S. Patents

No. 1,254,620—Newman	No. 1,675,848—Friis
" 1,282,439—Langmuir	" 1,687,245—Heising
" 1,404,573—Brillouin, et al.	" 1,709,062—Cohen
" 1,455,768—Slepian	" 1,716,573—Armstrong
" 1,574,780—Affel	" 1,736,852—Evans
" 1,611,716—Brown	" 1,869,323—Evans

Publications

"The Thermionic Vacuum Tube", by Van der Biji, 1920, pp 127–135;

"Rundfunktechnische Handbuch", Vol. 1, 1925, by Heinric Wigge, pp. 226-228 & 244-249.

The other two patents attached to Mr. Wheeler's affidavit, Ex hibits Y and Z, were *Wheeler* patents Nos. 1,958,027 and 2,015,32

Following the issuance of Wheeler patent 1,958,027, it wa in interference in the United States Patent Office with an applica tion for a patent which later issued as *Smith* patent No. 2,323,25 Upon an examination of the two patents, it will be seen that th following claims of the Wheeler patent are identical with th following claims of the Smith patent, all of which were won b Smith from Wheeler in that interference:

Wheeler	*Smith*
Claim 1 is identical with claim	9
" 2 " " " "	10
" 4 " " " "	11
" 5 " " " "	12
" 7 " " " "	14
" 8 " " " "	15

Wheeler		*Smith*
Claim	10 is identical with claim	18
"	11 " " " "	19
"	12 " " " "	20
"	13 " " " "	21
"	14 " " " "	22
"	16 " " " "	23
"	18 " " " "	24
"	19 " " " "	25

Claim 6 of Wheeler is also identical with claim 13 of Smith, except that the claim 6 of Wheeler ends with the expression, "received signal intensities" and claim 13 with "received intensities". However, in both claims, in the next to the last clause, appears the expression, "the received signal intensity". It is clear that these two claims mean exactly the same thing.

There is attached hereto a copy of said Smith patent No. 2,323,250, marked "Exhibit A".

The disclosures of Wheeler patent 1,958,027 and of said Smith patent are identical in so far as the tube structure, circuit, and operation are concerned, except in one minor detail. In the Smith patent the grid of the tube, which is used as the oscillator grid and which is marked as No. 52 in Figure 7 of the patent, has a negative bias applied to it, which negative bias is derived from a resistance numbered 62 in the cathode lead of the tube. This is one of several grid bias circuit arrangements for an oscillator tube which was well known years prior to the filing date of the application for Smith's patent.

The Wheeler patent uses a bias for the grid of the tube which is used as the oscillator grid, which bias is provided in Figure 3, for example, by the use of a grid leak resistance 26 and condenser 25. This is another of the grid bias circuit arrangements for an oscillator tube which was well known for many years prior to the filing date of either Smith or Wheeler.

There is attached hereto a chart, marked "Exhibit B", which is

entitled "Radiola 66—Patent Situation—Improved Superheterodyne Radio Receiver, Console Type", which chart, I am informed and believe, was prepared by the Radio Corporation of America and distributed to its licensees or others in or about the year 1929 to show its patent situation with respect to that receiver. That receiver is a superheterodyne receiver which is the same type receiver as those shown on Exhibits B to N attached to plaintiff's answers to defendant's interrogatories in this case.

The oscillator tube shown in that circuit diagram is the tube marked with the legend "UY-227", appearing at the lower left-hand portion of the circuit diagram. That tube and the accompanying circuit constitute an oscillator having a grid leak resistance marked with the numbers 34 and 39 in circles, and condenser which is unmarked but appears just below and to the left of figure 5, which figure is in a circle. It will be noted that the following patents appear in the chart as applying to said oscillator circuit:

No. 5—Langmuir 1,282,439, which expired in October, 1935 (Exhibit C)—Grid Leak and Condenser;

No. 46—DeForest 1,507,016, which expired in September, 1941 (Exhibit D)—Oscillation Generator.

Attached hereto is a copy of each of said patents, marked "Exhibits C and D", respectively.

The Langmuir patent 1,282,439 shows a circuit with a grid bias employing a grid leak resistance 44 and condenser 43 for the purpose of applying a negative bias to the grid of a detector tube.

DeForest patent 1,507,016 discloses, in Figure 1, for example, the circuit of an oscillation generator in which a grid leak resistance R and condenser C are used to provide a negative bias to the grid of an oscillator tube D, as in the Wheeler patent.

These patents and this chart show that it was old many years prior to the filing date of the application for the Wheeler patent 1,958,027 to use a grid leak resistance and condenser for the purpose of applying a negative bias to the grid of an oscillator tube—the only distinction between the disclosures of Wheeler and Smith.

It will be noted that all claims of Wheeler patent 1,958,027 have been disclaimed by Wheeler and his assignee except claims 3, 15, and 17. On examination of these three claims, as compared with the remaining claims of his patent, the only feature claimed by them which is not contained in remaining claims is that the space current in the tube is periodically reduced to zero. In this connection, Wheeler states on page 5, beginning at line 137:

> "There are a number of preferred circuit relations which improve the performance but are not essential in the circuits described herein."

Among those circuit relations is the following, page 5, beginning at line 150:

> "The average negative bias on grid 2 relative to cathode 1, which is provided by resistor 26 or 32 in Figures 3, 4, 5, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, and 12, is preferably related to the voltage on the screen 3, to provide that the space current in the tube is substantially zero during the negative half cycles of the oscillator voltage on grid 2, that is, the space current is periodically reduced to zero."

In other words, the only feature in which the claim retained by Wheeler differs from those disclaimed is one which is not essential and is a mere matter of adjustment of the average negative bias on grid 2 relative to the voltage on screen 3.

The purpose of an oscillator tube in a superheterodyne set is to produce local oscillations within the set, which oscillations are heterodyned with (beat with) the incoming radio frequency signal wave to produce a so-called intermediate frequency. This was well known long prior to Wheeler and is shown, for example, in the patents listed on the Radiola 66 chart, as follows:

No. 60—Armstrong, 1,342,885, issued in June, 1920;
No. 8—Alexanderson, 1,465,961, issued in August, 1923;
No. 9—Alexanderson, 1,508,151, issued in September, 1924;
No. 52—Levy, 1,734,038, issued in November, 1929.

In such method of superheterodyne reception, the local oscillator in every case beats with the incoming radio frequency signal wave to produce a so-called intermediate frequency, which intermediate frequency will be present in the circuit of Wheeler patent 1,958,027 and which intermediate frequency is the same in all material respects in said Wheeler patent as in each of the superheterodyne patents referred to above, and in the circuit of the Radiola 66.

Wheeler patent 2,015,327, Exhibit Z attached to his affidavit, contains five claims. The language of these claims is directed to the structure of a vacuum tube, and the claims do not include any structure except the structure of the tube itself. The tubes shown in the exhibits attached to plaintiff's answers to defendant's interrogatories which use the structure are the following:

Exhibit B, tube marked 1R5;
" C, tube marked 12SA7GT;
" D, tube marked 12SA7GT;
" E, tube marked 12SA7;
" F, tube marked 12SA7;
" G, tube marked 12SA7;
" H, tube marked 12SA7GT;
" I, tube marked 12SA7GT;
" J, tube marked 12SA7GT;
" J', tube marked 12SA7GT;
" K, tube marked 14QT;
" L, tube marked 12SA7;
" M, tube marked 12SA7GT; and
" N, tube marked 1R5.

These tubes are especially designed for use as oscillator-modulator tubes, the use to which they are put in defendant's sets.

It will be noted that claims 3, 15, and 17 of Wheeler patent 1,958,027 are also directed almost entirely to the structure of a vacuum tube. The only elements of claims 3 and 15 which are not directed to the structure of the tube itself are the following:

Claim 3 — "a source of constant alternating voltage impressed on the interposed grid";

Claim 15 — "said grids having negative grid bias . . . the negative bias on said grid"; and

Claim 17 is dependent on Claim 15.

The structure defined in the remaining elements of the claims, that is, the tube structure defined in the claims, is the same structure as that defined in the claims of Wheeler patent 2,015,327.

The oscillator-modulator tube and circuits used by defendant in its sets is the tube and circuit described by Smith in his patent No. 2,323,250 (except for the detailed method of obtaining grid bias) and described in claims listed above as being identical with certain claims of Wheeler patent 1,958,027. The particular operating characteristics described by Wheeler in claims 3, 15, and 17 of his patent No. 1,958,027 are admittedly not essential and a mere matter of adjustment.

LEO A. KELLEY.

Sworn to and subscribed before me this ninth day of February, 1948.

Gladys K. Gilbert,
Notary Public.

Commission Expires March 30, 1948

[SEAL]

June 29, 1943. J. C. SMITH 2,323,250

SIGNALING SYSTEM

Filed Jan. 31, 1933 2 Sheets-Sheet 1

Fig.1.

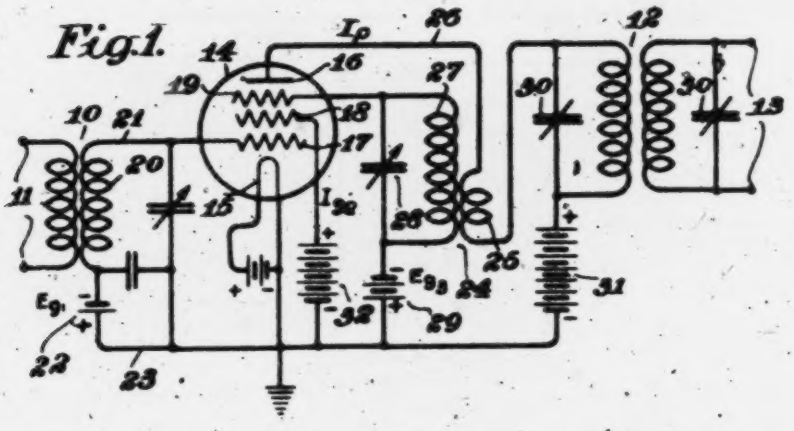


Fig.2.

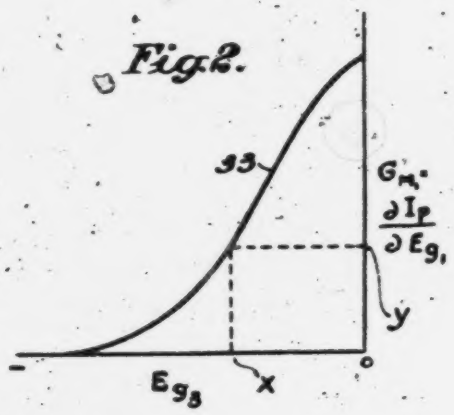


Fig.5.

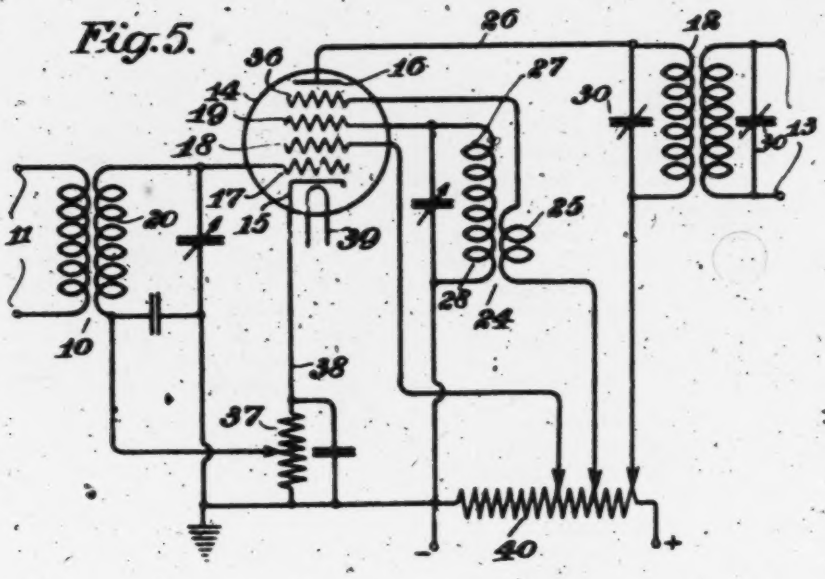


Fig.3.

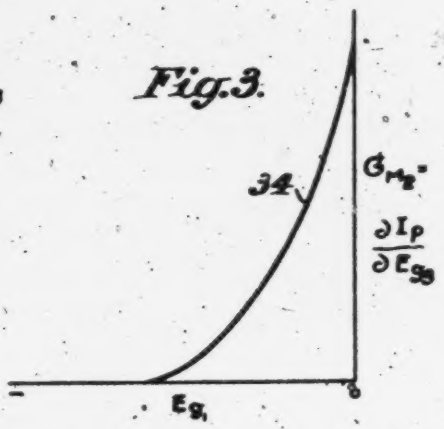


Fig.6.

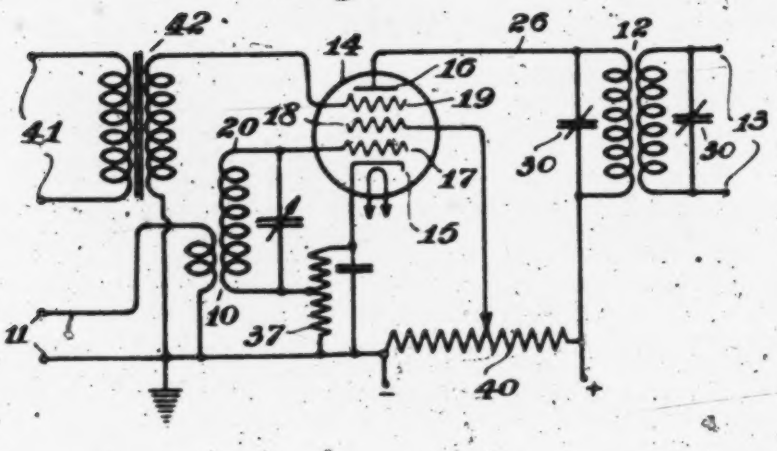
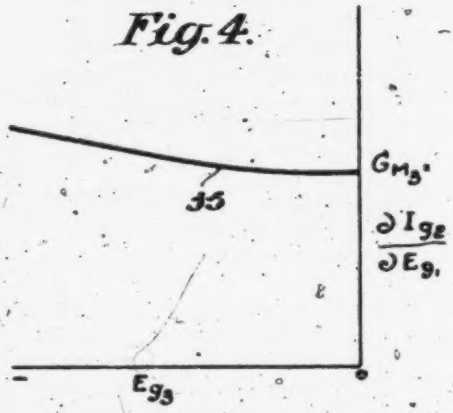


Fig.4.



INVENTOR:
Jerome C. Smith,
BY T. R. Goldsborough
HIS ATTORNEY

June 29, 1943. J. C. SMITH 2,323,250

SIGNALING SYSTEM

Filed Jan. 31, 1933 2 Sheets-Sheet 2

Fig. 7.

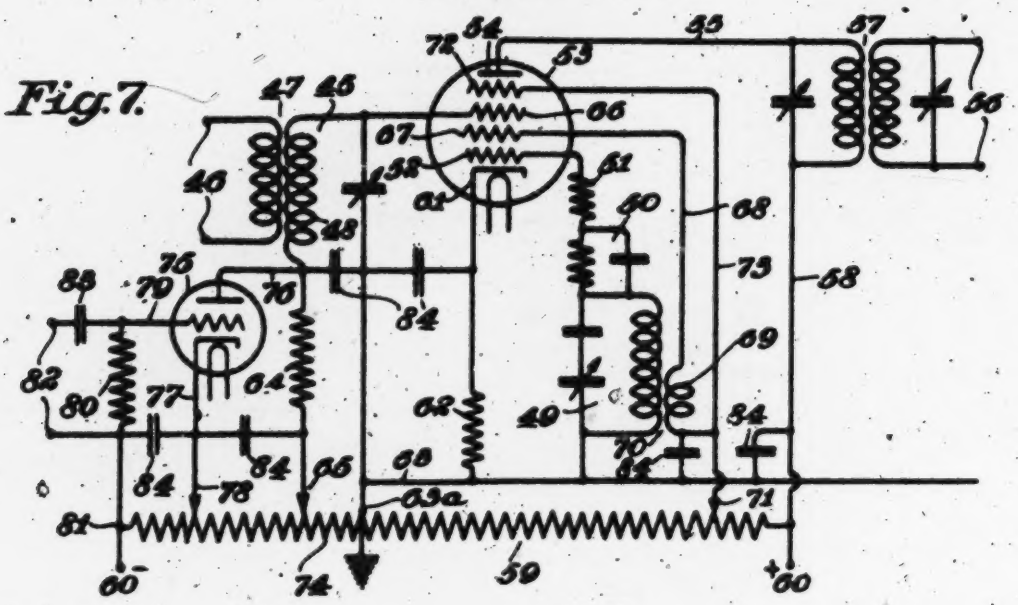
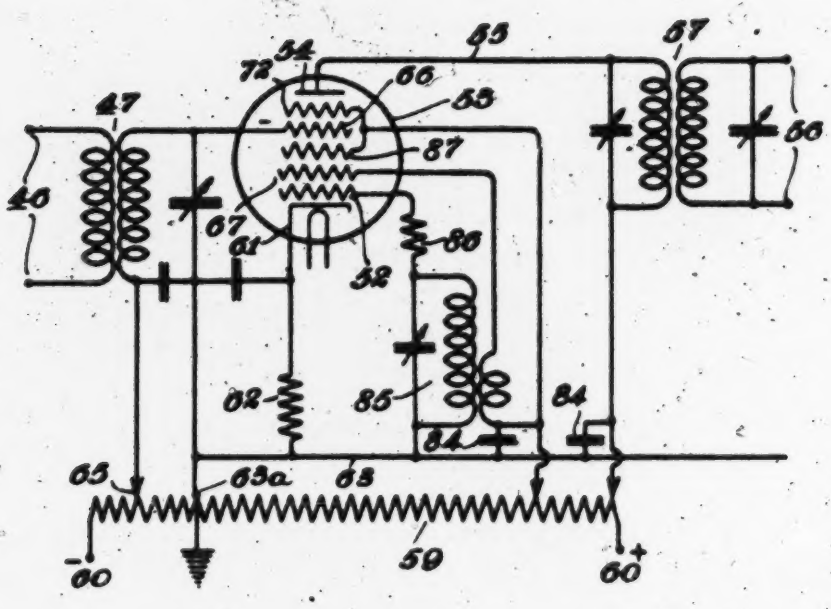


Fig. 8.



INVENTOR:
Jerome C. Smith,
BY T. R. Goldsborough
HIS ATTORNEY

Patented June 29, 1943 2,323,250

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE

2,323,250

SIGNALING SYSTEM

Jerome C. Smith, Merchantville, N. J., assignor to Radio Corporation of America, a corporation of Delaware

Application January 31, 1933, Serial No. 656,421

55 Claims. (Cl. 250—20)

The present invention relates to signaling systems, and more particularly to signaling systems wherein two separate signal channels are united through a suitable mixing means and provided with a common signal output channel.

Signaling systems of the above character are employed in superheterodyne receivers and the like wherein the radio signal and the oscillator signal channel are combined through a frequency changing device and applied to a common output circuit or channel in the intermediate frequency amplifier. The invention, therefore, relates more particularly to the superheterodyne type of receiving system wherein its advantages are more fully realized.

In signal channel mixing systems of the character above referred to as heretofore known, considerable difficulty has been experienced in preventing interaction between the circuits and material changes in load upon one or both of the channels leading to the common output circuit, resulting in changes in the channel gain, or in the channel frequency response characteristic, depending upon the type of transmission system employed.

It is, therefore, a primary object of the present invention to provide an improved signal transmission system embodying apparatus and methods whereby two separate signal channels may be combined and provided with a common output circuit without appreciable interaction the one upon the other, and whereby said channels function independently of each other.

It is a further object of the present invention to provide a signaling system of the above character wherein the signal amplitude in the common output circuit may be controlled without affecting certain operating characteristics of either of the input signal channels.

A further and more specific object of the present invention is to provide an improved detector-oscillator system for a heterodyne type of receiver employing a single electric discharge device as a combined detector and oscillator.

It is a still further and specific object of the invention to provide an improved signaling system wherein two signal channels are electronically coupled while being maintained electrically independent one with respect to the other.

A still further object of the present invention is to provide an improved signal transmission system wherein a single electric discharge device is employed as a mixing means between two separate signal channels and a common output signal channel and wherein the transconductance between certain of the control electrodes of the device and the anode may each be controlled by the signals to be mixed, and wherein means are provided to prevent interaction between said two electrodes and the circuits connected therewith.

A further specific object of the present invention is to provide a modulator, or modulated oscillator system, wherein two signal channels in connection therewith are prevented from interacting one upon the other to modify certain of the operating characteristics of either of said channels.

Another object of the invention is to provide a method of modulating electrical alternating current in a thermionic tube having a cathode, an anode, and an electron stream space path therebetween, which comprises attracting an electron stream to an intermediate position in said path, retarding the electron stream to form a virtual cathode at a position beyond the intermediate position, modulating the density of the virtual cathode by varying the attraction of the electron stream, further attracting a part of the stream from the virtual cathode to the anode, and causing the alternating current to vary the further attraction of said part of the stream, all in such manner that the modulation of the density of the virtual cathode thereby causes modulation of the alternating current in the vacuum tube.

Still further objects of my invention are to provide such a method in accordance with which the density of the virtual cathode is modulated by producing oscillations in the portion of the space path of the tube between the actual and the virtual cathodes to thereby vary the attraction of the electron stream in accordance with such oscillations, and the current in the output of the tube is controlled by controlling the further attraction of electrons from the virtual cathode to the anode without substantially affecting the production of oscillations in the space between the actual and virtual cathodes.

In accordance with the invention, two signal channels to be combined and provided with a common output channel are connected with two, preferably negative, control electrodes or grids of an electric discharge device which has, as other electrodes, a cathode and anode, together with positive shielding electrode means between said first named grids or electrodes and preferably between said first named electrodes and the output electrode or anode. The grids are interposed in the electronic stream between the cathode and anode in series relation to each other, that is, whereby the electronic stream traverses

first the one grid and then the other, and in such a manner that variation in the potential of one of the control grids serves to vary the transconductance of the other control electrode with respect to the anode, or in other words, the gain between the other control electrode and said anode.

Stated in other words and more specifically, in accordance with the invention, two preferably negative and high input impedance grids are arranged in a common envelope of an electric discharge device to control, in series relation to each other, a common electronic stream, the grids being shielded the one from the other by another electrode, or other electrodes, at a positive potential, and said control grids being utilized to perform different functions and/or to operate at different signal frequencies.

The operation of the device may be considered to be such that there is formed between the positive electrode and the outer negative grid a cloud of electrons or a space charge, which can be considered as a virtual cathode capable of supplying electrons at a variable rate (as determined by the instantaneous potentials of the inner grid), which can then be acted upon by the outer negative grid in the usual manner, to produce the desired frequency conversion in a superheterodyne receiver for example, wherein the inner grid is the oscillator grid and the outer grid is the signal grid.

A signaling system in accordance with the invention contemplates as a signal mixing means, a multi-element electric discharge device having between its anode and cathode a plurality of grid electrodes, and it has been found that in certain specific applications, such as its application in a superheterodyne receiving system, the connection of the oscillator and signal channel to certain of the grid electrodes provides an advantage, in addition to the independent frequency operating characteristic for each of the signal channels, of permitting a change of bias potential of one of the controlled grids to control the signal output through a common anode output circuit, also independently of the operating characteristics of the input signal channels.

By way of example, it has been found that a multi grid electric discharge device or tube may be arranged as above described, to function as a combined detector and oscillator in a superheterodyne receiver while permitting negative bias for one of the control grids to be varied, thereby to control the volume or amplitude of the signal output therefrom without appreciably affecting the average signal amplitude or frequency response characteristic of the oscillator portion of the system. With this arrangement, the control grid may be controlled manually or may be connected with an automatic volume control circuit in substantially the same manner as any other electric discharge device in the system to be controlled automatically in response to changes in the signal amplitude.

Likewise, it has been found that a radio frequency signal applied to a mixing device of the type above described through one of the input channels may effectively be modulated by audio frequency signals supplied through another input channel, without interaction between the two channels and with a relatively high gain.

In a superheterodyne receiver, a system of this character has the further advantage that the oscillator may operate at a lower output voltage, the oscillator output is not coupled into the radio frequency system and only a single device or tube is required.

The invention will, however, be better understood from the following description when taken in connection with the accompanying drawings, and its scope will be pointed out in the appended claims.

In the drawings,

Fig. 1 is a schematic circuit diagram of a signaling system embodying the invention, being specifically a combined detector-oscillator system for a superheterodyne type of receiver;

Figs. 2, 3, and 4 are curve diagrams indicating certain operating characteristics of the system shown in Fig. 1; and

Figs. 5, 6, 7, and 8 are modifications of the system shown in Fig. 1. Like parts throughout the various figures are designated by like reference numerals.

Referring to Fig. 1, 10 is an input transformer for a radio frequency signal input channel 11, and 12 is an output transformer in an intermediate frequency signal output channel 13, between which channels is connected a combined first detector and oscillator device 14.

The device 14 is a multi element electric discharge device or tube having a source of electrons, in the form of a usual cathode 15, and an anode 16 between which, in spaced series relation, along the electronic stream, are interposed three other electrodes or grid elements 17, 18, and 19, being, respectively, a first or inner negative control grid, a screen element or grid, and a second or outer negative control grid. The first control grid 17 is connected, as indicated, with the signal or radio frequency input channel through the secondary 20 of the input transformer 10, and the grid circuit therefor, indicated at 21, is returned to the cathode 15 through a suitable source of negative biasing potential 22 and a return ground lead 23.

The second control grid 19 is connected with an input circuit coupled to the anode 16 through a coupling transformer 24 having a primary winding 25 of low impedance connected in the anode or output circuit 26 of the device, and having a secondary 27 tuned by a suitable variable capacitor 28. The tuned secondary is connected between the grid 19 and the cathode 15 through a suitable source of negative biasing potential 29 and the common return lead 23.

The intermediate frequency output transformer 12 is tuned to the intermediate frequency by suitable condensers 30 and is interposed between the intermediate frequency output circuit 13 and the anode circuit 26, the primary of the intermediate frequency output circuit being connected with the anode 16 in series with the primary 25 and a source of anode potential 31 which is in turn connected at its negative side to the cathode return lead 23, all as indicated.

The screen electrode 18 interposed between the negative control grids 17 and 19, is also operated at a positive potential from a suitable source 32, as indicated.

It will be noted that the signal input grid 17 and the second control grid 19 are operated at negative potentials, while the anode and intermediate grid are operated at positive potentials. The system thus includes an electric discharge device having an anode and a cathode, between which is an electron stream space path in which are interposed two separate, preferably negative, control grids which are separated and shielded from each other by at least one other positive electrode.

The effect of this arrangement is such that the two control grids have no interaction one upon the other and, therefore, do not serve to load the associated circuits and thus vary the frequency response characteristic or amplitude of signals applied to the device or tube 16 through either the transformer 18 and the radio frequency signal channel 11 or the transformer 26. In this sense the control grids 17 and 19 act as two impedance controlling elements for independently varying the impedance presented to the electron stream between the cathode 16 and the anode 18.

In the present example, through the intercoupling of the anode and the electrode 19 through the tuned transformer 24, the grid 19 may be caused to operate as an oscillator at any suitable frequency within the tuning range of the condenser 28 and secondary 27. In a superheterodyne receiver, this frequency is ordinarily such that, combined with the input signals, by the electron coupling in the tube, it will cause an intermediate or beat frequency, equal to the difference between the oscillation and incoming signal frequencies, to be delivered to the output circuit or output or intermediate frequency channel represented by the terminals 13.

The control grids 17 and 19 operate preferably on a linear portion of their anode-current, grid-bias characteristic curve and are spaced with respect to each other and the anode 16 common to them so that the transconductance from each of them to the anode are of values such that the one grid, which is the grid 17 in the present example, may be utilized to receive radio frequency signals, while the other grid, which is the grid 19 in the present example, may be utilized to obtain oscillations.

The relation of the transconductances and the effect of varying a signal potential on one control grid to vary the transconductance or mutual conductance between the other control grid and the anode may be more clearly understood by referring to the curves indicated in Figs. 2, 3 and 4. In each of these curves the transconductance or mutual conductance is represented as the ordinate and the variation in grid bias potential on one of the control grids is indicated as the abscissa.

Referring to Fig. 2 particularly, there is shown the transconductance G_{m1} between the anode current I_p and the signal potential E_{g1} on the first grid 17 as the potential E_{g3} on the third or other control grid is varied as indicated by the curve 33; a potential X, for example, applied to the third grid 19, producing a mutual conductance Y between the potential on the first grid 17 and the anode 16.

In a like manner, the curve 34 in Fig. 3 represents the mutual conductance G_{m3} between the anode current I_p and the signal potential E_{g3} on the third grid 19, as the potential E_{g1} on the first grid 17 is varied.

From a consideration of these two curves 33 and 34 above, it will be seen that the combined effect of two signals applied to the control grids 17 and 19 will appear in the output circuit connected with the anode 16. However, from a consideration of Fig. 4, wherein the mutual conductance G_{m2} between the grid current I_{g2} of the second grid or shield 18 and the signal potential E_{g1} applied to the first grid 17, for example, is varied in accordance with changes in the potential E_{g3} applied to the third grid 19, we see that the mutual conductance curve 37 is substantially a straight line, indicating that there is substantially no interaction between the screen and the signal applied to the third grid 19.

From a further consideration of the curves shown in Figs. 2, 3 and 4, and the foregoing description, it will be seen that the current flow through the second grid or electrode is substantially constant with respect to variations in the potential applied to the control grid 19. The second grid may, therefore, not only serve as a screen between the two negative control grids or electrodes, but it may also serve as an anode in circuits wherein its substantially constant anode current may be utilized to advantage. Such circuits will hereinafter be described.

From the foregoing description it will be seen that the two, high impedance, negative, signal input grids are shielded from each other by a positive electrode interposed between them in a common envelope, and that the two control grids operate to control the electronic stream between the anode and cathode in series, so that the variation in potential of one negative grid controls the transconductance of the other negative grid with respect to the anode and thereby, in effect, controls the gain between the other control grid and said anode.

Stated in other words, the signal applied to one control grid serves to control the gain through the electric discharge device from the other grid, and since each grid, in effect, forms a terminal means for a separate signal channel, the signals transmitted through said channels to said grids are thus effectively united or mixed and transferred to the output circuit. In the present example, the oscillator grid and the signal grid receive signals at such differing frequencies that the resulting signal delivered to the output or intermediate frequency circuit 13 is at the desired intermediate frequency, the combined signals on the control grids 17 and 19 being rectified in the main anode circuit of the tube.

In certain applications of the system of Fig. 1 it is desirable to increase the anode impedance and the transconductance between the second or outer control grid 19 and the anode 16, and at the same time to remove from the output anode circuit 36 and its connection with the intermediate frequency circuit 13 the oscillator function introduced through the coupling provided through the transformer 24. To this end, the tube 16 may be provided with a fourth electrode or a screen element 39 between the anode 16 and the second control grid 19, as shown in Fig. 5 to which attention is now directed.

The electrode 39 not only provides a screen between the anode and the grid 19, but also serves as an auxiliary oscillator anode. It is coupled through the primary 25 of transformer 24 in the same manner as the anode 16 in the circuit of Fig. 1. Otherwise, except for a difference in the potential supply system, the circuits and the device 16 are identical with those of Fig. 1, as will be seen from a further inspection of Fig. 5.

It will be seen that the bias potentials for the control grids 17 and 19 are derived from a self bias source 31 in the anode return lead 30, and that the cathode 16 is provided with a heater 32. Likewise, the positive potentials for the screen elements 18 and 39 are derived from a suitable potential divider source 40. As shown, electrodes 18 and 39 are less positive than the anode 16.

By providing the transformer 24 with a low

impedance primary winding 26, the electrode 36 provides a more effective shield or screen between the anode 16 and the control electrode 19. This arrangement has the further advantage that the output circuit 26 from the anode 16 may be led directly through the output device 12 and to the utilization circuit. In apparatus having shielding, this has the advantage that the output circuit may be more completely shielded beginning directly with the anode 16.

The signaling system shown and described in connection with Fig. 1, embodying an electric discharge device having two separate control grids in series relation to each other, along an electronic stream in a common envelope, with a positive shield or screen member between them, is readily adapted by slight modification to provide an effective modulator system, as will be seen by referring to Fig. 6. The tube 14 with its positively energized anode 16, cathode 18 and inner and outer control grids 17 and 19 separated by the screen electrode 18 which electrostatically isolates them from each other is shown in connection with a modulating channel or signal input circuit having terminals 41 connected to the control grid 19 through a coupling transformer 42. The modulating channel is adapted to operate at audio frequencies, being provided with an audio frequency input transformer. However, other modulating signals may be used.

In the circuit shown in Fig. 6, the grid 19 receives signals from the modulating channel 41 as one source of electrical oscillations, while the radio frequency signals are supplied through the channel 11 from another source of electrical oscillations to the inner or first control grid 17. The combined signal, i. e., the modulated radio frequency signal, is thus supplied to the anode 16 and the output circuit 26, thence to the utilization circuit 12 through the output transformer 12 which, in this case, is tuned to the signal frequency.

In the event that the modulating signal and the input signal are of the same frequency, such as in the case that the signal channel 11 conveys a modulated intermediate frequency signal and the modulating channel 41 conveys the same intermediate frequency signal without modulation, then the output circuit will receive the audio frequency component of the modulated intermediate frequency signal. A system of the above character will hereinafter be described in connection with Fig. 8.

The circuit, therefore, does not differ fundamentally from that shown in Fig. 1. A difference is that grid 19 is not utilized to generate local oscillations, but instead is utilized to receive signals at the modulation frequency. The control effect of each control grid upon the mutual conductance between the other grid and the anode is the same as described in connection with the circuit of Fig. 1. It will, therefore, be seen that the system is readily adapted for use as a modulator, wherein the two signal channels may be operated without interaction one upon the other. Like the circuit shown in Fig. 1, the system has the advantage that modulation may be effected through the use of relatively low audio frequency modulating potentials. Also, no audio frequency power is necessary for the reason that the grid 19 is a negative, high impedance control electrode. This may be expressed in other words by stating that grid 19 is so negatively polarized or energized that substantially no current is thereby drawn from the electron discharge path during operation of the tube, including the positive half cycles of alternating current impressed on the grid 19.

It will be noted that in the above described embodiment and in the preceding embodiments of the invention, the radio frequency signal is placed upon the first or inner grid, while the modulation signal in the present example, and the oscillator signal in the preceding embodiment, is placed upon the second or outer control grid. This is a preferred arrangement, particularly in a modulator, for the reason that the lower frequency signals, such as the audio frequency modulation signals, are less effected by the anode to grid capacity than are the radio frequency signals. In other words, with the grid arrangement shown, the radio frequency signal circuit receives no appreciable change in load, whereby its operating characteristic is changed in response to variations in the potential existing in the output or anode circuit.

Referring now to Fig. 7, a combined detector-oscillator system is shown, wherein, as distinguished from the circuit arrangement of Figs. 1, 5 and 6, the connections for the signal or control grids are reversed, thereby placing the radio frequency signal on the outer or second control grid and the oscillator signal on the first or inner control grid.

In Fig. 7 a radio frequency signal circuit 45 is supplied with radio frequency signals from a channel, represented by input terminals 46, through a coupling transformer 47, the secondary 48 of which forms a part of the tuned radio frequency circuit. Locally generated oscillations for beating with the incoming signals are provided in a tuned oscillator circuit 49 which is connected through a compensated filter 50 and suppressor resistor 51 to the inner or first control grid electrode 52 of a multi grid electric discharge device or tube 53 and serves as an input circuit to the grid 52. The tube 53 is provided with an anode 54 and an output anode circuit 55 which is common to the input circuits 55 and 60 of the control grid electrodes 52 and 58 respectively and is coupled to an output or intermediate frequency signal channel, represented by terminals 56, through a tuned coupling device 57. Anode operating potential is supplied to the anode circuit 55 through a supply lead 58 connected with a suitable source of direct current 59 having supply terminals 59—59.

The cathode of the tube 53 is indicated at 61 and is connected through a self bias resistor 62 and a grounded cathode return lead 63 to an intermediate tap point 63a on the potential source 59. The polarity of the potential source 59 is indicated in the drawings, and the radio frequency input circuit is connected therewith through a coupling resistor 64 to a variable tap point 65, normally indicated as more negative than the cathode connection point 63a, whereby the output signal control grid indicated at 66 and connected with the signal input or radio frequency circuit 45 is normally maintained at a negative potential.

It will be noted that the electrode or grid 66 is the third electrode from the cathode 61 and is separated from the first electrode or control grid 52 by screen electrode or grid 67. The latter grid is connected through a supply lead 68 and the primary 69 of a transformer 70 to a variable positive tap point 71 on the potential source 59.

A fourth grid electrode or element 72 is interposed between the control grid 66 and the anode

84 and is also connected to a source of positive potential, such as the tap point 71, as indicated, through a suitable supply lead 73.

With the above described circuit arrangement it will be noted that the control grid 62 operates in conjunction with the electrode 67 and the cathode 61 to provide an oscillator which is tuned by the circuit 69 of which the transformer 70 is a part. The oscillator grid 62 receives a negative bias potential relative to cathode 61 from the self bias resistor 62, while the second electrode 67 operates at a positive potential whereby it forms the plate or anode electrode of the oscillator. It also operates as a screen between the first control grid 62 and the second control grid 66 and may be termed the first or auxiliary anode or the inner screen of the tube. The electrode 67 and the control grid 62 may also be referred to as auxiliary electrodes interposed between the cathode and the grid 66 and operating as oscillation-producing means.

The screen 67 substantially prevents interaction between the oscillator and the radio frequency portions of the system. The screening function of the electrode 67 is materially increased by maintaining the primary winding 69 in circuit with it at a relatively low impedance value only sufficient to provide the necessary electrical coupling with the tuned circuit 45. As above pointed out, the screening electrode or grid 67 functions as an anode with respect to the first grid 62 and the cathode 61, through the feed-back winding 69, for maintaining oscillations. The grid 72 functions as a screen grid adjacent to the anode 84 and may be referred to as the outer screen or shielding element.

It will be seen that in accordance with the description of the operation of the circuit of Fig. 1 in connection with Figs. 2, 3 and 4, the anode current to the electrode 67 will not vary appreciably in response to variations in the signal input potentials on grid 66, and for this reason it may be utilized as the oscillator anode, thereby to permit the operation of the device as a combined detector-oscillator.

Stated in other words, the change in transconductance from the first grid or oscillator grid 62 to the second grid or oscillator anode 67 is relatively low in response to variations in the signal control grid voltage, whereby the second electrode 67 operating at a positive potential between the signal control grid 66 and the first or inner control grid 62 may serve as a combined screen and anode.

The circuit arrangement is fundamentally the same as that of Figs. 1, 5 and 6 in that two preferably negative, high impedance, control grids or impedance controlling electrodes are interposed in the electronic stream in series relation to each other and are separated by a screen electrode or grid operating at a positive potential. However, it will be noted that the control grid connections are reversed, whereby the inner grid receives the oscillation signal, and the second control grid or third electrode receives the radio frequency signal. The radio frequency signal control grid is furthermore shielded or screened from the anode and is substantially shielded or screened from the oscillator grid. The electronic coupling, whereby the separate signal input channels are substantially independent of each other and are yet provided with a common output circuit is, otherwise, the same as described in connection with Fig. 1. The circuit described, however, has a further important advantage over any of the preceding circuits as will be seen from a further consideration of the circuit.

It will be noted that the grid bias potential applied to the signal control grid 66 is derived in part from the self bias resistor 62 and in part from a portion 74 of the potential supply source through the variable tap connection 68. The combined potentials are applied to the grid circuit 46 through the fixed resistor 64. With this arrangement the bias potential applied to the grid 66 varies with changes in the anode current through the self bias resistor 62 and may be varied manually by adjustment of the tap 68. It may also be caused to vary by varying a flow of current through the resistor 64 through the medium of any suitable means such as an automatic volume control device or tube, as will hereinafter be described.

It has been found that a variation of the biasing potential applied to the signal control grid 66 serves effectively to vary or control between desired limitations the output volume or amplitude of the beat frequency or intermediate frequency signal and that this may be done without effecting the oscillator frequency. In other words, by controlling the bias potential on the second or outer negative grid while the first or inner negative grid is employed in the oscillator, the amplification or gain through the detector-oscillator system may be controlled without impairing the oscillator voltage amplitude, stability, or frequency characteristic. While a single thermionic or electron discharge device is thus used in a signal channel mixing circuit, yet volume control means may be applied to the device and be used with the electron coupling without impairing certain desired operating characteristics of one of the coupled circuit, in this case the oscillator portion. The two separate independent functions of the control grids and the operating circuits in connection therewith are undisturbed and unaffected by the volume control arrangement.

The ability to control the volume of the signal output in connection with a device of this character in a signal system is extremely desirable, and it will be seen that an automatic volume control system may be coupled to the signal input grid to control it automatically in response to changes in the average amplitude of incoming signals.

In the present example an automatic volume control device or tube 75 is connected with the resistor 64 through its anode circuit 76. In order to place a positive potential on the anode, its cathode lead, indicated at 77, is connected to a variable tap 78 on the source 59 more negative than the tap point 68, and the grid circuit 79 is returned through a coupling resistor 80 to a still more negative point 81 also on the source 59. Controlling potentials such as radio frequency signal potentials are supplied to the coupling resistor and hence to the volume control tube from any suitable source, such as terminals indicated at 82, through a suitable coupling means or condenser 83.

With this arrangement, it will be seen that variations in the average amplitude of potentials supplied to the terminals 82 which receive signal energy from a source common to them and to input terminals 46 will cause the anode current of the device 75 to vary through the resistor 64, thereby varying the biasing potential applied to the grid 66. The present arrangement operates

in such a manner that as the signal strength increases, the anode current through circuit 76 also increases, thereby increasing the potential drop through the resistor 84 and the negative bias on the grid 66, which in turn reduces the amplitude of signal output from the output circuit 88. As hereinbefore described, this action is entirely independent of the oscillator signal set up in the circuit 49 and does not serve to vary it either in frequency or amplitude.

The filter circuit 80 and the suppressor resistor 81 in the oscillator grid circuit are for the purpose of smoothing the frequency response characteristic of the oscillator throughout the operating range, and are shown in the circuit as used. They do not, however, form any part of the present invention except incidentally in connection therewith and, accordingly, are believed to require no further description.

It will also be noted that suitable by-pass capacitors 84 are provided throughout the circuit as required, and represent well known means for preventing coupling in the supply circuits.

As fully appears from the foregoing description and the drawings, Fig. 7 shows a system responsive to electric oscillations comprising electron tube 53 having a cathode 61, grid elements 62 and 66, an anode 67 which is the first anode in the sense of being nearest to the cathode, and a second anode 64, in combination with high frequency oscillation generating means including the tuned oscillator circuit 49 and the transformer primary 69 disposed respectively between the cathode 61 and the grid 62 and between the cathode and the first anode element 67 for modulating the electron stream of the tube at a frequency determined by the oscillation generating means, means including control grid 66 for modulating the electron stream in accordance with the received electric oscillations, means including the output circuit of anode 64 for rectifying the resultant variations in the electron stream, means including tuned output circuit 87 responsive to the rectified variations and disposed in series between the cathode 61 and the second anode 64, and means in the form of screen grid 72 for shielding the portion of the electron stream of the tube between the cathode and the first anode 67 from the influence of the second anode 64 for high frequency variations of potential upon the second anode, such shielding means comprising the screen grid 72 for the second anode and a circuit between the screen grid 72 and the tuned output circuit 87 such that any portion of said last mentioned circuit which is common to the high frequency portion of the generating means is of negligible impedance at the frequency of the generated oscillations in comparison with the internal tube impedance between the cathode and the anode element 67. By-pass capacitors 84 effectively assure that any part of the circuit between shield element 72 and the anode output circuit 85, 87 and 88 which is common to any portion of the circuits of the oscillation generating means is of negligible impedance at the frequency of the generated oscillations.

Referring now to Fig. 8, a combined detector and oscillator system employing electron coupling and isolation of two signal input circuits similar to the circuit shown in Fig. 7 is further shown in connection with the electric discharge device 53. All of the circuit connections to the various electrode elements are the same and the automatic volume control connection has been omitted for simplicity of illustration. Like parts are provided with like numerals throughout. A slightly different oscillator circuit 85 and a single suppressor resistor 86 are shown in connection with the grid 62.

It will also be noted that the screen grid means 72 is provided with a second electrode portion 87, whereby it further screens the second control grid 66. The grid 72, therefore, forms a complete shield for the signal control grid 66 and it has been found in practice that this is desirable in certain circuits. It has furthermore been found that the grid or electrode 87 may be provided by a simple rod placed in the tube envelope between the first control grid and the screen 72—87 when the function of the element 87 is no longer required as a screen.

In Fig. 8, as in Fig. 7, by-pass capacitors 84 effectively assure that any part of the circuit between shield element 72 and the anode output circuit 85, 87 and 88, which is common to the circuits of the oscillation generating means is of negligible impedance at the frequency of the generated oscillations.

The embodiment of the invention shown in Fig. 8 represents the present preferred embodiment thereof and has been found in operation to give a combined detector-oscillator action without interaction between the circuits connected with the control electrodes, and a complete electronic coupling, while permitting a complete control of the output signal amplitude independently of functions of either of the signal input circuits. A circuit of this character is of importance and permits the effective use of an automatic volume control means therewith in a superheterodyne receiver, for the reason that the detector-oscillator operation is thereby rendered entirely independent of the volume control operation.

In the control of the signal output volume or output signal amplitude, it is desirable that the control grid 66 be of the exponential, i. e. variable mu, type for certain applications, whereby the volume of the signal output from the device may more accurately and effectively be controlled and whereby there is provided a very gradually changing output with varying bias voltage in the grid 66 over a wide range of output and bias voltage.

In the language of claims awarded to me in interference with the patent to Wheeler 1,958,027, there is produced in the exercise of my invention a virtual cathode composed of a cloud of electrons and acting as an electron source for anode 16 and grid 19 of Figs. 1 and 6, for anode 16 and grids 19 and 36 of Fig. 5, and for anode 64 and grids 66 and 72 of Figs. 7 and 8. This cloud of electrons may be considered in Fig. 6 by way of illustration as occupying a position on the cathode side of grid 19 and between that grid and the positive grid electrode 16. The positive potential of grid electrode 16 draws from the cathode electrons for the replenishment of the cloud of electrons constituting the virtual cathode and the retarding effect of the negative potential on control grid 19 relative to cathode 18 tends to cause the cloud of electrons to collect just beyond the electrode 18. The density of the electron supply at the virtual cathode varies in accordance with the alternating current potential impressed on the inner grid 17. When the potential on grid 17 becomes more positive an increased supply of electrons passes to the virtual cathode, and when the potential on grid 17 be-

comes more negative the electron supply at the virtual cathode is decreased. Similarly, the virtual cathode in Figs. 7 and 8 may be considered as the cloud of electrons occupying the space on the cathode side of grid 66 and between it and the next adjacent positive electrode.

I have disclosed herein a method of modulating an alternating current signal in a vacuum tube having a cathode, an anode, and an electron space path therebetween, which comprises, again with reference to Fig. 6 by way of illustration, attracting an electron stream to an intermediate position in said path as by the positively energized grid 18, retarding the electron stream to form a virtual cathode at a position beyond such intermediate position as by the negative repelling action of the negatively biased control grid 19, modulating the density of the electrons at the virtual cathode by varying the attraction of the electron stream as by impressing alternating current potential on the inner grid 17, further attracting a part of the electron stream from the virtual cathode to the positively energized anode 16 (the other part being absorbed by the positively energized grid 18), and causing the alternating current signal potential to vary the further attraction of said part of the stream as by impressing such potential on the outer control grid 19, all in such manner that the modulation of the density of the virtual cathode in turn causes modulation of the signal in the vacuum tube.

The statements made above apply in like manner to methods carried out by the arrangements shown in other figures of the drawings. In Figs. 7 and 8 the electron stream is first attracted from the cathode 61 to the intermediate position of the positively energized electrode next adjacent to and on the side of grid 66 toward the actual cathode 61. Such positively energized electrode and the negatively biased control grid 66 set up a virtual cathode between them. Figs. 7 and 8 also involve the further step of producing oscillations in the space path between the actual and virtual cathodes by varying the attraction of the electron stream, thereby effecting modulation of the density of the virtual cathode in accordance with the generated oscillations. As previously described, the oscillations are produced in the circuits associated with cathode 61 and grid electrodes 62 and 67. I also effect the further step of controlling the current in the output path associated with the main anode 64 by controlling the further attraction of electrons from the virtual cathode to the anode, without substantially affecting the oscillations in the space between the actual and virtual cathodes. As already pointed out above, in describing the tubes and circuits of Figs. 7 and 8, the production of the local oscillations between the actual cathode and the virtual cathode permits the last-mentioned step to be performed in that the production of the oscillations in the tube is not effected by the controlling potentials by which the last-mentioned step is effected. More particularly this permits use of automatic volume control means in a superheterodyne receiver for the reason that the oscillator portion of the detector-oscillator operation is substantially independent of the automatic volume control operation. In other words, variations of the negative bias on the control grid 66 do not affect the supply of electrons from cathode 61 to the oscillator electrodes 62 and 67. When, for example, signals of large amplitude are being received and grid 66 is driven strongly negative by the circuits of the automatic volume control tube 75, such negative potential on grid 66 does not prevent a plentiful supply of electrons from cathode 61 to oscillator electrodes 62 and 67 to assure maintenance of the oscillations.

The desirable features of the circuit of Fig. 8 may be utilized in a modulated oscillator by applying to the outer grid 66 a modulation signal in the same manner as shown in connection with Fig. 6. This involves merely the substitution of the input transformer 42 for the tuned circuit 45. With such an arrangement the control grids will operate at different signal frequencies and through independent input circuits, while serving to electronically couple the circuits and to provide a modulated signal output.

Furthermore, as pointed out in connection with Fig. 6, a device of the character described therein, and the modification thereof shown and described in Fig. 8 may be utilized as a detector of modulated signals, the two control grids receiving signals at the same frequency, the one being modulated and the other unmodulated.

The circuit of Fig. 8 has the additional advantage that the output volume may be adjusted by operation of the tap connection 53 as described in connection with the preceding figure. It will be appreciated, however, that any other suitable arrangement for controlling the grid bias on the signal control grid may be provided and, likewise for the oscillator or first control grid, bias means may be provided other than the self bias resistor 52. The potential sources 59 and other potential sources shown throughout the drawings in connection with the various figures, have been shown only by way of example, as representing any suitable sources of operating potential having the polarities as described.

An additional advantage of the screen grid 72 employed in the circuits of Figs. 7 and 8 lies in in the fact that it materially increases the plate impedance and the transconductance between the signal control grid 66 and the anode 64. It also tends to prevent degeneration or other interaction between said last named elements.

In a combined detector-oscillator system of the character shown and described herein, in addition to the independent operation of the electronically coupled circuits, the oscillator portion functions at a lower radio frequency voltage than was customarily used prior to my invention and in the then current superheterodyne receiver circuits employing a local oscillator tube separate from the first detector, thereby decreasing the tendency toward undesirable radiation, since only about one-tenth of the voltage output is required for the oscillator. Furthermore, a relatively high radio frequency to intermediate frequency gain is provided.

I claim as my invention:

1. In a signaling system, a multi-electrode electric discharge device having a pair of negative control grids arranged to operate in series relation to each other in the electronic stream of said device, a positive screen electrode between said grids, a signal input circuit connected with one of said control grids, a third grid, and means for coupling said third grid and the other of said control grids.

2. In a signal receiving system, a combined detector oscillator means, including in combination, a single electric discharge device having an anode, a cathode, and a plurality of grid electrodes therebetween, an oscillator circuit con-

nected with and coupling two of said electrodes more adjacent to the cathode, a signal input circuit connected with another of said electrodes, more adjacent to the anode, and a screen electrode for said signal input electrode.

3. In a signaling system, an electric discharge device having an anode, a cathode, and a plurality of grid electrodes interposed in spaced relation to each other along the electronic path between said first and second named electrodes, a signal input circuit connected with one of said electrodes more adjacent to the cathode, means for applying a negative bias potential thereto whereby it operates as a control grid, a second signal input circuit connected with another of said electrodes more adjacent to the anode, and means for applying a variable negative bias potential thereto whereby it operates as a second control grid, said control grids being separated by another of said electrodes, means for applying a positive potential to said last named electrode, and means connected with said last named electrode for feeding back energy therefrom to one of said signal input circuits.

4. In a signal receiving system, an electric discharge device having a pair of control grids, an input circuit connected with each of said control grids, an output anode circuit for said device, a screen grid interposed between said control grids, means connected with said screen grid whereby it may function as a screen electrode and as an anode, and means providing an electrical coupling between said screen grid and one of said control grids.

5. In a signal receiving system, an electric discharge device having a pair of control grids, an input circuit connected with each of said control grids, an output anode circuit for said device, a screen grid interposed between said control grids, means connected with said screen grid whereby it may function as a screen electrode and as an anode, means providing an electrical coupling between said screen grid and one of said control grids, and means for applying a variable biasing potential to the other of said control grids.

6. In a signaling system, an electric discharge device having a pair of control grids arranged to operate in series relation to each other in the electronic stream of said device, a third electrode interposed between said grids, means connected with said third electrode whereby it may function as a screen electrode between said grids and as an anode, means for applying a negative biasing potential to each of said control grids, at least one of said potentials being variable, and means for coupling said third electrode to one of said control grids for the transmission of signal potentials.

7. In a signal receiving system, a combined detector oscillator means, including in combination, a single electric discharge device having an anode, a cathode, and a plurality of grid electrodes therebetween, an oscillator circuit connected with and coupling two of said electrodes more adjacent to the cathode, a signal input circuit connected with another of said electrodes, means for applying a negative bias potential to said last named electrode whereby it operates as a control grid, and means for applying a potential to at least one other electrode adjacent to said control grid whereby said last named electrode functions as a screen for said control grid.

8. In a superheterodyne receiver, a combined detector-oscillator comprising an electric discharge device having a cathode, an anode, a signal input grid more adjacent to the anode, an oscillator grid more adjacent to the cathode, means providing a screen electrode between said grids and between said signal grid and the anode, means providing an oscillator anode between said oscillator grid and the screen electrode, a tuned oscillator coupling means between said oscillator anode and grid, a tuned signal input circuit connected with said signal input grid, means for applying a variable negative biasing potential to said signal input grid, means for applying a negative biasing potential to said oscillator grid, means for applying positive potentials to said screen electrode and oscillator anode, and an intermediate frequency output circuit connected with the anode.

9. In a modulation system, a vacuum tube comprising an actual cathode, means for producing a virtual cathode composed of a cloud of electrons, said means comprising a pair of electrodes relatively close together, the said electrode nearer said actual cathode having impressed thereon a substantially more positive voltage than the other of said electrodes, an anode near said virtual cathode, a grid between said anode and said virtual cathode, a source of signal voltage coupled to said grid, and means independent of said grid and anode for causing the electron density of said virtual cathode to fluctuate periodically and thereby modulate said signal voltage, said means comprising an electrode interposed between said actual cathode and said virtual cathode.

10. In a signal translating arrangement, an oscillator-modulator system comprising a cathode, an anode and a grid between said cathode and anode, a source of signal voltage coupled to said grid, an output circuit coupled to said anode, and oscillation-producing means for modulating said signal in said tube, said means including two auxiliary electrodes interposed between said cathode and said grid, the said auxiliary electrode furthest from said cathode having a positive voltage applied thereto, and a tuned circuit coupled between one of said auxiliary electrodes and said cathode.

11. In a signal receiving and translating arrangement, an oscillator-modulator system comprising a vacuum tube having a cathode, an anode and a first, second and third grid positioned in the space path in the order named, from said cathode to said anode, a source of positive voltage relative to said cathode impressed upon said second grid for creating an electron stream from said cathode, a signal input circuit connected between said third grid and said cathode, an output circuit connected between said cathode and said anode, and a tuned circuit connected to said cathode and coupled to said first and second grids for producing sustained oscillations.

12. In a superheterodyne receiver an oscillator-modulator system comprising a vacuum tube having an actual cathode, an anode electrode and first, second and third grid-like electrodes located at respectively increasing distances from said actual cathode in the space path between said actual cathode and said anode, a voltage source impressing a positive voltage on said second electrode, and a voltage source impressing a negative voltage on said third electrode, whereby a virtual cathode with respect to said anode is created between said second and third electrodes, a tuned circuit system connected to said actual cathode and having oscillation-producing coupling to said first and second electrodes, and

a source of signals connected between said third electrode and said actual cathode, and an output circuit connected between said cathode and an electrode located beyond said third electrode.

13. In a signal receiving and translating system, a bias controlled modulator stage comprising a vacuum tube having a cathode, an anode and at least two grids interposed between the anode and cathode, one of said grids having a variable-mu structure and having impressed thereon the signal voltage and the bias control voltage, said other grid having impressed thereon an alternating voltage, whereby space-path modulation is effected in said tube, means responsive to the output of said modulator for causing said bias voltage to automatically vary in proportion to the received signal intensity, whereby the output of said modulator stage is maintained more nearly constant than the input over a wide range of received intensities.

14. In a superheterodyne receiver, an oscillator-modulator system comprising a vacuum tube having a cathode and two oscillation-producing electrodes near said cathode, impedance means including a tuned circuit coupled between said two electrodes and connected to said cathode for producing sustained oscillations in said tube, said tube including a control grid and an anode located beyond the path between said cathode and said two oscillation-producing electrodes in said tube, a source of signal voltage coupled between said control grid and said cathode, and means for applying a bias control voltage on said control grid, whereby the anode current is controlled and any effects of the bias voltage on the oscillations are minimized by the location of said grid and anode.

15. In a superheterodyne receiver, an oscillator-modulator system comprising a vacuum tube having a cathode and two oscillation-producing electrodes near said cathode, impedance means including a tuned circuit coupled between said two electrodes for producing sustained oscillations, said tube including a control grid and an anode located in the space path beyond said oscillation-producing electrodes, a source of signal voltage coupled between said control grid and said cathode, means for developing a bias control voltage which automatically varies with the intensity of said signal source and means for applying said bias voltage to said control grid, whereby the intensity of the modulated signal in the anode circuit is maintained more nearly constant than said signal voltage over a considerable range of signal voltage at said source, without substantially affecting the intensity of said oscillations.

16. In a superheterodyne receiver, containing an oscillator-modulator system comprising a vacuum tube having an anode, an electron emitting cathode, a control electrode, a signal input circuit connected to the control electrode, means for impressing on said control electrode a bias control voltage which is negative relative to the cathode, to maintain a high tube input resistance between said signal control electrode and the cathode, and which varies automatically in accordance with the intensity of the received signals, means including a plurality of additional electrodes interposed between the cathode and the control electrode for producing local oscillations and for shielding the signal electrode from the oscillation-producing electrodes, whereby the flow of electrons to the oscillation-producing electrodes is substantially unaffected by variations in the bias control voltage and radiation of locally produced oscillations from circuits associated with the signal control electrode is prevented, and an intermediate frequency output circuit connected to the anode.

17. In a superheterodyne receiver, containing an oscillator-modulator system comprising a vacuum tube having an anode, an electron emitting cathode, a control electrode, a signal input circuit connected to the control electrode, means for impressing on said control electrode a bias control voltage which is negative relative to the cathode to cause the control electrode to act toward the signal input circuit as a high impedance electrode, means including a plurality of additional electrodes interposed between the cathode and the control electrode for producing local oscillations and for shielding the signal electrode from the oscillation-producing electrodes, whereby the flow of electrons to the oscillation-producing electrodes is substantially unaffected by variations in the bias control voltage and radiation of locally produced oscillations from circuits associated with the signal control electrode is prevented, and an intermediate frequency output circuit connected to the anode.

18. In a superheterodyne receiver, an oscillator-modulator system comprising a vacuum tube having a cathode, an anode and at least three grids located in the space path between said cathode and anode, oscillation-producing feed-back coupling between two of said grids causing sustained oscillatory currents to flow in said space path between said cathode and at least one of said two grids, a signal input circuit coupled between a third of said grids and said cathode, and an output circuit coupled to said anode, causing said oscillatory currents to modulate the signal from said input circuit, means for developing a bias voltage which becomes more negative when the signal intensity increases, and means for impressing said bias voltage on said third grid, thereby maintaining the output intensity in said output circuit more nearly constant than the input intensity over a considerable range of input signal intensities, and at the same time preventing any substantial variation of said oscillatory currents.

19. A modulation system comprising a vacuum tube having an input circuit and an output circuit, said vacuum tube having a space-current path in which are included a cathode and at least two grids, one of said grids having a source of alternating voltage connected thereto, the other of said grids having said input circuit connected thereto and having impressed thereon a variable bias voltage more negative than said cathode, said other grid being of the type giving a gradual variation of space current when said bias voltage is varied.

20. A modulation system comprising a vacuum tube having a cathode, an anode and first, second and third grid-like electrodes interposed in the space path, in the order named, from said cathode to said anode, a signal input circuit connected between said third electrode and said cathode, an output circuit connected between said cathode and said anode, a source of oscillations connected between said first electrode and said cathode, a source of positive voltage connected to said second electrode, and a source of variable negative bias voltage applied to said third electrode for controlling the output of said system, said third electrode being of the type which provides a very gradually changing output

with varying bias voltage over a wide range of output and bias voltage.

21. A modulation system comprising a vacuum tube having a cathode, an anode and first, second, third and fourth grid-like electrodes interposed in the space path, in the order named, from said cathode to said anode, a signal input circuit connected between said third electrode and said cathode, a modulated-signal output circuit connected between said cathode and said anode, a source of positive voltage applied to each of said second and fourth electrodes, a source of oscillations connected between said first electrode and said cathode, and means for applying a variable bias voltage upon said third electrode, whereby the output of said tube may be varied over a wide range.

22. Means for performing on an electric signal wave in one vacuum-tube space path the combined operations of modulation, amplification, and bias-voltage control of amplification, said means comprising a cathode, an inner grid, an inner screen, an outer grid, an outer screen and an anode, all situated in said space path in the order named, said grids having a negative average bias relative to said cathode, said screens and anode being considerably positive relative to said cathode, said inner grid and inner screen having oscillation-producing coupling therebetween, said outer grid having a signal-voltage source coupled thereto, said anode having an output circuit coupled thereto responsive to the difference between the signal and oscillation frequencies, said amplification being controlled by the outer grid bias.

23. A system having the means according to claim 22 in combination with means for causing the outer grid bias to increase automatically with increasing signal intensity, thereby maintaining the amplified signal voltage more nearly uniform than the signal voltage of said source.

24. The method of modulating a signal in a vacuum tube having a cathode, an anode and a space path therebetween, which comprises attracting an electron stream to an intermediate position in said path, retarding said stream to form a virtual cathode just beyond said position, modulating the density of the virtual cathode by varying the attraction of said stream, further attracting a part of said stream from said virtual cathode to said anode, and causing said signal to vary the further attraction of said part of said stream, the modulation of the density of the virtual cathode thereby causing modulation of the signal in said vacuum tube.

25. The method of modulating a signal in, and controlling the modulated output of, a vacuum tube having an actual cathode, an anode and a space path therebetween, which comprises attracting an electron stream to an intermediate position in said path, retarding said stream to form a virtual cathode just beyond said position, producing oscillations in the space path between said actual and virtual cathodes by varying the attraction of said stream, further attracting a part of said stream from said virtual cathode to said anode as output current, causing the signal to vary the further attraction of said part of said stream and thereby to produce in the output current path a current fluctuation of the frequency difference beween signal and oscillation, and controlling the current in said output path by controlling said further attraction without substantially affecting the oscillations in the space between said actual and virtual cathodes.

26. An electron discharge device comprising a thermionic cathode, an anode, an output circuit connected to said anode, two impedance controlling elements for independently varying the impedance presented to an electron stream between said cathode and said anode, an auxiliary anode interposed between said cathode and said first-mentioned anode, oscillation-producing means comprising circuits coupled together and connected respectively to said auxiliary anode and one of said controlling elements, and means comprising a grid-like element interposed between said two controlling elements whereby electrostatic coupling between said two controlling elements is substantially eliminated.

27. A heterodyne detector comprising an electron discharge device having a thermionic cathode, an anode, two input grids interposed between said cathode and anode and passed successively by the electron stream from said cathode to said plate, positively energized electrode between said input grids and proportioned to intercept only a fraction of the electron current from said cathode, an oscillation generating circuit connected to said cathode, said output electrode, and said input grid adjacent said cathode, a signal circuit connected to said cathode and to said other input grid, an output circuit connected to said cathode and to said plate, and a positively polarized screen between said other input grid and said output electrode connected to said oscillation generator circuit.

28. In an electrical system the combination of a continuous electron discharge path comprising an electron emitting cathode and a positively energized anode, a plurality of negatively energized electrodes spaced between said cathode and anode and electrostatically isolated from each other by an electrode interposed therebetween, a plurality of sources of oscillations, and means for impressing different ones of said oscillations upon different ones of said negatively energized electrodes, the negative energizing of a one of said electrodes between said interposed electrode and said anode being so proportioned that substantially no current is thereby drawn fom said electron discharge path during operation, whereby fidelity of operation is enhanced.

29. In anelectrical system the combination of an electronically active path comprising an electron emitting source and an appropriately spaced therefrom positively energized anode, differently spaced control electrodes interposed between said source and said anode, said control electrodes being electrostatically isolated one from the other by an electrode interposed therebetween, separate sources of electrical oscillations, separate means for impressing one of said oscillations between said electron emitting source and one of said control electrodes, separate means for impressing another one of said oscillations between said electron emitting source and a control electrode farther removed therefrom, and means for so negatively polarizing said farther removed electrode that in operation substantially no current is thereby drawn from said electronically active path, whereby fidelity of operation is enhanced.

30. In an electrical system the combination of an electron discharge path comprising an electron emitting cathode and a cooperating positively energized anode, a pair of differently spaced grid electrodes interposed in said path, said grid electrodes being electrostatically isolated one from the other by an electrode interposed therebetween, a pair of separate sources

of electrical oscillations having separate connections for separately impressing them one between said cathode and the nearer thereto one of said grid electrodes, and the other between said cathode and the farther removed therefrom grid electrode, and means for so negatively energizing at least said farther removed grid electrode that substantially no grid current is drawn thereby from said path during operation, whereby fidelity of operation is enhanced.

31. In an electrical system, the combination of an electronically active path comprising an electron emitting source and an appropriately spaced therefrom positively energized anode, differently spaced electrodes interposed between said source and said anode, an electrode between two of said interposed electrodes positively energised to a lesser degree than said anode, separate sources of electrical oscillations separate means for impressing one of said oscillations between said electron emitting source and one of said interposed electrodes located between said source and said positively energized interposed electrode, separate means for impressing another one of said oscillations between said electron emitting source and a control electrode on the far side of said positively energized interposed electrode, and means for so negatively polarizing said far side electrode that in operation substantially no current is thereby drawn from said electronically active path, whereby fidelity of operation is enhanced.

32. The method of modulating electrical alternating current in a thermionic tube having an electron emitting source, an anode and an electron stream space path therebetween, which comprises constantly attracting electrons of said stream to an intermediate position in said path, negatively repelling electron movement at a position beyond said intermediate position, modulating the density of the attracted electrons by variably polarizing that part of said electron stream subjected to said constant attraction, further attracting electrons to said anode, and causing said alternating current to vary said negative repelling of electron movement less than enough on the positive half cycles of the alternating current to draw substantially no electrons from said electron movement, whereby the fidelity of modulation is enhanced.

33. The method of modulating electrical alternating current in a thermionic tube having an electron emitting source, an anode and an electron stream space path therebetween, which comprises attracting electrons of said stream to an intermediate position in said path, negatively repelling electron movement at a position beyond said intermediate position, modulating the density of the attracted electrons by variably polarising said stream at a position ahead of said intermediate position, further attracting electrons to said anode, and causing said alternating current to vary said negative repelling of electron movement less than enough on the positive half cycles of the alternating current to draw substantially no electrons from said electron movement, whereby the fidelity of modulation is enhanced.

34. The method of modulating electrical alternating current in an electronically active path having an electron emitting source, an anode and an electron stream space path therebetween, which comprises constantly attracting a substantial part of the electrons of said stream to an intermediate position in said path, modulating the density of said constantly attracted electrons, further attracting electrons to said anode causing said alternating current to vary said further attraction, and sufficiently negatively polarizing the varying of said further attraction that substantially no electrons are drawn from said electron stream on the positive half cycles of the alternating current, whereby the fidelity of modulation is enhanced.

35. The method of modulating electrical alternating current in an electronically active path having an electron emitting source, an anode and an electron stream space path therebetween, which comprises attracting electrons of said stream to an intermediate position in said path, modulating the density of the attracted electrons by variably polarizing said stream at a position in advance of said intermediate position, further attracting electrons to said anode, causing said alternating current to vary said further attraction, and sufficiently negatively polarizing the varying of said further attraction that substantially no electrons are drawn from said electron stream on the positive half cycles of the alternating current, whereby fidelity of modulation is enhanced.

36. In a system for modulating electrical alternating current, a thermionic tube comprising an electron emitting source, a pair of electrodes relatively close together, the said electrode nearer said electron emitting source being positively energised and the other one of said electrodes being negatively energized, a positively energised anode beyond said negatively energized electrode, a source of alternating current connected to said negatively energized electrode, an electrode interposed between said electron emitting source and said pair of electrodes, and a second source of alternating current connected to said last mentioned electrode, said negatively energised electrode being sufficiently so energised that substantially no current is drawn thereby during the positive half cycle of the impressed thereon alternating current, whereby the fidelity of modulation is enhanced.

37. In a system for modulating electrical alternating current, a thermionic tube comprising an electron emitting source, a pair of negatively energized electrodes and an interposed therebetween positively energised electrode, a positively energised anode beyond said electrodes, and separate sources of alternating current connected to said negatively energised electrodes, the one of said electrodes nearer to said anode being sufficiently negatively energised that substantially no grid current is drawn thereby during operation, whereby fidelity of modulation is enhanced.

38. A system responsive to electric oscillations comprising an electron tube having cathode, grid, anode and second anode elements, high frequency oscillation generating means disposed between said cathode, grid and first mentioned anode elements for modulating the electron stream of said tube at a frequency determined by said oscillation generating means, means for modulating the electron stream in accordance with the received electric oscillations, means for rectifying the resulting variations in the electron stream, and means responsive to said rectified variations disposed in series between said second anode and cathode elements, and means for substantially shielding that portion of the electron stream of said tube between said cathode and first mentioned anode elements from the influence of said second anode element for high fre-

quency variations of potential upon said second anode, said shielding means comprising a shield element for said second anode and a circuit between said shield element and said means responsive to said rectified variations such that any portion of said last mentioned circuit which is common to the high frequency portion of said generating means is of negligible impedance at the frequency of the generated oscillations in comparison with the internal tube impedance between said cathode and first mentioned anode elements.

39. A system responsive to electric oscillations comprising an electron tube having cathode, grid, anode and second anode elements, high frequency oscillation generating means disposed between said cathode, grid and first mentioned anode elements for modulating the electron stream of said tube at a frequency determined by said oscillation generating means, means for modulating the electron stream in accordance with the received electric oscillations, means responsive to the resulting variations in said electron stream disposed in series between said second anode and cathode elements, and means for electrostatically shielding said grid element from the influence of said second anode element for high frequency variations of potential upon said second anode, said shielding means comprising a shield element for said second anode and a circuit between said shield element and said responsive means such that any portion of said last mentioned circuit which is common to the high frequency portion of said generating means is of negligible impedance at the frequency of the generated oscillations in comparison with the internal tube impedance existent between said cathode and first mentioned anode elements.

40. A system responsive to wave signaling energy comprising an electron tube having oscillation-generator-elements and at least one auxiliary element, means including said generator-elements for the self generation of oscillations by said tube and for varying the electron stream of said tube at a frequency determined by said oscillations, means for simultaneously varying said electron stream at a frequency determined by said signaling energy, means for utilizing the resulting variations in said electron stream to set up a flow of current at a third frequency in an auxiliary circuit disposed between said auxiliary element and one of said generator elements, and means comprising a shield element having a connection with said auxiliary circuit of low reactance at the frequency of said oscillations whereby the electron stream between said generator-elements is shielded electrostatically from the tube elements other than said generator elements.

41. A system responsive to wave signaling energy comprising an electron tube having oscillation-generator-elements and at least one auxiliary element, means including said generator-elements for the self generation of oscillations by said tube and for varying the electron stream of said tube at a frequency determined by said oscillations, means for simultaneously varying said electron stream at a frequency determined by said signaling energy, means for utilizing the resulting variations in said electron stream to set up a flow of current at a third frequency in an auxiliary circuit disposed between said auxiliary element and one of said generator-elements, and shielding means within said tube having a connection to said auxiliary circuit comprising a path of relatively low reactance at the frequency of said oscillations and signaling energy.

42. A system responsive to wave signaling energy comprising an electron tube including cathode, grid, anode and second anode elements positioned in the order named, circuits for the self-generation of oscillations disposed between said cathode, grid and first mentioned anode element for varying the electron stream of said tube at the frequency of said oscillations, means for varying the electron stream of said tube in accordance with the frequencies of said signaling energy, an auxiliary circuit disposed between said second anode and said cathode elements and including an output device, means for maintaining said second anode electro-positive with respect to said cathode, means for setting up a flow of current in said output device which varies at frequencies equal to the difference between the frequency of said oscillations and the frequencies of said signaling energy whereby a potential across said output device is caused to vary in accordance with said flow of current, and means for substantially electrostat cally shielding that portion of the electron stream of said tube between said cathode and first mentioned anode elements from the influence of said varying potential across said output device.

43. A system responsive to wave signaling energy comprising an electron tube including cathode, grid, anode and second anode elements, circuits for the self-generation of oscillations disposed between said cathode, grid and first mentionod anode element for varying the electron stream of said tube at the frequency of said oscillations, means for varying the electron stream of said tube in accordance with the frequencies of said wave signaling energy, a circuit disposed between said second anode and cathode elements and including an output device, means for maintaining said second anode electropositive with respect to said cathode, means for setting up a flow of current in said output device which varies at frequencies determined by the combined effect upon the electron stream of the frequency of said oscillations and the frequencies of said wave signaling energy, whereby the potential across said output device is caused to vary in accordance with said flow of current, and means for substantially electrostatically shielding that portion of the electron stream between said cathode and anode elements from the influence of said varying potential across said output device.

44. A system responsive to wave signaling energy comprising an electron tube including cathode, grid anode and second anode elements positioned in the order named, circuits for the self-generation of oscillations disposed between said cathode, grid and first mentioned anode element for varying the electron stream of said tube at the frequency of said oscillations, means for varying the electron stream of said tube in accordance with the frequencies of said signaling energy, a circuit disposed between said second anode and said cathode elements and including an output device having variable electrical constants, means for setting up a flow of current in said output device which varies at frequencies equal to the difference between the frequency of said oscillations and the frequencies of said signaling energy, and means for substantially electrostatically shielding that portion of the electron stream of said tube between said cathode

and first mentioned anode elements from the influence of said variable electrical constants of the output device.

45. In a modulation system, a vacuum tube comprising an actual cathode, means for producing a virtual cathode composed of a cloud of electrons, said means comprising a pair of electrodes relatively close together, the said electrode nearer said actual cathode having impressed thereon a substantially more positive voltage than the other of said electrodes, an anode near said virtual cathode, a grid between said anode and said virtual cathode, a source of oscillations coupled to said grid, and means independent of said grid and anode for causing the electron density of said virtual cathode to fluctuate periodically and thereby modulate said oscillations, said means comprising an electrode interposed between said actual cathode and said virtual cathode.

46. The method of modulating an oscillation in a vacuum tube having a cathode, an anode and a space path therebetween, which comprises attracting an electron stream to an intermediate position in said path, retarding said stream to form a virtual cathode just beyond said position, modulating the density of the virtual cathode by varying the attraction of said stream, further attracting a part of said stream from said virtual cathode to said anode, and causing said oscillation to vary the further attraction of said part of said stream, the modulation of the density of the virtual cathode thereby causing modulation of the oscillation in said vacuum tube.

47. The method of modulating electrical alternating current in a thermionic tube having an electron emitting source, an anode and an electron stream space path therebetween, which comprises attracting electrons of said stream to an intermediate position in said path, retarding the electron movement in said stream to form a virtual cathode just beyond said position, modulating the density of the virtual cathode by variably modifying the attraction of the electrons of said stream, further attracting electrons from said virtual cathode to said anode, and causing said alternating current to vary the further attraction of electrons, the modulation of the density of the virtual cathode thereby causing modulation of the alternating current in said tube.

48. The method of modulating electrical alternating current in a thermionic tube having an electron emitting source, an anode and an electron stream space path therebetween, which comprises attracting electrons of said stream to an intermediate position in said path, retarding the electron movement in said stream to form a virtual cathode therein, modulating the density of the virtual cathode by variably modifying the attraction of the electrons of said stream, further attracting electrons from said virtual cathode to said anode, and causing said alternating current to vary the further attraction of electrons, the modulation of the density of the virtual cathode thereby causing modulation of the alternating current in said tube.

49. In a system for modulating electrical alternating current, a thermionic tube comprising an electron emitting source, means for producing a virtual cathode composed of a cloud of electrons, said means comprising a pair of electrodes relatively close together, one of said electrodes having impressed thereon a potential positive with respect to the other one of said electrodes, a positively energized anode near said virtual cathode creating an electron stream therebetween, a source of alternating current, means for impressing the alternating potentials of said current on the electron stream between said anode and virtual cathode, and a second source of alternating current including means for impressing the alternating potentials thereof on the electron stream between said electron emitting source and said virtual cathode.

50. In a high frequency signalling system, an electron discharge tube provided with an actual cathode and an anode, means for producing a virtual cathode within the tube composed of a cloud of electrons, said means comprising a pair of grids relatively close together, means for maintaining the grid of said pair nearest the actual cathode at a substantially more positive potential than the other grid of the said pair, means for maintaining said last named grid at a substantial negative potential with respect to said actual cathode, means independent of said grids for causing the electron density of said virtual cathode to fluctuate, the last means including an auxiliary grid electrode interposed between the actual cathode and the virtual cathode, and a source of varying high frequency voltage coupled to said auxiliary grid electrode.

51. The method of modulating the output of an electron discharge tube provided with a cathode, anode and a space current path therebetween, comprising attracting an electron stream to an intermediate position in said path, retarding said stream to form a virtual cathode just beyond said position, attracting a part of said stream from said virtual cathode to said anode, and modulating the density of the virtual cathode by varying the attraction of said stream to said intermediate position and thereby causing modulation of the output of said tube.

52. In a signal reception network including a tube provided with an electron emission element an anode and a signal input electrode, a positive screen grid between the signal electrode and the anode, an auxiliary electrode adjacent the screen grid and the anode at a negative potential, said screen and negative electrode cooperating to provide a virtual cathode between the signal electrode and the anode, by virtue of a high value of said negative potential, a signal input circuit connected to the input electrode, and an output circuit connected to the anode.

53. A method of regulating the amplification of signal waves which consists in impressing the waves upon the signal grid of an amplifier tube having an effective plate current signal grid voltage characteristic whose slope is dependent upon the potential of a gain control grid, separating the signal and gain control grids by a positive screening field, and varying the bias of said gain control grid.

54. In a superheterodyne receiver, containing an oscillator-modulator system comprising a vacuum tube having an anode, an electron emitting cathode, a control electrode, a signal input circuit connected to the control electrode, means for impressing on said control electrode a bias control voltage which is negative relative to the cathode, to maintain a high tube input resistance between said signal control electrode and the cathode, and which varies automatically in accordance with the intensity of the received signals, means including a plurality of additional electrodes interposed between the cathode and the control electrode for producing local oscillations and for shielding the signal control elec-

trode from the potentials of the local oscillations produced in the tube, said last-named means utilizing one of said additional electrodes as an oscillator grid and another of said additional electrodes as a shield between the signal control electrode and the oscillator grid, whereby the flow of electrons to the oscillation-producing electrodes is substantially unaffected by variations in the bias control voltage and radiation of locally produced oscillations from circuits associated with the signal control electrode is prevented, and an intermediate frequency output circuit connected to the anode.

55. In a superheterodyne receiver, containing an oscillator-modulator system comprising a vacuum tube having an anode, an electron emitting cathode, a control electrode, a signal input circuit connected to the control electrode, means for impressing a negative bias control voltage on said signal control electrode to maintain a high tube input resistance between the signal control electrode and the cathode, shielding means interposed between the signal control electrode and the anode, means including a plurality of additional electrodes interposed between the cathode and the signal control electrode for producing local oscillations and for shielding the signal control electrode from the potentials of the local oscillations produced in the tube, said last-named means utilizing one of said additional electrodes as an oscillator grid and another of said additional electrodes as a shield between the signal control electrode and the oscillator grid, whereby the flow of electrons to the oscillation-producing electrodes is substantially unaffected by variations in the bias control voltage and radiation of locally produced oscillations from circuits associated with the signal control electrode is prevented, and an intermediate frequency output circuit connected to the anode.

JEROME C. SMITH.

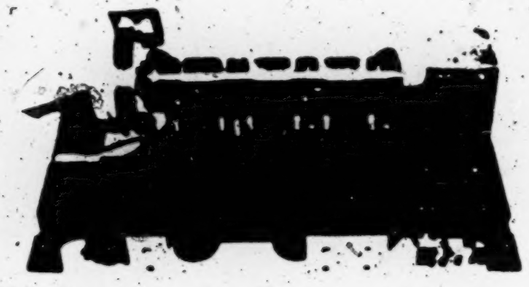
231

RADIOLA 66-PATENT SITUATION

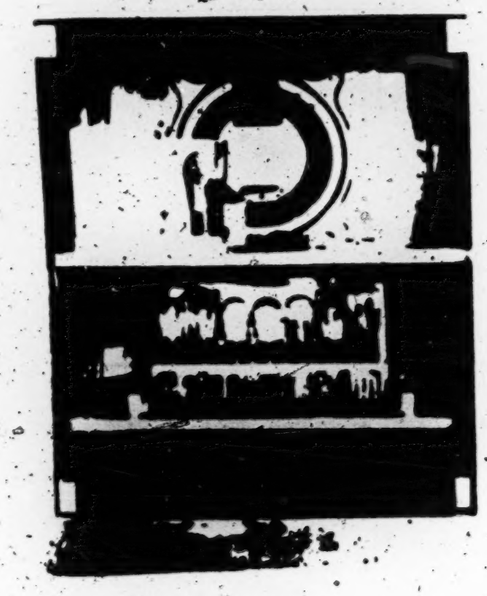
Improved Superheterodyne Radio Receiver, Console Type

(Including a socket-power unit for deriving filament, plate and bias potentials from an alternating current supply, and an electrodynamic loud speaker)

FRONT VIEW

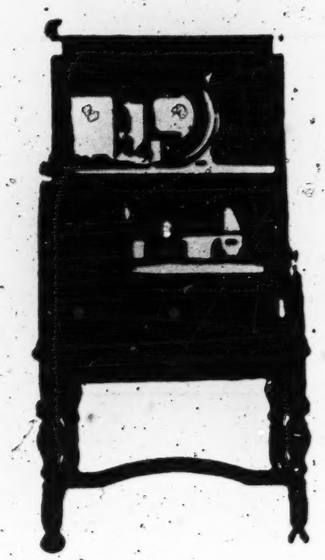


TOP VIEW of CHASSIS



ENLARGED REAR INTERIOR VIEW

BOTTOM VIEW of CHASSIS



REAR INTERIOR VIEW

Exhibit C.

233

I. LANGMUIR.

SYSTEM FOR AMPLIFYING VARIABLE CURRENTS.

APPLICATION FILED OCT. 29, 1913

1,282,439.

Patented Oct. 22, 1918.

Fig. 1.

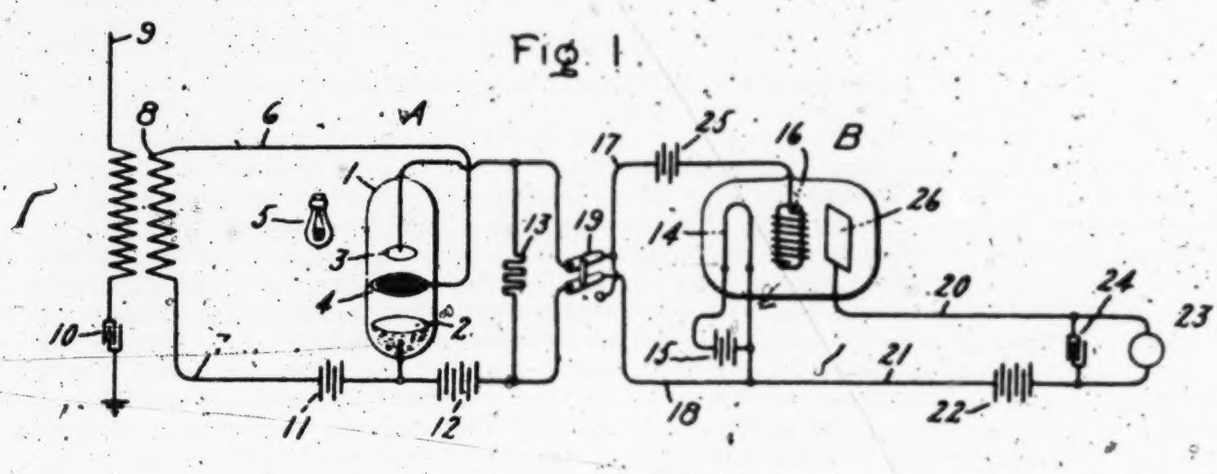


Fig. 2.

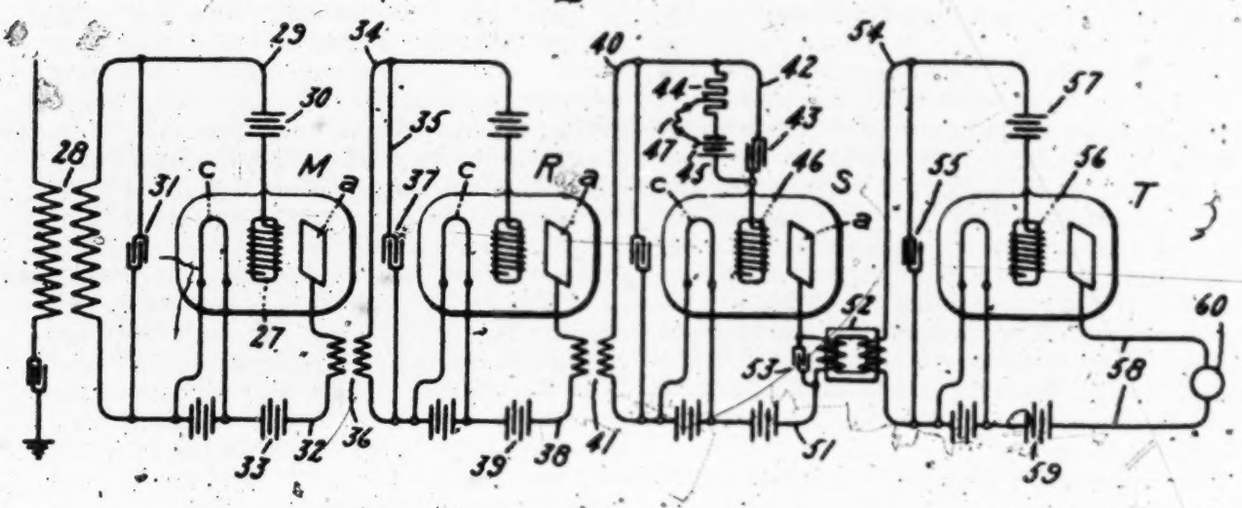
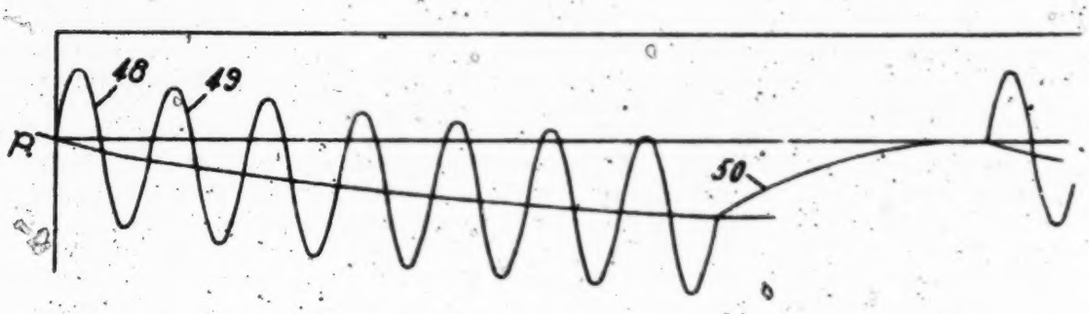


Fig. 3.



WITNESSES:

J. Earl Ryan

J. Ellis Glen.

INVENTOR:

IRVING LANGMUIR,

BY Albert G. Davis

HIS ATTORNEY.

234

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

IRVING LANGMUIR, OF SCHENECTADY, NEW YORK, ASSIGNOR TO GENERAL ELECTRIC COMPANY, A CORPORATION OF NEW YORK.

SYSTEM FOR AMPLIFYING VARIABLE CURRENTS.

1,282,439. Specification of Letters Patent. Patented Oct. 22, 1918.

Application filed October 30, 1913. Serial No. 797,985.

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, IRVING LANGMUIR, a citizen of the United States, residing at Schenectady, county of Schenectady, State of New York, have invented certain new and useful Improvements in Systems for Amplifying Variable Currents, of which the following is a specification.

The present invention relates to electrical discharge apparatus utilizing an electron discharge and comprises novel systems of connection whereby weak variable currents may be reproduced as stronger currents. My invention also includes means for securing selectivity in detecting signals, for example, for receiving systems in radio-telegraphy.

The electron-discharge device preferably utilized in accordance with my invention comprises an incandescent, or other electron-emitting cathode, a coöperating gas-free anode and a discharge-controlling conductor, commonly called the grid, and an inclosing envelop, the space in the envelop being evacuated below the pressure at which appreciable gas ionization by collision with electrons can occur, as described and claimed in my prior application, Serial No. 795,610 filed Oct. 16, 1913, but it is to be understood that my invention is not limited to this particular apparatus.

My invention includes a combination of two or more electron discharge devices connected in cascade, the electrode circuit of one device being connected to a resistance, a reactance or transformer across which is connected the grid circuit of a second device. My invention also includes other novel features, such as means for integrating high frequency wave trains into impulses or waves of lower frequency, tuning both for group frequency as well as wave frequency, and other features pointed out with greater particularity in the appended claims.

A more detailed understanding of my invention may be had from the following description taken in connection with the accompanying drawings, which show for the purpose of illustration my invention as applied to receiving systems of wireless telegraphy. Figure 1 illustrates a system containing a device having an illuminated cathode; Fig. 2 illustrates a tuned system containing a condenser for integrating oscillations, and Fig. 3 is a diagram illustrating an integrating effect secured with a condenser with the grid circuit.

In Fig. 1 an electron discharge device A comprises a gas-tight envelop 1 which may consist of quartz or glass, preferably material pervious to ultra-violet light, and into which are sealed in the usual manner an electron-emitting cathode 2, a coöperating anode 3 and a discharge-controlling grid 4 ordinarily located between the cathode and anode. The cathode in this case consists of potassium, sodium, or other metal which emits electrons when illuminated by means of a source of light 5, which may be an incandescent lamp as illustrated or a suitable arc lamp. A monochromatic source of light, such as mercury vapor arc in a quartz or glass envelop is advantageous in giving electrons of uniform velocity. The anode preferably consists of tungsten and is deprived of gas by electron bombardment during the exhausting process, the envelop being sealed when the anode has been thoroughly freed from gas and the pressure in the envelop has been reduced to a value at which no appreciable gas ionization can occur. The grid 4 and the cathode 2 are connected respectively by conductors 6 and 7 to the secondary of a transformer 8, the primary of which is located in circuit with an antenna 9. In the antenna circuit there may be located a grounded condenser 10 but the antenna connections and structure may be the usual ones forming no part of my present invention. In the grid circuit 7, there is preferably included a source of potential 11, such as a battery which preferably is connected to maintain the grid at a definite negative potential, but in some cases the grid may be maintained at a positive potential.

In the circuit connecting the cathode and the anode, also known as the "plate circuit," is included a local source of energy, such as a battery 12, having its negative terminal connected to the cathode, and also a resistance 13. In place of this resistance a sufficiently high inductance may be used, its value depending on the frequency. The grid consists of a frame-work upon which is wound preferably very fine wire, for example, wire having a diameter of about .0004 inch, the turns being closely spaced. To the terminals of the resistance is connected a second electron-discharge device B, having

a cathode 14, adapted to be heated to incandescence by means of a battery 15, or other convenient source. The grid 16 and the cathode 14 are connected to the resistance 13 respectively by conductors 17 and 18, through a reversing switch 19. In the electrode circuit 20, 21, of the device B is included a local source of energy 22 and an electrical detecting device 23, such as any of the known forms of electromagnetic recorders or a telephone. In shunt therewith may be placed a condenser 24. In some cases a battery 25 or other source of potential may be included in the grid circuit 17. This method of connecting two amplifiers in cascade is claimed in my application, Serial No. 11,512, filed March 2, 1915, which is a division of this application.

In the system described the discharge device A, which may have relatively large distances between the grid and the electrodes, is made very sensitive to changes of grid voltages. The fact that the electrons are emitted by the cathode at uniform velocity contributes to its sensitiveness. A comparatively feeble impulse received from the antenna 8 will be accompanied by a change in the current from the local source 12 through the resistance 13. The current increases when a positive wave is superimposed on the negative grid potential. The current flowing through the resistance 13 will be greater than the current received from the antenna, and therefore, will produce greater variations in the static charge of the grid 16 of the device B than were originally received by the grid 4 of the device A. Hence, these potentials may be used to produce greatly amplified signal current. In other words, the stronger currents flowing in the electrode circuit of the device A can be used to vary the flow of electron discharge current between the cathode 14 and the anode 26 of the discharge device B which is adapted to control relatively a greater amount of energy than the device A although not necessarily so sensitive to minute voltage changes as the device A. This feature of my invention is claimed in my application Serial No. 254,334, filed Sept. 16, 1918, which is a division of this application. When the switch 19 is set so as to connect the positive terminal of the resistance 13 to the grid circuit 17, containing means for making the grid 16 negative, an increase of plate current of device A will produce an increase in the plate current of device B. The converse is the case when the connections are reversed. The variations in the electrode or plate circuit constitutes further amplification of the original signal currents and may be made great enough to operate an electromagnetic instrument 23, such as a telegraph relay, or in any convenient way to indicate the signals. In some cases an ordinary telephone may be connected to the terminals of the conductors 20, 21, to detect the amplified signals.

The system shown in Fig. 2 is in some respects similar to the system shown in Fig. 1, for example, in the character of the discharge device used, and therefore need not be again described in detail. Each device has a heated cathode *c* and an unheated anode *a*, both of which may consist of tungsten. In the system shown in Fig. 2 a number of discharge devices have been shown connected in cascade and one of the devices is provided with means for integrating the high frequency oscillations of the wave trains so as to transmit in its plate circuit variable current, which when transformed to an alternating current will correspond in frequency with the group frequency of the wave trains. Such a system permits progressive tuning in each grid circuit whereby the receiving system will select only signals having both a predetermined oscillation frequency and group frequency. This method of operation will be better understood by first considering the connections and then tracing through the method of operation.

The grid 27 of the discharge tube M is connected to the secondary of the loosely coupled air core transformer 28. The primary of the transformer is included in a grounded antenna circuit similar to that shown in Fig. 1. In the grid circuit 29 is included a source of potential 30 and across the transformer secondary is connected a condenser 31, which preferably is made adjustable. By properly proportioning the inductance of the transformer secondary and the capacity of the condenser, the oscillating circuit constituted thereby may be made resonant to a desired frequency and therefore will be largely opaque to disturbances. Hence the grid will be influenced only to a slight extent by frequencies differing from the desired predetermined frequency. As already explained the variations in the grid potential, which is preferably negative, produced by the impressed oscillations result in oscillations in the plate circuit 32 similar to those in the grid circuit. These oscillations having been produced by a local source of current 33 may be stronger than the received oscillations. They are impressed on another oscillating circuit 34, 35, by means of an air core transformer 36. The circuit 34, 35, is likewise adjusted to be opaque to undesired oscillations by properly adjusting the condenser 37. The oscillations produced in the plate circuit 38 of the device R by a local source of energy 39 are again transmitted to another local oscillating circuit 40 which is also tuned, by an air core transformer 41. It will be noted that by thus tuning successive circuits the undesired oscillations are reduced in each case in geometric proportion. This progres-

sive tuning thus produced in my present invention is described and claimed in its broad aspect in a patent of Ernst F. W. Alexanderson, No. 1,173,079.

In the present case, I secure as a novel feature tuning for both oscillation frequency and group frequency, as will be explained. The grid circuit 42 of the discharge tube S contains a condenser 43 which is shunted by a high resistance 44 and battery 45 which preferably has its negative terminal connected to the grid 46. Both the resistance and the battery are provided with an adjustable shunt 47 so that the potential of the battery and amount of resistance may be both varied or, in fact, entirely eliminated. Even when the grid 46 is not maintained at a predetermined potential it will assume some negative potential as it receives electrons from the cathode *c* and its potential is determined by the surface of the grid 46 and the rate at which the charge may leak off from the condenser plates. When the grid is positively charged it will take up electrons at a rate varying with the degree of positive charge, and when the grid is negatively charged the rate at which it absorbs electrons decreases with the degree of negative charge until a value is reached at which no more electrons are taken up. The condenser charge will come to an equilibrium when the rate of leakage is equal to the rate of charging by the electrons absorbed. This grid potential may be assumed to have a negative value represented by the line *p* in Fig. 3 which represents a diagram in which the ordinates are grid potentials and the abscissæ represent time. The actual number of oscillations in each group, of course, will be much greater than indicated in Fig. 3. When the oscillations are superimposed on the grid, assuming its potential to be *p*, Fig. 3, a positive wave 48 will cause it to take up more electrons, which are not discharged during the succeeding negative wave. Each successive wave adds its increment to the negative charge which thus accumulates on the grid and the plate of the condenser connected to it. After a certain number of oscillations have thus been received the grid has received such a negative charge that it no longer takes up more electrons than it loses. When the wave train ceases, the added negative charge leaks off as indicated by the line 50, until the grid potential again assumes its original value *p*. The capacity of the condenser 43, the potential of the battery 45, if one is used, and the resistance 44 should be so chosen that the grid 46 will have resumed its equilibrium charge before the next wave train is impressed on it.

As the current in the plate circuit 51 of the tube S is determined by the grid charge, a variable current will tend to flow therein having a frequency equal to the group frequency of the signals received from the antenna and also having a high frequency component. The high frequency component of this current may be eliminated by making the circuit responsive or resonant only to the low frequency. This may be done by providing the transformer 52 with an iron core as to introduce considerable inductance into the circuit 51 and also by shunting the primary circuit of the transformer with a condenser 53. A relatively smooth low frequency alternating current will flow in the secondary circuit 54 which may be tuned for the frequency to be selected by an adjustable condenser 55.

The selectivity of the system thus is made very great as it is opaque not only to disturbances having a different frequency than the oscillations to be received but is also opaque to aerial signals having a different group of frequency. The number of circuits connected thus in series or in cascade may be increased to any desired number.

In the system illustrated the oscillations of the circuit 54 are impressed on a grid 56, in circuit with which preferably is a source of potential 57. The currents in the plate circuit 58 produced by a local source 59 are varied as already explained by variations of grid potential. The amplified and selected signals may be recorded or detected by any suitable form of device as indicated at 60.

The grids of tubes M and R may consist of fine wire, closely spaced, the grid of the device S of coarse wire, more widely spaced, and the grid 56 of tube T of fine wire, widely spaced but these relations are not essential.

What I claim as new and desire to secure by Letters Patent of the United States is:—

1. A selective system for detecting signals consisting of groups of high frequency oscillations, comprising the combination of a plurality of circuits resonant to the frequency of the oscillations to be selected, relay means interposed between said respective circuits and operative to impress upon one circuit oscillations proportionate to oscillations in another circuit, means for integrating the high frequency oscillations in one of said circuits to produce a variable current having a frequency equal to the group frequency of the signals, a circuit connected thereto resonant to said group frequency and means for detecting current in said circuit.

2. A selective system for detecting signals consisting of a group of high frequency oscillations comprising a plurality of circuits, electron discharge devices connected to link said circuits in cascade, a local source of energy in circuit with each of said discharge devices, a series condenser included in the grid circuit of one of said discharge devices and means for detecting current in

the electrode circuit of the last discharge device of the series.

3. The combination of an electron discharge device having an electron-emitting cathode, a coöperating anode and a conducting body located near said cathode for controlling the electron discharge, a condenser connected in circuit with said body, a high resistance connected in shunt with said condenser and a local source of energy connected in circuit with the electrodes of said device.

4. The combination of a device operating with a substantially pure electron discharge, a grid for controlling the electron discharge, a condenser in circuit with said grid, a circuit shunting said condenser, a resistance and a battery in said circuit, means for varying the potential of said battery and amount of said resistance, and a local source of energy in the electrode circuit of said device.

5. A system for selecting groups of high frequency oscillations from disturbing oscillations comprising the combination of a circuit resonant to the frequency of the oscillations to be selected, a second circuit resonant to the group frequency of said oscillations, relay means interposed between said circuits operative to impress upon the second circuits amplified oscillations proportionate to oscillations in the first circuit and means for receiving and detecting a current in the second circuit.

6. The combination of an electron discharge device having an electron-emitting cathode, a coöperating anode and a grid for controlling the electron discharge, a condenser connected in circuit with said grid and a high resistance connected in shunt to said condenser.

7. The combination of an electron discharge device having an electron emitting cathode, a coöperating anode and a grid for controlling the electron discharge, a condenser connected in series relation in the grid circuit of said device and a source of potential connected in shunt to said condenser.

8. The combination of an electron discharge device having an electron-emitting cathode, a coöperating anode and a grid for controlling the electron discharge, a condenser in circuit with said grid and a circuit shunting said condenser, said circuit comprising a source of potential and a high resistance.

9. The combination of an electron discharge device having an electron emitting cathode, a plate anode, and a grid inclosed in a receptacle evacuated to such a degree that the device will operate with substantially no gas ionization, grid and plate circuits for said device, means for impressing upon the grid circuit groups of high frequency oscillations, and means for integrating the high frequency oscillations to produce in the plate circuit a variable current having a frequency equal to the group frequency of the high frequency oscillations.

10. The combination of an electron discharge device having an electron emitting cathode, an anode and a grid inclosed in a receptacle evacuated to such a degree that the device will operate with substantially no gas ionization, a condenser connected in circuit with said grid, and a high resistance connected in shunt to said condenser.

In witness whereof, I have hereunto set my hand this 27th day of October, 1913.

IRVING LANGMUIR.

Witnesses:
SAUL DUSHMAN,
HELEN ORFORD.

Exhibit D.

239

Sept. 2, 1924.

1,507,016

L. DE FOREST

RADIOSIGNALING SYSTEM

Filed Sept. 23, 1915

2 Sheets-Sheet 1

Fig 1

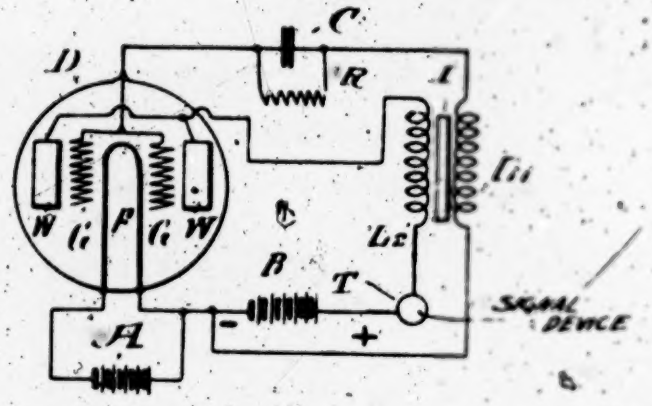
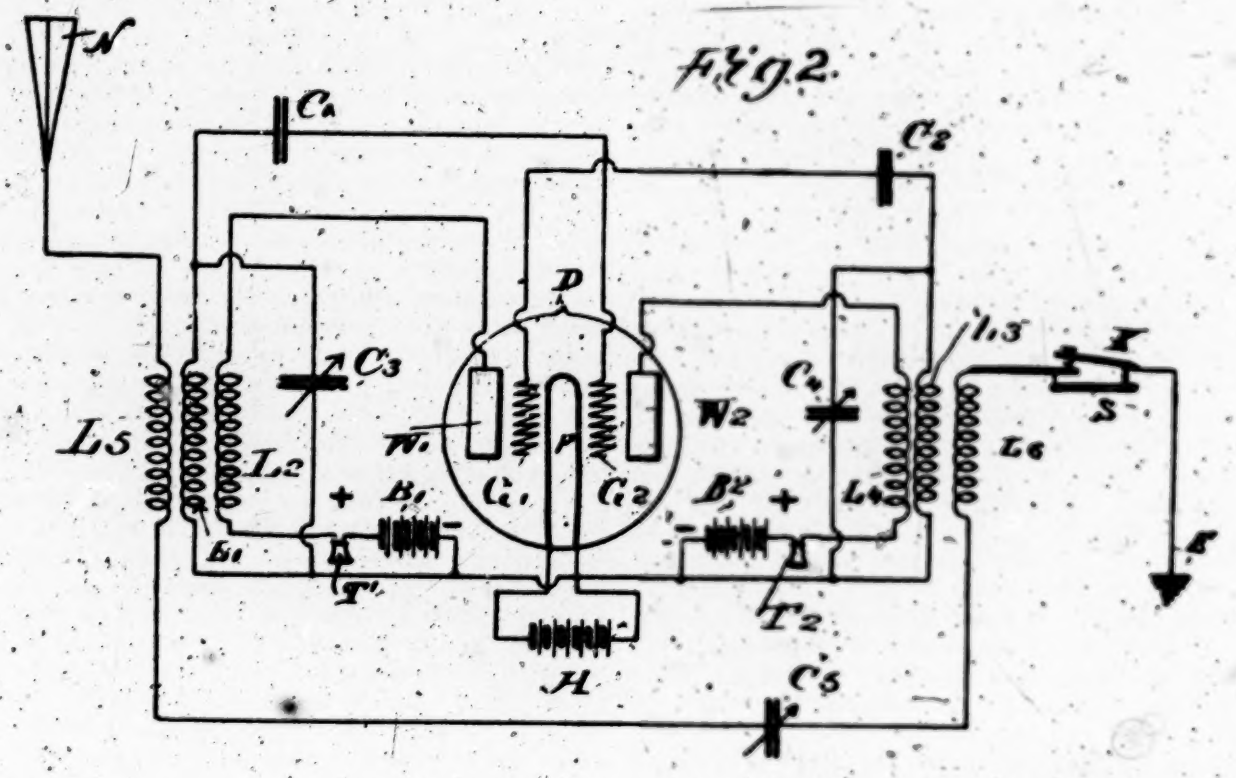


Fig 2.



Inventor
Lee de Forest

By his Attorney
Samuel E Darby

TOP VIEW of CHASSIS

BOTTOM VIEW of CHASSIS

FRONT VIEW

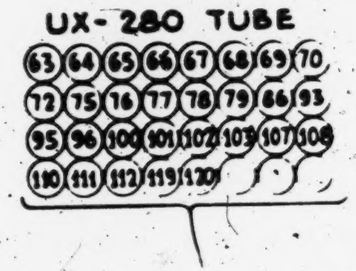
ENLARGED REAR INTERIOR VIEW

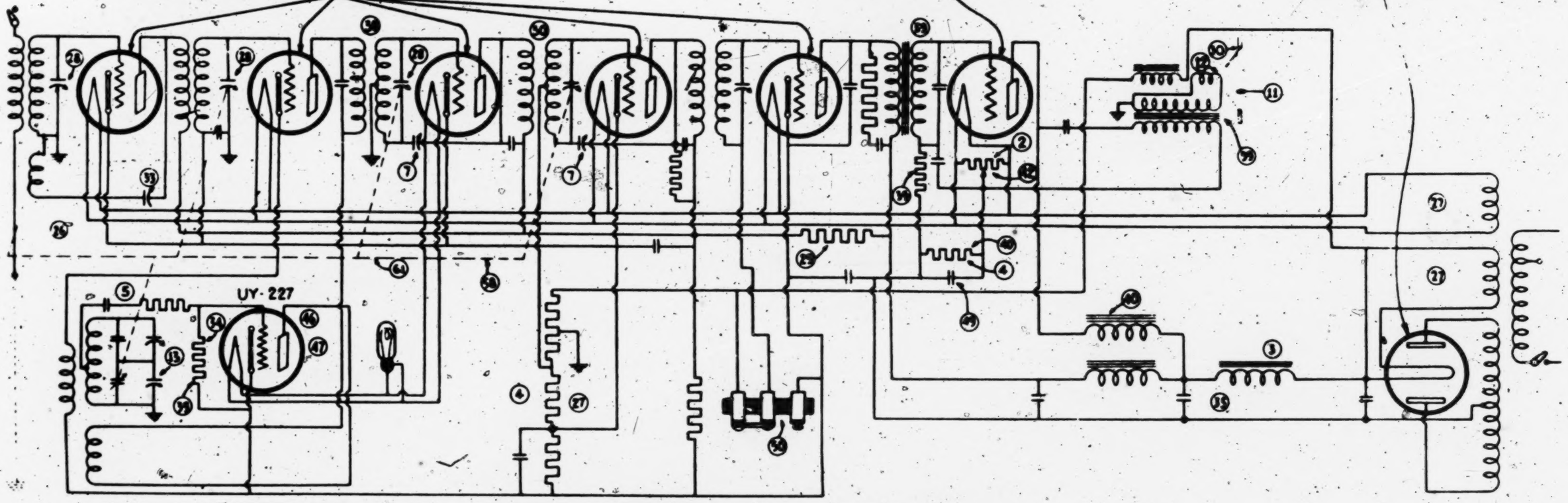
REAR INTERIOR VIEW

UY-227 TUBE

UX-245 TUBE

UX-280 TUBE





240

Sept. 2, 1924.

1,507,016

L. DE FOREST

RADIOSIGNALING SYSTEM

Filed Sept. 23, 1915

2 Sheets-Sheet

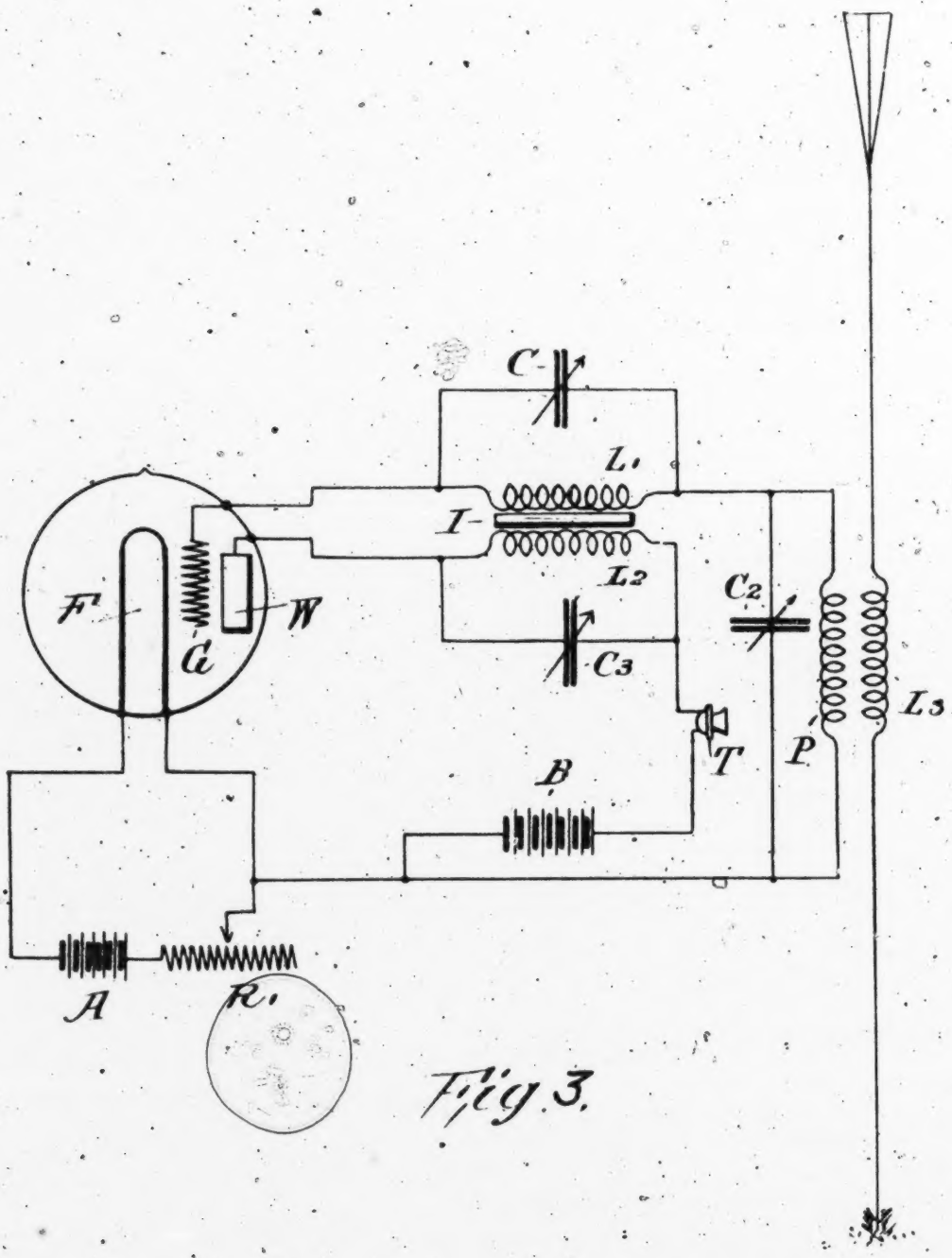


Fig. 3.

Inventor

Lee de Forest

By his Attorney

Samuel E. Darby

241

Patented Sept. 2, 1924. 1,507,016.

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

LEE DE FOREST, OF NEW YORK, N. Y., ASSIGNOR TO DE FOREST RADIO TELEPHONE AND TELEGRAPH COMPANY, OF NEW YORK, N. Y., A CORPORATION OF DELAWARE.

RADIOSIGNALING SYSTEM.

Application filed September 23, 1915. Serial No. 51,176.

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, LEE DE FOREST, a citizen of the United States, residing in the city of New York, county of Bronx and State of New York, have made a certain new and useful Invention in Radiosignaling Systems, of which the following is a specification.

This invention relates to radio signaling systems.

The object of the invention is to provide a radio signaling system which is simple and efficient in operation.

Further objects of the invention will appear more fully hereinafter.

The invention consists substantially in the construction, combination, location and relative circuit arrangements all as will be more fully hereinafter set forth, as shown in the accompanying drawing and finally pointed out in the appended claims.

Referring to the drawing, Figs. 1, 2, 3, all show various circuit arrangements embodying my invention.

In accordance with my present invention, I propose to employ an evacuated vessel with hot and cold electrodes therein, known as the audion, together with suitable circuit connections to cause the audion to operate as a generator of undamped oscillations, and to so arrange the circuit connections to cause the audion to operate as a generator of undamped oscillations, and to so arrange the circuit connections referred to so as to allow such a generator to also be employed as a detector. The underlying principle of my present invention as will be more fully described, is the association, preferably by inductive coupling means, of the circuits of the cold electrodes of the audion.

In Fig. 1 I have shown a simple circuit arrangement for accomplishing the objects of my invention wherein D is the exhausted vessel, F the hot or filament electrode, and A is the battery for heating the same in the usual and well known manner and controlled by the resistance R, as shown in Fig. 4, if desired. G designates the grid or "input" electrodes and W the wing or "output" electrodes. Preferably, and as shown, though I do not desire to be limited in this respect, the wing and grid electrodes are arranged in pairs, both grids and both wings being connected in parallel. The input electrodes G are connected to one side of the filament F by a circuit including therein one coil of a transformer L_1. The output electrodes W are likewise connected to the filament F by a circuit including the coil L_2 of the transformer, and the usual source of voltage such as battery B or other direct current source with its positive terminal connected to the cold electrodes W through the telephone or signal indicating device T, as shown.

In series with the grid or input electrodes G and in the circuit thereof I propose to place a stopping condenser C, and to shunt around this condenser a high and preferably non-inductive resistance R, of from 25,000 to 100,000 ohms.

The transformer whose coils are L_1 L_2 may be a "telephone transformer" as shown, with the coils having several thousands turns each surrounding an iron core I, in which case the system will oscillate at "audio" or low frequencies, or the windings may contain only a few hundreds of turns each, of several milli-henries inductance, and the coils more or less spatially separated or "loosely coupled" in which case the system will oscillate at high or "radio" frequencies.

In the first case, that is, when the system is oscillating in "audio" frequencies the system becomes a "siren" and will generate powerful telephonic currents having a clear musical note heard in the telephone receiver T. The pitch of this note can be varied by altering the inductance of either of the coils L_1 L_2 in any well known manner, or by altering their coupling as by withdrawing from the transformer the iron core I_1 or by varying the distributed capacity of the winding or the spatial relation of the windings, or the capacity of the condenser C, the value of the resistance R, or the potential of the battery B, or the brightness of the filament F in any manner well known in the art.

When such an oscillating system as shown in Fig. 1, is employed for generating radio frequencies, the capacity of the ordinary telephone wires leading to the telephone receiver or signaling device T is usually sufficient to form a by-path around the high-impedance and high resistance of this device. The impedance of source B to the

radio frequency oscillations, I have found to be insufficient to materially dampen the same. My invention as defined in the claims is not to be limited in this respect however, for other expedients will readily suggest themselves to those skilled in the art.

If the system described is to be employed as a generator of high frequency oscillations for transmission purposes the signal device T may be a transmitter if desired. An alternative arrangement is shown in Fig. 2 wherein a key indicated at K is inserted in the antenna-earth system. As it is obvious that my invention applies to either transmitting or receiving systems, I wish it to be understood that by the term "signal device," as used throughout the specification, I mean broadly either a transmitter or a receiver of signals.

When an audion with its cold electrodes associated or inter-linked as shown, is used as a receiving system its ordinary sensitiveness as a detector is many times increased by virtue of the "kick-back" or progressively amplifying effect of the received signal impulses.

In Fig. 2 I have illustrated a "compound audion" containing two insulated grid members G_1 and G_2, and two insulated wing members W_1 and W_2, each of the four electrodes being connected to the filament F by a circuit containing inductances L_3, L_1, L_2, and L_4, respectively. The coils L_1, L_2, may be inductively associated as shown, and likewise inductances L_3, L_4, may be inductively associated, so as to allow reaction of the one upon the other in each pair.

As shown, I prefer to associate the grid nearest one wing with the current of the wing lying furthest away, usually on the opposite side of the filament, as thereby I find that the reaction of the circuits upon each other is the most violent. Each wing W_1 W_2, has, preferably, its own source of electro-motive force as indicated at B_1, B_2, respectively, although I am not to be limited in this respect as it is obvious that a common source may be employed. In the circuit of the sources B_1 and B_2, I employ telephone receivers T_1, T_2, preferably, one receiver for each ear of the operator. I employ the usual stopping condensers C_1 and C_2 in the circuits of the grids G_2 and G_1, respectively, and the variable capacities C_3 and C_4, shunted around the coils L_4, L_3, to render the grid circuits oscillatory. The coils L_1, L_2, and L_3, L_4 of the two oscillating circuits are associated inductively or otherwise to the same antenna-earth system comprising the usual elements N, L_5, C_5, L_6, and E, as shown, whether the arrangement be used for receiving or transmitting signals.

When using the arrangement shown in Fig. 2, as a generator of alternating currents the sources of the wing currents, B_1 and B_2, respectively, should be of high voltage, as for example, direct current generators of from 600 to 1200 volts.

In the antenna-earth system, I show a transmitting key K connected directly therein. I also employ a hand operated switch S shunted around the same to cut the key K out when the system is used as a receiving system. The periodicities of the oscillating circuits L_1, C_3 and L_2, C_4, should be made the same, or nearly the same by properly adjusting their respective capacities or inductances. If the natural rates of oscillation of these two circuits are not quite the same, beats or interferences are set up in the antenna, resulting in a harmonic variation of amplitudes of the radiated wave train which may be of practical value when signaling to receiving stations where the receiver can give audible responses only to interrupted or intermittent trains of waves.

It will be noted that in accordance with my invention, the connection of the terminals of the wing and grid coils is important. I have found that the oscillations set up are much more intense when one end of one of these coils is connected to the grid or plate as the case may be, than when the opposite end of that coil is thus connected. In other words, by reversing coil L_2 relative to coil L_1, the oscillations set up may be found to be much more intense than before such reversal of connections. The principle here involved is that the phase of the two pulsating currents in the coils L_1 and L_2, shall be so displaced relative to each other that a positive charge or surge upon the wing electrodes shall be next followed by a negative charge or surge upon the grid, the effect of this being that thereby an increase of current through the coil L_2 to the wing results in a succeeding increase in the resistance of the gas path between the wing and the filament electrodes, and conversely, a diminution in the current from the wing to the filament electrodes results in a succeeding decrease in the resistance of the path. It is by these means that one circuit is enabled to react upon the other so that successively increasing pulsations are set up in the two associated circuits until the losses by resistance, leakage and load, are equal to the increment of energy supplied from the battery or source B B_1, B_2 whereupon a stable condition of oscillation or pulsation is attained.

In Fig. 3 I have shown a modified arrangement wherein the wing and grid circuits are inductively associated as in Fig. 1, through coils L_1 and L_2 around which are shunted capacities C and C_2, respectively. In this arrangement I prefer to associate the grid circuit with the antenna earth circuit through inductance L_3 of the antenna

system. In this instance I shunt a capacity C_3 around the inductance P as shown. The core I is also used in coupling between the oscillating circuits of the cold electrodes, and the reaction effect is secured between these circuits as hereinbefore described.

It will be understood that many other circuit arrangements will readily occur to those skilled in the art without departing from the broad scope of my invention as defined in the claims. Therefore, having set forth the objects and nature of my invention, and having shown and described various embodiments thereof, what I claim as new and useful and of my own invention and desire to secure by Letters Patent, is,—

1. In a radio signaling system, an evacuated vessel including hot and cold electrodes therein, said cold electrodes being located at relatively different distances from said hot electrode, separate circuits connecting each of the cold electrodes to the hot electrode, said circuits being inductively associated.

2. In a radio signaling system, an evacuated vessel containing hot and cold electrodes therein, said cold electrodes being located at relatively different distances from said hot electrode, separate oscillating circuits connecting each of said cold electrodes to said hot electrode, said circuits being inductively associated.

3. In a radio signaling system, an evacuated vessel including hot and cold electrodes therein, said cold electrodes being located at relatively different distances from said hot electrode, separate circuits connecting each of the cold electrodes to the hot electrode, said circuits being inductively associated, and an antenna system associated with said circuits.

4. In a radio signaling system, an audion including hot and cold electrodes therein, said cold electrodes being located at relatively different distances from said hot electrode, separate circuits connecting each of said cold electrodes to said hot electrode, and means to set up successively increasing pulsations in said circuits, and an antenna system inductively associated with said circuits.

5. In a radio signaling system, an audion including hot and cold electrodes therein, said cold electrodes being located at relatively different distances from said hot electrode, separate oscillating circuits connecting each of the cold electrodes to said hot electrode, said circuits being inductively coupled and an antenna system inductively associated with said coupling.

6. In a radio signaling system, an evacuated vessel containing hot and cold electrodes therein, said cold electrodes being located at relatively different distances from said hot electrode, separate circuits connecting each of said cold electrodes with said hot electrode, said circuits being inductively associated, a source of electromotive force and a signaling device being included in one of said circuits.

7. In a radio signaling system, an evacuated vessel containing hot and cold electrodes therein, said cold electrodes being located at relatively different distances from said hot electrode, circuits connecting each of said cold electrodes with said hot electrode, said circuits being inductively coupled, a source of electromotive force and a signaling device being included in one of said circuits and an antenna system inductively associated with said coupling.

8. In a radio signaling system, an evacuated vessel containing hot and cold electrodes therein, said cold electrodes being located at relatively different distances from said hot electrode, circuits connecting each of said cold electrodes with said hot electrode, said circuits being associated, a source of electromotive force and a signal indicating device being included in one only of said circuits and an antenna system associated with said circuits, and means for operating said radio signaling system as a transmitting station.

9. In a radio signaling system, an evacuated vessel containing hot and cold electrodes therein, circuits connecting each of said cold electrodes with said hot electrode, said circuits being inductively associated, a source of electromotive force and a signal indicating device being included in one of said circuits and an antenna system associated with said circuits, and means for operating said signaling system as a receiving station.

10. In a radio signaling system, an audion including hot and cold electrodes therein, said cold electrodes being located at relatively different distances from said hot electrode, separate circuits connecting each of said cold electrodes to said hot electrode, said circuits being inductively associated with each other.

11. In a radio signaling system, an evacuated vessel containing a hot electrode and a plurality of grid electrodes and a plurality of wing electrodes, circuits connecting each of said grid electrodes and said wing electrodes with said hot electrode, the circuits of the grid electrodes being inductively associated with the circuits of the wing electrodes.

12. In a radio signaling system, an evacuated vessel containing a hot electrode and a plurality of grid electrodes and a plurality of wing electrodes, circuits connecting each of said grid electrodes and said wing electrodes with said hot electrode, the circuits of the grid electrodes being associated with the circuits of the wing electrodes respec-

tively, and a signal indicating device included in each of the circuits of said wing electrodes.

13. In a radio signaling system, an evacuated vessel containing a plurality of wing electrodes and a plurality of grid electrodes, a filament electrode interposed between said grid electrodes and between said wing electrodes, circuits connecting each of said wing and grid electrodes with said filament electrode, the circuits of said grid electrodes being inductively associated with the circuits of said wing electrodes respectively.

14. In a radio signaling system, an evacuated vessel, containing a plurality of wing electrodes and a plurality of grid electrodes, a filament electrode interposed between said grid electrodes and between said wing electrodes, circuits connecting each of said wing and grid electrodes with said filament electrode, the circuit of each of said grid electrodes being inductively associated with the circuit of said wing electrode on the opposite side of said filament electrode.

15. In a radio signaling system, an evacuated vessel containing a plurality of wing electrodes, and a plurality of grid electrodes, a filament electrode interposed between said grid electrodes and between said wing electrodes, circuits connecting each of said wing and grid electrodes with said filament electrode, the circuits of said grid electrodes being inductively coupled with the circuits of said wing electrodes respectively.

16. In a radio signaling system, an evacuated vessel containing a plurality of wing electrodes and a plurality of grid electrodes, a filament electrode interposed between said grid electrodes and between said wing electrodes, circuits connecting each of said wing and grid electrodes with said filament electrode, the circuits of said grid electrodes being inductively coupled with the circuits of said wing electrodes respectively, and an antenna system inductively associated with said coupling.

17. In a radio signaling system, an evacuated vessel containing a plurality of wing electrodes, and a plurality of grid electrodes, a filament electrode interposed between said grid electrodes and between said wing electrodes, circuits connecting each of said wing and grid electrodes with said filament electrode, the circuits of said grid electrodes being inductively coupled with the circuits of said wing electrodes respectively, the circuit of each of said grid electrodes being inductively coupled with the circuit of said wing electrode on the opposite side of said filament.

18. In a radio signaling system, an evacuated vessel containing a plurality of wing electrodes, and a plurality of grid electrodes, a filament electrode interposed between said grid electrodes and between said wing electrodes, circuits connecting each of said wing and grid electrodes with said filament electrode, the circuits of said grid electrodes being inductively coupled with the circuits of said wing electrodes respectively, the circuit of each of said grid electrodes being inductively coupled with the circuit of said wing electrode on the opposite side of said filament, and an antenna system inductively associated with each said coupling.

19. In a system for generating oscillations, a work circuit, and means for generating and transmitting the generated oscillations comprising an oscillatory circuit having two electrodes in an exhausted receptacle, and a second circuit inductively coupled thereto having a conducting body interposed between said electrodes.

20. In a system for generating oscillations, a work circuit, and means for generating and transmitting the generated oscillations comprising an oscillatory circuit having two electrodes, a second circuit inductively coupled thereto and having a conducting body interposed between said electrodes.

21. In a system for generating oscillations, a work circuit, and means for generating and transmitting the generated oscillations comprising an oscillatory circuit having two electrodes, a second circuit inductively coupled thereto and having a conducting body interposed between said electrodes and means for varying the frequency of the produced oscillations.

22. In a system for generating oscillations, a work circuit, and means for generating and transmitting the generated oscillations comprising an oscillatory circuit having two electrodes means for producing a flow of current between said electrodes and a second circuit inductively coupled with the first circuit and having a conducting body interposed between said electrodes.

23. In a system for generating oscillations, a work circuit, and means for generating and transmitting the generated oscillations comprising an oscillatory circuit having two electrodes means for producing a flow of current between said electrodes and a second oscillatory circuit inductively coupled with the first oscillatory circuit and having a conducting body interposed between said electrodes.

24. The method of generating alternating currents which consists in causing current to flow in one of two inductively coupled circuits, and varying the flow of current in the first circuit by impressing the potential induced in the second circuit upon a conducting body interposed between two electrodes in the first circuit.

25. Means for producing sustained electrical oscillations comprising an oscillatory circuit having two electrodes in an exhaust-

ed receptacle and a second circuit coupled thereto having a conducting body interposed between said electrodes.

26. Means for producing sustained electrical oscillations comprising an oscillatory circuit having two electrodes, a second circuit coupled thereto having a conducting body interposed between said electrodes, and means for varying the frequency of the produced oscillations.

27. Means for producing sustained electrical oscillations comprising an oscillatory circuit having two electrodes, means for producing a flow of current between said electrodes, and a second circuit coupled with the first having a conducting body interposed between said electrodes.

28. The method of producing electrical alternating currents which consists in causing current to flow in one of two coupled circuits and varying the flow of current in the first circuit by impressing the potential induced in the second circuit upon a conducting body interposed between two electrodes in the first circuit.

29. In a system for generating electrical oscillations, a work circuit, and means for generating and transmitting the generated oscillations to said work circuit comprising an evacuated vessel having a hot electrode, a cold plate electrode and a cold grid electrode, said cold electrodes being electrically associated with each other, and a source of current for the hot electrode.

30. The method of producing high frequency alternating currents, which consists in causing current to flow in one of two associated circuits and varying the flow of current in the first circuit by impressing a charge induced in the second circuit upon an element in the space between the electrodes respectively included in said second circuit.

31. Means for generating high frequency oscillations, including an evacuated vessel having separated wing, grid and filament electrodes therein, circuits for said electrodes, and a source of current supply having its terminals respectively connected to two of said electrodes and operating to generate oscillations in one of said electrode circuits.

32. The combination with a work circuit and means for generating and transmitting the generated alternating currents to said work circuit, comprising an evacuated vessel having a hot and a plurality of cold electrodes therein, said cold electrodes being located at relatively different distances from said hot electrode, means to supply current to said electrodes, and circuit connections between said electrodes.

33. The combination with a work circuit and means for generating and transmitting the generated alternating current to said work circuit, comprising an evacuated vessel having a hot and a plurality of cold electrodes therein, said cold electrodes being located at relatively different distances from said hot electrode, a circuit connection between the cold electrodes, and means for impressing an electromotive force in the space between the cold and hot electrodes, and means to supply current to the hot electrode.

34. The combination with a work circuit and means for generating and transmitting the generated alternating currents to said work circuit, comprising an evacuated vessel having a hot and a plurality of cold electrodes therein, said cold electrodes being located at relatively different distances from said hot electrode, a circuit connection between the cold electrodes, a circuit connection between one of the cold electrodes and one side of the hot electrode, a source of current included in said last-mentioned circuit connection, and means for supplying current to the hot electrode.

35. A work circuit and means for generating and transmitting the generated oscillations to said work circuit, comprising an audion and its associated circuits.

36. The combination with a work circuit and means for generating and transmitting the generated oscillations to said work circuit, comprising an evacuated vessel having filament, grid and plate electrodes therein, means to supply current to said electrodes, and circuit connections between said electrodes.

37. In a system for generating electrical oscillations, an evacuated vessel having a hot electrode, a cold plate electrode and a controlling electrode, circuits connected to said cold plate electrode and said controlling electrode, respectively, and coupled with each other, and a source of current for the hot electrode.

38. The combination with a translating device, of means for generating and transmitting to said device the generated oscillations, comprising an evacuated vessel having filament, grid and plate electrodes, means to supply current to said electrodes, and circuit connections between said electrodes.

39. Means for producing sustained electrical oscillations, comprising an oscillatory circuit having two electrodes, one of said electrodes comprising an incandescent filament, a second circuit coupled to said oscillatory circuit and having a controlling grid electrode for regulating the discharge between said two electrodes.

40. Means for producing electrical oscillations comprising an oscillatory circuit having two electrodes, one of said electrodes comprising an incandescent filament, a second circuit coupled thereto having a con-

trolling grid electrode associated with said electrodes, and means for varying the frequency of the produced oscillations.

41. The method of producing electrical oscillations with an incandescent filament thermionic discharge device having two coupled circuits each connected to the incandescent filament thereof, which consists in causing current to flow in one of the said two coupled circuits and varying the flow of current in said first circuit by impressing the potential induced in the second circuit upon a controlling grid electrode regulating the current flow in the first circuit.

In testimony whereof I have hereunto set my hand in the presence of a subscribing witness, on this 18th day of September, A. D., 1915.

LEE DE FOREST.

Witness:
S. E. DARBY.

AFFIDAVIT OF JOHN R. BINNS IN OPPOSITION TO DEFENDANT'S COUNTER-MOTION FOR SUMMARY JUDGMENT.

[Filed February 11, 1948.]

State of New York)
) ss.:
County of New York)

John R. Binns, being duly sworn, deposes and says:

1. That he is the John R. Binns who made affidavit in support of plaintiff's motion for summary judgment filed on November 10, 1947, in the above-entitled action.

2. That he has read defendant's motion for summary judgment and the affidavit of George K. Woodworth in support thereof and that that affidavit, admittedly made almost solely on information and belief, comprises, except to the references to official records, largely general and sweeping conclusions obviously based on hearsay and rumor since such conclusions are to such a great extent inaccurate, incomplete, contrary to fact, or subject to a combination of these attributes; that by way of illustration he is taking up the most glaring examples in the order in which they appear in Mr. Woodworth's affidavit, reference being made to paragraphs as numbered in Mr. Woodworth's affidavit:

Par. 2(e), page 3

The statement "no patent owned by Hazeltine has ever held to be valid and infringed since the original Hazeltine neutrodyne patents" is in error. In *Latour Corporation* v. *E. B. Latham* (S.D.N.Y.–1934) 23 F.S. 869, Latour patent Re. 16,461 owned by Hazeltine was held valid and infringed. In addition, Wheeler patent Re. 19,744 owned by Hazeltine was held valid and infringed by the District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan, Southern Division (Judge Lederle—unreported) which holding was affirmed on appeal in a vigorous opinion by the Circuit Court of Appeals for the Sixth Circuit reported at 117 F. (2d) 238.

PATENTS COVERING CIRCUITS AND APPARATUS

GENERAL ELECTRIC CO.

1	ALEXANDERSON	1 375 019	FEB	1933
	TUNED RADIO FREQUENCY AMPLIFIER			
2	WHITE	1 195 635	AUG	1916
	A C FILAMENT HEATING - CENTER TAP			
3	HULL	1 551 777	DEC	1934
	RECTIFIED A C AND FILTER			
4	LANGMUIR	1 273 027	JULY	1918
	PLATE CURRENT FOR GRID BIAS			
5	LANGMUIR	1 383 450	OCT	1935
	GRID LEAK AND CONDENSER			
6	LANGMUIR	1 315 094	AUG	1936
	ENERGY AMPLIFICATION - POWER TUBE			
7	RICE	1 356 118	MAR	1937
	OSCILLATION PREVENTION			
8	ALEXANDERSON	1 465 961	AUG	1960
	SUPERHETERODYNE			
9	ALEXANDERSON	1 506 151	SEP	1961
	SUPERHETERODYNE			
10	RICE	1 651 646	NOV	1964
	BAFFLE FOR LOUD SPEAKER			
11	HAGENLOCKER	1 800 913	OCT	1965
	CONCENTRICALLY CONDUCTED CORE			
12	KELLOGG	1 707 017	APR	1966
	DYNAMIC TYPE LOUD SPEAKER			
13	CARLSON	1 748 231	DEC	1966
	OSCILLATOR TUNING EQUALIZATION			
14				
15				
16				
17				
18				
19				

RADIO CORPORATION

20	HEILAND	1 339 052	SEPT	1914
	BEAT NOTE RECEPTION			
21	HEILAND	1 366 108	JULY	1918
	GRID LEAK FOR OSCILLATOR			
22	HARRISON	1 404 605	FEB	1941
	CONSTANT BEAT FREQUENCY			
23	HARRISON	1 491 771	APR	1941
	DOUBLE DETECTION			
24	HARRISON	1 491 774	APR	1941
	SUPERHETERODYNE RECEPTION			
25	HEILAND	1 566 081	JUNE	1942
	HETERODYNE DETECTOR			
26	[illegible]	1 618 017	FEB	1944
	[illegible] CONTROL			
27	ARNOLD	1 656 138	MAR	1945
	[illegible]			
28	[illegible]	1 656 581	[illegible]	1945
	VARIABLE CONDENSER CONSTRUCTION			
29	LEVENBERG	1 670 091	MAY	1949
	NOISE ELIMINATION CIRCUIT			
30	LOFTIN ET AL	1 673 126	JUNE	1946
	CAPACITATIVE PLATE CIRCUIT			
31				

A.T.&T. CO AND WESTERN ELECTRIC CO

32	ARNOLD	1 356 845	MAR	1921
	HEATING TUBES IN AMPLIFIER WITH POWER TUBE			
33	HARTLEY	1 383 813	JULY	1921
	REVERSE FEED BACK			
34	DE FOREST	1 416 320	SEP	1922
	GRID LEAK FOR OSCILLATOR			
35	DE FOREST	1 501 878	OCT	1999
	FILTER IN PLATE - SUPPLY LEADS			
36	LOWENSTEIN	1 551 764	AUG	1924
	NEGATIVE GRID BIAS			
37	NICHOLS	1 537 519	DEC	1925
	REVERSE FEED BACK			
38	ARNOLD	1 546 252	AUG	1925
	STRAIGHT LINE AMPLIFICATION			
39	DE FOREST	1 577 605	SEPT	1926
	GRID LEAK			
40	WILSON	1 603 835	NOV	1926
	LOAD ACROSS OF UNIFORM PLATE CURRENT			
41	MAYNES	1 636 766	AUG	1927
	[illegible]			
42	HEISING	1 656 059	OCT	1927
	A.C FILAMENT SUPPLY			
43	HEISING	1 695 596	AUG	1966
	CHOKE IN GRID LEAK CIRCUIT			
44	NICHOLSON	1 733 613	JUNE	1960
	[illegible]			
45	ARNOLD	1 766 592	AUG	1960
	[illegible]			
46	DE FOREST	1 807 616	MAY	1931
	OSCILLATION GENERATOR			
47	DE FOREST	1 809 817	SEP	1906
	OSCILLATION GENERATOR			
48	ARNOLD	1 811 801	JAN	1941
	AMPLIFICATION WITHOUT DISTORTION			
49	COCARINI	1 846 881	MAR	1942
	FILTER IN SHUNT TO BIASING RESISTANCE			
50	CRAFT	1 879 815	SEP	1932
	[illegible]			
51	OHL	1 906 970	OCT	1965
	HEATER BIASED PLUS WITH RESPECT TO CATHODE			
52	LEVY	1 934 038	NOV	1966
	SUPERHETERODYNE RECEIVER			
53	KENDALL	1 964 122	NOV	1966
	SUPERHETERODYNE RECEIVER			
54				
55				

WESTINGHOUSE ELECTRIC & MFG CO

56	PEDERSEN	1 950 841	JAN.	1970
	HETERODYNE RECEPTION			
57	PEDERSEN	1 956 126	JAN.	1970
	HETERODYNE DETECTION			
58	PEDERSEN	1 956 133	OCT	1933
	UNICONTROL			
59	CHUBB	1 971 864	SEPT	1955
	NICKEL - STEEL TRANSFORMER CORE			
60	ARMSTRONG	1 993 085	JUNE	1957
	SUPERHETERODYNE RECEIVER			
61	HOGAN	1 863 319	DEC	1957
	UNICONTROL			
62				

PATENTS COVERING TUBES UY 227 - UX 245 AND UX 280

GENERAL ELECTRIC CO.

					UY 227	UX 245	UX 280
63	DOUPEYER	1 022 193	APR	1959			
	[illegible]						
64	COOLIDGE	1 082 933	DEC	1960			
	DUCTILE TUNGSTEN FILAMENT						
65	ELDRED	1 140 134	MAY	1935			
	LEAD-IN WIRE DUMETALLIC						
66	ELDRED	1 140 136	MAY	1935			
	LEAD-IN WIRE DUMETALLIC						
67	COOLIDGE	1 203 488	OCT	1933			
	METHOD OF EXHAUST						
68	LANGMUIR	1 244 217	OCT	1956			
	[illegible]						
69	VAN HEUSEN	1 266 247	MAY	1955			
	BORATED LEAD-IN WIRES						
70	SUDMAN	1 281 165	DEC	1938			
	ANODE SYMMETRICAL ABOUT CATHODE						
71	PACE	1 295 017	APR	1936			
	METHOD OF MAKING TUNGSTEN FILAMENT						
72	PRATT	1 314 078	APR	1938			
	[illegible]						
73	LANGMUIR	RE 18 278	JAN	1930			
	GAS WOUND ON FRAME WORK						
74	PACE	1 418 650	MAR	1938			
	NON-SAG TUNGSTEN FILAMENT						
75	MITCHELL	1 421 835	JULY	1938			
	[illegible]						
76	[illegible]	[illegible]	JUNE	1941			
	LEAD-IN WIRE, DUMETALLIC						
77	LANGMUIR	1 513 241	MAR	1921			
	[illegible]						
78	LANGMUIR	1 [illegible]	DEC	1925			
	[illegible]						
79	MITCHELL	1 [illegible]	JUNE	1930			
	GETTER SUPPORT IN TUBE						
80	PICARD	1 535 [illegible]	NOV	1964			
	EQUIPOTENTIAL CATHODE						
81							
82							

RADIO CORPORATION

83	SKINNER *2	1 [illegible] (1)	JUNE	1965			
	ELECTRODE SPACING DISC						
84							
85							

A.T.&T. CO AND WESTERN ELECTRIC CO.

86	NICOLSON	1 [illegible]	DEC	1933			
	ALKALINE EARTH OXIDE COATED FILAMENT						
87	NICOLSON	RE 18 [illegible]	DEC	1930			
	HELICAL ELECTRODE SUPPORTED ABOVE PRESS						
88	NICOLSON	1 [illegible]	MAR	1934			
	GETTER SUPPORT FOR ELECTRODES						
89	NICOLSON	1 [illegible]	JUNE	1936			
	INSULATING SUPPORT FOR ELECTRODES						
90	ARNOLD	1 [illegible]	MAR	1921			
	[illegible]						
91	[illegible]	1 [illegible]	MAY	1931			
	[illegible]						
92	[illegible]	[illegible]	DEC	1937			
	PARALLEL ELECTRODE SUPPORTS						

A.T.&T. CO. AND WESTERN ELECRIC CO (continued)

					UY 227	UX 245	UX 280
93	ARNOLD	1 [illegible]	DEC	1931			
	ELECTRODE SUPPORTED OUTSIDE OF ELECTRON STREAM						
94	ARNOLD	1 [illegible]	NOV	1936			
	VOLTAGE AMPLIFIER TUBE						
95	WILSON	1 [illegible]	JUNE	1939			
	[illegible]						
96	RANDO	1 [illegible]	MAY	1940			
	ELECTRODES PARALLEL TO PRESS						
97	ARNOLD	1 [illegible]	MAY	1946			
	RIGID RELATION OF ELECTRODES						
98	NICOLSON	1 [illegible]	JUNE	1940			
	EQUIPOTENTIAL CATHODES						
99	VAN der BIJL	1 [illegible]	DEC	1940			
	REINFORCED ANODE PLATE						
100	VAN der BIJL	1 [illegible]	JUNE	1941			
	PLATE FLANGED FOR STANDARDS						
101	NICOLSON	1 [illegible]	JUNE	1941			
	SUPPORTING MEANS FOR ELECTRODES						
102	HOOVER	1 [illegible]	JULY	1941			
	METHOD OF COATING FILAMENT WITH GRIDS						
103	KELLY	1 [illegible]	DEC	1941			
	[illegible]						
104	VAN der BIJL	1 [illegible]	DEC	1946			
	METALLIC SUPPORTING MEANS FOR ELECTRODES						
105							
106							

WESTINGHOUSE ELECTRIC & MFG CO

107	CHUBB	1 [illegible]	JULY	1930			
	PROGRESSIVE WELDING PROCESS						
108	MEYERS	1 [illegible]	APR	1932			
	[illegible]						
109	LEDERER	1 [illegible]	APR	1933			
	THORIATED TUNGSTEN FILAMENT						
110	CHUBB	1 [illegible]	APR	1935			
	[illegible]						
111	[illegible]	1 [illegible]	DEC	1938			
	[illegible]						
112	HOYT	1 [illegible]	FEB	1936			
	MECHANICAL WELD						
113	[illegible]	1 [illegible]	MAR	1935			
	NON-SAG TUNGSTEN FILAMENT						
114	HALL	1 [illegible]	JULY	1936			
	NON-SAG TUNGSTEN FILAMENT						
115	HALL	1 [illegible]	JULY	1936			
	NON-SAG TUNGSTEN FILAMENT						
116	[illegible]	1 [illegible]	OCT	1941			
	TUNGSTEN FILAMENT, NON-SAG						
117	[illegible]	1 [illegible]	OCT	1943			
	TUNGSTEN FILAMENT, NON-TWIST						
118	[illegible]	1 [illegible]	JAN	1944			
	[illegible]						
119	[illegible]	1 [illegible]	NOV	1945			
	FILAMENT COATING METHOD, CLAIM UP ABOUT						
120	[illegible]	1 [illegible]	DEC	1945			
	FILAMENT COATING METHOD						

NOTE: WESTINGHOUSE HAS EXCLUSIVE LICENSE FOR VACUUM TUBE MANUFACTURE WITH RIGHT TO GRANT SUBLICENSES

On writ of certiorari the Supreme Court reversed, holding the patent invalid (313 U.S. 259). Nevertheless, the favorable concurring holdings by the District Court and the Circuit Court of Appeals negatives the inference of Mr. Woodworth's statements that Hazeltine has put into litigation only frivolous and unimportant patents.

Par. 2(g), page 4

The statement that Hazeltine hires engineers to make inventions to order is obviously hearsay; it is also irrelevant and untrue. Hazeltine hires engineers fundamentally to advance the progress of the radio art as enjoined by the United States Constitution, Article I, Section 8, and to provide engineering services to its licensees. Resulting inventions are incidental and by-products of Hazeltine's fundamental research and development program.

Par. 2(h), page 4

The distorted reasoning by which Mr. Woodworth deduces that only a small fraction of Hazeltine's royalty income during 1941 was directed to research and development is obviously based on hearsay. Nevertheless, the statement is still irrelevant since Hazeltine has for many years followed the policy of distributing the portion of its royalty income between ordinary broadcast receivers, frequency-modulation receivers, and television receivers in accordance with the relative importance of those branches of the art, from time to time, to the general radio industry. The figure given for the aggregate payment to Hazeltine officers and directors for the year 1946 is irrelevant since in that year the Hazeltine companies performed research and development contracts for the Armed Services and other branches of the Government aggregating more than $9,000,000. The majority of the activities of the officers of the Hazeltine companies as a whole was directed to these Government contract operations. A copy of the consolidated annual report for the Hazeltine companies for the year 1946 is attached hereto as Exhibit CC.

Par. 2(i), page 5

Mr. Woodworth's statements as to the magnitude of the Hazeltine royalties received is clearly nothing more than gossip and, in addition, it is irrelevant and grossly inaccurate. The total royalties collected by Hazeltine upon radio sales in the United States since its organization in 1924 is considerably less than half the figure given by Mr. Woodworth. Further, the mark-up between the manufacturer's selling price on which Hazeltine royalties are paid and the retail or list price is of the order of 2–1 rather than 3–1 as stated by Mr. Woodworth and the statement as to what the public may have paid is meaningless since the excess over the actual royalties is paid not to Hazeltine but to the radio manufacturers themselves, including defendant.

Par. 2(m), page 6

The deduction drawn by Mr. Woodworth from the Radiola 66 receiver produced by Radio Corporation of America in 1929 is obviously mere opinion and is grossly misleading in its conclusion. The fact is that the Radiola 66 sold for approximately $300 and while it did give reproduction which was comparable with receivers of today's standards, such receivers giving that quality of reproduction are now obtainable at prices of the order of Twenty-Five Dollars ($25). Obviously, only revolutionary changes in circuit design and circuit components could have resulted in such a revolutionary reduction in price. No more convincing proof could be offered that research and development such as Hazeltine has performed in the radio art has contributed to, rather than taken away from, the public welfare.

Par. 6(d), page 11

Mr. Woodworth's statement with respect to radio-manufacturing companies not paying Hazeltine royalties, while wholly irrelevant, is again obviously pure rumor since it is so completely at variance with the facts. There follows below the list of companies mentioned by Mr. Woodworth with the correct status of their relation to Hazeltine shown opposite each company:

Colonial Radio Corp.	Hazeltine previously in litigation with Colonial; negotiations with respect to a license now pending
Detrola Radio Corp.	Hazeltine previously in litigation with Detrola (see comment to Par. 2(e), supra)
Emerson Radio and Phonograph Corp.	Hazeltine now and for many years in litigation with Emerson
Sonora Radio Corp.	Hazeltine previously in litigation
Motorola Radio Co.	This company paid royalties through June 30, 1947, rather than through 1935 as stated by Mr. Woodworth. Renewal of its license still subject to negotiation
General Motors Corp.	Hazeltine now in litigation with General Motors (see comment to Par. 6(e), infra)
The Crosley Corp.	Hazeltine now in litigation with Crosley
Admiral Radio Co.	This company paid royalties through June 30, 1947, as stated by Mr. Woodworth. Renewal of its license still subject to negotiation

DeWald Radio Mfg. Corp. ..... This company paid royalties through 1946, rather than through 1945, as stated by Mr. Woodworth and a suit by Hazeltine on the license agreement is now pending

Noblitt-Sparks)
Stromberg-Carlson)
Wells-Gardner)
Wilcox-Gay) ..... These companies did not cease paying royalties on June 30, 1947, as stated by Mr. Woodworth, but each of them, as of that date, accepted new Hazeltine licenses for periods of from 5 to 10 years and of scope and substance substantially identical to Defendant's license here in controversy

Par. 6(e), page 12

With respect to defendant's cataloguing of the Hazeltine patents which have been invalidated, this is, of course, a matter of public record. Nevertheless, Mr. Woodworth's list is misleading in that he fails to state that the Wheeler patent Re. 19,744 was sustained by the District Court and affirmed by the Circuit Court of Appeals of the Sixth Circuit (see comment on Par. 2(e), supra), and that patents 1,951,685 and 2,041,273 are now involved in litigation with General Motors Company on appeal to the Sixth Circuit Court of Appeals. With respect to this same subject of the prosecution of suits for infringement against non-licensees, Hazeltine has for many years had a rather definite policy. It is

Hazeltine's position that it would be an undue burden, on the courts and on itself and on the radio manufacturers, simultaneously to present suits for infringement upon all of its patents being infringed by all non-licensed companies. On the contrary, it has been Hazeltine's policy to bring suits on representative patents against substantial and representative non-licensed companies with the expectation that a favorable conclusion of such suits would be dispositive of its contests with those particular companies and of its contests on that particular patent with all unlicensed companies. This procedure is, in Hazeltine's judgment, what is "reasonably necessary and prudent for enforcing those patents and preventing unlicensed competition in patented apparatus in the field of this license" (Article VIII, Section 1). Mr. Woodworth's statement that Hazeltine has threatened non-licensed manufacturers "that their customers would be subjected to harassment and intimidation" if they were unlicensed is pure rumor and gossip. This has never been the policy of Hazeltine. Hazeltine has never made any such threat and, as a matter of fact, Hazeltine has brought no suit against any customer of a radio manufacturer during the last ten years with the sole exception of a suit against Sonora Radio Corporation in Chicago, in which its customer, Allied Radio Company, also of Chicago, was joined in the same suit.

Par. 6(g)–6(ae), inclusive, pages 13–24, inclusive

This labored and verbose review of the litigation between Hazeltine and Emerson is also obviously pure hearsay. It is also irrelevant and many of the general allegations are contrary to detailed fact. The history of this prolonged litigation can be told very simply: The litigation was initiated by a suit brought by Hazeltine against The Crosley Corporation in its home town of Cincinnati, Ohio on patents 1,913,604 and 2,022,514. The District Court for the Southern District of Ohio, Western Division, held the patents not infringed and did not pass upon validity, (39 F.S. 775). The Circuit Court of Appeals for the Sixth Circuit

affirmed (130 F.(2d) 344). At about this time (December, 1940) the Sixth Circuit Court of Appeals had just found valid and infringed Hazeltine's important patent Re. 19,744 on an automatic volume control circuit widely used by the industry including The Crosley Corporation. (See comment on Par. 2(e), supra) Crosley faced a possible injunction on this important patent since its factory in Cincinnati, Ohio, is in the Sixth Circuit. At this point a jurisdictional race was precipitated by Crosley and Emerson. These companies attempted to transfer all of the Hazeltine litigation to Delaware, the state of incorporation of Hazeltine Corporation, but a state in which none of the parties had any active place of business, because of the fact that this state is encompassed in the Third Federal Circuit which Crosley and Emerson conceived to be less favorable to patents generally. Hazeltine insisted that the proper venue for the litigation with Crosley was in Cincinnati where it had its principal place of business. The District Court of Delaware agreed with Hazeltine; the Court of Appeals for the Third Circuit agreed with Crosley. During this interlocutory skirmishing, the country became at war. Hazeltine requested an adjournment of the litigation for the duration in order to maintain the status quo as it did in all of its other pending litigation without opposition. Crosley and Emerson, feeling that they had Hazeltine at a disadvantage because of its heavy commitments for war work, stubbornly resisted all attempts at deferring the trial of the cases. Finally, the Navy Department intervened and insisted that the cases be not tried. This is corroborated by a letter dated May 6, 1944, from the Honorable James Forrestal, then Under Secretary of the Navy, now Secretary for National Defense, a photostatic copy of which is attached hereto as Exhibit DD. This letter completely disposes of the many malicious inferences and innuendoes found in Mr. Woodworth's affidavit with respect to this Crosley and Emerson litigation. After the conclusion of the war, the jurisdictional race took up where it left off. The litigation with the Crosley and Emerson companies is still in its interlocutory stages. The inference that Hazeltine is avoiding litigation of its patents is nega-

tived by the fact that it pressed with the greatest urgency both its suits against General Motors on its patents 1,951,685 and 2,041,273. Those suits were tried in February of 1947, the trial consuming approximately three weeks. A decision was rendered on June 23, 1947, and appeal was filed promptly to the Sixth Circuit Court of Appeals and that appeal is now pending.

Par. 8(c), page 27

With respect to Mr. Woodworth's criticism of the Hazeltine patent marking requirements, there is attached hereto as Exhibit EE a copy of the patent license notice forwarded to all licensees on and after March 6, 1945. The Court can determine whether or not this constitutes an improper patent marking requirement. With respect to the particular patents listed by Mr. Woodworth and alleged to be improperly included on this patent marking list because of having been adjudicated invalid, the fact is that only certain claims of each of these patents were so adjudicated and that there remain in each of the patents a number of claims as to which the validity has not been adjudicated. The patents enumerated by Mr. Woodworth are listed below with the unadjudicated claims set opposite each:

1,710,035	2, 4, 9–12, incl.
1,755,114	1–9, incl., 11, 15, 18, 20, 22, 25, 26, 27, 28, 30, and 31
1,755,115	4–7, incl.
Re.19,744	8
1,913,604	non-infringement only
1,951,685	now on appeal to Sixth Circuit Court of Appeals
2,022,514	non-infringement only
2,041,273	now on appeal to Sixth Circuit Court of Appeals
2,111,483	1–27, incl. and 34

Par. 8(e)-(f), page 28 and page 29

Mr. Woodworth's sweeping allegation that Hazeltine has required companies to assign their patents to Hazeltine without charge, in addition to the payment of royalties, is obviously pure hearsay by one incompetent to testify as to the matter, since it is completely contrary to the fact. The situation is as follows:

Latour Corporation—Hazeltine Corporation purchased the entire capital stock and all the assets of Latour Corporation for a substantial consideration. There was no litigation with Latour Corporation at any time.

Atwater-Kent Mfg. Co.)
Arthur Atwater-Kent)—As a result of extensive litigation with these parties resulting in a judgment in favor of Hazeltine, very large damages and profits had accrued to Hazeltine because of the infringing sale of radio apparatus by these parties extending over a period of years. A settlement was effected under which, as partial payment of these accrued damages and profits, these parties granted to Hazeltine a license, together with the right to grant sublicenses, under the patents as listed in Schedule A of the license agreement, Exhibit A. There was no assignment of any of these patents to Hazeltine, the legal title in these patents residing in Radio Corporation of America.

Zenith Radio Corporation)
United American Bosch Corp.)—Again as to these two companies, non-exclusive license rights were acquired by Hazeltine as a partial consideration in settlement agreements terminating infringement litigation between the parties. None of the Zenith or Bosch patents were assigned to Hazeltine.

Licenses were extended under these groups of patents to all the Hazeltine licensees, including defendant, without additional charge.

Par. 8(h), page 29

The litigation referred to by Mr. Woodworth against the customers of Atwater-Kent Manufacturing Co. was brought nineteen years ago and after a final judgment against the manufacturer which was affirmed on appeal.

Par. 8(j), page 30

Mr. Woodworth refers to the Hazeltine license agreement as "oppressive". This is obviously merely his opinion, as the agreement speaks for itself. However, the radio industry as a whole has not found the agreement oppressive; in fact it has been modified from time to time to better meet the industry's desires and needs. The great majority of the large responsible manufacturers of the industry renew their licenses from time to time as they expire. (See comment to Par. 6(d), supra)

Par. 8(l), page 30

As stated hereinafter, Hazeltine Corporation has not, during the last ten or more years, sued or threatened to sue or otherwise harassed customers of any unlicensed radio manufacturing company with the single exception noted above, in which the customer was joined with the manufacturer.

Par. 8(m), page 31

Mr. Woodworth's statement as to the nature of the license of Radio Corporation of America under patents of Hazeltine relating to tubes, is obviously hearsay as it is specifically contrary to fact. The license under the Hazeltine patents to Radio Corporation of America relating to tubes is limited to what is generally known in the art as "replacement" tubes. It specifically excludes tubes sold as original equipment in radio receivers by licensed manufacturers. Further, the royalty specified in the agreement is on the whole receiver as sold to the user; not on the tubes, per se.

JOHN R. BINNS

Sworn to and subscribed before me this tenth day of February, 1948.

OLGA J. OSTERLUND,
Notary Public.

Commission Expires March 30, 1949

[SEAL]

March 6, 1945

EXHIBIT EE ATTACHED TO AND FORMING PART OF AFFIDAVIT OF JOHN R. BINNS IN OPPOSITION TO DEFENDANT'S COUNTER-MOTION FOR SUMMARY JUDGMENT IN CIVIL ACTION 6677.

Licensed by Hazeltine Corporation only for use in homes, for educational purposes, and for private, non-commercial use, under one or more of the following patents and under pending applications:

Patent			
1,697,778	1,913,604	2,036,319	2,099,156
1,710,035	1,915,926	2,038,294	2,100,402
Re.17,531	1,920,743	2,039,136	Re.20,632
1,751,854	1,921,087	2,041,273	2,111,483
1,755,114	1,927,672	2,041,291	2,137,123
1,755,115	1,931,338	2,042,571	2,137,266
1,763,380	1,933,402	2,045,910	2,137,318
1,773,573	1,934,940	2,048,528	2,148,633
1,798,962	1,943,405	2,054,424	2,152,470
1,810,355	1,951,685	2,064,774	2,167,136
1,828,688	1,958,027	2,064,775	2,196,881
1,833,085	Re.19,170	2,072,679	2,208,382
1,845,306	2,007,253	2,072,708	2,211,718
1,855,055	2,015,327	2,073,038	2,216,874
1,857,055	2,016,760	2,073,345	2,222,387
1,877,228	Re.19,744	2,080,560	2,250,862
1,887,329	2,021,692	2,080,646	2,273,709
1,888,278	Re.19,765	2,081,861	2,279,543

1,904,185	2,022,067	Re.20,400	2,284,131
1,906,106	2,022,514	2,089,270	2,294,182
1,908,119	2,026,075	2,092,709	Re.22,195
1,910,399	Re.19,823	2,093,416	

EXHIBIT CC ATTACHED TO AND FORMING PART OF AFFIDAVIT OF JOHN R. BINNS IN OPPOSITION TO DEFENDANT'S COUNTER-MOTION FOR SUMMARY JUDGMENT IN CIVIL ACTION 6677.

HAZELTINE CORPORATION

To the Stockholders:

The Report of your corporation for the year ending December 31, 1946, follows:

Income

Net earnings of Hazeltine Corporation and its subsidiary companies for the year 1946 are shown on the Consolidated Income and Expense Statement in this report. Re-negotiation for the year 1945 was completed and no refund was required.

Dividends

Distributions aggregating $1.25 per share were made to stockholders during 1946. We are advised by Accountants and Counsel that in their opinion, based on the enclosed statement, the dividends distributed last year were paid out of current income and earned surplus.

New Operating Subsidiaries

In order to meet changing conditions in the industry and more adequately serve the licensees, two wholly owned subsidiary companies were organized during the year. The first of these was Hazeltine Research, Inc., incorporated under the laws of the State of Illinois. All United States Letters Patent and pending applications for U. S. Letters Patent owned by your company were assigned to Hazeltine Research, Inc. In addition, all license agreements with manufacturers in the United States, as well as the lab-

oratory located at 325 West Huron Street, Chicago 10, Illinois, were transferred to it.

The second wholly owned subsidiary to be formed was Hazeltine Research, Inc. of California, a corporation organized under the laws of the State of Delaware. This company has obtained a franchise to do business in the State of California. It has started a laboratory which is being equipped in leased premises at 2120 North Cahuenga Boulevard, Los Angeles, California.

Engineering

During the year 1946, the scientific, engineering and technical staffs of your companies were stabilized at some 450 persons including graduate engineers, supporting personnel and facilities. They were divided into three groups functioning as follows:

Group I is engaged in advance development on home broadcast receivers and television, including the maintenance of licensee laboratories at New York and Chicago. Steps were taken to open a third licensee laboratory in Los Angeles early in 1947. These laboratories cooperate with Hazeltine licensees located in the East, Central and Western industrial areas of the country in respect to current design, development and production problems.

Group II is engaged in research, development and limited production of projects of military significance to the Armed Services of the United States. This is a continuation of the type of work undertaken by Hazeltine for the United States Government during the war.

Group III is engaged in research and development in the field of marine and air navigation, all-weather flying and nautical and aeronautical traffic control.

Hazeltine Lanac Safety System

Based upon wartime developments, Hazeltine engineers have created a unique system of traffic control including identification and anti-collision means, which has immediate application in both marine and air operations. By the proper application of this sys-

MICRO CARD
TRADE MARK ®

1679

MATTHEW BENDER & COMPANY
MB

49

tem, movements of both marine and air traffic can be accelerated in unfavorable weather, and the safety factor improved to that corresponding to good weather conditions.

The new system has been called Lanac, meaning Laminar Air Navigation Anti-Collision. Demonstrations of Lanac and another Hazeltine development referred to as Distance Measuring Equipment (DME), were conducted in cooperation with the All-Weather Flying Group of the Army Air Forces before the PICAO (Provisional International Civil Aviation Organization) convention held at Indianapolis from October 10th to October 23rd, 1946. The convention was attended by representatives of 46 nations interested in a solution of the problem of air navigation, anti-collision and traffic control.

Hazeltine demonstrated its systems by means of equipment installed in five planes. During the demonstrations more than 100 flights were made, involving over 100,000 passenger miles. Repeated landings were made in a hooded or covered cockpit at intervals of one minute (about three miles), which is about the same interval employed in bright clear weather. This is an improvement of many times that heretofore considered practical under such adverse conditions. These successes were achieved as a result of the complete information continuously available to the pilots through the instrumentality of the Hazeltine electronic equipment.

The practical utilization of these systems, or any portion of them, will depend upon the decisions of the various Aviation Control Authorities in each country including those of the United States Government.

Litigation

The group of suits brought prior to the War against a large Midwestern manufacturing company to enforce a number of your company's patents, which it was expected would be tried in October, 1946, were postponed by events beyond our control. The trial has now been set for February, 1947. The two Declaratory Judgment actions to test the validity and scope of your company's patents, which were filed in the United States District Court of

Delaware the latter part of 1945, are still pending but are in the interlocutory stage.

Review

During the year, approximately fifteen and a half million radio receivers of various types were sold by the industry. This exceeds the total sales of any previous year by two million sets. Of the total units sold last year, more than fifty per cent were of the table model type as against the pre-war range of twenty-seven per cent for table models. Various shortages, particularly wooden cabinets, limited the sale of medium and high price units.

Television receiver sales did not get started until the end of the year. A total of 6,500 sets were sold and of these 3,500 were sold during December. Construction permits for F. M. and Television broadcasting transmitters granted by the Federal Communications Commission during the year should contribute to the demand for the types of receivers capable of reproducing these services, since a large number of additional stations will commence transmissions early in 1947. Various manufacturers estimate the sales of television receivers during 1947 will reach approximately 300,000 sets.

Toward the end of 1946, as full production was reached, competition became keen, particularly in the smaller units. There is every indication the competitive pressure will increase in all types during 1947.

EDGAR RICKARD, Chairman
JACK BINNS, President

Hazeltine Corporation
and its wholly owned subsidiaries

Consolidated Balance Sheet as at December 31, 1946

Assets

Cash in banks and on hand (including $132,651.02 advanced by United States Government

for specific contracts and $108,-877.46 on deposit in bank in Canada)		$2,859,357.31
Accounts receivable arising from Government and other contracts, royalties receivable and accrued		1,207,162.05
Costs incurred on uncompleted portion of contracts not billed		1,962,066.47
Termination claims filed with the Government less partial payments received		1,322,511.98
Total current assets		$7,351,097.81
Land, buildings and equipment at cost	$ 586,022.18	
Less provision for depreciation and amortization	423,620.64	162,401.54
Investments in and advances to affiliated companies		315,632.92
Prepaid expenses, advances and sundry accounts receivable		56,496.42
Patents, patent rights and inventions at cost, less provision for amortization		403,162.91
		$8,288,791.60
Liabilities		
Accounts payable and accrued expenses		$ 626,987.80
Payroll deductions for income tax withheld and Government bonds		34,191.07

Advance payments by United States Government		3,057,737.99
Provision for Federal taxes on income	$ 645,666.34	
United States Treasury Notes, Series C (principal amount)	250,000.00	395,666,34
Total current liabilities		$4,114,583.20
Royalties paid in advance		52,500.00

Capital

Capital stock:		
Authorized 600,000 shares, no par value		
Issued and outstanding 350,000 shares	$2,577,434.16	
Distribution made to stockholders from provision for amortization of patents	$ 444,353.83	
Earned surplus after amortization charges		
Balance, December 31, 1945	$1,539,130.50	
Net income for year 1946	886,432.34	
Unclaimed dividends	565.23	
	$2,426,128.07	
Dividends paid during 1946	437,500.00	
Balance, December 31, 1946	$1,988,628.07	
Capital and surplus		4,121,708.40
		$8,288,791.60

Hazeltine Corporation
and its wholly owned subsidiaries

Consolidated Income and Expense Statement for the Year Ended December 31, 1946

Income		
Gross income from sales, less costs applied thereto, domestic and foreign royalties and engineering services		$2,001,732.32
Other income		22,618.00
Total income		$2,024,350.32
Expenses other than those charged directly to cost of products		
Salaries, laboratory and office	$1,053,366.29	
Legal and accounting fees	82,815.40	
Rent	26,351.91	
Taxes other than Federal taxes on income	89,713.09	
Provision for depreciation of furniture, equipment and laboratory building	17,657.47	
Agency services	4,285.95	
Other operating expenses including materials and supplies, telephone and telegraph, insurance, traveling, stationery and supplies and other expenses	300,323.33	
	$1,574,513.44	

Less amount applied to cost of services, product shipped and uncompleted contracts	1,086,099.70	
	$ 488,413.74	
Provision for amortization of patents	57,504.24	
Provision for Federal taxes on income	592,000.00	1,137,917.98
Balance carried to surplus		$ 886,432.34

Frazer and Torbet
CERTIFIED PUBLIC ACCOUNTANTS
230 PARK AVENUE
NEW YORK 17

CHICAGO
MILWAUKEE
TULSA
HOUSTON
WASHINGTON, D. C.

CABLE ADDRESS
FRAZTOR CHICAGO

February 19, 1947

Messrs., The Board of Directors
Hazeltine Corporation
National Press Building
Washington, D. C.

HAZELTINE CORPORATION

REPORT OF AUDIT
AS AT DECEMBER 31, 1946

Gentlemen:

We have examined the consolidated balance sheet of Hazeltine Corporation, a Delaware corporation, and its wholly owned subsidiaries, Hazeltine Electronics Corporation (New York), Hazeltine Research, Inc. (Illinois), Hazeltine Research, Inc, of California (Delaware) and Latour Corporation (Delaware) as at December 31, 1946, and the consolidated statement of income and

expense for the year ended that date, have reviewed the system of internal control and accounting procedures of the companies and, without making a detailed audit of the transactions, have examined or tested accounting records of the companies and other supporting evidence by methods and to the extent we deemed appropriate. Except that it was not practicable to confirm receivables from the United States Government, as to which we have satisfied ourselves by means of other auditing procedures, our examination was made in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards applicable in the circumstances and included all procedures which we considered necessary.

In our opinion, the accompanying balance sheet and related statement of income and expense fairly present the consolidated position of Hazeltine Corporation and subsidiaries at December 31, 1946, and the results of their operations for the calendar year ended that date in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles maintained by companies on a basis consistent with that of the preceding year.

Faithfully yours,

FRAZER AND TORBET,
Certified Public Accountants

Hazeltine Electronics Corporation
1775 Broadway
New York 19, N. Y.

Directors
For the Year 1946
Edgar Rickard, Chairman

Paul Armitage	William H. Grimditch
Jack Binns	W. A. MacDonald

Officers

Edgar Rickard	Chairman of the Board
W. A. MacDonald	President
William H. Grimditch	Executive Vice President
Jack Binns, L. B. Dodds, Fielding Robinson	Vice Presidents
John D. Grayson	Treasurer
Lincoln De Graw	Controller
Paul Armitage	Secretary
Peggy Coyle, Carl Di Martino, Wilfred M. McFarland, Olga J. Osterlund	Assistant Secretaries

---

Hazeltine Research, Inc.
325 West Huron Street
Chicago 10, Illinois

Directors
For the Year 1946

Paul Armitage — L. B. Dodds
Jack Binns — William H. Grimditch
W. A. MacDonald

Officers

Jack Binns	President
L. B. Dodds	Executive Vice President
William H. Grimditch, W. A. MacDonald	Vice Presidents
Paul Armitage	Secretary
John D. Grayson	Treasurer
Wilfred McFarland, Harry C. Page	Assistant Secretaries

Registrar
City Bank Farmers Trust Company
New York

Transfer Agent
Chase National Bank
New York

listing
New York Curb Exchange

Hazeltine Corporation

Directors
For the Year 1946

Edgar Rickard, Chairman

Paul Armitage	H. Elbert Foster, Jr.
Jack Binns	William H. Grimditch
L. B. Dodds	W. A. MacDonald

Henry Reeve

Officers

Edgar Rickard	Chairman of the Board
Jack Binns	President
W. A. MacDonald	Vice President & Chief Engineer
William H. Grimditch	Vice President
L. B. Dodds	Vice President
Paul Armitage	Secretary
John D. Grayson	Treasurer
Wilfred M. McFarland, Harry C. Page	Assistant Secretaries

THE UNDER SECRETARY OF THE NAVY
WASHINGTON

6 May 1944

MAY 9 1944

Re: Crosley Radio Corporation
vs
Hazeltine Corporation

Emerson Radio and Phonograph Corp.
vs
Hazeltine Corporation

Dear Mr. MacDonald:

I understand that the actions and cross actions referred to above which have been pending in the District Court of the United States in the District of Delaware have been dismissed. Since the termination of these actions was made possible by Hazeltine Corporation's acceding to the Navy Department's request that Hazeltine waive its claims for profits and damages under its cross actions, I would like to record briefly the reasons for the Navy's request and to express our appreciation for the action which your Company has taken.

As I understand it, the litigation concerned peacetime activities of the plaintiffs and of your Company and involved matters having an important bearing on their and your postwar activities. The actions were instituted sometime ago for a declaration that certain of your Company's patents, which you advised me were most important to your Company's peacetime operations, were invalid and were not infringed by the plaintiffs. In your cross actions you contended that the patents were valid and had been infringed by the plaintiffs and you requested that you be awarded the profits and damages to which you were entitled because of such infringement.

I realize that it was to the interest of both your Company and the plaintiffs to have these actions tried at the earliest possible date so that their respective positions in the industry would be clarified before peacetime production involving the patents was resumed. However, Hazeltine Corporation's participation in the electronics program of the Navy and Army and our Allies is so vital that the devotion of time by your engineers to the case would have seriously impaired our war work. At the Navy's request the action was postponed last year but a recent application for further postponement was denied by the Court. The Plaintiffs refused to consent to any further postponement.

Although I was in no position to determine the relative merits of the actions or the cross actions, you did explain to me the importance of the litigation to your Company and the necessity for your requiring certain of your key engineers to devote all or a portion of their time to preparation for the trials. I was vitally interested, however, in seeing that the litigation did not affect our war program and I therefore personally appealed

Exhibit DD attached to and forming part of Affidavit of John R. Binns in Opposition to Defendant's Counter-Motion for Summary Judgment in Civil Action 6677

to you and requested that, in order to obtain a dismissal of the actions, your Company waive its right to the past profits and damages which might accrue to it if it were successful in its cross actions.

While I realize that this was asking you and your company to relinquish certain private rights to which you might have been entitled and that I could not insist that this be done, I do want to assure you that I was most sincere in my statement that the war effort would have been seriously impeded had the actions gone to trial and resulted in the loss to our vital electronics program of your Company's engineers, who are now and have been spending all of their time on our work, the importance of which you fully understand.

The dismissal of the actions eliminates the possibility of such a loss and I cannot adequately express how deeply this is appreciated by the Navy Department.

Sincerely yours,

James Forrestal

James Forrestal

Mr. W. A. MacDonald, President
Hazeltine Corporation
1775 Broadway
New York 19, New York

AFFIDAVIT OF LAURENCE B. DODDS IN OPPOSITION TO DEFENDANT'S COUNTER-MOTION FOR SUMMARY JUDGMENT.

[Filed February 11, 1948.]

State of New York)
) ss.:
County of New York)

Laurence B. Dodds, being duly sworn, deposes and says:

1. That I am an attorney at law and of counsel for plaintiff in the above-entitled action.

2. I have read affidavit of George K. Woodworth in support of defendant's counter-motion for summary judgment and particularly paragraph 7(b) at page 26 thereof.

3. I was present during the entire conference referred to by Mr. Woodworth in the aforesaid affidavit, which conference was held in the office of Richard F. Walker, attorney for plaintiff in the above-entitled action, and which was attended also by Mr. David Housman, President of defendant company.

I state categorically that I did not make the statement attributed to me by Mr. Woodworth in Paragraph 7 (b) of his aforesaid affidavit, nor did I make any statement of similar import or to similar effect.

4. On the contrary, at the aforementioned conference, I explained in detail to Mr. David Housman, President of defendant, that Hazeltine had been in the licensing business for some 23 years and that it was dependent entirely for its existence on the income from such licenses in the radio industry; that, as a result, it realized that its license must be a reasonable business proposition mutually advantageous to both licensor or licensee or else it would not be able to continue in business; that Hazeltine considered that its present license agreement was such a reasonable business deal since it involved, for a consideration averaging less than one per cent. (1%) of the licensee's sales a package containing the following elements:

(a) Protection under the broad and basic patents of Hazeltine

(b) Freedom of design under the large number of improvement patents relating to different features of different types of radio receivers

(c) Substantial and valuable general and individual engineering services and

(d) Freedom from litigation expenses

LAURENCE B. DODDS.

Sworn to and subscribed before me this tenth day of February, 1948.

OLGA J. OSTERLUND,
Notary Public.

Commission Expires March 30, 1949

[SEAL]

AFFIDAVIT OF RICHARD F. WALKER IN OPPOSITION TO DEFENDANT'S COUNTERMOTION FOR SUMMARY JUDGMENT.

[Filed February 11, 1948.]

Commonwealth of Massachusetts:
County of Suffolk : ss.

Richard F. Walker, being duly sworn, deposes and says:

1. I am an attorney at law with an office at 31 Milk Street, Boston 9, Massachusetts.

2. I have read the affidavit of George K. Woodworth executed January 30, 1948 and served herein in support of defendant's countermotion for summary judgment, and particularly its Paragraph 7(b) at page 26 thereof relating to a statement allegedly made by Mr. L. B. Dodds at a conference held on July 22, 1947. I was present throughout said conference which was held in my office and attended by Mr. David Housman, defendant's President, Mr. Woodworth, Mr. Dodds and myself, and I state cate-

gorically that Mr. Dodds did not make the statement attributed to him in said Paragraph 7(b). To the contrary, the statements of Mr. Dodds at said conference were in substance that the patents licensed by plaintiff to defendant included some which were used commercially by defendant and which were of substantial value, and that the royalty rate charged in the license was reasonably set and fully justified. I am not familiar with the subject matter of the particular patents here involved, but I know there was substantial discussion at said conference between Mr. Dodds and Mr. Woodworth as to whether defendant's commercial structures embodied the subject matter of certain of the licensed patents with several references to some tube which they referred to as a "variable Mu".

3. The net result of said July 22 conference was that Mr. Woodworth was again to take up with Mr. Irving Wexler, an expert engineer employed by defendant, the question of how far defendant's commercial products embodied licensed subject matter as set out in Mr. Dodds' answers to defendant's interrogatories previously filed herein. In that late afternoon of July 22, 1947 I received from Mr. Woodworth a telephoned message for Mr. Dodds which I relayed on to him on July 23 as follows:

> "Dear Mr. Dodds:
>
> Following your departure last night, Woodworth called and, finding you gone, requested me to give you the following message.
>
> That he now finds he misquoted his expert on the Mu tubes when he referred to them as mixing tubes. What he should have identified was the variable Mu detector tube and in respect to the Johnson patent claims 18 and 20.
>
> As I understand it, it is this detector tube of the Johnson patent claims which does not occur in the accused structures, according to the contention of his expert.
>
> * * * * * * * * *".

Later on July 29, 1947 I received and reported to Mr. Dodds the

letter to me from Mr. Woodworth dated July 28, 1947, a copy of which is annexed hereto.

4. That on August 6, 1947 I received a call from Mr. Woodworth during which he urged the desirability of the conference of experts proposed by him in his said letter of July 28, and on August 7, 1947 I reported as follows to Mr. Dodds—as I believe accurately— of Mr. Woodworth's statements as made to me on the preceding day:

> "Among other things he" (Mr. Woodworth) "urged the desirability of the conference, with a statement that if your expert could convince Mr. Wexler that Defendant's production came within any one of the licensed claims, either with or without the use of the doctrine of equivalents, Defendant was prepared to change its position and pay up back rated royalty in exchange for your kind offer to waive the minimum royalty obligation."

5. Subsequently arrangements were made for said conference to be held in New York upon September 22, 1947, and arrangements were made with this Court to postpone or "continue" pretrial herein until after this attempt at settlement was exhausted. By this time, however, Samuel E. Darby, Jr., Esq. had come in as counsel for defendant, and we were advised on September 16, 1947 by Mr. Woodworth that Mr. Darby declined to proceed with the proposed conference of experts and the arrangements therefor were consequently cancelled.

6. That it is only subsequent to the foregoing activities and on September 18, 1947 that defendant claims, as set out in Paragraph 11, page 34 of Mr. Woodworth's said affidavit, to have repudiated its license from Hazeltine.

RICHARD F. WALKER.

Subscribed and sworn to before me this ninth day of February, 1948.

JOHN D. WOODBERRY,
Notary Public.

[SEAL]

275

CABLE: "GEOKEN-BOSTON"
TELEPHONE CAPITOL 2008

PATENTS, TRADE MARKS, COPYRIGHTS

WASHINGTON OFFICE:
NATIONAL PRESS BLDG

GEORGE K. WOODWORTH
COUNSELLOR AT LAW
19 CONGRESS STREET, BOSTON 9, MASS.

July 28, 1947

Richard F. Walker, Esq.
Roberts, Cushman & Grover
31 Milk Street
Boston 9, Massachusetts

Re: Hazeltine v. Automatic Radio, C.A. No. 6677

Dear Mr. Walker:

I enclose substance of my report to Automatic Radio Mfg. Company, Inc. based on conferences with Automatic's expert, as corrected, after the final conference last week.

I think we ought to have a conference between Automatic's expert and the engineer who gave Mr. Dodds the data for his answers to defendant's interrogatories. In such case, the attorneys for both parties could sit in and say nothing except possibly ask questions. The court would, I am sure, be duly appreciative if we could limit this case to the three Wheeler patents mentioned at the end of the enclosed memo.

As you know, of course, the royalties collectible if all 11 patents and their 52 claims were made good would not be one penny greater than those recoverable if claim 3 of Wheeler 1958,027 were found valid and infringed.

I suggest you take this matter up with Mr. Dodds for whom a duplicate of this letter is enclosed.

Very truly yours,

GKW:B

AFFIDAVIT OF CHARLES R. WEXLER IN REBUTTAL TO THE "AFFIDAVIT OF JOHN R. BINNS IN OPPOSITION TO DEFENDANT'S COUNTERMOTION FOR SUMMARY JUDGMENT," SAID AFFIDAVIT HAVING BEEN SERVED FEBRUARY 11, 1948.

[Filed February 12, 1948.]

Commonwealth of Massachusetts,
Suffolk, ss.

Charles R. Wexler, being first duly sworn, deposes and says:

I am a graduate of the Massachusetts Institute of Technology and for many years have been associated in an engineering capacity with the radio industry. I am now and for some time past have been chief engineer of defendant, Automatic Radio Manufacturing Company, Inc.

On this day, February 12, 1948, at the request of George K. Woodworth, attorney for defendant, I purchased from Eastern Company at 620 Memorial Drive, Cambridge, Massachusetts, the Massachusetts distributor of RCA Victor Sales & Service, (see Boston Classified Telephone Directory, December, 1947, p. 624) a wholly owned subsidiary of Radio Corporation of America, a radio tube ordinarily known as a "mixing tube", type 12SA7, which was enclosed within a paper carton. Said carton, marked A, is annexed hereto and made a part hereof, and said tube is marked B and made a part of this affidavit .

Enclosed within said carton was a card reading:

License And
Patent Notice

"This tube uses inventions of United States patents owned by or licensed to Radio Corporation of America. Patent numbers supplied upon request. Licensed for all purposes except public service communications for hire or toll. The sale of this tube does not convey any license under patent

claims on combinations of the tube with other devices or elements."

Said card, marked C, is annexed hereto and made a part hereof.

CHARLES R. WEXLER.

Subscribed and sworn to before me, this twelfth day of February, 1948.

MARGARET B. BUDDEN,
Notary Public.

[SEAL]

12SA7

YOUR PROTECTION

THIS ELECTRON TUBE IS WARRANTED BY THE MANUFACTURER AGAINST DEFECTS IN WORKMANSHIP, MATERIALS AND CONSTRUCTION.

Should you feel that this tube has not given satisfactory service under normal operating conditions, please return it to the place of purchase for retest.

LICENSE AND PATENT NOTICE

This tube uses inventions of United States patents owned by or licensed to Radio Corporation of America. Patent numbers supplied upon request. Licensed for all purposes except public service communications for hire or toll. The sale of this tube does not convey any license under patent claims on combinations of the tube with other devices or elements.

AFFIDAVIT OF FLOYD H. CREWS IN REPLY TO LAST PARAGRAPH OF THE OPPOSING AFFIDAVIT OF MR. JOHN R. BINNS.

[Filed February 13, 1948.]

State of New York,)
(ss.:
County of New York,)

Floyd H. Crews, being first duly sworn, deposes and says:

1. I am an attorney at law and am counsel for the defendant in this action.

2. On page 13 of Mr. Binn's opposing affidavit, he makes the following statement:

> "The license under the Hazeltine patents to Radio Corporation of America relating to tubes is limited to what is generally known in the art as 'replacement' tubes. It specifically excludes tubes sold as original equipment in radio receivers by licensed manufacturers."

3. I am informed and believe that Radio Corporation of America holds two licenses under the Hazeltine patents: one known as a "home" license and the other as a "commercial" license, and that the "home" license is identical with the license agreement between plaintiff and defendant (Exhibit A attached to the complaint), including the definitions contained in Article III, Section 2, of that agreement. I am further informed and believe that it is under the "commercial" license that RCA is licensed by Hazeltine to sell tubes to radio manufacturers, and that the specific provision of said "commerical" license reads as follows (the words " 'home' license" in the provision referring to the "home" license from Hazeltine held by RCA):

> "Provided that the license granted under this Section 1 shall extend to tubes sold to others by RCA, its subsidiary and controlled companies, for use in apparatus of the kinds specified in said Article III, Section 2, of said 'home' license,

but shall not extend to tubes actually licensed under said 'home' license agreement or under any license granted by Hazeltine to others for the apparatus specified in said Article III, Section 2."

It will be seen from this wording that RCA holds an unrestricted license from Hazeltine to sell radio tubes to radio manufacturers without any limitation to what Mr. Binns refers to as "replacement" tubes.

4. I have not seen either of the licenses from Hazeltine to RCA, but if any interpretation of either or both of those licenses is involved, the licenses should be produced by Hazeltine. If they are not produced, the foregoing quotation, being the only definite language taken from either license which is before the court, should be accepted as a correct quotation from the license and the above explanation as a correct explanation.

5. Furthermore, even if Hazeltine's license to RCA granted RCA a license to sell the tubes, but contained a limitation as to the use to which purchasers of those tubes could put them, that limitation would be invalid under the law quoted in defendant's brief on its counter-motion for summary judgment. The limitation would have no force and effect as against defendant, who, by the purchase of tubes from RCA, would have a license from Hazeltine to use them for any purpose. Such a restriction on re-use, furthermore, if contained in that license agreement, would constitute a misuse of patents, for the reasons explained at length in defendant's brief on its motion.

FLOYD H. CREWS.

Sworn to and subscribed before me this eleventh day of February, 1948.

EILEEN LAMERSON,
Notary Public.

[SEAL]

Commission Expires March 30, 1948

AFFIDAVIT OF FLOYD H. CREWS IN REPLY TO PAGES 8, 9 AND 10 OF THE OPPOSING AFFIDAVIT OF JOHN R. BINNS.

[Filed February 13, 1948.]

State of New York
County of New York, ss:

Floyd H. Crews, being first duly sworn, deposes and says:

1. I am an attorney at law and am counsel for the defendant in this action.

2. Attached hereto are copies of four letters which are true copies of letters written by Captain J. B. Dow of the United States Navy and Mr. Samuel E. Darby, Jr., which I am informed and believe correctly recite the facts with respect to postponing the trial of the Crosley and Emerson declaratory judgment suits brought against Hazeltine in 1941 and the ultimate dismissal of those suits.

FLOYD H. CREWS.

Sworn to and subscribed before me this twelfth day of February, 1948.

EILEEN LAMERSON,
Notary Public.

[SEAL]

Commission Expires March 30, 1948

NAVY DEPARTMENT
Bureau of Ships
Washington, D. C.

10 August 1943

Dear Mr. Darby:

This will acknowledge receipt of your letter of 28 July 1943 in which you confirm the decision of your clients, The Crosley Corporation and Emerson Radio and Phonograph Corporation, made

at my request, to consent to a postponement of their declaratory judgment suits against the Hazeltine Corporation.

In accordance with my understanding, you will review the matter with me again in January 1944 with a view to proceeding with the trial in May 1944, if possible, consistent with the war effort of the Hazeltine Corporation.

The courtesy of your clients in complying with my request is greatly appreciated and I feel, without reservation, the action is a direct and substantial contribution to the war effort.

Very respectfully yours,

(Sgd) J. B. Dow,
Captain, U. S. N.

Mr. Samuel E. Darby, Jr.,
Darby & Darby
Chrysler Building
405 Lexington Avenue
New York, N. Y.

NAVY DEPARTMENT
Bureau of Ships
Washington, D. C.

23 August 1943

Dear Mr. Darby:

This will acknowledge receipt of your letter of August 19 relating to the declaratory judgment suits against Hazeltine Corporation.

I understand that you are preparing with counsel for Hazeltine a stipulation providing for proceeding with the trial in May 1944 or as soon thereafter as the court calendar permits. This is in accordance with my understanding at the close of the last conference which you attended in my office. I will do everything possible to permit this end to be accomplished. It was, however, my under-

standing that we would meet in January to see what, if anything need or could be done to insure that the May date would be met.

Very respectfully,

(Sgd) J. B. Dow,
Captain, U. S. N.

Mr. Samuel E. Darby, Jr.,
Darby & Darby
Chrysler Building
405 Lexington Avenue
New York, N. Y.

DARBY & DARBY
Chrysler Building
New York 17, N. Y.

January 20, 1944

Captain J. B. Dow
Navy Department
Bureau of Ships
Washington, D. C.

Re: *Crosley* v. *Hazeltine*,
Emerson v. *Hazeltine*.

Dear Captain Dow:

With reference to the above litigations pending in the United States District Court for the District of Delaware, and with which you are familiar, I find a notation in my diary that, according to plan, I was to communicate with you at about this time for the purpose of ascertaining the status of the Navy-Hazeltine relations in so far as is concerned its bearing on the prospective trial of the above cases in May.

I find I must be in Washington in the Department of Justice the morning of Thursday, January 27th, and I am writing to inquire whether or not it would be convenient for you to see me in con-

nection with the above subjects matter on the aforenoon of that day and, if so, what time would be most convenient to you.

Sincerely,

(Sgd) S. E. DARBY, JR.

Jr:EL

DARBY & DARBY
Chrysler Building
New York 17, N. Y.

January 28, 1944

Alden D. Redfield, Esq.
The Crosley Corporation
Cincinnati, Ohio

Re: *Crosley* v. *Hazeltine*

Dear Alden:

As a result of my letter of January 20th to Captain Dow, a copy of which I sent you, I was notified by Captain Dow to confer with him yesterday at 2 P.M.

Accordingly I went to his office at the appointed time and, quite to my surprise, he was ready and waiting for me attended by the red haired Lieutenant Commander (now a Commander)—the one who used to be in Houget's office)—Wright (a civilian), Vanderstucken, and a new face—Captain Shea, who weighs about 200 pounds and is a very affable but hardboiled, rough and ready type of fellow.

Contrary to what Vanderstucken had implied when he saw me recently at my office, the meeting started off with the statement that the Navy was in a worse position and deeper in the hole with respect to Hazeltine than it was before. Captain Shea then spoke up and said that the Navy just could not let this litigation go on and that he would "testify" in Court and would tell any Judge that the Navy would not permit the case to go on.

I believe that he spoke out of turn because I seized upon his statement immediately and stated that that was quite agreeable

to me and would relieve me of considerable embarrassment because it converted the matter from the basis on which we originally had been approached to one in which the Navy was going to tell the Federal Court what it could or could not do; and inasmuch as I, as an attorney, was an officer of the Court I would, of course, be entirely amenable to any order of the Court entered pursuant to the Navy, or Captain Shea, telling the Court what it could and could not do. It was somewhat amusing to see how the remainder of the gentlemen present backed away from any type of support, implied or expressed, for Captain Shea's attitude.

Thereupon the Commander approached the matter from the viewpoint that the Navy was not interested in Hazeltine in any respect, except in so far as the war needs were concerned. I told him I had an entirely different impression and therefore would welcome open mindedly any thoughts that he cared to advance as to procedure at this time which would indicate, to me at least, a support for his assertion.

The thought was then advanced as to what my attitude would be to a further postponement. I stated that I was not prepared to consider it and that so far as I was concerned the case was going to be set for trial as soon after the first of May as the Court's time would permit.

The next approach was a review of what transpired at our last meeting. It was recalled that at that time someone—it was their impression that I was the one—had made the suggestion that a logical way to dispose of the matter would be to have Hazeltine give us a complete quitclaim for past infringement. In other words, if after the war Hazeltine was of the opinion that we infringed any patents still alive, Hazeltine could institute a suit against us on those patents at that time.

I stated that I definitely recalled the suggestion and its vigorous refusal by Hazeltine, but that as I recalled it the suggestion had one additional attribute which they had not mentioned, namely that if at the end of the war Hazeltine determined to sue us for

infringement of any of the patents involved in the present case, we should be notified thereof in sufficient time to permit us to file a suit for declaratory judgment in the Delaware District Court with respect to any patents involved in the present case, to thereby retain the status quo, jurisdictionally, of any patent of Hazeltine involved in the present suit. That proposition was first vigorously contested by the Commander, which occasioned me to comment that he could see what I meant by questioning, in my own mind, the neutral attitude of the Navy with respect to the litigants. I asked him to point out in any respect in which the foregoing condition was unfair to Hazeltine. I stated, quite frankly, that I was very well satisfied with the present jurisdiction of the Court, and Hazeltine was equally as well dissatisfied, and that inasmuch as the matter of jurisdiction had already gone as far as the Supreme Court there was no power—certainly in Hazeltine or the Navy—that could disturb the jurisdictional feature, and that I had not the slightest intention, by agreement or otherwise, to permit it to be disturbed.

The inability of the Commander to point out a single phase of the proposition which was eminently unfair quickly resulted in the expression that it was fair. Whereupon the matter was left with Captain Dow's group to consider the matter and explore it with Hazeltine, with the idea of the Navy bringing its influence to bear upon Hazeltine in its consideration thereof. Again the rough and ready Captain Shea came to the fore with the characteristically forceful expression that the Navy would *tell* Hazeltine what it would and what it would not do.

That is the way the matter stands. In no sense are we committed, although it may well be that the Navy group will assume that we are notwithstanding the fact that I took particular pains to state I had not discussed the offer with my clients since it was originally made and rejected. However, if the Navy should come back (and it intends to let me know very shortly) with the information that the litigations (both in Delaware and Ohio) can be disposed of on that basis, I would strongly recommend that

this be done despite my strong personal inclination to be contrary, because undoubtedly it would be for the best interests of the clients.

I will keep you fully advised as to any developments.

With warm personal regards, I am

Very truly yours,

(Sgd) S. E. DARBY, JR.

AFFIDAVIT OF LAURENCE B. DODDS.

[Filed February 13, 1948.]

Commonwealth of Massachusetts)
) ss.
County of Suffolk)

Laurence B. Dodds, being duly sworn, deposes and says:

1. That he is of counsel for plaintiff in the above entitled action and is also an officer of plaintiff and completely familiar with its license agreements and particularly with two certain license agreements with Radio Corporation of America executed and dated as of December 15, 1937, and identified as the "Commercial" license and the "Home" license respectively and that he participated in the negotiation of those licenses with Radio Corporation of America and the drafting of the formal license documents.

2. That the aforesaid "Home" license of Radio Corporation of America is in standard printed form substantially identical to the standard license agreement held by defendant herein and attached to the complaint and marked Exhibit A and that Article II, Section 2 of aforesaid "Home" license of Radio Corporation of America, defining apparatus of the type licensed, is exactly identical to Article III, Section 2 of said license agreement with defendant, the difference in the numbering of the articles in two agreements being accounted for by the inclusion in the said license of defendant as Article I of a clause entitled "Settlement of

Damages" which clause is however crossed out in defendant's license.

3. That aforesaid "Commercial" license of Radio Corporation of America includes the following clause:

"Article I

Licenses

Section 1. Hazeltine hereby grants and agrees to grant under all United States Letters Patent of Schedule A and under all the United States Letters Patent to issue on the applications of Schedule A and under all other United States Letters Patent and applications relating to or applicable to radio communication, wire communication, sound and picture recording and reproducing and tubes and tube circuits with respect to which during the term hereof it shall have the right to grant licenses (but in the case of patents and applications under which Hazeltine has or shall subsequently acquire a limited right to grant licenses for part or all of the field hereof, the licenses herein granted are subject to any limitations to which that right may be subject), and upon the terms and conditions hereinafter set forth, a personal, indivisible, non-transferable and non-exclusive license to RCA, its subsidiary and controlled companies and each of them, to manufacture, use and sell throughout the United States and its territories and possessions, including the right to export, apparatus for all uses, other than apparatus of the kinds and for the uses specified in Article II, Section 2 of said "Home" license executed by Hazeltine and RCA concurrently herewith; provided, that the license granted under this Section 1 shall extend to tubes sold to others by RCA, its subsidiary and controlled companies, for use in apparatus of the kinds specified in said Article II, Section 2, of said "Home" license but shall not extend to tubes actually licensed under said "Home" license agreement or under license granted by Hazeltine to others for the apparatus specified in said Article II, Section 2; and provided further, that

the license hereby granted for tubes for use in such apparatus specified in said Article II, Section 2, shall be extended only in respect of claims which cover merely the tubes themselves and shall not by implication, estoppel or otherwise extend to claims covering a combination of the tubes with other devices as, for example, in tube circuits and hook-ups.

The license to manufacture includes the right to make any or all of the separate parts and the right to have any or all of the separate parts made by others but no license is granted to sell parts except for legitimate repair of used apparatus or replacement of worn-out or defective parts of used apparatus."

4. That the meaning and intent of the parties expressed in the next to the last proviso, namely: "Provided, that the license granted under this Section 1 . . . shall not extend to tubes actually licensed . . . under license granted by Hazeltine to others for the apparatus specified in said Article II, Section 2" (inter alia, radio receivers) is that tubes sold by Radio Corporation of America and its affiliated companies to other licensees of Hazeltine are not licensed by Hazeltine; in other words, when a licensee of Hazeltine such as defendant purchases tubes from Radio Corporation of America, it is doing so pursuant to the express right of Article III, Section 1 permitting the licensee "to make all or any of the separate parts and the right to have all or any of the separate parts made by others," and in selling such tubes to the licensee Radio Corporation of America is not operating under its license and pays no royalties to Hazeltine thereon.

5. That the purposes of the foregoing exception to the grant of a general license to Radio Corporation of America covering tubes were to avoid the very situation urged by defendant herein, namely that having purchased tubes from Radio Corporation of America for inclusion in its receivers ("the apparatus specified in said Article II, Section 2") it could claim an implied license

from Hazeltine to use such tubes in an unlicensed manner and further to avoid the collection of a double royalty by Hazeltine on such tubes, one from Radio Corporation of America and a second from a licensed receiver manufacturer including such tubes in its receivers and paying a royalty on the basis of the complete receiver including tubes.

6. That of his own knowledge there are no provisions in either said "Home" or said "Commercial" licenses of Radio Corporation of America nor in any modifying letters thereof, nor is there any further agreement or understanding of any nature whatsoever between Hazeltine and Radio Corporation of America, granting that company any additional license with respect to tubes or in any way modifying the express provisions of the "Commercial" license quoted above.

LAURENCE B. DODDS.

Sworn to and subscribed before me this thirteenth day of February, 1948.

JOHN D. WOODBERRY,
Notary Public.

[SEAL].

At the same term, on February 13, 1948, the cause was set down for hearing before the Court, the Honorable Francis J. W. Ford, District Judge, sitting, on plaintiff's motion for summary judgment, and on defendant's countermotion for summary judgment, and after a full hearing, was taken under advisement.

The cause was then continued to the present March Term, 1948, when on April 28, 1948, the Court hands down its memorandum of decision granting plaintiff's motion for summary judgment and denying defendant's countermotion for summary judgment dismissing the action.

On June 21, 1948, the following Interlocutory Judgment is entered:

INTERLOCUTORY JUDGMENT.

[June 21, 1948.]

This cause having come on to be heard on the pleadings on plaintiff's motion for summary judgment under rule 56 of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure and defendant's counter-motion for summary judgment and on the affidavits in support of and in opposition to both motions and attached documentary exhibits, and having been argued by counsel for both parties, and this Court having granted plaintiff's said motion and having denied defendant's said counter-motion by memorandum of decision dated April 28, 1948, thereupon, upon consideration thereof, it is ordered, adjudged and decreed as follows:

1. That the license agreement between the parties hereto dated as of September 1, 1942, a copy of which has been filed herein identified as Exhibit A, is good and valid at law and in full force and effect.

2. That plaintiff recover from defendant as minimum royalty under Section 4 of Article IV of said license agreement for the contract year from September 1, 1945 through August 31, 1946 the sum of Ten Thousand Dollars ($10,000) with interest at six per cent (6%) from its due date of September 30, 1946 and that execution may issue therefor.

3. That the plaintiff recover such further sums as are due to the plaintiff from the defendant at the date of this judgment under said license agreement, including royalties due with respect to all apparatus coming within the provisions of said license agreement, together with interest on such sums at six per cent (6%) from the respective dates upon which said sums were due for payment, and that this cause be referred to a Master to be appointed by this Court to take and state an account thereof and to report thereon with all convenient speed.

4. That a permanent injunction issue out of and under the seal of this Court directed to defendant, its officers and agents, enjoining and restraining them and each of them throughout the continuance in force of said license agreement from breaching

such provisions of Articles IV and V thereof as relate to defendant's obligation to plaintiff to pay royalties and to keep records and render statements from which the proper amounts of such royalty payments may be determined.

5. That defendant pay to plaintiff its costs to be taxed in this action.

FRANCIS J. W. FORD,
United States District Judge.

Boston, Massachusetts
June 21, 1948.

Approved as to form.

GEO. K. WOODWORTH,
Attorney for Defendant.
June 16, 1948.

RICHARD F. WALKER,
Attorney for Plaintiff.
6/16/48.

From the foregoing interlocutory judgment entered on June 21, 1948, the defendant, Automatic Radio Manufacturing Company, Inc., on the same day, files a notice of appeal to the United States Circuit Court of Appeals for the First Circuit.

On the same day, the defendant files the following Motion for Stay of Judgment, which motion, having been assented to by the plaintiff, is allowed on the same day by the Court, the Honorable Francis J. W. Ford, District Judge, sitting:

MOTION FOR STAY OF JUDGMENT.

[Filed June 21, 1948.]

Defendant moves the Court to stay the enforcement of the interlocutory judgment in this action, pending the disposition of defendant's appeal to the United States Circuit Court of Appeals for the First Circuit, and for that purpose to fix the amount of the bond required to be filed by defendant.

GEO. K. WOODWORTH,
Attorney for Defendant.

I do not object to the allowance of said Motion.

RICHARD F. WALKER,
Attorney for Plaintiff.

All'd. June 21-48.
F.J.W.F.
D. J.

On the same day, the following Order Granting Supersedeas is entered by the Court, the Honorable Francis J. W. Ford, District Judge, sitting:

ORDER GRANTING SUPERSEDEAS.
[June 21, 1948.]

This cause came on to be heard on motion of defendant for a stay of judgment, pending defendant's appeal to the United States Circuit Court of Appeals for the First Circuit, and it appearing to the Court that defendant is entitled to such a stay,

It is ordered that the execution of and any proceedings to enforce the interlocutory judgment, entered herein on the twenty-first day of June, be stayed, pending the determination of defendant's appeal from such interlocutory judgment, upon the filing by defendant and approval by this Court of a bond in the sum of eleven thousand dollars ($11,000) within 14 days from date hereof.

FRANCIS J. W. FORD,
United States District Judge.

Approved as to Form:

RICHARD F. WALKER,
Attorney for Plaintiff.

GEO. K. WOODWORTH,
Attorney for Defendant.

MEMORANDUM OF DECISION IN RE MOTIONS FOR SUMMARY JUDGMENT.

April 28, 1948.

FORD, D.J.

This is an action on a licensing contract under various patents which provides for the payment of royalties by defendant to plaintiff. Plaintiff, alleging nonpayment, seeks a judgment for the minimum annual royalty of $10,000; an accounting to determine any additional sum that may be due; an order that defendant comply with the terms of the contract in other respects, and such other relief as may be just.

Jurisdiction is based on diversity of citizenship, plaintiff being an Illinois corporation (assignee of a Delaware corporation) and defendant a Massachusetts corporation. The matter in controversy exceeds $3,000.

The plaintiff moves for summary judgment under Rule 56, F.R.C.P. Numerous affidavits have been filed by plaintiff in support of its motion. Defendant opposes the motion with affidavits, files a counter motion for summary judgment dismissing the action, and supports its motion with affidavits in opposition to which plaintiff has filed further affidavits.

A brief history of prior events will help to illuminate the conflicting claims. Hazeltine Corporation, a Delaware corporation, was organized in 1924 to exploit the invention of the neutrodyne radio circuit as embodied in three patents, and it did so with great success until the circuit became obsolete about 1929, because of the advent of the screen grid tube. In the meantime, through a program of research, it had developed many more patented inventions in the radio field, and by business arrangements acquired others. In 1946, Hazeltine Research, Inc., the plaintiff here, was organized in Illinois as a wholly owned subsidiary of Hazeltine Corporation, and took an assignment of all of the parent corporation's patents, patent applications and licensing contracts. The research program mentioned above is conducted by a third cor-

poration, the Hazeltine Electronics Corporation, also a wholly owned subsidiary of Hazeltine Corporation. All will be referred to as Hazeltine hereafter.

At present, Hazeltine owns or has the right to grant licenses under some 570 patents and 200 patent applications, largely in the field of radio and television. It is, with RCA, Westinghouse, Philco, etc., one of the largest licensors in the radio field. Its mode of operation is to license manufacturers of radio receivers under non-exclusive licenses entitling the manufacturer to the use of any or all of Hazeltine's patents. In return, the manufacturer agrees to pay therefor a fixed percentage of its gross sales of certain enumerated radio equipment. Defendant Automatic Radio Manufacturing Company is such a manufacturer of radio receivers and is licensed by Hazeltine. . . .

Defendant first took a license with plaintiff on October 1, 1935, but did not make payments thereunder. In December 1936, Hazeltine sued for royalties in the Massachusetts Superior Court, Suffolk County, which suit was settled and an interlocutory consent decree entered by which defendant admitted its use and the validity of numerous Hazeltine patents. A new license agreement was made for a period of five years from October 1, 1937, under which the parties operated for some two and one-half years, till February, 1940, when defendant failed to pay royalties. Upon plaintiff's application, the interlocutory consent decree became final on December 3, 1941, a new settlement was made, and a third license contract was drawn as of September 1, 1942, to run ten years from that date, this being the contract involved in the present litigation. Plaintiff waived any right to minimum royalties under the contract until August 30, 1945 because of the war time prohibition against production of civilian radio sets, but renewed its claim thereunder beginning September 1, 1945. Upon refusal of defendant to pay royalties or to make reports required by the contract, plaintiff filed this action on April 9, 1947.

Article III of the contract grants the licensee a "personal, in-

divisible, non-transferable and non-exclusive license" to manufacture and sell certain equipment such as radio receivers of sound and pictures, phonographs, and motion picture reproduction equipment, under a long list of plaintiff's patents; "the use in each case is limited to use in homes, use for educational purposes and private non-commecial use."

Article IV provides for royalties of 1.05% of the licensee's selling price on certain of the equipment specified in Article III and 2.1% on other such equipment. Section 4 provides for a minimum payment of $10,000 per year in the event royalties calculated as above do not exceed $10,000.

Article V requires the licensee to render monthly reports for the purpose of calculation of royalties, and designates the time and manner of payment.

Under Article VI, licensee agrees to mark all licensed apparatus with the statement: " 'Licensed by Hazeltine Corporation only for use in homes, for educational purpose, and for private, non-commercial use, under one or more of the following patents and under pending applications:' followed by the word 'Patent' and the numbers of the patents which are, in the opinion of Licensor, involved in apparatus of the types licensed hereunder . . .'"

In Article VIII, the licensor agrees to " . . . diligently prosecute such suits for infringement of the various patents under which licenses are herein granted as may in its judgment be reasonably necessary and prudent for enforcing those patents and preventing unlicensed competition . . .".

These are the provisions of the contract which are principally involved in this suit. There will be reference to other provisions in the course of the opinion.

This is an appropriate case for the application of summary procedure under Rule 56. There is no genuine issue as to any material fact, and both parties have moved for summary judgment. The contention of defendant that a genuine issue does arise with respect to certain questions of fact concerning plaintiff's motion

is without merit. I have reviewed the pleadings and affidavits and find no specific allegation of facts on personal knowledge required by Rule 56 (e). See *Engl* v. *Aetna Life Ins. Co.*, 139 F. (2d) 469, 473; *Peckham* v. *Ronrico Corp.*, 7 F.D.R. 324, 327; *cf. Griffin* v. *Griffin*, 327 U.S. 220, 236.

The contract was executed in New York; it provides by agreement of the parties that New York law shall govern; and at least part of its performance is due in New York. The Federal District Court sitting in Massachusetts in diversity cases will apply the Massachusetts rules of conflicts of law. *Klaxon Co.* v. *Stentor Electric Mfg. Co.*, 313 U.S. 487; *Sampson* v. *Channell*, 110 F. (2d) 754. Massachusetts courts determine the validity and interpretation of a contract in accordance with the law of the place where the contract was executed. *Adamowski* v. *The Curtiss-Wright Flying Service, Inc.*, 300 Mass. 281. In so far as it is necessary, I will, therefore, apply New York law. At the same time, it must be remembered that local rules of estoppel to contest the validity of a patent in a suit for royalties cannot override the strong public policy expressed in such federal enactments as the anti-trust laws. It follows that federal law will control the propriety of defenses based on the anti-trust laws. *Sola Electric Co.* v. *Jefferson Electric Co.*, 317 U.S. 173, 175; *Morton Salt Co.* v. *G.S. Suppiger Co.*, 314 U.S. 488, 492.

The contract involved here is essentially a grant by plaintiff of a privilege to defendant to use any patent or patent application which might be held by plaintiff in consideration for defendant's agreement to pay money. It is different from most license contracts in that payment of royalties does not depend on the use of plaintiff's patents by defendant, but is required regardless of any use by defendant. This is a convenient mode of operation designed by the parties to avoid the necessity of determining whether each type of defendant's product embodies any of the hundreds of patents which plaintiff controls. There is nothing inherently illegal in such an arrangement. *H-P-M Development*

Corp. v. *Watson-Stillman Co.*, 71 F. Supp. 906, 912. And non-use of the patents is not a defense to an action on the contract.

The contract requires defendant to pay 1.05% (and in one case 2.1%) of its gross sales of certain specified apparatus, with a minimum of $10,000 per year. Computation in this manner is designed to avoid the difficulties mentioned above. Defendant's contention that this method of computation is a misuse of plaintiff's patents has no merit. This is not an attempt by plaintiff to extend its monopoly to and collect royalties on unpatented articles (see *Motion Picture Patents Co.* v. *Universal Film Mfg. Co.*, 243 U.S. 502), but a convenient mode of computing the cost to defendant for the privilege of using the patents should defendant desire to make such use. Even where the license contract calls for royalties only when the patent is used, the amount of royalties can be measured by the total price of apparatus embodying unpatented as well as patented items. *H-P-M Development Corp.* v. *Watson-Stillman Co., supra; Pyrene Mfg. Co.* v. *Urquhart*, 69 F. Supp. 555; *American Optical Co.* v. *New Jersey Optical Co.*, 58 F. Supp. 601, 606; *International Carbonic Engineering Co.* v. *Natural Carbonic Products, Inc.*, 57 F. Supp. 248; *Ohio Citizens Trust Co.* v. *Air-way Electric Appliance Corp.*, 56 F. Supp. 1010, 1012.

Defendant urges, on the basis of *Pope* v. *Gormully*, 144 U.S. 224, that the contract cannot be enforced because defendant has admitted the validity of all of plaintiff's patents in the consent decree in the Massachusetts Court and that an agreement not to set up a defense to any suit is void as against public policy. The short answer to this is that the consent decree is not a part of this contract. The contract represents, on its face, a legitimate business bargain, and is in no way oppressive or unconscionable. The legal effect of the consent decree need not be passed upon in this suit. Furthermore, the defendant does not purport to contest the validity of all plaintiff's patents.

Defendant claims eviction from any right to use plaintiff's

patents and failure of consideration in that none are available for use. While eviction may be a good defense to an action for royalties under a license contract (*Drackett Chemical Co.* v. *Chamberlain Co.*, 63 F. (2d) 853; *Ross* v. *Fuller & Warren Co.*, 105 Fed. 510; *White* v. *Lee*, 14 Fed. 789; *Marston* v. *Swett*, 66 N.Y. 206), defendant has not made any serious effort to show eviction here and could not show it. Even though some of plaintiff's patents admittedly have been held invalid, there is no attempt to show that all or even a substantial number of them are unavailable for the use of defendant. It is quite clear that most of them have not been litigated and are presumptively valid. *Radio Corporation of America* v. *Radio Engineering Laboratories*, 293 U.S. 1, 7. Defendant thus gets, by the contract, what it bargained for, namely, the right to use whatever patents are available for use in plaintiff's large collection. It cannot complain that there is a failure of consideration if a particular patent has been invalidated even though it be the only patent he desired to use.

Defendant has made an extensive argument to the effect that the restriction on use which is imposed by the license notice required by Article VI of the contract is illegal in that it constitutes an attempt to extend the monopoly of the patent beyond its legitimate scope; that the imposition of such an illegal restriction is a misuse of the patent which vitiates the license agreement and renders it unenforceable; and it has cited numerous cases in the exegesis of this proposition. The license requires the following notice to be placed on articles manufactured under the license: "Licensed by Hazeltine Corporation only for use in homes, for educational purposes, and for private, non-commerical use, etc. . . ." If we suppose that defendant manufactured and sold a receiver under the license for an authorized use, and that it was purchased by one having notice of the restriction, and the purchaser acquired it for a purpose unauthorized by the license notice (e.g. for commercial use) and used it for such unauthorized pur-

pose, we have the case postulated by the defendant. It is the case expressly left open by the court in *General Talking Pictures Corp.* v. *Western Electric Co.*, 305 U.S. 124, 125: "Can a patent owner, merely by a 'license notice' attached to a device made under the patent, and sold in the ordinary channels of trade, place an enforceable restriction on the purchaser thereof as to the use to which the purchaser may put the device?" I do not deem it necessary to answer the question here. As between the licensor and licensee, the former can certainly restrict the licensee to manufacture and sales for limited use. *General Talking Pictures Corp.* v. *Western Electric Co., supra.* Even if the restriction imposed on a purchaser from the licensee should be invalid, there is no reason for permitting the licensee to escape its contract obligations thereby. If the restriction is invalid, then the article may go to the purchaser free of the restriction, but the contract between the licensor and licensee is not affected. The validity of the restriction should be tested in an action by the licensor against the licensee or the purchaser to enforce the restriction, not in an action on the contract by the licensor against the licensee. If there is any strong public policy against such restrictions, the policy can thus be fully protected by permitting the goods to go into commerce free of the restriction.

Defendant's most substantial defense is that set forth in paragraph 10 of its answer to the complaint: "That the plaintiff, in an illegal endeavor to eliminate all competition and secure an unlawful monopoly in violation of the antitrust laws of the United States, acquired the approximately 425 United States letters patent and the approximately 120 applications for United States letters patent . . . from its employees . . ." (and from other corporations and persons). If the issue of whether a monopoly existed was relevant to this case, I would not decide the question on summary procedure, but would require that it be submitted for trial. However, in this case, it is not necessary to decide the question. The license contract involved here is entirely separate from any

action of plaintiff to eliminate competition or engage in a monopoly. Assuming; arguendo, it was engaged in an unlawful scheme to maintain a monopoly, the contract here was not an integral part of it. The contract in suit did not help to promote any monopoly plaintiff had established. See *American Refining Co.* v. *Gasoline Products Co.*, 294 S.W. 967. The contract here is complete in itself and enforceable without reference to any contract of the plaintiff with others or of any illegal activity on the part of plaintiff in violation of the anti-trust laws. It being itself a valid contract, collateral activities of the plaintiff do not render it unenforceable. *Gasoline Products Co. Inc.* v. *Champlin Refining Co.*, 46 F. (2d) 511, 514; Walker on Patents, Vol. II, Sec. 409, p. 1590, and cases; *cf. Radio Corporation of America* v. *Majestic Distributors*, 53 F. (2d) 641. (Compare *United Shoe Machinery Co.* v. *La Chapelle*, 212 Mass. 467, where the contract in issue was held to be an essential means of maintaining the illegal monopoly of plaintiff.) The defense that plaintiff is using its patents to force others, not the defendant, to assign to plaintiff rights under their patents is rejected on the same ground.

The defenses of fraud and waiver of minimum royalties are rejected as having no basis on the facts set forth. The defense of breach of contract by plaintiff because of failure diligently to prosecute infringers is rejected on the facts reflected in the affidavits. Article VIII only requires plaintiff to prosecute infringers as "may *in its judgment* be reasonably necessary and prudent . . ." (Emphasis mine.) This relieves the court of substituting its judgment for that of the plaintiff. However, the facts indicate that plaintiff has acted diligently in this respect. The remainder of defendant's numerous defenses are rejected as not justified on the undisputed facts.

Plaintiff's motion for summary judgment is granted and it will submit a form of judgment for approval by the court.

Defendant's counter motion for summary judgment dismissing the action is denied.

NOTICE OF APPEAL TO CIRCUIT COURT OF APPEALS.

[Filed June 21, 1948.]

Notice is hereby given that Automatic Radio Manufacturing Company, Inc., defendant above named, hereby appeals to the United States Circuit Court of Appeals for the First Circuit from the interlocutory judgment entered in this action on June 21, 1948.

GEO. K. WOODWORTH,
Attorney for Defendant-Appellant.
19 Congress St., Boston, Mass.

On June 29, 1948, the defendant files a bond on appeal in the sum of eleven thousand dollars, the Maryland Casualty Company acting as surety, which bond, on June 30, 1948, is approved by the Court, the Honorable Francis J. W. Ford, District Judge, as a supersedeas.

STATEMENT OF POINTS UPON WHICH DEFENDANT WILL RELY ON ITS APPEAL.

[Filed June 29, 1948.]

1. The District Court erred in holding that the contract between the parties herein is good and valid at law and in full force and effect and in not holding that said contract is invalid in law, for the reason that said contract requires the payment of royalties under a pool of patents even although the licensee makes no use of the licensed patents, or any of them.

2. The District Court erred in not holding that the licensee contract between the parties herein, requiring defendant to pay a certain percentage of its net selling price on all of its apparatus under a pool of patents, even though no patent is used in said apparatus, is a misuse of plaintiff's patents and is an attempt by plaintiff to extend its monopoly to collect royalties on unpatented articles.

3. The District Court erred in not holding that the decision in *Pope* v. *Gormully*, 144 U.S. 224, is authority that a licensee under 570 patents and 200 patent applications may challenge validity in a suit for royalties, and in not holding that unless such validity may be challenged, the license agreement must be interpreted to conflict with that decision.

4. The District Court erred in finding that defendant does not contest the validity of all plaintiff's patents.

5. The District Court erred in not ruling that a consent decree in the Massachusetts Superior Court, entered December 3, 1941, wherein defendant admitted the validity of all of plaintiff's patents, is void as against public policy, and that, for this reason, plaintiff's motion for summary judgment should be denied.

6. The District Court erred in not holding that the restrictive reuse patent marking notice required by the licensee agreement is illegal, for the reason that it was an attempted restriction on the use of radios after they had been purchased from the defendant, as distinguished from a use of such radios by the defendant.

7. The District Court erred in holding that it is practicable to stop illegal license notice restrictions through suits brought by the licensor against members of the general public and in ruling that the fact that the goods actually go into commerce free of restriction removes the illegality of the attempted restriction.

8. The District Court erred in deciding that the license agreement involved herein is entirely separate from any action of plaintiff to elminate competition or engage in a monopoly, and in not holding that said agreement is an essential and integral part of plaintiff's illegal monopoly or restraint of commerce.

9. The District Court erred in holding that defendant did not show eviction from its license to use plaintiff's patents and release from any obligation to pay royalties on account of failure of consideration due to the invalidation by the Federal Courts of all of the licensed patents that have been adjudicated by the plaintiff, Hazeltine Research, Inc., or its predecessor, Hazeltine

Corporation, particularly where no unadjudicated patents are used by defendant.

10. The District Court erred in failing to hold that defendant had the right to repudiate its license contract under New York law.

11. The District Court erred in failing to hold that defendant had repudiated its license contract on September 18, 1947 and was free of any obligation to pay royalties thereafter.

12. The District Court erred in failing to find and rule that an owner of a patent by means thereof cannot restrict the use made of a device manufactured under the patent, after the device has passed into the hands of a purchaser in the ordinary channels of trade, and full consideration paid therefor.

13. The District Court erred in failing to find and rule that a patent owner cannot merely by a license notice attached to a device made under the patent and sold in the ordinary channels of trade, place an enforceable restriction on the purchaser thereof as to the use to which the purchaser may put the device.

14. Plaintiff's patents have been so misused by plaintiff and its predecessor, as to deprive plaintiff of the aid of a court of equity to enforce its license agreement between the parties herein, such misuse including:

(a) Requiring its licensees to apply patent marking notices to radio sets made by them, which notices include restrictions as to the permitted use of the sets by the purchasers thereof;

(b) Requiring its licensees to mark on radio sets made by them patents which are not used in said sets and which are invalid;

(c) Entering a coercive "consent" decree on December 3, 1941, in the case of *Hazeltine Corporation* v. *Automatic Radio Manufacturing Company, Inc.*, Superior Court, Suffolk County, Massachusetts, Equity No. 47,229, which decree is void as being contrary to public policy;

(d) Requiring its licensees to sign license agreements which are

so oppressive in their terms as to be contrary to public policy and void;

(e) Requiring its licensees to pay royalties on all radio sets sold by them, whether or not said sets employ the inventions of any of plaintiff's patents and whether or not said patents are invalid;

(f) Improperly using its patents to compel others to assign to plaintiff, or its predecessor, rights under patents owned by them;

(g) Refusing to grant a license under any one or more of its patents to anyone who refuses to take a license under all;

(h) Suing and threatening to sue and otherwise harassing radio manufacturers refusing to take licenses under its patents and their customers with suits and threats of repeated expensive infringement suits and coercing radio manufacturers to take such licenses by suits and threats of suits;

(i) Forcing its licensees to pay royalties on radio tubes purchased by them from the Radio Corporation of America, which company has a license from plaintiff to make and sell said tubes under plaintiff's patents and which tubes were, therefore, freed from said patents at the time of their purchase, thereby enforcing the payment of royalties on unpatented tubes;

(j) Amassing a vast number of radio patents not for use, but for the purpose of coercing the payment of royalties on all radio sets;

and the District Court erred in not so finding and ruling.

15. The license agreement between the parties is invalid and void at law and without legal force or effect, for the following reasons:

(a) Said agreement is so oppressive and unconscionable in its terms as to be void as against public policy;

(b) Said agreement was breached in its inception and has been continuously breached since, by the failure of plaintiff and

its predecessor to prosecute alleged infringers of its patents diligently;

(c) For failure of consideration, plaintiff and its predecessor having no valid patents covered by said license, and for eviction from said license due to the decisions of the courts holding the best of said patents invalid and not infringed during the term of the license;

(d) Because plaintiff's patents have been misused and are unenforceable;

(e) Said agreement requires the payment of patent royalties on devices and parts thereof not covered by plaintiff's patents, and on parts already licensed and thereby freed from plaintiff's patents;

and the District Court erred in not so finding and ruling.

16. The District Court erred in finding and ruling that defendant cannot complain of failure of consideration in a license under pooled patents "if a particular patent has been invalidated, even though it be the only patent he (sic) desired to use," for the reason that such finding and ruling is equivalent to saying that defendant is liable for royalties on an invalid patent, i.e., to use and did use the structure defined by the claims of the invalidated patent.

17. The District Court erred in finding that allegations of facts made on information and belief do not fulfill the requirements of Rule 56 (e) when those facts are within the direct knowledge of the opposing party, (in this case, Hazeltine), are not within the direct knowledge of the moving party, (in this case, Automatic) and are not denied by said opposing party; and in not giving weight to such allegations.

18. The District Court erred in decreeing that plaintiff recover from defendant as minimum royalty under Section 4 of Article IV, from September 1, 1945 through August 31, 1946, the sum of ten thousand dollars ($10,000) with interest at 6% from September 30, 1946.

19. The District Court erred in decreeing that plaintiff recover from defendant as royalty, further sums from September 1, 1946, to the date of this judgment and in referring the case to a master to take and state an account thereof.

20. The District Court erred in decreeing an injunction enjoining and restraining defendant and its officers and agents from breaching the provisions of articles IV and V of the license agreement between the parties and to keep records and render statements to plaintiff.

21. The District Court erred in decreeing that defendant pay to plaintiff its taxable costs.

22. The District Court erred in granting plaintiff's motion for summary judgment.

23. The District Court erred in not granting defendant's countermotion for summary judgment.

FLOYD H. CREWS,
GEORGE K. WOODWORTH,
Attorneys for Defendant.

Service accepted this twenty-ninth day of June, 1948.

CLARENCE H. PORTER,
Attorney for Plaintiff.

DEFENDANT'S DESIGNATION OF CONTENTS OF RECORD ON APPEAL.

[Filed June 29, 1948.]

1. Complaint and Exhibit A annexed, filed April 9, 1947.

2. Answer, filed April 26, 1947, as amended by motion filed September 30, 1947, approved by the Court October 30, 1947.

3. Defendant's motion to amend its answer and the affidavit of David Housman annexed, filed September 30, 1947.

4. Stipulation re certain of defendant's models, filed October 28, 1947.

5. Stipulation re defendant's motion to amend its answer, filed October 30, 1947.

6. Plaintiff's motion for summary judgment and the affidavits annexed thereto, filed November 10, 1947, as follows:

John K. Gowen, Jr.,
John R. Binns, including Exhs. O through R2,
Harold A. Wheeler, including Exhs. S through Z and AA and BB.

7. Defendant's countermotion for summary judgment and affidavit of George K. Woodworth annexed, filed February 2, 1948.

8. Defendant's affidavits in opposition to plaintiff's motion for summary judgment, as follows:

David Housman,
George K. Woodworth and Leo A. Kelley, including the exhibits annexed to said affidavit of Leo A. Kelley, filed February 11, 1948.

9. Plaintiff's affidavits in opposition to defendant's countermotion for summary judgment, as follows:

John R. Binns, including Exhs. CC, DD, and EE, annexed,
Laurence B. Dodds, and
Richard F. Walker, including annexed exhibit, filed February 12, 1948.

10. Defendant's affidavit in rebuttal to affidavit of John R. Binns, filed February 11, 1948, as follows:

Affidavit of Charles R. Wexler, filed February 12, 1948, including Exhs. A, B and C, annexed thereto.

11. Defendant's affidavits in reply to affidavit of John R. Binns, filed February 11, 1948, as follows:

Floyd H. Crews, verified February 11, 1948, and
Floyd H. Crews, Verified February 12, 1948, filed February 13, 1948.

12. Plaintiff's affidavit, as follows:

Laurence B. Dodds, filed February 13, 1948.

13. Court's memorandum of decision, filed April 28, 1948.

14. Interlocutory judgment, entered June 21, 1948.

15. Defendant's notice of appeal, filed June 21, 1948.

16. Defendant's motion for stay of judgment, filed June 21, 1948.

17. Court's order on supersedeas, filed June 21, 1948.

18. Supersedeas bond, filed.

19. Statement of points relied upon on appeal, filed simultaneously herewith.

20. This designation.

The Clerk is requested to transmit as physical exhibits:

(1) Defendant's interrogatories to plaintiff, filed April 28, 1947,

(2) Plaintiff's answers to defendant's interrogatories, and Exhs. B through N annexed, filed May 27, 1948.

FLOYD H. CREWS,
GEORGE K. WOODWORTH,
Attorneys for Defendant, AUTOMATIC RADIO MANUFACTURING COMPANY, INC.

Service accepted this twenty-ninth day of June, 1948.

CLARENCE H. PORTER,
Attorney for Plaintiff, HAZELTINE RESEARCH, INC.

PLAINTIFF'S DESIGNATION OF ADDITIONAL PORTIONS TO BE CONTAINED IN THE RECORD ON APPEAL.

[Filed July 6, 1948.]

Plaintiff-Appellee, Hazeltine Research, Inc., files its designation of additional portions of the record, proceedings and evidence to be contained in the record on appeal, as follows:

21. Defendant's interrogatories to plaintiff, filed on or about April 28, 1947.

22. Plaintiff's answers to interrogatories propounded by de-

fendant and annexed exhibits marked Exhibits B through N inclusive, filed on or about May 27, 1947.

23. This designation.

ROBERTS, CUSHMAN & GROVER,
CLARENCE H. PORTER,
Attorneys for Plaintiff.

Service acknowledged this second day of July, 1948.

GEO. K. WOODWORTH,
Attorney for Defendant.

CLERK'S CERTIFICATE.

I, John A. Canavan, Clerk of the District Court of the United States for the District of Massachusetts, do hereby certi y that the foregoing is the record on appeal, as designated by the parties, in the cause entitled,

NO. 6677, CIVIL ACTION,

HAZELTINE RESEARCH, INC.,
Plaintiff,

v.

AUTOMATIC RADIO MANUFACTURING COMPANY, INC.,
Defendant,

in said District Court determined.

In testimony whereof, I hereunto set my hand and affix the seal of said Court, at Boston, in said District, this nineteenth day of August, 1948.

[SEAL] JOHN A. CANAVAN, *Clerk.*

[MEMORANDUM: An order of enlargement of time for docketing case to, and including August 30, 1948, is here omitted. JOHN A. CANAVAN, *Clerk.*]

[fols. 313-314] PROCEEDINGS IN COURT OF APPEALS

On December 8, 1948, this cause came on to be heard, and was fully heard by the Court, Honorable Calvert Magruder, Chief Judge, Honorable Peter Woodbury, Circuit Judge, and Honorable George C. Sweeney, District Judge, sitting.

On August 22, 1949, the following opinion of the Court and dissenting opinion were filed:

[fol. 315] UNITED STATES COURT OF APPEALS FOR THE FIRST CIRCUIT, OCTOBER TERM, 1948

No. 4381

AUTOMATIC RADIO MANUFACTURING COMPANY, INC., Defendant, Appellant,

v.

HAZELTINE RESEARCH, INC., Plaintiff, Appellee

APPEAL FROM THE UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT FOR THE DISTRICT OF MASSACHUSETTS

[77 F. Supp. 493]

Before Magruder, Chief Judge, Woodbury, Circuit Judge, and Sweeney, District Judge.

Floyd H. Crews, with whom George K. Woodworth and Darby & Darby were on brief, for appellant.

Laurence B. Dodds, with whom Richard F. Walker and Roberts, Cushman & Grover were on brief, for appellee.

OPINION OF THE COURT—August 22, 1949

MAGRUDER, *Chief Judge:*

This is a suit for royalties alleged to be due under a patent license agreement between the defendant, Automatic Radio Manufacturing Company, Inc., a Massachusetts corporation (hereinafter called Automatic), and the plaintiff's assignor, Hazeltine Corporation, a Delaware corporation. Plaintiff Hazeltine Research, Inc., is an Illinois corporation organized as a wholly owned subsidiary [fol. 316] of Hazeltine Corporation. Hazeltine Electronics Corporation, another wholly owned subsidiary of Hazeltine

Corporation, conducts the research program about to be mentioned. We shall refer to these corporations collectively as Hazeltine.

For many years Hazeltine has engaged in a program of radio research, as a result of which it has developed many patented inventions. Other patents have been acquired by it through various business arrangements. At the time of this suit, Hazeltine owned, or had the right to grant licenses under, five hundred and more patents and approximately two hundred patent applications, chiefly pertaining to radio and television. As one of the largest licensors in the radio field, it has granted non-exclusive licenses to radio manufacturers, permitting them to use any or all of Hazeltine's patents, in return for a royalty payment of a fixed percentage of gross sales of various types of radio equipment.

Automatic first became a licensee of Hazeltine in 1935. It defaulted on its royalty obligations under the first two agreements with Hazeltine. However, in each instance a settlement was reached, and the relationship continued. The present contract between the parties became effective September 1, 1942, to run ten years, subject to an option of earlier termination by the licensor upon the happening of certain specified events. Automatic was given a non-transferable, non-exclusive license, under a schedule of enumerated patents and all other patents with respect to which Hazeltine should acquire the right to grant licenses during the period of the agreement. The license authorized Automatic to utilize such patents in the manufacture and sale of certain described radio, phonographic, and other equipment, "limited to use in homes, use for educational purposes and private non-commercial use." Automatic agreed to pay royalties expressed in terms of a specified percentage of [fol. 317] the selling price of each piece of the enumerated types of equipment manufactured and sold by the licensee, whether or not any of such patents were actually used in the manufacture of the particular apparatus. In any case, the agreement called for a minimum royalty payment of $10,000 per year.

The contract, in Article VI, further provided—and appellant makes much of this—that the licensee

> "agrees to mark all licensed apparatus manufactured and sold by Licensee hereunder, in readily legible form, with the statement 'Licensed by Hazeltine Corporation

only for use in homes, for educational purposes, and for private, non-commercial use, under one or more of the following patents and under pending applications:' followed by the word 'Patent' and the numbers of the patents which are, in the opinion of Licensor, involved in apparatus of the types licensed hereunder manufactured by one or more licensees of Licensor. The marking required by this section shall be affixed to said licensed apparatus by attaching plates bearing the required marking or by affixing said marking on said apparatus in some other form equally permanent and apparatus not bearing such marking is not licensed."

It was found by the district court that the contract was executed in New York, and that at least part of the performance thereunder was due in New York. The concluding article of the contract provided that it was to be "governed by and interpreted in accordance with the laws of the State of New York."

Because of wartime restrictions on the production of radio sets for private use, Hazeltine waived demand for payment of the minimum annual royalties from September, 1942, through August 30, 1945. Upon refusal of Automatic to pay royalties thereafter, Hazeltine filed its complaint in [fol. 318] the present case on April 9, 1947. Plaintiff prayed for a judgment that Automatic pay to Hazeltine the minimum sum due under the contract for the year ending August 31, 1946, with interest; that an accounting be had and that the further sums due be determined and decreed to be paid to the plaintiff with interest; "that defendant render to the plaintiff the statements required by said agreement throughout the continuance in force of said agreement"; that defendant pay plaintiff's costs herein; and that plaintiff have such other and further relief as may be just.

After Automatic's answer was filed, both parties filed motions for summary judgment and submitted supporting affidavits. A hearing was held on the motions, and the district court concluded that the case was one appropriate for the application of summary judgment procedure since there was "no genuine issue as to any material fact." Hazeltine's motion was granted and Automatic's motion denied. 77 F. Supp. 493.

On June 21, 1948, an "Interlocutory Judgment" was entered, in which it was adjudged and decreed as follows:

(1) That the license agreement between the parties dated as of September 1, 1942 "is good and valid at law and in full force and effect."

(2) That plaintiff recover from defendant as minimum royalty under the license agreement, for the year ending August 31, 1946 the sum of $10,000 with interest, "and that execution may issue therefor."

(3) That plaintiff recover such further sums as are due from the defendant at the date of this judgment under said license agreement, and that the case be referred to a Master to take and state an account thereof.

(4) That "a permanent injunction issue out of and under the seal of this Court directed to defendant, its [fol. 319] officers and agents, enjoining and restraining them and each of them throughout the continuance in force of said license agreement from breaching such provisions of Articles IV and V thereof as relate to defendant's obligation to plaintiff to pay royalties and to keep records and render statements from which the proper amounts of such royalty payments may be determined."

This court has jurisdiction to entertain the present appeal from such judgment, pursuant to provisions of the Judicial Code now found in 28 U. S. Code §§ 1291, 1292(1), and 1294(1) (1948). Counsel for both parties approved the judgment "as to form," and no question is presented here as to the scope of the injunction.

Automatic raised, and the district court considered, numerous defenses. In examining the judgment of the district court, we confine our attention only to those matters presented in this appeal. In its brief, Automatic has enveloped the case in an atmosphere of overreaching and chicanery hardly warranted on the record. A lengthy affidavit executed by one of counsel for Automatic, and filed by Automatic in support of its motion for summary judgment, contains many sweeping claims and charges, but the affidavit was made for the most part "on information and

belief," and not on personal knowledge, as required by Rule 56(e).

I. Patent Misuse

Appellant has advanced a variety of defenses to sustain the proposition that Hazeltine has so misused the monopoly of its patent grants as to have disentitled itself to any relief under the present complaint.

Restrictive Use Notices.—Automatic argues that the requirement in the license agreement that licensed apparatus be marked with a "restrictive use" notice, as above stated, [fol. 320] constitutes such a misuse of the patent as to render the agreement unenforceable. This contention must be rejected on the authority of *General Talking Pictures Corp.* v. *Western Elec. Co.*, 304 U. S. 175 (1938), and upon rehearing, 305 U. S. 124 (1938). In that case a non-exclusive license "was expressly confined to the right to manufacture and sell the patented amplifiers for radio amateur reception, radio experimental reception, and home broadcast reception." 304 U. S. at 180. The agreement required the licensee to affix to all amplifiers sold under the license a notice stating that the apparatus was licensed only for the aforesaid uses. Amplifiers with such notices attached were sold by the licensee to a purchaser who intended to and did put them to use in theaters as part of talking picture equipment. At the time of order, manufacture and sale, both the licensee and the purchaser knew of the purchaser's intended commercial use, and the purchaser knew that the license did not authorize the licensee to make and sell amplifiers for that use. Speaking through Mr. Justice Brandeis, the Supreme Court on rehearing reaffirmed its earlier view that the purchaser was accountable as an infringer. "That a restrictive license is legal seems clear. . . . The practice of granting licenses for a restricted use is an old one, see *Rubber Company* v. *Goodyear*, 9 Wall. 788, 799, 800; *Gamewell Fire-Alarm Telegraph Co.* v. *Brooklyn*, 14 Fed. 255. So far as appears, its legality has never been questioned. . . . As the restriction was legal and the amplifiers were made and sold outside the scope of the license the effect is precisely the same as if no license whatsoever had been granted to [the licensee]. And as [the purchaser] knew the facts, it is in no better position than

if it had manufactured the amplifiers itself without a license. It is liable because it has used the invention without license to do so." 305 U. S. at 127. Consequently, the [fol. 321] Court continued, there was "no occasion to consider what the rights of the parties would have been if the amplifier had been manufactured 'under the patent' and 'had passed into the hands of a purchaser in the ordinary channels of trade.' Nor have we occasion to consider the effect of a 'licensee's notice' which purports to restrict the use of articles lawfully sold."

We must conclude from the decision in the *General Talking Pictures* case that a license agreement is not necessarily invalid because the licensee is granted a restricted right to make and vend a patented apparatus for use limited to a particular, described field, and is required by the agreement to affix to the licensed apparatus a notice of such restricted use. There may be circumstances under which a notice of restricted use would be inoperative and unenforceable as-against subsequent purchasers, but that problem is not presented in the case at bar. And it is to be noted that the judgment from which this appeal is taken does not even command Automatic, the licensee, to comply with the term of the agreement requiring it to attach the restrictive use notices to the licensed apparatus sold by it.

General Talking Pictures Corp. v. *Western Elec. Co.* has not been overruled by the Supreme Court. Appellant contends that the case was wrongly decided, and that the authority of the case has been more or less undermined by subsequent decisions of the Supreme Court on related subject matters. From our examination of the later cases we are not satisfied that this is so; at any rate, we decline to speculate on whether the case would now be followed by the Supreme Court. If the case is to be overruled, that must be done by the Supreme Court. Meanwhile, it is our duty to follow it.

In fact, it appears that none of the radio apparatus made and sold by Automatic has been marked with the restrictive use notice required by Article VI; in other words, Auto- [fol. 322] matic has consistently ignored this provision of the agreement. Automatic makes the curious suggestion that its own breach of this term of the contract affords an independent ground for relieving it of the obligation to pay the stipulated percentage royalties. The argument is based

upon the provision of Article VI that apparatus not bearing the restrictive use notice "is not licensed"; and therefore, Automatic argues, since "no licensed apparatus for which royalties are due under the contract has ever been made or sold," the district court erred in requiring an accounting of percentage royalties. Under the foregoing circumstances, no doubt Hazeltine would have had an election to proceed against Automatic on the theory of infringement. But the above contract provisions are for the benefit of the licensor, who may choose to waive them. Notwithstanding the failure of Automatic to attach the restrictive use notices, Hazeltine is entitled to insist upon the performance by Automatic of its contract obligation under Article IV to pay as royalties a percentage of the selling price of each complete apparatus of the types listed in Article III, Section 2, "sold by Licensee during continuance of this license."

Royalty Payments.—It has been pointed out above that the license agreement gave Automatic the right to make use of any of Hazeltine's patents, and required Automatic to pay royalties measured by a percentage of the selling price of all radio apparatus of specified types manufactured and sold by Automatic, whether or not any particular apparatus in fact utilized any of the inventions of the Hazeltine patents, with a minimum royalty payment of $10,000 a year. There is no valid objection to this sort of agreement; the parties are free to bargain as to the basis upon which the royalties are to be computed. *H-P-M Development Corp.* v. *Watson-Stillman Co.*, 71 F. Supp. 906 (D. N. J. [fol. 323] 1947); *Cf. Ingene Mfg. Co.* v. *Urquhart*, 69 F. Supp. 555, 560 (E. D. Pa. 1946); *American Optical Co.* v. *New Jersey Optical Co.*, 58 F. Supp. 601, 606 (D. Mass. 1944); *Ohio Citizens Trust Co.* v. *Air-Way Elec. Appliance Corp.*, 56 F. Supp. 1010, 1012 (N. D. Ohio 1944). As stated in one of Hazeltine's affidavits, this type of royalty clause was originally adopted "for convenience of accounting." The Court below stated: "This is a convenient mode of operation designed by the parties to avoid the necessity of determining whether each type of defendant's product embodies any of the hundreds of patents which plaintiff controls." 77 F. Supp. at 496. Certainly a licensee, in consideration of the grant of the right to use a licensor's patent, may lawfully promise to pay the licensor a fixed sum

per year during the life of the agreement; and this promise would not become unenforceable merely because the licensee in a particular year happened not to utilize the invention. If this is so, it would be no more against public policy to stipulate for a variable consideration by way of royalty for the right to use the patent, whether such consideration were expressed in terms of a percentage of the net profits of the licensee's business, or (as here) in terms of a percentage of the selling price of certain apparatus manufactured and sold by the licensee. Depending on the circumstances such a percentage royalty might well be a lesser charge upon the licensee's business than a stipulation for payment of a flat sum yearly.

A different problem would be presented if the license agreement had provided that, in part consideration for the right to make use of Hazeltine's patents, Automatic agreed not to compete in the commercial field in the manufacture and sale of any radio apparatus of the types enumerated, even though such apparatus did not embody any of the inventions covered by Hazeltine's patents. Such an agree- [fol. 324] ment might be unenforceable as constituting an unlawful attempt to extend the monopoly of licensor's patents beyond the limits of the patent grants. But as we read the license agreement in the case at bar, Automatic would not break the agreement by manufacturing and selling for unrestricted use radio apparatus which in fact does not embody any of the inventions covered by Hazeltine's patents. This is true notwithstanding the fact that Automatic, in making such a sale, would be required by Article IV, Section 1, of the agreement to pay to Hazeltine the stipulated percentage of the selling price as royalty for the *right* to utilize the patents covered by the license agreement.

Duress.—Automatic's brief states that its affidavits "assert the license was signed only in fear of disastrous litigation. If it was, in fact, coerced into taking a license under invalid patents having no application to any radio set made today, the patents were obviously misused." Not all economic pressure constitutes "duress" rendering a contract voidable. The defense of duress is discussed in 5 Williston, Contracts § 1606 (Rev. ed. 1937), where it is pointed out that the pressure exerted must be wrongful; that a threat

to resort to civil litigation is not such duress as to justify rescission of a transaction induced thereby, even though there is no legal right to enforce the claim, provided the threat is made in good faith, that is, in the belief that a possible cause of action exists. Neither Automatic's answer nor its amended answer set up duress as a defense. Notwithstanding the statement in Automatic's brief, the record in fact contains no specific allegation that Automatic was improperly coerced into executing the license agreement now in suit. There is a statement in Automatic's counter motion for summary judgment, as one of the asserted grounds for dismissal of the complaint, that Hazeltine has misused its patents by suing and threatening to sue, and [fol. 325] otherwise harassing customers of radio manufacturers refusing to take a license under its patents "and coercing radio manufacturers to take licenses under its patents by threats of repeated, expensive law suits"; and a similar statement is made in one of the supporting affidavits.[1] Even if—as would hardly be justified—we take this allegation to imply that Hazeltine improperly coerced other radio manufacturers to enter into license agreements by threats of patent infringement suits which Hazeltine knew to be unfounded, such wrongful conduct in respect to third persons would constitute no defense to Automatic in the present suit. A promisee's cause of action on one contract cannot be defeated merely by a showing that the promisee had improperly coerced third parties into entering into similar contracts with him. See 6 Williston, Contracts § 1752 (Rev. ed. 1938); 2 Restatement, Contracts § 597 (1932). This generally accepted rule of law should not, in our view, be discarded by an extension of the decision in *Morton Salt Co.* v. *G. S. Suppiger Co.*, 314 U. S. 488 (1942), which dealt with quite a different set of facts not involving the assertion of third-party defenses by a defendant sued for breach of contract.

Monopoly.—Automatic has claimed that Hazeltine's alleged monopolistic practices should preclude its recovery

[1] It appears that among the other licensees of Hazeltine are General Electric Corporation, Westinghouse Electric Corporation, and Radio Corporation of America. R.C.A. paid approximately one million dollars in royalties to Hazeltine during the years 1937-1947.

here: Its answer alleged as a defense that Hazeltine "in an illegal endeavor to eliminate all competition and secure an unlawful monopoly in violation of the antitrust laws of the United States, acquired the approximately 425 United States letters patent and the approximately 120 applications for United States letters patent . . . from its employees" (and from other corporations and persons). From Auto- [fol. 326] matic's somewhat nebulous generalizations, it is difficult to ascertain the precise nature of its argument on this score, though it does concede that the mere accumulation of patents, however great in number, is not illegal *per se*. *Cf. Transparent-Wrap Machine Corp.* v. *Stokes & Smith Co.*, 329 U. S. 637 (1947). As one of the grounds in support of its counter motion for summary judgment, Automatic asserted that Hazeltine has misused its patents by "refusing to grant a license under any one or more of its patents to anyone who refuses to take a license under all." The only factual support we have been able to find for this allegation is a statement in one of Automatic's affidavits, made by the affiant on information and belief, not as a matter of personal knowledge. It is indeed nowhere alleged that Automatic had sought and been refused a license covering less than all of Hazeltine's patents. This particular contention has not been pressed on appeal as a separate ground of defense.

In most other respects, it appears that the defense of monopolistic practices is merely the assembling under a different heading of matters we have already considered. The district court correctly ruled that, even assuming *arguendo* that Hazeltine was engaged in an unlawful scheme to maintain a monopoly, the license contract in suit was not an integral part of it; that the license agreement, being itself a valid contract, will not be rendered unenforceable by collateral activities of the plaintiff in violation of the anti-trust laws. 2 Restatement, Contracts § 519 (1932); 5 Williston, Contracts § 1661 (Rev. ed. 1937); 2 Walker, Patents § 409 (Deller ed. 1937). See also *Bruce's Juices, Inc.* v. *American Can Co.*, 330 U. S. 743, 754, 755-56 (1947). *Morton Salt Co.* v. *G. S. Suppiger Co.*, 314 U. S. 488 (1942), is no authority for the proposition that a contract action for patent royalties may be bogged down by the defendant into [fol. 327] a complicated and protracted trial of asserted collateral infractions of the anti-trust laws. And see *Radio*

Corporation of America v. *Majestic Distributors*, 53 F. 2d 641, 642-43 (D. C. Conn. 1931), and cases cited.

H. Alleged Invalidity of Hazeltine's Patents

Until recently, it had generally been thought to be settled law that, in a suit for patent royalties under a license agreement, the licensee was estopped from challenging the validity of the licensor's patent. *United States* v. *Harvey Steel Co.*, 196 U. S. 310 (1905); 2 Walker, Patents § 383 (Deller ed. 1937). *Edward Katzinger Co.* v. *Chicago Metallic Mfg. Co.*, 329 U. S. 394 (1947), and *MacGregor* v. *Westinghouse Elec. & Mfg. Co.*, 329 U. S. 402 (1947), established that this proposition can no longer be received without qualification. In each of those cases the licensee had agreed to sell the licensed products at prices fixed by the licensor. "Such a restriction on the price of articles entering interstate commerce is a violation of the Sherman Act save only as it is within the protection of a lawfully granted patent monopoly." *Sola Elec. Co.* v. *Jefferson Elec. Co.*, 317 U. S. 173, 175 (1942). The Court, in the *Katzinger* and *MacGregor* cases, deemed the price-fixing undertaking to be an inseparable part of the "integrated consideration for the license grant"; and in these circumstances concluded that the public interest in "freedom from invalid patents and from restraints of trade" (329 U. S. at 401) would best be served by allowing the licensee to set up the invalidity of the patent in defense to a suit for royalties. It confined its decision to the set of facts before it, and pointedly declined to lay down the broader rule that a licensee may in all cases defend on the ground of invalidity of the patent even when no price-fixing stipulation was involved in the license contract. [fol. 328] 329 U. S. at 399. As to that, the Court reserved judgment.

Until we receive further light and leading from the Supreme Court, we are disinclined to extend the holdings in the *Katzinger* and *MacGregor* cases so as to throw into the discard altogether the long line of earlier cases disallowing a licensee to challenge the validity of the licensor's patent. It is not uncommon for the parties to a patent infringement suit, in which there is a genuine issue as to the validity of the patent, to make a settlement of the litigation by an agreement under which the patentee gives a license to the alleged infringer in consideration of the payment of a stipu-

lated royalty. Indeed, the license agreement in suit seems to have been by way of settlement of earlier litigation between the parties. It is not apparent to us that the public interest would be served by rendering such common-sense business settlements nugatory, which would be the result of a ruling that the licensee could reopen the issue of validity when sued for the stipulated royalty.

In the case at bar, where a large number of patents were covered by a single license agreement containing no price-fixing stipulation, the result would be particularly awkward if it were held that the licensee may defend by putting in issue the validity of all these patents. Although Automatic's motion for summary judgment and its supporting affidavit make the general statement that none of Hazeltine's patents covered by the license are valid, no concrete attempt was made to buttress these assertions; and the district court concluded: "Furthermore, the defendant does not purport to contest the validity of all plaintiff's patents." 77 F. Supp. at 497. We ourselves have been unable to find from the record that Automatic seriously attempted to raise a "genuine issue" as to the validity of all the licensed patents. If the holding of the *Katzinger* and *MacGregor* cases [fol. 329] were extended to the present situation, because of the restrictive use provision or otherwise, would the licensee, in order to make out its defense, have to establish that each and every one of the licensed patents is invalid? Or could the licensee maintain, in view of the fact that the stipulated royalties are payable whether or not any particular apparatus manufactured and sold by the licensee embodies any of the inventions covered by the patents, that the royalty agreement as an inseparable entirety becomes unenforceable if it can be shown that any one of the 500 licensed patents is invalid? Or, as a third alternative, would the licensee have to show that a substantial number of patents, or the more important patents constituting the "substance" of the agreement, were invalid? If we are wrong in our conclusion that the licensee here cannot challenge the validity of the patents, then we confess we would be at a loss to know how to instruct the district court to proceed with the case upon remand. Whichever of the three alternatives above suggested were followed, it seems to us the resulting situation would be a mess, and the district court would likely be subjected to a well-nigh intolerable burden.

III. Eviction

Questions of direct attack upon validity aside, Automatic relies on the defense of eviction which, as we understand its attempted application here, is in substance a defense of failure of consideration. The argument is based upon these circumstances: At various times in the past, Hazeltine brought infringement suits against third parties based on one or more of eight of the patents licensed under the agreement in suit. Only one of these eight patents was ever passed on by the Supreme Court, and its judgment of invalidity did not extend to all of the claims of this patent. Of the other seven patents, lower courts held all of the claims of [fol. 330] two invalid, and some of the claims of the remaining five were also held invalid. Two additional patents sued on by Hazeltine were held by a lower court not to have been infringed. Some of these patents were litigated before the effective date of the agreement in suit and some after. The record is clear that Hazeltine informed Automatic of the aforesaid Supreme Court judgment of invalidity before the present license agreement was executed, but Automatic alleges that it was then unaware of the judgments of invalidity or non-infringement of the other patents litigated before that date.

Although Automatic did not in this court rely on a defense of fraud or misrepresentation, Automatic does claim that the aforesaid ten patents litigated adversely to Hazeltine were the ones in which Automatic had been chiefly interested; that the judgments against Hazeltine demonstrate the worthlessness of these patents, and that consequently there has been a failure of consideration relieving Automatic of its obligations under the license agreement.

It may be that the defense of eviction or failure of consideration raises a question of local law. The court below correctly ruled that, in so far as local law is controlling, the local law properly applicable under the circumstances of this case is that of the State of New York. See *Klaxon Co.* v. *Stentor Elec. Mfg. Co., Inc.*, 313 U. S. 487 (1941); *Adamowski* v. *Curtiss-Wright Flying Service, Inc.*, 300 Mass. 281 (1938); Restatement, Conflict of Laws §§ 332, 358, Comment *b* (1934).

In our opinion the defense of eviction is insupportable on several grounds.

The mere fact that Automatic may have regarded ten particular patents, out of the more than 700 patents and patent applications covered by the license agreement, as the most important ones licensed, in no sense means that [fol. 331] *both* parties regarded those patents as the "substance" of the agreement and contracted accordingly. The record offers no significant suggestion that such was the case, and the district court concluded that Automatic "has not made any serious effort to show eviction here and could not show it", and that Automatic got "by the contract, what it bargained for, namely, the right to use whatever patents are available for use in plaintiff's large collection." 77 F. Supp. at 497.

Even if Automatic had properly presented this defense, we do not think it could be sustained where a non-exclusive license is concerned. Without attempting a full discussion of the doctrine of eviction,[2] we may assume for present purposes that, where an *exclusive* license is granted and the patent is held invalid, even by a lower court, in a suit between the patentee-licensor and a third party, the licensee may successfully claim an eviction. An exclusive license agreement may be said to presuppose a grant to the licensee of a complete monopoly; if the patent is not upheld in even one suit against an infringer, the desired monopoly is *pro tanto* destroyed, and there may be said to be a failure of consideration. See *Schutte & Koerting Co.* v. *Wheeler Condenser & Engineering Co.*, 295 Fed. 158 (E. D. Pa. 1924); 1 Williston, Contracts § 137 (Rev. ed. 1936). But where the license, as here, is *non-exclusive*, this argument is inapplicable.

To hold that a non-exclusive licensee may base a defense of eviction on lower court judgments of invalidity in suits between the patentee-licensor and third parties would seem inconsistent with the principles recognized in *Triplett* v. *Lowell*, 297 U. S. 638 (1936). There it was held that, even though in an earlier infringement suit against a third party some claims of a patent had been held invalid and the pat- [fol. 332] entee had failed to disclaim them, the patentee might still maintain a suit against another alleged infringer for infringement of those same claims as well as other claims. The Supreme Court pointed out that many times it had upheld claims previously held invalid in litigation that had not reached the Supreme Court; that if in the second suit

[2] See 2 Walker, Patents § 384 (Deller ed. 1937).

the previously invalidated claims were upheld, no question of failure to disclaim would be presented; but if these claims were again invalidated, the court would be faced with the question whether recovery on other claims should be barred by reason of the failure to disclaim the invalidated claims. We think in the present suit against Automatic on the non-exclusive license agreement, it would be anomalous to give greater effect to a lower court's judgment of invalidity in an infringement suit against a third party than would be given to such a judgment if Automatic had not been a licensee and had been sued as an infringer. In short, a holding by one lower court that a patent is invalid is hardly a conclusive determination of that patent's invalidity and hence the "worthlessness" of a non-exclusive license of that patent. See *Appleton Toy & Furniture Co.* v. *Lehman Co.*, 165 F. 2d 801 (C. A. 7th, 1948); *Pope Mfg. Co.* v. *Owsley*, 27 Fed. 100 (C. C. N. D. Ill. 1886). But *cf. Brackett Chemical Co.* v. *Chamberlain Co.*, 63 F. 2d 853 (C. A. 6th, 1933).

Nor do we find that any different rule prevails in the State of New York. It is true that in *Hazeltine Research, Inc.* v. *De Wald Radio Mfg. Corp.*, 84 N. Y. S. 2d 597 (Sup. Ct., Special Term, N. Y. County, Part III, 1948), in ruling on plaintiff's motion for summary judgment, Justice Hofstadter apparently held that the defense of eviction like that advanced in the case at bar was available in New York to a non-exclusive licensee being sued for royalties. We have examined the New York authorities cited by the court, and do not think that they support this conclusion. The [fol. 333] leading case of *Marston* v. *Swett*, 66 N. Y. 206 (1876), after retrial, 82 N. Y. 526 (1880), dealt with an exclusive license; we have already pointed out the important difference in this connection between an exclusive and a non-exclusive license. *Herzog* v. *Hyman*, 151 N. Y. 587 (1897), involved the sale or assignment of a patent, not a non-exclusive license agreement. The distinction is important. See *Marston* v. *Swett*, 66 N. Y. 206, 212-13 (1876); 1 Williston, Contracts § 137 (Rev. ed. 1936). In *Buffalo Rubber Mfg. Co.* v. *Batavia Rubber Co.*, 90 Misc. 418, 153 N. Y. S. 779 (Sup. Ct. 1915), the license was taken by defendant upon a representation that the licensor had a patent application pending, when in fact such application had been rejected by the Patent Office on the ground of prior invention by an earlier patentee; and the court held that the false representation was sufficient ground in equity for the rescission

of the license agreement induced thereby. In *Pomeroy* v. *New York Hippodrome Corp.*, 197 App. Div. 114, 188 N. Y. S. 734 (1921), the license agreement was also made during the pendency of a patent application; however, the patent sought, for the device covered by the license, was refused by the Patent Office, which allowed the licensor merely a patent for a minor improvement on an earlier patent. Appellant also cites *Bottlers Seal Co.* v. *Rainey*, 225 N. Y. 369, 373 (1919); but the passage referred to was *dictum* merely, and furthermore the discussion was with reference to the position of an assignee of an exclusive license. Clearly none of these cases is controlling on the eviction question raised in the *De Wald* case and in the case at bar. It does not appear whether the attention of Justice Hofstadter in the *De Wald* case was directed to the aspects of the eviction doctrine we have already discussed. At any rate we are constrained to believe that the apparent holding in the *De Wald* case is not in accordance with the law of New York as it would be declared by the highest court of that state.

[fol. 334] IV. Repudiation

On September 18, 1947, several months after the filing of the complaint in the present case, Automatic wrote a letter to Hazeltine formally advising the latter, without more, that Automatic "has repudiated and terminated the License Agreement". Automatic asserts that this notice of "repudiation" extinguished its contract obligation to pay royalties. Perhaps a sufficient answer to this contention is that no such defense was set forth either in Automatic's answer or amended answer, or in its counter motion for summary judgment. Furthermore, giving every indulgence to Automatic's contention, such repudiation could operate only prospectively, and would not affect the judgment for minimum royalties for the contract year ending August 31, 1946, nor would it affect Automatic's liability for percentage royalties due for the period up to the date of such "repudiation". In addition to that, so far as it may be a question of federal law, in the absence of a cancellation option in the agreement, or of a substantial default by the licensor, the licensee cannot by any such unilateral notice of repudiation terminate its contract obligation under a license agreement having several years yet to run. *St. Paul Plow Works* v. *Starling*, 140 U. S. 184 (1891); *Ohio Citizens*

Trust Co. v. Air-Way Elec. Appliance Corp., 56 F. Supp. 1010 (N. D. Ohio 1944). But *cf. Martin v. New Trinidad Lake Asphalt Co.*, 255 Fed. 93, 94 (D. N. J. 1919). Assuming that local law governs the matter, we are satisfied that, even if repudiation by the licensee is, in some circumstances, a defense in New York to a suit for royalties, Automatic's letter of September 18, 1947, does not meet the stringent requirements set forth in *Skinner v. Wood Mowing and Reaping Machine Co.*, 140 N. Y. 217 (1893).

The cases which have suggested the existence of some such doctrine of unilateral repudiation have explained that [fol. 335] the licensee may announce unequivocally "that he no longer recognizes the binding force of the agreement, and that he will thereafter manufacture or use the article covered by the patent under a claim of right, founded upon the alleged invalidity of the patent, and in hostility to and defiance of the authority of the patent and the license, so that the licensor can thereafter proceed against him for an infringement of the patent, if he choose so to do." *Martin v. New Trinidad Lake Asphalt Co.*, supra, 255 Fed. at 94. See *Skidmore v. Fahys Watch-Case Co.*, 28 App. Div. 94, 101, 50 N. Y. S. 1016, 1021-22 (1898); *L. Heller & Son, Inc. v. Lassner Co.*, 214 App. Div. 315, 318, 212 N. Y. S. 175, 180 (1925). But as we have already pointed out, under the license agreement in suit Automatic's liability for royalties does not depend upon its actual use of any of the licensed patents in the particular apparatus made and sold by it. If Automatic were permitted to repudiate the license agreement and in fact did not utilize any of the inventions covered by Hazeltine's patents, Hazeltine could not prevail in an infringement suit even if all its patents were valid; and Automatic would thus achieve immunity from liability by non-use of Hazeltine's patents, despite its contract undertaking to pay royalties, regardless of such use, for the *right* to make use of them. Hence, even assuming that a doctrine of unilateral repudiation might in some cases be recognized, such a defense certainly would not be available under the circumstances of the case at bar.

The judgment of the District Court is affirmed.

WOODBURY, Circuit Court, (dissenting):

In my view the decisive question on this appeal is the enforceability of a licensing agreement requiring the

[fol. 336] licensee to pay royalties even though in fact he does not make any use whatsoever of any invention embodied in a patent owned by the licensor. Such agreements as I see it necessarily have the effect of expanding a patent beyond the legitimate confines of the monopoly granted therein, and for many years the Supreme Court, because of the public interest dominant in the patent system, has held licensing agreements having that effect unenforceable in spite of the business convenience or even necessities of the parties. *Morton Salt Co.* v. *Sappiger Co.*, 314 U. S. 488, 492; *B) B. Chemical Co.* v. *Ellis*, 314 U. S. 495, 498; *Mercoid Corp.* v. *Mid-Continent Co.*, 320 U. S. 661, 665 *et seq.*, and cases cited. Therefore, by parity of reasoning with the above cases I would hold the licensing agreement here in suit unenforceable.

On the same day, August 22, 1949, the following judgment was entered:

JUDGMENT—August 22, 1949

This cause came on to be heard on the transcript of record of the District Court of the United States for the District of Massachusetts, and was argued by counsel.

Upon consideration whereof, it is now here ordered, adjudged and decreed as follows: The judgment of the District Court is affirmed.

By the Court: Roger A. Stinchfield, Clerk, by (S.) Dana H. Gallup, Deputy Clerk.

[fol. 337] PROCEEDINGS IN COURT OF APPEALS

Thereafter, on August 31, 1949, mandate was stayed.

Clerk's Certificate to foregoing transcript omitted in printing.

[fol. 338] SUPREME COURT OF THE UNITED STATES, OCTOBER TERM, 1949

No. 455

ORDER ALLOWING CERTIORARI. Filed January 16, 1950

The petition herein for a writ of certiorari to the United States Court of Appeals for the First Circuit is granted.

And it is further ordered that the duly certified copy of the transcript of the proceedings below which accompanied the petition shall be treated as though filed in response to such writ.

Mr. Justice Douglas took no part in the consideration or decision of this application.

LIBRARY
SUPREME COURT U.S.

Office Supreme Court, U. S.
FILED
NOV 14 1949
CHARLES ELMORE

IN THE

United States Supreme Court

October Term 1949.

No. 455

AUTOMATIC RADIO MANUFACTURING COMPANY, INC.,

Petitioner,

vs.

HAZELTINE RESEARCH, INC.,

Respondent.

PETITION FOR WRIT OF CERTIORARI TO THE UNITED STATES COURT OF APPEALS FOR THE FIRST CIRCUIT AND BRIEF IN SUPPORT THEREOF.

FLOYD H. CREWS,
405 Lexington Avenue,
New York 17, New York,
Counsel for Petitioner.

GEORGE K. WOODWORTH,
25 Kilsyth Road,
Brookline 46, Mass.,

DARBY & DARBY,
MORRIS RELSON,
405 Lexington, Ave.,
New York 17, N. Y.,
Of Counsel.

INDEX

PETITION FOR CERTIORARI

PAGE

Summary and Short Statement of the Subject Matter Involved 2

Statement of Jurisdiction 3

The Questions Presented 3

Reasons Relied on for the Allowance of the Writ 4

BRIEF

Opinions of the Courts Below 5

Statement of Jurisdiction 5

Statement of the Case 5

Specification of Errors 10

Summary of Argument 11

POINT I—The questions presented are of enormous public importance 11

The First Question Presented 11

The Second and Third Questions Presented 15

The Fourth Question Presented 17

The Fifth Question Presented 17

POINT II—The decision below is in conflict with applicable decisions of this Court 19

The First Question Presented 19

The Second and Third Questions Presented 22

The Fourth Question Presented 26

The Fifth Question Presented 27

Conclusion 31

Table of Cases

	PAGE
American Optical Co. v. New Jersey Optical Co., 58 F. Supp. 601	22
Barron v. Burnside, 121 U. S. 186	29
B. B. Chemical Co. v. Ellis, 314 U. S. 494	13
Carbice Corp. v. American Patents Development Corp., 283 U. S. 27	27
Detrola v. Hazeltine, 117 F. (2d) 238	7
Doyle v. Continental Ins. Co., 94 U. S. 535	29
Ethyl Gasoline Corporation v. United States, 309 U. S. 436	20, 27
Fox Film Corp. v. Doyal, 286 U. S. 123	20
General Talking Pictures v. Western Electric Co., 304 U. S. 175	15, 23, 24
Hartford-Empire Co. v. United States, 323 U. S. 386	22
Hazeltine v. Abrams, 7. F. S. 908	7
Hazeltine v. A. H. Grebe, 21 F. (2d) 643	5
Hazeltine v. Crosley, 39 F. Supp. 775	7
Hazeltine v. Electric Service Engineering Corp., 18 F. (2d) 662	5
Hazeltine v. Emerson, 129 F. (2d) 580	7
Hazeltine v. General Motors, 38 F. S. 880	7
Hazeltine v. General Motors, 72 F. S. 138	7, 8, 9, 10
Hazeltine v. National Carbon, 6 U. S. P. Q. 235	5
Hazeltine v. Radio Corporation of America, 52 F. (2d) 504	6
Hazeltine v. R. E. B. Service Corp., 8 F. S. 100	7
Hazeltine v. Sears Roebuck, 5 F. S. 674	7
Hazeltine v. Wildermuth, 34 F. (2d) 635	6
Henry v. A. B. Dick Company, 224 U. S. 1	26
H. P. M. Development Corp. v. Watson-Stillman Co., 71 F. Supp. 906	22
Home Ins. Co. v. Morse, 87 U. S. 20 Wall.	29

PAGE

International Business Machines Corp. v. United States, 298 U. S. 131 27
International Carbonic Engineering Co. v. Natural Carbonic Products Inc., 57 F. Supp. 248 22
Interstate Circuit v. United States, 306 U. S. 208 27

Katzinger v. Chicago Metallic, 329 U. S. 394 ..... 28, 29, 30

Leitch Mfg. Co. v. Barber Co., 302 U. S. 458 27

MacGregor v. Westinghouse, 329 U. S. 402 ..... 28, 30
Mercoid Corp. v. Mid-Continent, 320 U. S. 661 ..... 10, 20, 30
Motion Picture Patents Co. v. Universal Film Mfg. Co., 243 U. S. 502 23
Morton Salt Co. v. Suppiger Co., 314 U. S. 488 20

Ohio Citizens Trust Co. v. Air Way Electric Appliance Corp., 56 F. Supp. 1010 22

Pope v. Gormully, 144 U. S. 224 ..... 10, 28, 30, 31
Pyrene Mfg. Co. v. Urquhart, 69 F. Supp. 555 22

Scott Paper Co. v. Marcalus Mfg. Co., 326 U. S. 249 29
Sola v. Jefferson, 317 U. S. 173 ..... 28, 30
Standard Oil Co. v. United States, 283 U. S. 163 22
Standard Sanitary Mfg. Co. v. United States, 226 U. S. 20 ..... 22, 27
Stewart-Warner v. Staley, 42 F. Supp. 140 ..... 13, 18
Strauss v. Victor Talking Machine Co., 243 U. S. 490 17

Transparent Wrap v. Stokes & Smith, 329 U. S. 637 ..... 14, 31

United States v. General Electric Co., 272 U. S. 476 26
United States v. Line Material, 333 U. S. 287 24
United Shoe Machinery v. La Chapelle, 212 Mass. 467 14
United Shoe Machinery Corp. v. United States, 258 U. S. 451 27
United States v. National Lead Co., 332 U. S. 319 22
United States v. Paramount Pictures, 334 U. S. 131 19
U. S. v. U. S. Gypsum Co., 67 F. Supp. 397 22

Windsor v. McVeigh, 93 U. S. 274 10

IN THE

United States Supreme Court

October Term 1949

No.

AUTOMATIC RADIO MANUFACTURING COMPANY, INC.,
Petitioner,

vs.

HAZELTINE RESEARCH, INC.,
Respondent.

PETITION FOR WRIT OF CERTIORARI TO THE UNITED STATES COURT OF APPEALS FOR THE FIRST CIRCUIT AND BRIEF IN SUPPORT THEREOF.

To the Honorable, the Chief Justice and Associate Justices of the Supreme Court of the United States:

Your petitioner, Automatic Radio Manufacturing Company, Inc., respectfully prays for a writ of certiorari to the United States Court of Appeals for the First Circuit to review the judgment of that Court entered August 22, 1949 affirming the judgment of the District Court of the United States for the District of Massachusetts (Judge FORD).

The transcript of the record in the case, including proceedings in the Court of Appeals, is furnished herewith in accordance with the rules of this Court.

Summary and Short Statement of the Subject Matter Involved.

1. The Court below, Judge Woodbury dissenting (R. 329), affirmed an interlocutory judgment (R. 293) granted on motion for summary judgment (R. 76), ordering royalty payments, an accounting, and an injunction against future breach of a patent license agreement for the manufacture and sale of radio receivers under a pool of 570 patents and 200 patent applications (R. 79) controlled by respondent.

2. Respondent is a successor in interest to all of the patent rights previously held by its parent, Hazeltine Corporation. It currently has outstanding some 130 "standard" licenses to manufacturers of radio sets (R. 79).

3. Respondent and its associated companies, all of which are under common ownership, will be referred to collectively as "Hazeltine", as was done by Judge Ford in his opinion (R. 297) and by the Court below (R. 314). Petitioner will be referred to as "Automatic Radio".

4. Hazeltine's motion for summary judgment asserted that four of its patents were used by Automatic Radio (R. 119-168). This was disputed (R. 199-200; 207-246; 277-282; 289-292), raising a substantial issue of fact which precluded recovery on summary judgment for the use of patents (Rule 56(c) F. R. C. P.). Summary judgment was nevertheless granted because Hazeltine's "standard" licenses require the payment of royalties on all radio sets made, even though none of its patents is used in any of them (R. 299-300). The enforcement of royalties for structures outside the patents is asserted by Automatic Radio to be a misuse of pooled patents which precludes a recovery. This is the specific ground on which Judge Woodbury dissented from the decision below (R. 330).

5. Hazeltine attempts to restrict the use to which radio receivers may be put, after purchase from its licensees by the public through retail stores, by requiring a restrictive use notice to be placed on every set (R. 40; Art. VI, Sec. 2). This is asserted by Automatic Radio to be another misuse of patents precluding a recovery.

6. Automatic Radio denies that it is using in its sets any valid patent controlled by Hazeltine (R. 46, 195), and asserts the right to challenge the validity of any patent Hazeltine asserts it is using, in defense of a suit for royalties under the pool of patents.

Statement of Jurisdiction.

This Court is believed to have jurisdiction to review the judgment below under the provisions of 28 U. S. C. 1254 and 2101(c). The judgment below was entered August 22, 1949 (R. 330).

The Questions Presented.

1. Is it a misuse of patents by the administrator of a pool of 570 patents and 200 patent applications in the radio art, to force the radio industry and the public, by means of its "standard" licenses outstanding to 130 radio manufacturers, to pay royalties on the entire production of its licensees, amounting to tens of millions of radio sets, even though none of the patents is used? This question should be answered yes.

2. Can the owner of a patent, by means thereof, restrict the use made of a device manufactured under the patent, after the device has passed into the hands of a purchaser in the ordinary channels of trade, and full consideration paid therefor? This question should be answered no.

3. Can a patent owner, merely by a "license notice" attached to a device made under the patent, and sold in the ordinary channels of trade, place an enforceable restriction on the purchaser thereof as to the use to which the purchaser may put the device? This question should be answered no.

4. Is it a misuse of patents by the administrator of a pool of 570 patents and 200 patent applications to require its licensees to place restrictive use notices on millions of radio sets sold to the public across the counters of retail stores? This question should be answered yes.

5. May a licensee, sued for royalties under a pool of 570 patents, challenge the validity of the patents he is charged with using, in defense of the suit? This question should be answered yes.

Reasons Relied on For the Allowance of the Writ.

1. The questions presented are of enormous public importance.

2. The decision below is in conflict with applicable decisions of this Court.

WHEREFORE your petitioner respectfully prays that a writ of certiorari issue out of and under the seal of this Court directed to the United States Court of Appeals for the First Circuit; and that this Court review and correct the erroneous decision of that Court.

Respectfully submitted,

FLOYD H. CREWS,
Counsel for Petitioner.

GEORGE K. WOODWORTH,
DARBY & DARBY,
MORRIS RELSON,
Of Counsel.

BRIEF IN SUPPORT OF PETITION FOR WRIT OF CERTIORARI.

Opinions of the Courts Below.

The opinion of the District Court appears at R. 296 and is reported at 77 F. Supp. 493.

The opinion of the Court of Appeals appears at R. 313 and is reported at 82 U. S. P. Q. 324 and 176 F. (2d) 799.

Statement of Jurisdiction.

This Court is believed to have jurisdiction to review the judgment below under the provisions of 28 U. S. C. 1254 and 2101(c). The judgment below was entered August 22, 1949 (R. 330).

Statement of the Case.

1. In about 1923, Professor Hazeltine of the Stevens Institute of Technology invented the "Neutrodyne" circuit for radio receivers for which he was granted three United States patents, Nos. 1,450,080, 1,489,228 and 1,533,858 (R. 172). Hazeltine Corporation was organized to exploit these patents. All three patents have been held valid and infringed by the courts:

Hazeltine v. *Electric Service Engineering Corp.*, 18 F. (2d) 662 (S. D. N. Y., 1926);

Hazeltine v. *A. H. Grebe*, 21 F. (2d) 643 (E. D. N. Y., 1927);

Hazeltine v. *National Carbon*, 6 U. S. P. Q. 235 (E. D. N. Y., 1930); affirmed, 45 F. (2d) 573 (C. C. A. 2, 1931);

Hazeltine v. *Wildermuth*, 34 F. (2d) 635 (C. C. A. 2, 1929), cert. den. 280 U. S. 610;

Hazeltine v. *Radio Corporation of America*, 52 F. (2d) 504 (S. D. N. Y., 1931); affirmed, 59 F. (2d) 203 (C. C. A. 2, 1932).

Millions of dollars were collected in royalties by Hazeltine on these three patents (R. 173) all of which have now long since expired and all of which were rendered obsolete in 1927 by the screen grid tube (R. 173).

2. Before and since 1927 Hazeltine acquired patent rights from other companies and individuals, forming a vast pool of radio patents owned by it or under which it has licensing rights, which now include some 570 patents and 200 patent applications (R. 79). Most of these are listed at R. 93-101 with the names of the owners in most cases.

3. Hazeltine has continuously collected royalties from a large segment of the radio industry since the introduction of the Neutrodyne circuit in about 1924. It currently has 130 radio manufacturing companies as licensees (R. 79). These royalties have amounted to many additional millions of dollars since the Neutrodyne patents became obsolete (R. 174; R. 79-80; R. 249).

4. Hazeltine has, however, spent only a very small percentage of the money it has received as royalties for research on radio receivers (R. 173(h); 248), with the result that none of its patents has any value. Every patent on which it has sued since the Neutrodyne patents has been held invalid or not infringed or both (R. 179). These patents, and the citations, are:

Patent No. 1,648,808 was held invalid in *Hazeltine* v. *Radio Corporation of America*, 52 F. (2d) 504 (S. D. N. Y.,

1931); invalid and not infringed in *Hazeltine* v. *Sears Roebuck*, 5 F. S. 674 (S. D. N. Y., 1933); and invalid on appeal, 79 F. (2d) 238 (C. C. A. 2, 1935).

Patents Nos. 1,755,114 and 1,755,115 were held not infringed in *Hazeltine* v. *Sears Roebuck*, 5 F. S. 674 (S. D. N. Y., 1933); and invalid and not infringed on appeal, 79 F. (2d) 238 (C. C. A. 2, 1935).

Patent No. 1,879,863 was held invalid in *Hazeltine* v. *Abrams*, 7 F. S. 908 (E. D. N. Y., 1934) and invalid on appeal, 79 F. (2d) 329 (C. C. A. 2, 1935); and not infringed in *Hazeltine* v. *R. E. B. Service Corp.*, 8 F. S. 100 (E. D. N. Y., 1934). The reissue thereof, Re. 19,744, was held valid and infringed in *Detrola* v. *Hazeltine*, 117 F. (2d) 238 (C. C. A. 6, 1940), reversed at 313 U. S. 259.

Patents Nos. 1,913,604 and 2,022,514 were held not infringed in *Hazeltine* v. *Crosley*, 39 F. Supp. 775 (S. D. Ohio, W. D., 1941); affirmed, 130 F. (2d) 344 (C. C. A. 6, 1942).

Patent No. 2,111,483 was held invalid and not infringed in *Hazeltine* v. *General Motors*, 38 F. S. 880 (D. Del., 1941) and invalid on appeal, 131 F. (2d) 34 (C. C. A. 3, 1942).

Patent No. 1,710,035 was held not infringed in *Hazeltine* v. *Emerson*, 129 F. (2d) 580 (C. C. A. 2, 1942).

Patents Nos. 1,951,685 and 2,041,273 were held invalid in *Hazeltine* v. *General Motors*, 72 F. S. 138 (E. D. Mich., 1947), affirmed at 170 F. (2d) 6 (C. A. 6, 1948), second petition for rehearing denied, 171 F. (2d) 680 (C. A. 6, 1948), certiorari denied 336 U. S. 938.

5. Hazeltine has kept its licensees in line by a succession of suits against non-licensees and their dealers (R. 188-189). It actually sued 26 Atwater-Kent dealers simultaneously (34 F. (2d) 50). Despite these suits some large companies, who could afford to defend suits of this magnitude,

have refused to take a Hazeltine license or pay tribute to Hazeltine for many years, going back to 1927 (R. 79; R. 178; R. 249-251).

6. The 10 worthless post-Neutrodyne patents listed in No. 4 are admittedly the best patents Hazeltine owns. It has been able to continue to levy tribute from the radio industry without a single valid patent to warrant royalty payments, only because on each trial Hazeltine has spent more than $100,000, thus keeping each licensee in perpetual fear of a suit of this magnitude directed against it, if it failed to renew its license.

Mr. Woodworth's affidavit at R. 188 quotes the following statement of Mr. Laurence B. Dodds, Executive Vice-President and trial attorney of Hazeltine, made in open court in 1947 at the trial of patents 1,951,685 and 2,041,273 in the cases of *Hazeltine Corporation* v. *General Motors Corporation* in Michigan, Civil Action Nos. 2426 and 2436 (reported at 72 F. Supp. 138), from the stenographic transcript of the trial of those cases at pages 1167 to 1169 (R. 188-189):

> "Now, contrary to your Honor's impression, it is not the weak patents which get to the court, it is the strong patents, and the reason for that is economics. We cannot afford, because it is economically unsound, to bring an infringement action on a minor patent. Each of these patents which has been stricken down enjoyed the prima facie validity of a grant by the Patent Office. Each was evaluated by our patent counsel highly enough to risk an expensive infringement litigation, which we have found runs in excess of $100,000 per case . . .
>
> . . . . . .
>
> "Now, it has been testified that we own about 450 patents. Of these somewhat less than 100 are in use, and of those only a handful are of the importance of the patents which we have here in suit."

The patents involved in that suit were in their turn held invalid (72 F. Supp. 138; affirmed 170 F. (2d) 6; second petition for rehearing denied, 171 F. (2d) 680); certiorari denied 336 U. S. 938.

7. Because of the admitted pathetic weakness of its patent position Hazeltine, by its own assertions (Binns, Hazeltine's president, R. 81, (f)), in 1937 abandoned any attempt to collect royalties for the use of its patents. Instead, it has provided in its "standard" license contracts since 1937 for the payment of royalties on all sets made by its licensees regardless of patents. (Judge Ford's opinion, R. 299; Hazeltine's motion for summary judgment, R. 76, paragraph (b); license agreement, R. 5, Article IV, Section 1; Binns, R. 81-82(f); Opinion of Court below, R. 319-320.) The royalties demanded in this action on Hazeltine's worthless patents amount to 25% of Automatic Radio's net profits for the years 1946 and 1947 (R. 178).

8. As of September 1, 1942 Hazeltine issued to Automatic Radio the license here in issue, under all the patents and patent applications in its pool, settling previous differences between them (Binns, R. 83) and exchanging mutual releases (R. 42). The license agreement is printed at R. 5.

9. The previous differences also involved the payment of royalties on Hazeltine's worthless patents. Hazeltine had previously sued for royalties in the Superior Court for Suffolk County, Massachusetts. The considered advice of Automatic Radio's patent counsel at that time was that it was not using any Hazeltine patent in its sets (R. 202). Nevertheless Automatic Radio, being financially unable to defend the suit (R. 202), a final decree was entered therein on December 3, 1941 (R. 113) which decreed that Automatic Radio admitted that all of Hazeltine's patents were valid (R. 116). An action is now pending to reopen and

set aside that decree as in violation of public policy (*Pope v. Gormully*, 144 U. S. 224 (1892); *Mercoid Corp. v. Mid-Continent Invest. Co.*, 320 U. S. 661, 670 (1944)) and void (*Windsor v. McVeigh*, 93 U. S. 274 (1876)).

10. In support of its motion for summary judgment, Hazeltine has asserted the use by Automatic Radio of only four of its patents, namely, Wheeler patents No. 1,951,685, 2,041,273, 1,958,627 and 2,015,327 (Wheeler, R. 119-168). This is denied by Automatic Radio (R. 195, No. 12, 207-246). The first two have since been invalidated in the *General Motors* case, 72 F. Supp. 138, affirmed at 170 F. (2d) 6, second petition for rehearing denied 171 F. (2d) 680, certiorari denied 336 U. S. 938.

11. Hazeltine's license agreements require its licensees to apply to each of their sets sold to the public a patent marking notice stating (R. 14, Sec. 2):

> "'Licensed by Hazeltine Corporation only for use in homes, for educational purposes, and for private, non-commercial use, under one or more of the following patents and under pending applications:' followed by the word 'Patent' and the numbers of the patents which are, in the opinion of Licensor, involved in apparatus of the types licensed hereunder manufactured by one or more licensees of Licensor."

Specification of Errors.

The errors which petitioner will urge if this petition is granted are that the Court of Appeals for the First Circuit erred in affirming the judgment of the District Court, and in failing to answer the first, fourth and fifth question presented in the affirmative and the second and third questions in the negative (see pp. 3-4).

Summary of Argument.

The argument will follow the reasons relied on for the allowance of the writ as stated on page 4 hereof and in the index.

POINT I.

The questions presented are of enormous public importance.

The First Question Presented.

Hazeltine has misused its patents by requiring royalties on its licensees' *entire production* of radio sets, whether its patents are used or not.

The people of America have paid tribute to Hazeltine on tens of millions of radio receivers, under the guise of patent royalties, amounting to millions of dollars. Hazeltine has managed to levy this tribute by multiplying its patents and its licenses until practically the whole industry has been regimented. Through its basic patents it has thus perpetuated its control over the industry long after the basic patents expired, and twenty years after they became obsolete.

A single patent is a potent weapon of business aggression. Its potency is enhanced if it is related to a mass production industry where the penalty for guessing wrong as to its validity or infringement may be the complete ruin of a business. It has even greater power when that industry is, like the radio industry, based upon a complex technology. The fact that the decision of validity of a patent requires the subjective appraisal by the courts of a change made in a highly technical field makes the matter of guessing as to validity as uncertain as a wrong guess is disastrous.

When the patent is backed by strong finances in the hands of an aggressive, litigious owner, its power is multiplied many fold. When the patent owner pools his patent with others to get under his single control the vast number of 570 patents and 200 applications, all relating to a single, technically complex, mass production industry, he is in a position to do exactly what Hazeltine has done here—force that industry to pay tribute without regard to the patents. Every patent may be invalid, no patent may be used, but every set must pay. And it must pay, however poor the patents, because of the cost of litigation, or the disastrous consequences if a single suit should be decided wrong without being able to get a review by this Court, or both.

The inherent viciousness in such an arrangement, and the dangers inherent in its legal sanction, may perhaps best be demonstrated by applying it to an apparently extreme and dramatic example.

Governor Dewey prosecuted racketeers in New York for enforcing the payment of royalties on every suit of clothes dry cleaned in the New York area by means of stink bombs, acid, murder, etc. Suppose those racketeers had owned the Hazeltine patents—radio patents—and had had each dry cleaning establishment sign Hazeltine's standard license, changed only to call for royalties on each suit cleaned whether the patents were used or not. If in a suit for enforcement of that license against a dry cleaning establishment this defense of misuse of patents had been set up, the decision below is, in the language of Judge Foan (R. 300, 319), to the effect that this is a proper practice, as a "convenient mode of computing the cost of the privilege of using the patents should the defendant desire to make such use". True, the dry cleaners were terrorized into signing the standard printed form, but so was Automatic Radio

(R. 202). True, the patents do not validly apply to dry cleaning; but neither do they validly apply to the manufacture of radio receivers. The example chosen may appear to be extreme but it is not. There is no place to draw the line between what is covered by a patent and what is not covered except by the scope of the patents themselves. The analogy is perfect. See *Stewart-Warner* v. *Staley*, 42 F. Supp. 140, (4) at page 146 (W. D. Pa., 1941, Judge SCHOONMAKER).

The contention that Hazeltine's block booking arrangement is justified by convenience because of the burden involved in attempting to find out if any of its patents is used, seems to us to be ridiculous. Mere size does not give a big corporation any special rights or alter public policy with respect to it. If it operates in every state it must observe the laws of every state, however burdensome. Similarly, multiplication of patents does not enlarge the monopoly beyond the limits of the patents themselves. If it is a burden to Hazeltine to find out if any money is actually due it for use of its patents, that is a cross it must bear.

Under Hazeltine's arrangement the royalties bear no relation to the use of patents and are not a measure (convenient or otherwise) of such use. A licensee might discontinue a model using a Hazeltine patent and substitute a new model using none. If the new model is more popular, he has to pay more royalties even though his use of the patents is less. This Court has said that a patent monopoly may not be enlarged

> "by reason of the fact that it would be more convenient to the patentee to have it so, or because he cannot avail himself of its benefits within the limits of the grant." (*B. B. Chemical Co.* v. *Ellis*, 314 U. S. 495, 498.)

This Court has expressed its recognition of the danger of industry regimentation and monopoly power inherent in patent pools. In the case of *Transparent Wrap* v. *Stokes & Smith*, 329 U. S. 637, the Court said at page 646:

> "He who acquires two patents acquires a double monopoly. As patents are added to patents a whole industry may be regimented. The owner of a basic patent might thus perpetuate his control over an industry long after the basic patent expired. Competitors might be eliminated and an industrial monopoly perfected and maintained. Through the use of patent pools or multiple licensing agreements the fruits of invention of an entire industry might be systematically funneled into the hands of the original patentee. See United Shoe Machinery v. La Chapelle, 212 Mass. 467, 99 N. E. 289."

Hazeltine has done exactly this. It has, however, added the new wrinkle of misusing the power of its pooled patents to funnel the fruits of an entire industry into its hands, *whether those patents are used or not.*

The importance of this question in this single case alone is sufficient to warrant review by this Court. Its importance to the entire radio industry is much greater.

Its importance to the public is enormous. There are in this country today many patent pools numbering thousands of patents and many more numbering hundreds. If Hazeltine's practice is sanctioned, and if it is not curbed at this time, a tidal wave of regimentation will sweep the country before this Court or Congress can apply a remedy for such abuses. Its importance is therefore almost beyond estimate.

The Second and Third Questions Presented.

We assert a patent owner may not control the uses of a patented device after its sale by the patent owner or his licensee.

These two questions are identical with the first two questions presented in the case of *General Talking Pictures Corp.* v. *Western Electric Co.*, 304 U. S. 175 (1938), which two questions alone were again considered on rehearing at 305 U. S. 124 (1938). Their importance is attested by the fact that this Court has twice before considered them in the *General Talking Pictures* case, although leaving them unanswered on rehearing by a vote of 4 to 2. The vigorous dissenting opinion of Mr. Justice BLACK, in which Mr. Justice REED concurred, is further evidence of their importance. The Government, represented by then Solicitor General Jackson, considered them of sufficient importance to file a brief as *amicus curiae* on rehearing of that case in support of the negative answer here sought.

Their importance is also attested by the same considerations already discussed in connection with the first question. Tens of millions of radio sets have affixed thereto a label reading:

> "Licensed by Hazeltine Corporation only for use in homes, for educational purposes, and for private, non-commercial use * * *."

Obviously such marking would not be required if it was not profitable to Hazeltine to require it. It is profitable because Hazeltine grants "commercial" licenses for other uses (R. 289-290). Not satisfied with tribute on every home radio receiver made by 130 manufacturers whether they use its patents or not, Hazeltine uses this method of forcing the public to buy additional radio sets not needed

and not wanted, wherever the public wants to use such sets outside the limited fields permitted by Hazeltine.

If 100 million radio sets have been made bearing such a restrictive use notice, and the cost of the marking on each set is only one cent, then it has cost Hazeltine licensees to date one million dollars just to apply these marking notices to their sets. This expense would not be forced upon them by Hazeltine if it did not actually result in the purchase by the public of additional unwanted radios by preventing the use of radios already bought and paid for which the purchasers had a legal right to use for any purpose.

It should be noted that the enforcement of the restriction on use by Hazeltine does not require the policing of use in homes. That use is permitted. It requires policing only of commercial use such as in theatres, restaurants, amusement places, etc. Its enforcement is therefore feasible.

Until these questions are answered in the negative, restrictions on the use to which the public may put patented devices are bound to multiply. As patents multiply, the number of devices sold under patents increases. Probably no home appliances such as washing machines, vacuum cleaners, toasters, etc. are sold today which are not marked with patent numbers. Therefore more and more devices can be controlled in this manner, if such control is sanctioned. The absurdity of the logical and practical consequences of such restrictions is evident. A housewife might be compelled to have in her kitchen a separate refrigerator each for eggs, butter, milk, etc., and suit for infringement could be sucessfully maintained against her if she put the eggs in the wrong refrigerator.

The evils are great, and since the *General Talking Picture* case and the decision below, the practice is bound to grow. It is of the utmost importance that these questions be answered.

The Fourth Question Presented.

We assert that the requirement of restrictive use notices is a misuse of patents.

This question is closely allied to the second and third questions and is of ever greater importance. There is no way to curb the growing evil of such restrictive use notices other than by application of the doctrine of misuse. There is no other remedy available. This Court for more than 100 years, as will be pointed out under Point 2, has consistently held that attempts to restrict the use to which a device may be put in the hands of a purchaser after it is sold by the patentee or his licensee, constitute attempts to extend the monopoly of the patent beyond the scope of the patent itself. Nevertheless the practice continues because there is no penalty attached to its use. Unless some penalty is incurred by such practices they will continue to be used and will continue to be effective against "the ignorant and the timid" (*Straus* v. *Victor Talking Machine Co.*, 243 U. S. 490, at page 499).

It is therefore of the utmost importance that this question be answered.

The Fifth Question Presented.

We assert that a licensee under a pool of 570 patents should not be denied the right to challenge validity when sued for royalties.

This question is allied to the first question presented in the reasons why its decision is important, and important at this time.

Patent pools are increasing and the number of patents in such pools is increasing with the increasing awareness

of the economic power of such pools and the increasing size of industrial empires. Billion dollar corporations are commonplace today, and the staffs of patent attorneys maintained by such corporations grow larger and larger. Many corporations employ dozens of patent attorneys just to solicit patents. The small competitor who is faced with a vast array of patents backed by powerful interests, is in many cases financially unable even to investigate the patents currently issuing, much less study the hundreds or thousands issued during the preceding 17 years.

Where patents are pooled not for use, but for coercing the public into dealing with the patent owner, this is a violation of the anti-trust laws: *Stewart-Warner* v. *Staley*, 42 F. Supp. 140, 146 (4) (W. D. Pa., 1941). Today many such pooled patents are therefore available for licensing. Where patents are pooled and backed by powerful interests, the business man, especially the small business man, must take a license for the reasons stated above in the discussion of the first question presented. Having taken a license, he must then pay, and therefore the public must pay, unwarranted tribute on invalid patents unless validity may be challenged. If he is bound by the language of the claims there may be in a single pool as many as 100,000 claims (as is true in the radio industry) with all the permutations of elements of various combinations claimed, available to the patent pool on which to base a claim for royalties. There is no way to turn without running into some patent, however clear its invalidity may be, because every microscopic variation in structure or arrangement is covered by a patent. No room is left for ordinary engineering progress.

The importance to the public of providing an adequate remedy in such a situation is great. A licensee should therefore be permitted to attack the validity of pooled patents.

POINT II.

The decision below is in conflict with applicable decisions of this Court.

The First Question Presented.

As to this question we assert that it is a misuse of patents to use a pool of 570 patents and 200 patent applications in the radio art to force the radio industry and the public to pay royalties on tens of millions of radio sets, even though none of the patents is used in any of them.

Judge WOODBURY's dissenting opinion on this question appears at R. 329-330.

A patent owner may not force a licensee to take a license and pay royalties under patents which are not used in order to get a license under patents which are used. That this cannot be done was decided by this Court in the case of copyrights, by analogy to the patent laws, in the case of *United States* v. *Paramount Pictures*, 334 U. S. 131. The Court said at page 156:

> "(5) Block-Booking.
>
> "Block-booking is the practice of licensing, or offering for license, one feature or group of features on condition that the exhibitor will also license another feature or group of features released by the distributors during a given period. The films are licensed in blocks before they are actually produced. All the defendants, except United Artists, have engaged in the practice. Block-booking prevents competitors from bidding for single features on their individual merits. The District Court held it illegal for that reason and for the reason that it 'adds to the monopoly of a single copyrighted picture that of another copyrighted picture which must be taken and

exhibited in order to secure the first.' That enlargement of the monopoly of the copyright was condemned below in reliance on the principle which forbids the owner of a patent to condition its use on the purchase or use of patented or unpatented materials. See Ethyl Gasoline Corporation v. United States, 309 U. S. 436, 459; Morton Salt Co. v. Suppiger Co., 314 U. S. 488, 491; Mercoid Corp. v. Mid-Continent Investment Co., 320 U. S. 661, 665. The court enjoined defendants from performing or entering into any license in which the right to exhibit one feature is conditioned upon the licensee's taking one or more other features.

"We approve that restriction. The copyright law, like the patent statutes, makes reward to the owner a secondary consideration. In Fox Film Corp. v. Doyal, 286 U. S. 123, 127, Chief Justice Hughes spoke as follows respecting the copyright monopoly granted by Congress, 'The sole interest of the United States and the primary object in conferring the monopoly lie in the general benefits derived by the public from the labors of authors.' It is said that reward to the author or artist serves to induce release to the public of the products of his creative genius. But the reward does not serve its public purpose if it is not related to the quality of the copyright. Where a high quality film greatly desired is licensed only if an inferior one is taken, the latter borrows quality from the former and strengthens its monopoly by drawing on the other. The practice tends to equalize rather than differentiate the reward for the individual copyrights. Even where all the films included in the package are of equal quality, the requirement that all be taken if one is desired increases the market for some. Each stands not on its own footing but in whole or in part on the appeal which another film may have. As the District Court said, the result is to add to the monopoly of the copyright in violation of the principle of the patent cases involving tying clauses."

The difference between the *Paramount* case and this case is that in the *Paramount* case the exhibitors were required to take and pay for poor pictures they did not want to use, in order to get good pictures they did want to use. In this case the licensees are required to take a license and pay royalties on poor patents they do not want to use and in fact do not use in order to get a license under other poor patents they do not use. Surely the vice of the *Paramount* case would not be cured by amending the block-booking arrangement to permit the exhibitor to take only good pictures, but still requiring him to pay for the bad pictures he did not take. Yet this is exactly what the Hazeltine license requires. Royalties must be paid on all sets whether poor patents are used or not—indeed whether any patents are used or not. Hazeltine does not contend in this case that in all of Automatic Radio's sets it uses more than four Hazeltine patents. Automatic Radio denies using any.

Hazeltine's licenses require the payment of royalties on sets which use none of its patents—that is, on industry products which are free of patents. This was condemned by this Court in the case of *United States v. U. S. Gypsum*, 333 U. S. 364, where, in the words of the Court (333 U. S. at 389):

> "* * * the royalty was to be measured by a percentage of the value of all gypsum products, patented or unpatented; * * *".

In that case the Court said at page 400:

> "Patents grant no privilege to their owners of organizing the use of those patents to monopolize an industry through price control, *through royalties for the patents drawn from patent-free industry products* and through regulation of distribution. Here patents have been put to such uses as to collide with the Sherman Act's protection of the public from evil

consequences." United States v. National Lead Co., 332 U. S. 319, 327 (73 U. S. P. Q. 498, 301); Hartford-Empire Co. v. United States, 323 U. S. 386, 406 (64 U. S. P. Q. 18, 28); Standard Oil Co. v. United States, 283 U. S. 163, 170-74 (9 U. S. P. Q. 6, 9-11); Standard Sanitary Mfg. Co. v. United States, 226 U. S. 20." (Emphasis added.)

These two cases establish the law in direct conflict with the decision below.

The practice of permitting a patent owner to tax the entire production of his licensees, whether the patent is used in part or not at all, has been growing alarmingly.

Ohio Citizens Trust Co. v. *Air-Way Electric Appliance Corp.*, 56 F. Supp. 1010, 1012;

International Carbonic Engineering Co. v. *Natural Carbonic Products, Inc.*, 57 F. Supp. 248, 253;

American Optical Co. v. *New Jersey Optical Co.*, 58 F. Supp. 601, 606;

U. S. v. *U. S. Gypsum Co.*, 67 F. Supp. 397, 470 (D. C., D. C., 1946) reversed at 333 U. S. 364;

Pyrene Mfg. Co. v. *Urquhart*, 69 F. Supp. 555;

H-P-M Development Corp. v. *Watson-Stillman Co.*, 71 F. Supp. 906, 912.

All of these cases either cite no authority for their holding, or trace back their only authority to the *Ohio Citizens* case, which itself admittedly had no precedent for its ruling.

The Second and Third Questions Presented.

Under these questions we assert that Hazeltine cannot by means of its patents, or by a license notice attached to

tens of millions of radio sets purportedly made under those patents, restrict the uses to which the sets may be put after they are sold to the public in retail trade. The questions are identical with the first and second questions, respectively, in *General Talking Pictures* v. *Western Electric Co.*, 304 U. S. 175, on rehearing 305 U. S. 124, and substantially identical with the first question presented in *Motion Picture Patents Co.* v. *Universal Film Mfg. Co.*, 243 U. S. 502, 508.

The decision below on this point is in direct conflict with the *Motion Picture Patents* case. In that case the Court said at 243 U. S. 515:

> "The exclusive right to 'vend' a patented article is derived from the same clause of the section of the statute which gives the exclusive right to 'use' such an article, and following the decision of the Button-Fastener case, it was widely contended as obviously sound, that the right existed in the owner of a patent to fix a price at which the patented article might be sold and resold under penalty of patent infringement. But this court, when the question came before it in Bauer v. O'Donnell, supra, rejecting plausible argument, and adhering to the language of the statute from which all patent right is derived, refused to give such a construction to the act of Congress, and decided that the owner of a patent is not authorized by either the letter or the purpose of the law to fix, *by notice*, the price at which a patented article must be sold after the first sale of it, declaring that the *right to vend is exhausted* by a single, unconditional sale, the article sold being thereby *carried outside the monopoly of the patent law* and rendered free of every restriction which the vendor may attempt to put upon it. *The statutory authority to grant the exclusive right to 'use' a patented machine is not greater, indeed, it is precisely the same, as the authority to grant the exclusive right to 'vend'*, and, looking to that authority, for the reasons stated in

> this opinion, we are convinced that the exclusive right granted in every patent must be limited to the invention described in the claims of the patent, and that *it is not competent for the owner of a patent, by notice attached to its machine, to, in effect, extend the scope of its patent monopoly by restricting the use of it* to materials necessary in its operation, but which are no part of the patented invention, or to send its machines forth into the channels of trade of the country *subject to conditions as to use* or royalty to be paid, to be imposed thereafter at the discretion of such patent owner. The patent law furnishes no warrant for such a practice, and the cost, inconvenience, and annoyance to the public which the opposite conclusion would occasion forbid it." (Emphasis added.)

There is no difference between limiting the use of a patented machine to certain unpatented materials used with it, and prohibiting its use entirely for certain purposes.

The Court below held that this Court's decision of the case of *General Talking Pictures Corp.* v. *Western Electric Company*, 304 U. S. 175, was dispositive of this point. The Court said at R. 318:

> "General Talking Pictures Corp. v. Western Electric Company has not been overruled by the Supreme Court. * * * If the case is to be overruled, that must be done by the Supreme Court. Meanwhile it is our duty to follow it."

The *General Talking Pictures* case did not, in our view, overrule the *Motion Picture Patents* case. If it did, however, the full authority of the *Motion Picture Patents* case has been restored by this Court in the case of *United States* v. *Line Material*, 333 U. S. 287. In the *Line Material* case all three opinions of this Court cited the *Motion Picture Patents* case with approval in support of the proposition that

the sale of a patented device exhausts the control which may be exercised over it by the patent owner.

That the *General Talking Pictures* case did not overrule the *Motion Picture Patents* case appears from the opinions of the Court.

In the *General Talking Pictures* case the Court at the first hearing, 304 U. S. 175, by a vote of four to one, held only that use of a patented device sold by a licensee outside the scope of his license to one who bought with knowledge of the limitations in the license, was an infringement. It was held that neither the second or third question here was in the case, and the Court at page 182 expressly refused to answer the third question here (the second question there). Mr. Justice BLACK dissented. On rehearing, 305 U. S. 124, it was expressly held by a vote of four to two that the questions presented were not in the case and should not be answered. Messrs. Justices BLACK and REED dissented. The majority at both hearings consisted of Messrs. Justices McREYNOLDS, BRANDEIS, BUTLER and STONE.

The majority at the first hearing based its decision upon the "controlling" fact that the patented devices in that case, on which the restrictive use notices were placed, were sold outside the scope of the license with the knowledge of the purchaser, and that the purchaser was an infringer for that reason. The majority opinion said, at 304 U. S. 180-181:

> "Both parties knew that fact at the time of the transactions. There is no ground for the assumption that petitioner was 'a purchaser in the ordinary channels of trade'."

In the present case the radios are bought by the public in retail trade.

It thus appears clear that neither the majority nor the minority in the *General Talking Pictures* case intended to depart from the doctrine laid down eleven years before in the *Motion Picture Patents* case, which had expressly overruled *Henry* v. *A. B. Dick Company*, 224 U. S. 1, of five years earlier.

The Fourth Question Presented.

Under this question we assert that it is a misuse of patents to require licensees under a pool of patents to affix restrictive use notices to radio sets sold in retail trade.

Tens of millions of radio sets have been sold to the public bearing a label reading:

> "Licensed by Hazeltine Corporation only for use in homes, for educational purposes, and for private, non-commercial use * * * "

Such marking notice would not be required by Hazeltine if it was not actually effective to restrict the uses to which the public puts its radios.

There is no question but that this is an attempt to extend the monopoly of the patents after that monopoly has been exhausted by the sale of the radios to the public.

That a patented device when sold by the patent owner or his licensee passes beyond the limits of the monopoly has been consistently held by this Court for more than 100 years (see Footnote 1 citing cases at 305 U. S. 128). In the case of *United States* v. *General Electric Co.*, 272 U. S. 476 (1926), the Court said at page 489:

> "It is well settled, as already said, that where a patentee makes the patented article and sells it, he can exercise no future control over what the purchaser may wish to do with the article after his purchase. It has passed beyond the scope of the patentee's rights."

The cases holding that any attempt to extend the monopoly of a patent constitutes a misuse thereof are too recent and too numerous to require extended discussion here. We quote only from *Ethyl Gasoline Corp. v. United States*, 309 U. S. 436 (1940) in which the Court said at page 456:

> "He may not, by virtue of his patent, condition his license so as to tie to the use of the patented device or process the use of other devices, processes or materials which lie outside of the monopoly of the patent licensed; Motion Picture Patents Co. v. Universal Film Mfg. Co., supra; Carbice Corp. v. American Patents Development Corp., 283 U. S. 27, 31, 75 L. Ed. 819, 821; 51 S. Ct. 334; Leitch Mfg. Co. v. Barber Co., 302 U. S. 458, 82 L. Ed. 371, 58 S. Ct. 288; cf. United Shoe Machinery Corp. v. United States, 258 U. S. 451, 462, 66 L. Ed. 708, 719, 42 S. Ct. 363; International Business Machines Corp. v. United States, 298 U. S. 131, 140, 80 L. Ed. 1085, 1091, 56 S. Ct. 701; *or condition the license so as to control conduct by the licensee not embraced in the patent monopoly.* Standard Sanitary Mfg. Co. v. United States, 226 U. S. 20, 57 L. Ed. 107, 33 S. Ct. 9; Interstate Circuit v. United States, 306 U. S. 208, 228 230, 83 L. Ed. 610, 621, 622, 59 S. Ct. 467 * * *." (Emphasis added.)

Hazeltine's license requirement controls the conduct of its licensees by forcing them to apply such a notice restricting use in the attempt to control the conduct of the members of the public purchasing apparatus made by these licensees.

In our view, it constitutes a misuse of pooled patents.

The Fifth Question Presented.

Under this question we assert that a licensee sued for royalties under a pool of 570 patents may, in defense of the

suit, challenge the validity of any of the patents he is charged with using. In this case Hazeltine has charged that four of its 570 patents have been used by Automatic Radio (R. 119-168). It is now well settled that a licensee may challenge validity when patents are being used for a purpose which would constitute a misuse if they are invalid (*Sola* v. *Jefferson*, 317 U. S. 173; *Katzinger* v. *Chicago Metallic*, 329 U. S. 394; *MacGregor* v. *Westinghouse*, 329 U. S. 402).

Certainly, Hazeltine's forcing payment of royalties based on the entire production of its licensees would be a misuse if all its patents were invalid, as constituting an exaction of tribute from an entire industry without any warrant therefor. Automatic Radio should therefore be entitled to attack the validity of the Hazeltine patents asserted against it.

We assert further the right to challenge validity no matter what use is being made of the patents.

In *Pope* v. *Gormully*, 144 U. S. 224 (1892) it was held that a license agreement in which the licensee agreed not to contest the validity of fifty patents, was void and unenforceable because it was contrary to public policy. The Court said:

> "The real question is whether the defendant can estop himself from disputing patents which may be wholly void, or to which the plaintiff may have no shadow of title."

In answering this question, the Court said:

> "It is as important to the public that competition should not be repressed by worthless patents, as that the patentee of a really valuable invention should be protected in his monopoly; and it is a serious question whether public policy permits a man to barter

away beforehand his right to defend unjust actions or classes of actions, though, in an individual case, he may doubtless assent that a judgment be rendered against him, even without notice."

The Court further said:

"With regard to all such matters of public policy, it would seem that no man can bind himself by estoppel not to assert a right which the law gives him on reasons of public policy."

And in finally answering the question, the Court said:

"* * * we are of the opinion that a contract not to set up any defense whatever to any suit that may be begun upon fifty different causes of action is in violation of public policy. See, as pertinent to this question, Home Ins. Co. v. Morse, 87 U. S. 20 Wall. 445 (22:365); Doyle v. Continental Ins. Co., 94 U. S. 535 (24:148); Barron v. Burnside, 121 U. S. 186 (30:915)."

Therefore, if this license agreement is interpreted as creating an estoppel against Automatic Radio which prevents it from challenging the validity of the four patents Hazeltine charges it uses, *the license itself is necessarily void* under this authority and may not be enforced. It necessarily follows that Automatic Radio *may* challenge the validity of the patents, *or* should have judgment in its favor because the contract is void.

Indeed, in view of the strong public policy against the unauthorized extension of patent control beyond the limits fixed by the patent, it is believed that any licensee under a patent pool may now challenge validity regardless of any question of misuse. In the case of *Katzinger* v. *Chicago Metallic*, 329 U. S. 394, the Court said at page 400:

"In Scott Paper Co. v. Marcalus Mfg. Co., 326 U. S. 249, 90 L. Ed. 47, 66 S. Ct. 101, it was held that

> even an assignor who had sold a patent issued to itself was free to challenge the validity of the patent and thereby defeat an action for infringement by showing that the invention had been described in an expired patent. In thus emphasizing the necessity of protecting our competitive economy by keeping open the way for interested persons to challenge the validity of patents which might be shown to be invalid, the Court was but stating an often expressed policy that 'It is the public interest which is dominant in the patent system', Mercoid Corp. v. Mid-Continent Investment Co., 320 U. S. 661, 665, 88 L. Ed. 376, 380, 64 S. Ct. 268 (60 U. S. P. Q. 21, 24) and that the right to challenge 'is not only a private right to the individual, but is founded on public policy which is promoted by his making the defense, and contravened by his refusal to make it.' Pope Mfg. v. Gormully, 144 U. S. 224, 235, 36 L. Ed. 414, 418, 12 S. Ct. 632."

This is reenforced by this Court's statement in the *U. S. Gypsum* case, 333 U. S. at 387-8:

> "In an antitrust suit instituted by a licensee against his licensor *we have repeatedly held that the licensee may attack the validity of the patent under which he was licensed, because of the public interest in free competition;* even though the licensee has agreed in his license not to do so. Sola Electric Co. v. Jefferson Electric Co., 317 U. S. 173, 87 L. ed. 165, 63 S. Ct. 172; Edward Katzinger Co. v. Chicago Metallic Mfg. Co., 329 U. S. 394, 91 L. ed. 374, 67 S. Ct. 416, 424; MacGregor v. Westinghouse Electric & Mfg. Co., 329 U. S. 402, 91 L. ed. 380, 67 S. Ct. 421, 424." (Emphasis added.)

Public policy certainly requires judicial scrutiny of ten patents which have been held to be worthless, plus 560 unadjudicated pooled patents admittedly of even less value, if that is possible, upon which the public is paying millions of dollars a year in royalties and on which patents, and

their successors, the public may have to continue paying in perpetuity unless challenged in this case (*Transparent-Wrap Machine Co.* v. *Stokes & Smith*, 329 U. S. 637).

The citation of *Pope* v. *Gormully* in *Scott Paper* v. *Marcalus* and again in *Katzinger* v. *Chicago Metallic* appears to be of great significance. This reaffirmation of the doctrine of *Pope* v. *Gormully*, 144 U. S. 224 (1892) in the context in which it was cited in the quotation above, seems to leave no doubt of Automatic Radio's right to challenge the validity of Hazeltine's four patents asserted in this action.

Conclusion.

It is accordingly prayed that the petition for writ of certiorari be granted and the judgment below reviewed and reversed.

Respectfully submitted,

FLOYD H. CREWS,
Counsel for Petitioner.

GEORGE K. WOODWORTH,
DARBY & DARBY,
MORRIS RELSON,
Of Counsel.

November 14, 1949.

LIBRARY
SUPREME COURT U.S.

Office Supreme Court U. S.
DEC 15 1949
CHARLES ELMORE CROPLEY

IN THE

United States Supreme Court

October Term 1949

No. 455

AUTOMATIC RADIO MANUFACTURING COMPANY, INC.,

Petitioner,

vs.

HAZELTINE RESEARCH, INC.,

Respondent.

REPLY BRIEF FOR PETITIONER IN SUPPORT OF PETITION FOR WRIT OF CERTIORARI.

Floyd H. Crews,
405 Lexington Avenue,
New York 17, New York,
Counsel for Petitioner.

George K. Woodworth,
25 Kilsyth Road,
Brookline 46, Mass.,

Darby & Darby,
Morris Bilson,
405 Lexington Ave.,
New York 17, N. Y.,
Of Counsel.

IN THE

United States Supreme Court

October Term 1949

No. 455

AUTOMATIC RADIO MANUFACTURING COMPANY, INC.,
Petitioner,

vs.

HAZELTINE RESEARCH, INC.,
Respondent.

REPLY BRIEF FOR PETITIONER IN SUPPORT OF PETITION FOR WRIT OF CERTIORARI.

To the Honorable, the Chief Justice and Associate Justices of the Supreme Court of the United States:

On page 3 of respondent's brief it mentions that Zenith is licensed under its patents.

Respondent fails to mention that it grants licenses under patents which are owned by Zenith (R. 33).

Respectfully submitted,

FLOYD H. CREWS,
Counsel for Petitioner.

GEORGE K. WOODWORTH,
DARBY & DARBY,
MORRIS RELSON,
Of Counsel.

December 15, 1949.

LIBRARY
SUPREME COURT U S

Office - Supreme Court, U. S.
FILED
MAR 1 3 1950
CHARLES ELMORE CROPLEY

IN THE

United States Supreme Court

October Term, 1949

No. 455

AUTOMATIC RADIO MANUFACTURING COMPANY, INC.,

Petitioner,

vs.

HAZELTINE RESEARCH, INC.,

Respondent.

BRIEF FOR PETITIONER

Floyd H. Crews,
405 Lexington Avenue,
New York 17, New York,
Counsel for Petitioner.

George K. Woodworth,
25 Kilsyth Road,
Brookline 46, Mass.,

Darby & Darby,
Morris Relson,
405 Lexington Ave.,
New York 17, N. Y.,
Of Counsel.

INDEX

PAGE

Opinions of the Courts Below 1

Statement of Jurisdiction 1

Statement of the Case 2

Specification of Errors—Questions Presented 8

Summary of Argument 10

Argument:

Point I—(First Question Presented). It is a misuse of patents by the administrator of a pool of 570 patents and 200 patent applications in the radio art to force the radio industry and the public, by means of "standard" licenses outstanding to 130 manufacturers, to pay royalties on the entire production of its licensees, amounting to tens of millions of radio sets, even though none of the patents is used 11

A. Analysis of the cases establishing the rule by this Court that a patent may not be privately enlarged by exercising control over goods which are outside the patent monopoly 12

1. Cases tying in the purchase of unpatented supplies or parts 12

2. Cases prohibiting production or sale of competing unpatented goods 18

3. "Block-booking" 19

4. Any control of unpatented goods by means of patents is a misuse of patents 21

B. Hazeltine's license agreements seek control over unpatented products and thus constitute a misuse of patents 23

Hazeltine's misuse of patents bars enforcement of its patent license agreement 28

PAGE

C. The Opinion Below on this point 29

POINT II—(Second and Third Questions Presented). The owner of a patent, by means thereof, cannot restrict the use made of a device, manufactured under the patent, after the device has passed into the hands of a purchaser in the ordinary channels of trade, with full consideration paid therefor 30

A patent owner, merely by a license notice attached to a device made under a patent, and sold in the ordinary channels of trade, cannot place an enforceable restriction on the purchaser thereof as to the use to which the purchaser may put the device 30

A. Outline of the progressive establishment of the rule by this Court that the sale of a patented article by the patent owner or by a licensee having the power of sale, removes the article from the patent monopoly 31

B. Analysis of the cases where the rule was applied 32

1. Attempted Restrictions on Time of Use 33

2. Attempted Restrictions on Place of Use 34

3. Attempted Restrictions on Resale Prices and Use 36

4. Summary of the Foregoing Cases 38

C. Application of the Rule to "License Notice" Cases. 38

1. Attempted "License Notice" Restrictions on Resale Prices 39

2. Attempted "License Notice" Restrictions on Use 43

a. *General Talking Pictures* Case 45

b. Cases Since the *General Talking Pictures* Case 47

Page

Point III—(Fourth Question Presented). It is a misuse of patents rendering them unenforceable for the administrator of a pool of 570 patents and 200 patent applications to require its licensees to place restrictive use notices on millions of radio sets, sold to the public across the counters of retail stores 51

A. The Opinion Below on Points II and III 54

Point IV—(Fifth Question Presented). A licensee sued for royalties under a pool of 570 patents may challenge the validity of the patents he is charged with using, in defense of the suit 55

Conclusion 59

List of Cases

Adams v. Burks, 17 Wall. 453 31, 34, 35, 40, 41, 42
American Lecithin Co. v. Warfield Co., 105 F. (2d) 207 16

Barker v. Stickney, 1 K. B. 121 38
Barrow v. Burnside, 121 U. S. 186 57
Bauer v. O'Donnell, 229 U. S. 1 13, 32, 36, 37, 39, 40, 42, 45
B. B. Chemical Co. v. Ellis, 314 U. S. 495 17, 21, 28, 29
Bloomer v. McQuewan, 14 How. 539 31, 33, 38, 40, 42, 49
Bloomer v. Millinger, 1 Wall. 340 31
Bobbs-Merrill v. Straus, 210 U. S. 339 39
Boston Store v. American Graphophone Co., 246 U. S. 8 32, 36, 37, 38, 40, 41, 45

Carbice Corp. v. American Patents Development Corp., 283 U. S. 27 14, 16, 21, 28, 44

Detrola v. Hazeltine, 117 F. (2d) 238; reversed, 313 U. S. 259 3
Doyle v. Continental Ins. Co., 94 U. S. 535 57
Dr. Miles Medical Co. v. Park & Sons, 220 U. S. 373 38

Ethyl Gasoline Corp. v. United States, 309 U. S. 436 15

Fox Film Corp. v. Doyal, 286 U. S. 123 20

General Talking Pictures Corp. v. Western Electric Co., 304 U. S. 175 ... 32, 45, 46, 51, 54

Hartford-Empire Co. v. United States, 323 U. S. 386 ... 24

Hazeltine v. Abrams, 7 F. S. 908; on appeal, 79 F. (2d) 329 ... 5

Hazeltine v. Crosley, 39 F. Supp. 775; affirmed, 130 F. (2d) 344 ... 5

Hazeltine v. Electric Service Engineering Corp., 18 F. (2d) 662 ... 3

Hazeltine v. Emerson, 129 F. (2d) 580 ... 5

Hazeltine v. General Motors, 38 F. Supp. 889; on appeal, 131 F. (2d) 34 ... 5

Hazeltine v. General Motors, 72 F. Supp. 138; affirmed, 170 F. (2d) 6; second petition for rehearing denied, 171 F. (2d) 680; cert. den., 336 U. S. 938 ... 5, 6, 8

Hazeltine v. A. H. Grebe, 21 F. (2d) 643 ... 3

Hazeltine v. National Carbon, 6 U. S. P. Q. 235; affirmed, 47 F. (2d) 573 ... 3

Hazeltine v. Radio Corporation of America, 52 F. (2d) 504; affirmed, 59 F. (2d) 203 ... 4

Hazeltine v. R. E. B. Service Corp., 8 F. S. 160 ... 5

Hazeltine v. Sears Roebuck, 5 F. S. 674; on appeal, 79 F. (2d) 238 ... 5

Hazeltine v. Wildermuth, 34 F. (2d) 635; cert. den., 280 U. S. 610 ... 4

Henry v. A. B. Dick Co., 224 U. S. 1 ... 12, 32, 43

Hobbie v. Jennison, 149 U. S. 355 ... 31, 34, 35

Home Ins. Co. v. Morse, 87 U. S. 20 Wall. 445 (22 365) ... 57

International Business Machines Corp. v. United States, 298 U. S. 131 ... 14

International Salt Co. v. United States, 332 U. S. 392 ... 18

Interstate Circuit v. United States, 306 U. S. 228 ... 16

Edw. Katzinger Co. v. Chicago Metallic Mfg. Co., 329 U. S. 394 ... 28, 55, 57, 58

Keeler v. Standard Folding Bed Co., 157 U. S. 659 ... 31, 35, 38, 40

Leitch Manufacturing Co. v. Barber Co., Inc., 302 U. S. 458 ... 15, 16, 21, 28

PAGE

MacGregor v. Westinghouse Electric & Mfg. Co., 329 U. S. 402 28, 55, 58
Mercoid Corp. v. Mid-Continent Invest. Co., 320 U. S. 661 8, 17, 20, 21, 28, 29, 58
Mercoid Corp. v. Minneapolis-Honeywell Regulator Corp., 320 U. S. 680 17, 21, 28
Morton Salt Co. v. G. S. Suppiger Co., 314 U. S. 488 16, 20, 21, 22, 28
Motion Picture Patents Co. v. Universal Film Mfg. Co., 243 U. S. 502 13, 21, 32, 36, 37, 43, 45, 49, 50

National Lockwasher Co. v. G. K. Garrett Co., 137 F. (2d) 255 18

Park & Sons v. Hartman, 153 Fed. 24 38
Pope v. Gormully, 144 U. S. 224 8, 56, 58

RCA v. Lord, 28 F. (2d) 257 18

Scott Paper Co. v. Marcalus Mfg. Co., 326 U. S. 249 57
Scribners v. Straus, 210 U. S. 352 39
Simpson v. Wilson, 4 How. 709 31, 33
Sola Electric Co. v. Jefferson Electric Co., 317 U. S. 173 28, 55, 58
Standard Oil Co. v. United States, 283 U. S. 163 24
Standard Sanitary Mfg. Co. v. United States, 226 U. S. 20 16, 24
Straus v. Victor Talking Machine Co., 243 U. S. 490 32, 36, 40, 42, 45

Taddy v. Sterious, L. R. (1904), 1 Ch. 354, 358 38
Transparent-Wrap Machine Corp. v. Stokes & Smith Co., 329 U. S. 637 21, 22, 23, 28

United Shoe Machinery v. LaChapelle, 212 Mass. 467 23
United Shoe Machinery Corp. v. United States, 258 U. S. 451 13, 16, 18, 25
United States v. General Electric Co., 272 U. S. 476 25, 29, 37, 56
United States v. Line Material Co., 333 U. S. 287 32, 37, 49, 50, 56
United States v. Masonite Corp., 316 U. S. 265 32, 37, 49

PAGE

United States v. National Lead Co., 332 U. S. 319 24
United States v. Paramount Pictures, Inc., 334 U. S. 131 ..... 19, 26
United States v. Univis Lens Co., Inc., 316 U. S. 241 ..... 22, 32, 37, 47
United States v. U. S. Gypsum, 333 U. S. 364 ..... 24, 25, 28, 58

Wilson v. Rousseau, 4 How. 646 ..... 31, 33
Windsor v. McVeigh, 93 U. S. 274 8

Authority

Walter H. Chamberlain, 6 Illinois Law Review 357, January, 1912 39

IN THE

United States Supreme Court

October Term, 1949

No. 455

AUTOMATIC RADIO MANUFACTURING COMPANY, INC.,
Petitioner,
vs.
HAZELTINE RESEARCH, INC.,
Respondent.

BRIEF FOR PETITIONER.

Opinions of the Courts Below.

The opinion of the District Court appears at R. 296 and is reported at 77 Fed. Supp. 493.

The opinion of the Court of Appeals appears at R. 313 and is reported at 176 F. (2d) 799.

Statement of Jurisdiction.

This Court is believed to have jurisdiction to review the judgment below under the provisions of 28 U. S. C. 1254 and 2101(c). The judgment below was entered August 22, 1949 (R. 330). Certiorari was granted by this Court on January 16, 1950 (R. 330).

Statement of the Case.

1. The Court below, Judge Woodbury dissenting (R. 329), affirmed an interlocutory judgment (R. 293) granted on motion for summary judgment (R. 76), ordering royalty payments, an accounting, and an injunction against future breach of a patent license agreement for the manufacture and sale of radio receivers under a pool of 570 patents and 200 patent applications (R. 79) controlled by respondent.

2. Respondent is a successor in interest to all of the patent rights previously held by its parent, Hazeltine Corporation. Respondent and its associated companies, all of which are under common ownership, will be referred to collectively as "Hazeltine", as was done by Judge Ford in his opinion (R. 297) and by the Court below (R. 314). Petitioner will be referred to as "Automatic Radio".

3. Hazeltine's affidavits in support of its motion for summary judgment asserted that four of its patents were used by Automatic Radio (R. 119-168). This was disputed (R. 188, 195, 207-246), raising a substantial issue of fact which precluded recovery on summary judgment for the use of patents (Rule 56(c) F. R. C. P.). Summary judgment was nevertheless granted because Hazeltine's "standard" licenses require the payment of royalties on all radio sets made, even though none of its patents is used in any of them (R. 299-300). (The complaint does not charge that any of Hazeltine's patents is being used by Automatic Radio.) The enforcement of royalties for structures outside the scope of the patents is asserted by Automatic Radio to be a misuse of pooled patents which precludes a recovery. This is the specific ground on which Judge Woodbury dissented from the decision below (R. 329-330).

4. Hazeltine attempts to restrict the use to which radio receivers may be put, after purchase from its licensees by the public through retail stores, by requiring the following restrictive use notice to be placed on every set (R. 14; Art. VI, Sec. 2). This is asserted by Automatic Radio to be another misuse of patents precluding a recovery:

> "'Licensed by Hazeltine Corporation only for use in homes, for educational purposes, and for private, non-commercial use, under one or more of the following patents and under pending applications:' followed by the word 'Patent' and the numbers of the patents which are, in the opinion of Licensor, involved in apparatus of the types licensed hereunder manufactured by one or more licensees of Licensor."

5. Automatic Radio denies that it is using in its sets any valid patent controlled by Hazeltine (R. 46, 188, 195), and asserts the right to challenge the validity of any patent Hazeltine asserts it is using, in defense of a suit for royalties under the pool of patents.

6. Hazeltine has been operating as a patent holding company for approximately 25 years. In about 1923, Professor Hazeltine of the Stevens Institute of Technology invented the "Neutrodyne" circuit for radio receivers for which he was granted three United States patents, Nos. 1,450,080, 1,489,228 and 1,533,858 (R. 172). Hazeltine Corporation was organized to exploit these patents. All three patents have been held valid and infringed by the Courts:

Hazeltine v. *Electric Service Engineering Corp.*, 18 F. (2d) 662 (S. D. N. Y., 1926);

Hazeltine v. *A. H. Grebe*, 21 F. (2d) 643 (E. D. N. Y., 1927);

Hazeltine v. *National Carbon*, 6 U. S. P. Q. 235 (E. D. N. Y., 1930); affirmed, 47 F. (2d) 573 (C. C. A. 2, 1931);

Hazeltine v. *Radio Corporation of America*, 52 F. (2d) 504 (S. D. N. Y., 1931); affirmed, 59 F. (2d) 203 (C. C. A. 2, 1932);

Hazeltine v. *Wildermuth*, 34 F. (2d) 635 (C. C. A. 2, 1929), cert. den. 280 U. S. 610.

7. Millions of dollars were collected in royalties by Hazeltine on these three patents (R. 173) all of which have now long since expired and all of which were rendered obsolete in 1927 by the screen grid tube (R. 173).

8. Before and since 1927 Hazeltine acquired patent rights from other companies and individuals, forming a vast pool of radio patents owned by it or under which it has licensing rights, which now include some 570 patents and 200 patent applications (R. 79). Most of these are listed at R. 20-38 and 93-101, with the names of the owners in most cases.

9. Hazeltine has continuously collected royalties from a large segment of the radio industry since the introduction of the Neutrodyne circuit in about 1924. It currently has 130 radio manufacturing companies as licensees (R. 79). These royalties have amounted to many additional millions of dollars since the Neutrodyne patents became obsolete (R. 174; R. 79-80; R. 249).

10. Hazeltine has, however, spent only a very small percentage of the money it has received as royalties, for research on radio receivers (R. 173(h); 248), with the result that none of its patents has any value. Every finally adjudicated patent on which it has sued since the Neutrodyne patents has been held invalid, or not infringed; or both (R. 179). These patents, and the citations, are:

a. Patent No. 1,648,808 was held invalid in *Hazeltine* v. *Radio Corporation of America*, 52 F. (2d) 504 (S. D. N. Y.,

1931); invalid and not infringed in *Hazeltine* v. *Sears Roebuck*, 5 F. Supp. 674 (S. D. N. Y., 1933); and invalid on appeal, 79 F. (2d) 238 (C. C. A. 2, 1935).

b. Patents Nos. 1,755,114 and 1,755,115 were held not infringed in *Hazeltine* v. *Sears Roebuck*, 5 F. Supp. 674 (S. D. N. Y., 1933); and invalid and not infringed on appeal, 79 F. (2d) 238 (C. C. A. 2, 1935).

c. Patent No. 1,879,863 was held invalid in *Hazeltine* v. *Abrams*, 7 F. Supp. 908 (E. D. N. Y., 1934) and invalid on appeal, 79 F. (2d) 329 (C. C. A. 2, 1935); and not infringed in *Hazeltine* v. *R. E. B. Service Corp.*, 8 F. Supp. 100 (E. D. N. Y., 1934). The reissue thereof, Re. 19,744, was held valid and infringed in *Detrola* v. *Hazeltine*, 117 F. (2d) 238 (C. C. A. 6, 1940), which was reversed for invalidity at 313 U. S. 259.

d. Patents Nos. 1,913,604 and 2,022,514 were held not infringed in *Hazeltine* v. *Crosley*, 39 F. Supp. 775 (S. D. Ohio, W. D., 1941); affirmed, 130 F. (2d) 344 (C. C. A. 6, 1942).

e. Patent No. 2,111,483 was held invalid and not infringed in *Hazeltine* v. *General Motors*, 38 F. Supp. 880 (D. Del., 1941) and invalid on appeal, 131 F. (2d) 34 (C. C. A. 3, 1942).

f. Patent No. 1,710,035 was held not infringed in *Hazeltine* v. *Emerson*, 129 F. (2d) 580 (C. C. A. 2, 1942).

g. Patents Nos. 1,951,685 and 2,041,273 were held invalid in *Hazeltine* v. *General Motors*, 72 F. Supp. 138 (E. D. Mich., 1947); affirmed at 170 F. (2d) 6 (C. A. 6, 1949), second petition for rehearing denied, 171 F. (2d) 680 (C. A. 6, 1948), certiorari denied 336 U. S. 938.

11. Hazeltine has kept its licensees in line by a succession of suits against non-licensees and their dealers (R. 188-189). It actually sued 26 Atwater-Kent dealers simultaneously (34 F. (2d) 50). Despite these suits some large companies, who could afford to defend suits of this magnitude, have refused to take a Hazeltine license or pay tribute to Hazeltine for many years, going back to 1927 (R. 79; R. 178-179; R. 249-251).

12. The 10 worthless post-Neutrodyne patents listed above in No. 10 are admittedly the best patents Hazeltine owns. It has been able to continue to levy tribute from the radio industry without a single valid patent to warrant royalty payments, only because on each trial Hazeltine has spent more than $100,000, thus keeping each licensee in perpetual fear of a suit of this magnitude directed against it, if it failed to renew its license.

Mr. Woodworth's affidavit at R. 188 quotes the following statement of Mr. Laurence B. Dodds, Executive Vice-President and trial attorney of Hazeltine, made in open court in 1947 at the trial of patents 1,951,685 and 2,041,273 in the cases of *Hazeltine Corporation* v. *General Motors Corporation* in Michigan, Civil Action Nos. 2426 and 2436 (reported at 72 F. Supp. 138), from the stenographic transcript of the trial of those cases at pages 1167 and 1169 (R. 188-189):

> "Now, contrary to your Honor's impression, it is not the weak patents which get to the court, it is the strong patents, and the reason for that is economics. We cannot afford, because it is economically unsound, to bring an infringement action on a minor patent. Each of these patents which has been stricken down enjoyed the prima facie validity of a grant by the Patent Office. Each was evaluated by our patent counsel highly enough to risk an expensive infringe-

ment litigation, which we have found runs in excess of $100,000 per case . . .

. . . . . .

"Now, it has been testified that we own about 450 patents. Of these somewhat less than 100 are in use, and of those only a handful are of the importance of the patents which we have here in suit."

13. The patents involved in that suit were in their turn held invalid (72 F. Supp. 138; affirmed 170 F. (2d) 6; second petition for rehearing denied, 171 F. (2d) 680; certiorari denied, 336 U. S. 938).

14. Because of the admitted pathetic weakness of its patent position, Hazelting, by its own assertions (Binns, Hazeltine's president, R. 81, (f)), in 1937 abandoned any attempt to collect royalties for the use of its patents. Instead it has provided in its "standard" license contracts since 1937 for the payment of royalties on *all* sets made by its licensees *regardless of patents*. (Judge FORD's opinion, R. 299; Hazeltine's motion for summary judgment, R. 76, paragraph (b); license agreement, R. 9, Article IV, Section 1; Binns, R. 81-82(f); opinion of Court below, R. 319-320; dissenting opinion of Judge WOODBURY, R. 329-330). The royalties demanded in this action on Hazeltine's worthless patents amount to 25% of Automatic Radio's net profits for the years 1946 and 1947 (R. 178).

15. As of September 1, 1942, Hazeltine issued to Automatic Radio the license here in issue, under all the patents and patent applications in its pool, settling previous differences between them (Binns, R. 83), and exchanging mutual releases (R. 42). The license agreement is printed at R. 5.

16. The previous differences also involved the payment of royalties on Hazeltine's worthless patents. Hazeltine

had previously sued for royalties in the Superior Court for Suffolk County, Massachusetts. The considered advice of Automatic Radio's patent counsel at that time was that it was not using any Hazeltine patent in its sets (R. 202). Nevertheless Automatic Radio, being financially unable to defend the suit (R. 202), a final decree was entered therein on December 3, 1941 (R. 113) which decreed that Automatic Radio admitted that all of Hazeltine's patents were valid for their entire terms (R. 116). An action is now pending to reopen and set aside that decree as in violation of public policy (*Pope* v. *Gormully*, 144 U. S. 224 (1892); *Mercoid Corp.* v. *Mid-Continent Invest. Co.*, 320 U. S. 661, 670 (1944)) and void (*Windsor* v. *McVeigh*, 93 U. S. 274 (1876)).

17. In support of Hazeltine's motion for summary judgment, Wheeler's affidavit asserted the use by Automatic Radio of only four of its patents, namely Wheeler patents Nos. 1,951,685, 2,041,273, 1,958,027 and 2,015,327 (Wheeler, R. 119-168). This was denied by Automatic Radio (R. 193, par. 12; R. 188, 7(a); R. 207-246). The first two of these patents have since been invalidated in the *General Motors* case, 72 F. Supp. 138, affirmed at 170 F. (2d) 6, second petition for rehearing denied, 171 F. (2d) 680, certiorari denied, 336 U. S. 938. The latter two patents named cover only tubes, as to which Automatic Radio is already licensed because it purchases its tubes from R. C. A. (R. 196). R. C. A. is licensed by Hazeltine to sell these tubes (R. 196; 289-291).

Specification of Errors—Questions Presented.

Petitioner urges that the Court below erred in refusing to answer the First, Fourth and Fifth questions presented in the affirmative and the Second and Third questions in the negative.

The questions presented are as follows:

1. Is it a misuse of patents by the administrator of a pool of 570 patents and 200 patent applications in the radio art; to force the radio industry and the public, by means of its "standard" licenses outstanding to 130 radio manufacturers, to pay royalties on the entire production of its licensees, amounting to tens of millions of radio sets, even though none of the patents is used? This question should be answered yes.

2. Can the owner of a patent, by means thereof, restrict the use made of a device manufactured under the patent, after the device has passed into the hands of a purchaser in the ordinary channels of trade, and full consideration paid therefor? This question should be answered no.

3. Can a patent owner, merely by a "license notice" attached to a device made under the patent, and sold in the ordinary channels of trade, place an enforceable restriction on the purchaser thereof as to the use to which the purchaser may put the device? This question should be answered no.

4. Is it a misuse of patents by the administrator of a pool of 570 patents and 200 patent applications to require its licensees to place restrictive use notices on millions of radio sets sold to the public across the counters of retail stores? This question should be answered yes.

5. May a licensee, sued for royalties under a pool of 570 patents, challenge the validity of the patents he is charged with using, in defense of the suit? This question should be answered yes.

Summary of Argument.

POINT 1: The provisions of the Hazeltine patent license agreement requiring the licensee to pay royalty on its gross production of radio sets, whether unpatented or patented, constitute a misuse of patents, as an attempted extension of the patent monopoly to control unpatented goods. Any extension of the patent monopoly to control unpatented goods is a misuse of patents. This is true whether control is attempted by tying in the purchase of unpatented goods for use with patented machines or processes; or by prohibiting the production or sale of unpatented goods; or by tying in the purchase of one monopoly right as a condition for another; or, as here, by exacting royalty on unpatented goods, which effectively imposes a private tax on, and reduces competition in, such unpatented goods. Such attempted control over unpatented goods is of the same type as has been consistently condemned by this Court.

POINT 2: The attempted restriction by the Hazeltine license agreement, upon the purchaser of patented or unpatented goods in the ordinary channels of trade from a Hazeltine licensee, as to the fields of use to which such a purchaser may put these goods, is unlawful under the decisions of this Court. This Court has held that patent owners may not control the time of use, or place of use, or resale price, of patented goods, or require the use of unpatented goods with patented goods, after sale thereof by the patent owner or his licensee, and that a "license notice" attached to such goods to accomplish such a restriction of use, may not be enforced.

POINT 3: The requirement in the Hazeltine license that the licensee shall place, upon all patented or unpatented goods sold by him to purchasers in the ordinary course of

trade, a license notice restricting the uses to which such purchaser may put these goods, is a misuse of patents, rendering them unenforceable here.

Point 4: The misuses of patents just referred to permit Automatic Radio, as licensee of Hazeltine, to challenge in the present suit the validity of the Hazeltine patents which it is charged with using. Furthermore, even apart from such misuse, Automatic Radio may challenge the validity of such patents, since Hazeltine has pooled 770 patents and patent applications owned by itself and others, not for the purpose of use, but to exact tribute from the industry and the public.

ARGUMENT.

POINT I.

(First Question Presented)

It is a misuse of patents by the administrator of a pool of 570 patents and 200 patent applications in the radio art, to force the radio industry and the public, by means of "standard" licenses outstanding to 130 radio manufacturers, to pay royalties on the entire production of its licensees, amounting to tens of millions of radio sets, even though none of the patents is used.

This suit is an attempt, by means of patents, to tax standard articles of commerce which are entirely free from any of the patents, under the guise of a "convenient" method of determining royalty for the use of the patents.

This is but the newest phase of the apparently unending effort of patent holders to extend their patent monopoly beyond its lawful scope by tying in control over unpatented

goods. For more than thirty years this Court has stricken down every such attempt and consistently held that the monopoly which may be exercised is restricted to the monopoly granted.

Such prior attempts have been directed toward (a) requiring the purchase of unpatented goods from the patentee for use with patented apparatus or processes, (b) prohibiting the purchaser or lessee of patented apparatus or the licensee under patents from producing or selling unpatented competing goods or (c) conditioning a license under one monopoly grant upon accepting another and different license ("block-booking").

The direct applicability to the present situation of each of these proscribed modes of control over unpatented goods will be shown below.

A. Analysis of the Cases Establishing the Rule by This Court That a Patent May Not Be Privately Enlarged by Exercising Control Over Goods Which Are Outside the Patent Monopoly.

1. *Cases Tying in the Purchase of Unpatented Supplies or Parts.*

In *Henry* v. *A. B. Dick Co.*, 224 U. S. 1 (1912) this Court, by a four to three decision, held effective a notice attached to a patented device requiring that only the patentee's unpatented supplies be used therewith, and ruled that a violation of that condition was an infringement of the patent. That conclusion was arrived at by reasoning that if a patentee, by virtue of his patent, could reserve *all* uses of his patented device, he surely could restrict some uses. The fallacy in that argument was of course that it failed to recognize that rights with respect to the *entire*

device, collectively, are not necessarily rights with respect to any isolated part.

The entire question was soon re-examined, and the *Dick* case was expressly overruled in the case of *Motion Picture Patents Co.* v. *Universal Film Mfg. Co.*, 243 U. S. 502 (1917). There the manufacturer of a patented motion picture projector sought, by virtue of a license notice thereof, to limit its use, by the purchaser, to films supplied by the patent owner. This Court held (p. 516)

> "* * * it is not competent for the owner of a patent, by notice attached to its machine, to, in effect, extend the scope of its patent monopoly by restricting the use of it to materials necessary in its operation".

In reaching this result, this Court held that the exclusive right to use a patented device is no greater than the exclusive right to vend, and in prior decisions, such as *Bauer* v. *O'Donnell*, 229 U. S. 1 (1913), the Court had interpreted the exercise once of the right to vend as freeing the article "of every restriction which the vendor may attempt to put upon it" (*Motion Picture Patents* case, 243 U. S. 502, 516).

In a long line of subsequent cases, this Court with unvarying consistency has stricken down attempt after attempt to extend the patent monopoly to control the use of unpatented goods. In each instance some new scheme was devised by the patent holder. In each instance this Court has looked at the effect of the arrangement, and has refused to sanction the control of patent-free goods, despite the new cloak in which each situation was dressed.

In *United Shoe Machinery Corp.* v. *United States*, 258 U. S. 451 (1922), a patent owner leased its patented machines with the restrictions that, among others, the

lessee could use the patented machines only in working upon goods produced by other machines also leased from the patent owner; that the lessee could use with the patented machines only unpatented supplies bought from lessor; that the lessee could use only the patented machines in working on the products of other machines leased by the patent owner; that the lessee would pay a royalty on the products of competing machines as well as on the products of the lessor's machines but that a lower royalty rate would apply if the lessee agreed not to use the lessor's machines on products of competing machines of others. This Court held that these clauses had the effect of preventing use of unpatented competing machines beyond the scope of any patent on the lessor's machines and were illegal, therefore, because in violation of the Clayton Anti-Trust Act.

In *Carbice Corp.* v. *American Patents Development Corp.*, 283 U. S. 27 (1931), the patent owner was in the business of selling unpatented solid carbon dioxide for use in a container, the patent covering the combination of the container and the carbon dioxide. A competing supplier of the unpatented solid carbon dioxide was sued for contributory infringement under the patent. In holding the patent unenforceable this Court stated (283 U. S. at 32):

> "The attempt to limit the licensee to the use of unpatented materials purchased from the licensor is comparable to the attempt of a patentee to fix the price at which the patented article may be resold" (citing cases). "In both classes of cases, courts deny relief against those who disregard the limitations sought to be imposed by the patentee beyond the legitimate scope of its monopoly."

In the case of *International Business Machines Corp.* v. *United States* (1936), 298 U. S. 131, the lease of patented machines by the patent owner on condition that unpatented

cards be used therewith was held illegal, in violation of the Clayton Anti-Trust Act.

In *Leitch Manufacturing Co.* v. *Barber Co., Inc.* (1938), 302 U. S. 458, in the words of this Court

> "The question for decision is whether the owner of a process patent may, by suit for contributory infringement, suppress competition in the sale of unpatented material to be used in practicing the process."

Here the patent owner merely sold the unpatented supplies for practicing the process, but did not practice the process itself, and there was no express agreement requiring the user of the process to purchase its unpatented supplies from the patent owner. However, this Court ruled that under the circumstances there was an implied license requiring the purchase of unpatented materials from the patent owner only, which illegally extended the monopoly of the patent, and this Court denied enforcement of the patent in a suit for contributory infringement against another supplier of the unpatented supplies. This Court said at page 463:

> "By the rule there declared" (in the Carbice case) "**every use of a patent as a means of obtaining a limited monopoly of unpatented material is prohibited.** It applies whether the patent be for a machine, a product or a process. **It applies whatever the nature of the device by which the owner of the patent seeks to effect such unauthorized extension of the monopoly.**" *

In *Ethyl Gasoline Corp.* v. *United States* (1940), 309 U. S. 436, where the patent owner sold a fluid to oil refiners for mixing with gasoline to provide a patented gasoline

---

* All emphasis in this Brief has been added, unless otherwise noted.

product, and licensed the refiners to sell only to licensed jobbers, and where the patent owner collected no royalty on the patented gasoline but made its profits only from the sale of the fluid, this Court said, at page 459:

> . . . . . .
>
> "**The patent monopoly of one invention may no more be enlarged for the exploitation of a monopoly of another,** see Standard Sanitary Mfg. Co. v. United States, 226 U. S. 20, 57 L. ed. 107, 33 S. Ct. 9, supra, **than for the exploitation of an unpatented article,** United Shoe Machinery Corp. v. United States, 258 U. S. 451, 66 L. ed. 708, 42 S. Ct. 363, supra; Carbice Corp. v. American Patents Development Corp., 283 U. S. 27, 75 L. ed. 819, 51 S. Ct. 334, supra; Leitch Mfg. Co. v. Barber Co., 302 U. S. 458, 82 L. ed. 371, 58 S. Ct. 288, supra; American Lecithin Co. v. Warfield Co. (C. C. A. 7th) 105 F. (2d) 207, **or for the exploitation or promotion of a business not embraced within the patent.** Interstate Circuit v. United States, supra (306 U. S. 228-230, 83 L. ed. 621, 622, 59 S. Ct. 467)."

In *Morton Salt Co.* v. *G. S. Suppiger Co.*, 314 U. S. 488 (1942), the patent owner made and leased patented salt-depositing machines and leased those machines only upon condition that all the unpatented salt tablets used in the machines be purchased from a subsidiary of the patent owner. The patent owner then sued a competing manufacturer of the patented machines for direct patent infringement. This Court refused to enforce the patent on the ground that the attempted control over unpatented materials constituted a misuse of the patent. The Court said at page 494:

> "**It is the adverse effect upon the public interest** of a successful infringement suit in conjunction with the patentee's course of conduct **which disqualifies**

> **him to maintain the suit**, regardless of whether the particular defendant has suffered from the misuse of the patent. . . .
>
> "**It is unnecessary to decide whether respondent has violated the Clayton Act**, for we conclude that **in any event the maintenance of the present suit** to restrain petitioner's manufacture or sale of the alleged infringing machines **is contrary to public policy** and that the district court rightly dismissed the complaint for want of equity."

In another case decided the same day, *B. B. Chemical Co.* v. *Ellis*, 314 U. S. 495 (1942), this Court refused to enforce a method patent in a direct infringement suit, where the patent owner, without written license, supplied unpatented materials for use in the patented method. This Court said that it was against public policy to maintain any suit for patent infringement where the sale of unpatented materials for use by the patented method operated as a license to use the patent with that material alone, and thus restrained competition with the defendant in the sale of the unpatented material. This Court went on to say at page 498:

> "The patent monopoly is not enlarged by reason of the fact that it would be more convenient to the patentee to have it so or because he cannot avail himself of its benefits within the limits of the grant."

In *Mercoid Corp.* v. *Mid-Continent Investment Co.*, 320 U. S. 661 (1944), and *Mercoid Corp.* v. *Minneapolis-Honeywell Regulator Corp.*, 320 U. S. 680 (1944), this Court refused to hold as a contributory infringer one who made and sold only one unpatented element of a patented combination where the patent owner's exclusive licensee gave the right to sub licensees to use the patent only when the unpatented elements were bought from the licensee.

In *International Salt Co.* v. *United States*, (1947), 332 U. S. 392, the lessor of a patented machine who required his lessees to use unpatented materials sold by the lessor was held to be guilty of violating the anti-trust laws.

In each of these cases there was an attempt to control unpatented materials or products under the guise of a patent. In each case this Court was zealous in preventing such control, either by declaring it to be a violation of the anti-trust laws or by denial of the enforcement of the patent in a suit either for direct or for contributory infringement.

2. *Cases Prohibiting Production or Sale of Competing Unpatented Goods.*

All the foregoing cases involved attempted control of unpatented goods by forcing their purchase from the patent holder or its licensee. The complementary type of control has also been tried, namely, the attempt to prevent the licensee or purchaser from making or using competing unpatented goods.

The *United Shoe Machinery* case, *supra*, in addition to tying in the purchase of unpatented goods, also involved such an attempted control over competing unpatented machinery, which was held to violate the anti-trust laws.

Another such case was *RCA* v. *Lord* (1928), 28 F. (2d) 257, C. C. A. 3, where the Court, following the principles of this Court's decisions, held that a patent owner may not sell patented goods on the condition that the purchaser should not deal in competing goods.

In *National Lockwasher Co.* v. *G. K. Garrett Co.* (1943), 137 F. (2d) 255, C. C. A. 3, the Court held that a patent holder may not exact a promise that its licensee would not produce competing goods, as a condition for a patent license, relying upon this Court's decision in the cases discussed above.

In both cases this Court denied certiorari (287 U. S. 641; 305 U. S. 649).

It should be noted that the Court below in the present case recognized the propriety of decisions such as these (R. 320), but failed to recognize that the present situation falls into the same broad category as those of these prior decisions and impels the same holding.

Therefore this further control over unpatented goods, by prohibiting their sale or production, has been declared to be outside the patent grant and hence illegal.

3. *"Block-Booking".*

In *United States* v. *Paramount Pictures, Inc.*, 334 U. S. 131 (1948), a new wrinkle in attempted control outside the monopoly grant was involved. This was "block-booking", described by this Court at page 156 as:

> "(5) Block-Booking.
>
> "Block-booking is the practice of licensing, or offering for license, one feature or group of features on condition that the exhibitor will also license another feature or group of features released by the distributors during a given period. The films are licensed in blocks before they are actually produced. All the defendants, except United Artists, have engaged in the practice. Block-booking prevents competitors from bidding for single features on their individual merits. The District Court held it illegal for that reason and for the reason that it **'adds to the monopoly of a single copyrighted picture that of another copyrighted picture which must be taken and exhibited in order to secure the first.' That enlargement of the monopoly of the copyright was condemned below in reliance on the principle which forbids the owner of a patent to condition its use on the purchase or use of patented or unpatented materials.**

See Ethyl Gasoline Corporation v. United States, 309 U. S. 436, 459; Morton Salt Co. v. G. S. Suppiger Co., 314 U. S. 488, 491; Mercoid Corp. v. Mid-Continent Invest. Co., 320 U. S. 661, 665. The court enjoined defendants from performing or entering into any license in which the right to exhibit one feature is conditioned upon the licensee's taking one or more other features.

We approve that restriction. The copyright law, like the patent statutes, makes reward to the owner a secondary consideration. In Fox Film Corp. v. Doyal, 286 U. S. 123, 127, Chief Justice Hughes spoke as follows respecting the copyright monopoly granted by Congress, 'The sole interest of the United States and the primary object in conferring the monopoly lie in the general benefits derived by the public from the labors of authors.' It is said that reward to the author or artist serves to induce release to the public of the products of his creative genius. But the reward does not serve its public purpose if it is not related to the quality of the copyright. **Where a high quality film greatly desired is licensed only if an inferior one is taken, the latter borrows quality from the former and strengthens its monopoly by drawing on the other.** The practice tends to equalize rather than differentiate the reward for the individual copyrights. Even where all the films included in the package are of equal quality, the requirement that all be taken if one is desired increases the market for some. Each stands not on its own footing but in whole or in part on the appeal which another film may have. As the District Court said, **the result is to add to the monopoly of the copyright in violation of the principle of the patent cases involving tying clauses.**"

Thus, this form of extension of monopoly was also outlawed.

4. *Any Control of Unpatented Goods by Means of Patents Is a Misuse of Those Patents.*

Thus, in every situation where control of unpatented goods was involved, this Court has ruled consistently that such attempted control was an illegal extension of the patent monopoly beyond its legitimate confines. This was aptly summarized in the case of *Transparent-Wrap Machine Corp. v. Stokes & Smith Co.*, 329 U. S. 637 (1947), where this Court said at page 640:

> "In a long and consistent line of cases the Court has held that **an owner of a patent may not condition a license so as to tie to the use of the patent the use of other materials, processes or devices which lie outside of the monopoly of the patent.** Motion Picture Patents Co. v. Universal Film Mfg. Co., 243 U. S. 502; Carbice Corp. v. American Patents Dev. Corp., 283 U. S. 27; Leitch Mfg. Co. v. Barber Co., 302 U. S. 458; Morton Salt Co. v. Suppiger Co., 314 U. S. 488; B. B. Chemical Co. v. Ellis, 314 U. S. 495; Mercoid Corporation v. Mid-Continent Invest. Co., supra; Mercoid Corp. v. Minneapolis Honeywell Regulator Co., 320 U. S. 680. As stated in Morton Salt Co. v. Suppiger Co., supra, p. 492, '• • • the public policy which includes inventions within the granted monopoly excludes from it all that is not embraced in the invention. It equally forbids the use of the patent to secure an exclusive right or limited monopoly not granted by the patent office and which it is contrary to public policy to grant.' **If such practice were tolerated, ownership of a patent would give the patentee control over unpatented articles which but for the patent he would not possess.** 'If the restraint is lawful because of the patent, the patent will have been expanded by contract. That on which no patent could be obtained would be as effectively protected as if a patent had been issued. Private business would function as its own patent office and im-

pose its own law upon its licensees.' Mercoid Corp. v. Mid-Continent Co., supra, page 667."

No matter what form of control over unpatented goods has been attempted, such control has been held to be a misuse of patents.

As Mr. Chief Justice STONE said in *United States* v. *Univis Lens Co., Inc.*, 316 U. S. 241, at 251 (1942):

> "In construing and applying the patent law so as to give effect to the public policy which limits the granted monopoly strictly to the terms of the statutory grant, Morton Salt Co. v. G. S. Suppiger Co., 314 U. S. 488, 62 S. Ct. 402, 86 L. Ed. 363, **the particular form or method by which the monopoly is sought to be extended is immaterial.**"

Furthermore, although the anti-trust laws have been violated in many of the above instances, this is not an essential element in these cases. As this Court has said in the *Transparent-Wrap* case, 329 U. S. at 641:

> "The requirement that a licensee under a patent use an unpatented material or device with the patent might violate the anti-trust laws but for the attempted protection of the patent. Id. **The condemnation of the practice, however, does not depend on such a showing. Though control of the unpatented article or device falls short of a prohibited restraint of trade or monopoly, it will not be sanctioned.** Morton Salt Co. v. Suppiger Co., supra. For it is the tendency in that direction which condemns the practice and which, if approved by a court either through enjoining infringement or enforcing the covenant would receive a powerful impetus." Id."

The real vice of each case has rather been the attempted exploitation of the patent to extend its monopoly to control over unpatented goods.

B. Hazeltine's License Agreements Seek Control Over Unpatented Products and Thus Constitute a Misuse of Its Patents.

Hazeltine's activities have been described with uncanny accuracy by this Court in the case of *Transparent-Wrap Machine Corp.* v. *Stokes & Smith Co.*, 329 U. S. 637 (1947), at pages 646-7:

> "He who acquires two patents acquires a double monopoly. As patents are added to patents a whole industry may be regimented. The owner of a basic patent might thus perpetuate his control over an industry long after the basic patent expired. Competitors might be eliminated and an industrial monopoly perfected and maintained. **Through the use of patent pools or multiple licensing agreements the fruits of invention of an entire industry might be systematically funnelled into the hands of the original patentee.** See United Shoe Machinery v. LaChapelle, 212 Mass. 467, 99 N. E. 289."

Apt words for what Hazeltine has done! By agreement and purchase it has pooled 770 patents and applications for patent, of at least five different owners, all in the single field of radio, and has entered into 130 license agreements. And with not a single valid patent to justify *any* royalties, it now illegally compels its licensees to pay royalties on unpatented radio sets, and, as shown below, compels the public to buy additional, unwanted sets, to increase its tribute.

Despite its multitude of patents, Hazeltine makes no attempt to seek a return based upon use of the these patents. Rather, it exacts a tribute upon the entire production of its licensees, both patented and unpatented. It *ignores* the use of its patents, so long as it can collect royalties from its licensees, regardless of these patents. Its patents are used as an economic weapon, a threat, for the exaction of tribute, by its scheme of private taxation of the radio industry.

We submit that the collection of royalties under a vast pool of patents for the manufacture and sale of articles using none of the patents, by means of the overpowering threat of disastrous litigation, is a clear misuse of patents which prevents their enforcement.

The requirement for payment of royalties on industry products which are free of patents, such as Hazeltine attempts here, has been condemned by this Court in *United States* v. *U. S. Gypsum*, 333 U. S. 364 (1948), where, in the words of the Court, at page 389:

> "* * * the royalty was to be measured by a percentage of the value of all gypsum products, patented or unpatented; * * * *"*

This Court then said, at page 400:

> "Patents grant no privilege to their owners of organizing the use of those patents to monopolize an industry through price control, **through royalties for the patents drawn from patent-free industry products** and through regulation of distribution. Here patents have been put to such uses as to collide with the Sherman Act's protection of the public from evil consequences. United States v. National Lead Co., 332 U. S. 319, 327; Hartford-Empire Co. v. United States, 323 U. S. 386, 406; Standard Oil Co. v. United States, 283 U. S. 163, 170-74; Standard Sanitary Mfg. Co. v. United States, 226 U. S. 20."

The present situation differs merely in detail from those of the cases discussed above, but is identical in principle. In place of tying to the patent license the use of particular unpatented goods, or a prohibition against making or selling unpatented goods, or the "block-booking" of other licenses, all of which have already been condemned by this Court, Hazeltine ties in and exacts a royalty on unpatented goods, as a condition for granting a license under its pool of patents to practice patented inventions.

The exaction of royalties on unpatented goods is exactly analogous to the requirement that unpatented goods be purchased from the patent holder. In each case there is an attempted expansion of the monopoly to assert control in a sphere where the patent grant itself gives no warrant therefor.

In each case the patent holder is seeking a return which is not, in the words of this Court in *United States v. General Electric Co.*, 272 U. S. 476 at 490, **"normally and reasonably adapted to secure the pecuniary reward for the patentee's monopoly"**. Rather, the patent holder seeks to derive its profits, not from the invention itself, but from unpatented goods.

The Hazeltine agreement is just another tying in provision—tying in a *toll* on *unpatented* goods to the grant of rights under patents. It is just as illegal as any previously stricken down.

To exact royalties on unpatented products is the same in principle as, and differs only in degree from, an absolute prohibition to make such unpatented products, and has the same tendency to restrain competition. Hazeltine has merely added a new dress to the old situation—instead of prohibiting unpatented production, it *taxes* it.

This effect of such a tax on unpatented goods has been recognized by this Court. In *United Shoe Machinery Corp. v. United States, supra*, 258 U. S. 451 at 456-7, this Court said that the exaction of royalty upon goods produced by other than the licensed machines contributed to preventing the licensee from using competing machinery, and thereby restrained trade.

Also, in *United States v. U. S. Gypsum Co., supra*, this Court held that exacting royalties upon unpatented prod-

nets contributed to an unlawful restraint of trade, stating, 333 U. S. at page 385:

> "The license agreements provided that royalties should be paid on the sales of all board sold, patented or unpatented, **a provision which would tend to discourage the production of higher cost unpatented board.**"

Thus it has been recognized that exacting payments based on unpatented goods, in the guise of royalties, can effectively reduce production of unpatented goods, which of course restrains trade and competition, just as an explicit prohibition of production does. The result of both restraints on the public is the same: the public is deprived of the right freely to buy unpatented goods, either by a total cessation of manufacture by the licensee, or by a decrease in manufacture by the licensee, or by an increase in price to cover the tribute exacted from the licensee.

"The power to tax is the power to destroy". Only if sanctioned by the patent laws can such a restraint be tolerated. But here the restraint is upon *unpatented* goods, and hence completely outside any lawful patent monopoly.

The Hazeltine license is just as much "block-booking" as in the *Paramount Pictures* case. The difference between the *Paramount* case and this one is that in the *Paramount* case the exhibitors were required to take a license for and to pay for poor pictures they did not want to use, in order to get a license for good pictures they did want to use, while in this case the licensees are required to pay royalties on unpatented products (on which there can be no license) in order to get a license for patented products. Surely the vice of the *Paramount* case would not be cured by amending the block-booking arrangement to permit the exhibitor to take only good pictures, *but still requiring him*

to pay for the bad pictures *he did not take*. Yet this is exactly what the Hazeltine license requires. Royalties must be paid on all sets whether any patents are used or not.

If the principle of basing royalties on gross production, including unpatented goods, is sanctioned here, a patent holder can control any kind of production, without regard to what the patent covers. Thus Hazeltine could then exact royalty on the entire production of a licensee, whether of radio or television sets or any other goods.

This point may perhaps better be demonstrated by applying it to an apparently extreme and dramatic example. Governor Dewey prosecuted racketeers in New York for enforcing the payment of "royalties" on every suit of clothes dry cleaned in the New York area by means of stink bombs, acid, murder, and other curious devices. Suppose those racketeers had owned the Hazeltine patents—radio patents—and had had each dry cleaning establishment sign Hazeltine's "standard" license, changed only to call for royalties on each suit cleaned, whether the patents were used or not. If in a suit for enforcement of that license against a dry cleaning establishment, this defense of misuse of patents had been set up, it could not seriously be urged that the license is merely a convenient mode of computing the cost of the privilege of using the patents should the licensee desire to make such use. True, the dry cleaners were terrorized into signing the "standard" printed form, but *so were the licensees*, by the overhanging threat of disastrous litigation. True, the patents do not validly apply to dry cleaning, but *neither do they validly apply to the manufacture of radio receivers*. The example chosen may appear to be extreme, but is not. The analogy is perfect.

Obviously, the patent laws were never designed for such a use, and to issue a license agreement of such latitude is a clear misuse of patents.

Hazeltine's Misuse of Patents Bars Enforcement of Its Patent License Agreement.

It follows as a corollary from Hazeltine's misuse of patents that it may not enforce its license agreement with petitioner.

It is now the well established rule of law, expressed by this Court in language incapable of being misunderstood or ignored, that a patent owner who uses his patents to create, acquire or maintain control of commerce outside the scope of the monopoly defined by the patents themselves, has misused his patents rendering them unenforceable. (*Carbice, Leitch, Morton Salt, B. B. Chemical* and both *Mercoid* cases, *supra.*)

By the same token, such misuse of patents renders any license agreement involving these patents unenforceable. (*Sola* v. *Jefferson*, 317 U. S. 173; *Katzinger* v. *Chicago Metallic*, 329 U. S. 394; *MacGregor* v. *Westinghouse*, 329 U. S. 402; *Transparent-Wrap Machine Corp.* v. *Stokes & Smith Co.*, 329 U. S. 637, 641.)

This is an action in equity in which an injunction was granted. As this Court said in the *Morton Salt* case, 314 U. S. at 492:

> "It is a principle of general application that courts, and especially courts of equity may appropriately withhold their aid where the plaintiff is using the right asserted contrary to the public interest."

In that case, as well as in the *Carbice, Leitch, B. B. Chemical* and *Mercoid* cases, this Court refused to give relief in equitable actions to enjoin patent infringement, where misuse of patents was shown.

Hazeltine's misuse of its patents therefore bars its enforcement of its license agreements, and is a complete defense in this action.

C. The Opinion Below on This Point.

In the opinion below, the Court of Appeals adopted the statement of the District Court that the gross production royalty was "a convenient mode of operation" (R. 319). In this, the Court below ignored this Court's repeated holdings that mere convenience cannot prevail over illegality. As stated in *B. B. Chemical Co. v. Ellis*, 314 U. S. 495 at 498 (1942):

> "The patent monopoly is not enlarged by reason of the fact that it would be more convenient to the patentee to have it so * * *";

In *Mercoid Corp. v. Mid-Continent Investment Co.*, 320 U. S. 661 at 666 (1944), this Court said:

> "The necessities or convenience of the patentee do not justify any use of the monopoly of the patent to create another monopoly."

The fallacy in the reasoning of the Court below lay in the failure to appreciate that a royalty of a fixed sum per year, which the Court below upheld as lawful, may represent the actual value of the right to use the patents, in the judgment of the parties concerned, and does not *per se* involve any extension of the patent monopoly to cover unpatented goods. It can be an arrangement "normally and reasonably adopted to secure the pecuniary reward for the patentee's monopoly" (*U. S. v. G. E.*, 272 U. S. 476, 490). In the present situation, however, the royalty exacted has no relation to the value of the right to use the patents. For example, the royalty increases upon increased production of unpatented goods, while the use of the patents does not increase and may decrease, showing complete lack of correlation between royalty and value of the right to use the patents.

When this royalty tax is imposed upon 130 licensees, all in a single industry, a material restraint of trade and impairment in competition results, which is a misuse of patents making them unenforceable here.

POINT II.

(Second and Third Questions Presented)

The owner of a patent, by means thereof, cannot restrict the use made of a device manufactured under the patent, after the device has passed into the hands of a purchaser in the ordinary channels of trade, with full consideration paid therefor.

A patent owner, merely by a license notice attached to a device made under a patent, and sold in the ordinary channels of trade, cannot place an enforceable restriction on the purchaser thereof as to the use to which the purchaser may put the device.

Under this heading we assert that a patent owner may not control the uses of a patented device after its sale by the patent owner or his licensee. *A fortiori*, such a patent owner cannot control an *unpatented* device under these circumstances.

The restrictive use notice which Hazeltine requires its licensees to place on sets in its attempt to control such uses is printed on page 3 hereof. This notice is required to be placed on all sets made, whether or not any Hazeltine patent is used in the set.

A. Outline of the Progressive Establishment of the Rule by This Court That the Sale of a Patented Article by the Patent Owner Or by a Licensee Having a Power of Sale, Removes the Article From the Patent Monopoly.

(1) This principle was first expressed and applied so as to give a right of use unlimited in point of time, to one who had purchased a patented article from a person whose patent rights, either as owner or territorial assignee, were expressly limited to the original term of the patent. In those cases, therefore, the holder of the extended term (extensions were then permitted) was held to have no rights with respect to the article so purchased.*

(2) The rule was thereupon extended to cases involving purchases of patented articles from territorial assignees who themselves had no right to make, sell, or use outside the territory to which they were restricted. It was there held (a) that the *purchasers* were not bound under the patent laws by the territorial restrictions of their vendors, and could use the articles elsewhere;*1 (b) that such vendors were not chargeable with infringement for deliberately selling for use in other territory;*2 and (c) that dealers who purchased such patented articles from territorially limited vendors, could sell or use them elsewhere as well, free from the monopoly of the patent.*3 In each of the cases it was held that though all of the parties concerned had full knowledge of the vendor's restricted rights, the purchasers of the patented articles nevertheless took free from all restrictions under the patents.

---

* *Wilson* v. *Rousseau*, 4 How. 646; *Simpson* v. *Wilson*, 4 How. 709; *Bloomer* v. *McQuewan*, 14 How. 539; *Bloomer* v. *Millinger*, 1 Wa. 340.

*1 *Adams* v. *Burks*, 17 Wall. 453.

*2 *Hobbie* v. *Jennison*, 149 U. S. 355.

*3 *Keeler* v. *Standard Folding Bed Co.*, 157 U. S. 659.

(3). Thereupon the attempt by patentees to retain control over patented articles after their sale, by the device of express restrictions in the guise of "license notices" or special agreements with the vendor, intended to enable the patentee to control the resale prices [*1] or the use of those articles by the purchaser,[*2] met with a like fate. In each, as this Court stated in the *Boston Store* case, the reason for the decision was the simple but fundamental ground that, title to the patented article having passed, the monopoly of the patent law cannot "be extended beyond the scope of that law, or, in other words, applied to articles after they have gone beyond its reach" (246 U. S. 8, 26).

(4) In one case [*3] a purchaser of a patented device from a licensee, who used the device for a purpose for which the licensee was not authorized to sell, was held as an infringer. However, in subsequent decisions, this Court reaffirmed the basic proposition that sale of a patented device by a patentee or his licensee exhausts the patentee's monopoly and control.[*4]

B. Analysis of Cases in Which the Rule Was Considered Or Applied.

From the summary just concluded, it is evident that every attempted restriction on a patented device after it has been sold, by means of the patent under which it was made (with but one temporary exception), has been invali-

---

[*1] *Bauer* v. *O'Donnell*, 229 U. S. 1; *Straus* v. *Victor Talking Machine Co.*, 243 U. S. 490; *Boston Store* v. *American Graphophone Co.*, 246 U. S. 8.

[*2] *Motion-Picture Patents Co.* v. *Universal Film Co.*, 243 U. S. 502, overruling *Henry* v. *A. B. Dick Co.*, 224 U. S. 1.

[*3] *General Talking Pictures Corp.* v. *Western Electric Co.* (1938), 304 U. S. 175, on rehearing 305 U. S. 124.

[*4] *United States* v. *Univis Lens Co., Inc.*, 316 U. S. 241 (1942); *United States* v. *Masonite Corp.*, 316 U. S. 265 (1942); *United States* v. *Line Material Co.*, 333 U. S. 287 (1948).

dated by this Court on the ground that a sale exhausts the monopoly of the patent owner as to the particular article involved.

1. *Attempted Restrictions on Time of Use.*

Thus, in *Wilson* v. *Rousseau*, 4 How. 646, and *Simpson* v. *Wilson*, 4 How. 709 (1846) this Court held that one who *purchased* a patented article from a patent owner during the original term of the patent, continued to have the right to use it beyond any limitation in time, though the rights of assignee of the original patent itself were held to have expired with the term, as against the claims of one who had obtained an extension of the patent term under the then existing law. These cases lay the foundation of the rule that the sale of a patented chattel exhausts the patent rights of the seller.

This rule was redefined and again applied six years later in *Bloomer* v. *McQuewan*, 14 How. 539 (1852), in another case dealing with an attempted restriction on the *time of enjoyment*. It was there held that the purchaser of a patented article during the period to which the patent was first limited, was entitled to continue to use it during the extended term, though the right of his vendor—a territorial assignee—in the patent itself, was confined to the original term. This Court thereupon distinguished between the grant of a patent right such as the *license*, on the one hand, and the *sale* of an article made under that right, on the other hand. Chief Justice TANEY, who wrote the prevailing opinion in this and the earlier *Wilson* cases, *supra*, stated this distinction to be "a plain one", and held (p. 549):

> "* * * the purchaser of the implement or machine for the purpose of using it in the ordinary pursuits of life, stands on different ground. In using it, he exercises no rights created by the act of Congress,

> nor does he derive title to it by virtue of the franchise or exclusive privilege granted to the patentee. * * * **And when the machine passes to the hands of the purchaser, it is no longer within the limits of the monopoly.**"

2. *Attempted Restrictions on Place of Use.*

The problem was presented anew in three cases between 1873 and 1895, but this time from the viewpoint of attempted restrictions on the *place of use* of patented articles after sale. In each instance this Court held that such restrictions would not be recognized by the patent law once the patented articles had passed by sale into the channels of trade.

Thus, in *Adams* v. *Burks*, 17 Wall. (84 U. S.) 453 (1873), it was held that one who purchased a patented article in the restricted territory of his vendor, acquired the unrestricted right to use it anywhere. This Court held in that case, at page 459:

> "But, in the essential nature of things, when the patentee, or the person having his rights, sells a machine or instrument whose sole value is in its use, he receives the consideration for its use and he parts with the right to restrict that use. The article, in the language of the court, passes without the limit of the monopoly."

In *Hobbie* v. *Jennison*, 149 U. S. 355 (1893), it was held that a patent assignee for one territory was not an infringer when he sold to a person who, to his knowledge, intended to use the patented articles so purchased, in the territory of another assignee. The plaintiff in the *Hobbie* case sought to escape the implications of the decision in *Adams* v. *Burks* by asserting that in the *Adams* case the vendor of the patented device was unaware of the allegedly

unauthorized use to which the purchaser put the article, but this Court, after stating that there was full knowledge by all parties in both cases, held (*Hobbie* v. *Jennison*, 149 U. S. 355, 363):

> "But we are of opinion that the case of **Adams v. Burks** cannot be so limited; * * * and that neither the actual use of the pipes in Connecticut, or a knowledge on the part of the defendant that they were intended to be used there, can make him liable."

The question then arose in *Keeler* v. *Standard Folding Bed Co.*, 157 U. S. 659 (1895), whether a *dealer* could be restrained from selling patented articles in his store in Massachusetts, having purchased them from the Michigan assignee with knowledge that the right to make, use and sell them for Massachusetts belonged to another. This Court refused to hold the dealer as an infringer, stating, in effect, that a free citizen may buy anywhere, and, being the owner of what he buys, may sell it anywhere. Reviewing *Adams* v. *Burks* and *Hobbie* v. *Jennison*, this Court held (pp. 666-667):

> "* * * as between the owner of a patent on the one side and a purchaser of an article made under the patent on the other, **the payment of a royalty once, or, what is the same thing, the purchase of the article from one authorized by the patentee to sell it, emancipates such article from any further subjection to the patent** throughout the entire life of the patent, even if the latter should be by law subsequently extended beyond the term existing at the time of the sale.
>
> * * * * * *
>
> "Upon the doctrine of these cases we think it follows that one who buys patented articles of manufacture **from one authorized to sell them** becomes possessed of an absolute property in such articles, unrestricted in time or place. * * *

> "The conclusion reached does not deprive a patentee of his just rights, because no article can be unfettered from the claim of his monopoly without paying its tribute. The inconvenience and annoyance to the public that an opposite conclusion would occasion are too obvious to require illustration."

3. *Attempted Restrictions on Resale Prices and Use.*

The doctrine of the foregoing cases was restated and reapplied in *Bauer* v. *O'Donnell*, 229 U. S. 1 (1913); *Straus* v. *Victor Talking Machine Co.*, 243 U. S. 490 (1917); *Boston Store* v. *American Graphophone Co.*, 246 U. S. 8 (1918), and *Motion Picture Patents Co.* v. *Universal Film Mfg. Co.*, 243 U. S. 502 (1917), of which cases the three first named were concerned with the efficacy of attempted *resale price* restrictions and the fourth with attempted limitations on *use*. In each of these cases, the patent owner sought to accomplish, by the device of "license notices" attached to patented articles after their sale, what this Court had refused to sanction in the earlier decisions we have just reviewed. Here, too, this Court, on the same principle which governed its decisions in those earlier cases, invalidated the devices as an attempt to project the patent monopoly beyond its rightful scope.

Thus, in passing upon attempted restrictions as to *resale prices* in *Bauer* v. *O'Donnell*, 229 U. S. 1, this Court held (p. 17):

> "The right to vend conferred by the patent law has been exercised, and the added restriction is beyond the protection and purpose of the act. This being so, the case is brought within that line of cases in which this court from the beginning has held that a **patentee who has parted with a patented machine by passing title to a purchaser has placed the article beyond the limits of the monopoly** secured by the patent act."

Some years later, this Court summarized its prior decision in *Bauer* v. *O'Donnell* in words strikingly apposite now, in the case of *Boston Store of Chicago* v. *American Graphophone Co.*, 246 U. S. 8, 23:

> "In other words, the decision was that a **patentee could not use and exhaust the right to sell, as to which a monopoly was given him by the patent law, and yet by conditions and stipulations continue that law in effect so as to make it govern things which by his voluntary act were beyond its scope.**"

In the same case, speaking of the rejection of attempted *use* restrictions in the *Motion Picture Patents* case, 243 U. S. 502, this Court continued (p. 25):

> "Reiterating the ruling in the two last cases (referring to **Bauer v. O'Donnell** and **Straus v. Victor Talking Machine Co.**) it was again decided that, as by virtue of the patent law, **one who had sold a patented machine and received the price, and had thus placed the machine so sold beyond the confines of the patent law, could not by qualifying restrictions as to use, keep under the patent monopoly a subject to which the monopoly no longer applied.**"

In the case of *United States* v. *General Electric Company*, 272 U. S. 476 (1926), this Court said at page 489:

> "**It is well settled, as already said, that where a patentee makes the patented article and sells it, he can exercise no future control over what the purchaser may wish to do with the article after his purchase. It has passed beyond the scope of the patentee's rights.**"

These principles have been expressly followed in recent cases. *United States* v. *Univis Lens Co., Inc.*, 316 U. S. 241 (1942); *United States* v. *Masonite Corp.*, 316 U. S. 265 (1942); *United States* v. *Line Material Co.*, 333 U. S. 287 (1948).

4. *Summary of the Foregoing Cases.*

These decisions show a consistency in ruling which is outstanding in the respect that it has not been departed from or modified, regardless of the guise in which attempted restrictions have been presented.

The fundamental reason underlying all of the decisions appears to be the simple fact that this Court recognized and gave full effect to the fact that when the patented article was sold and the price paid, the article was forever outside the monopoly of the patent, and became, like any ordinary chattel,* owned by the purchaser, to be used or done with as he saw fit, without hindrance by or under the control of the patent owner.

C. Application of the Rule to "License Notice" Cases.

When this Court, in its decisions from *Bloomer* v. *McQuewan*, 14 How. 539 to *Keeler* v. *Standard Folding Bed Co.*, 157 U. S. 659, construed the exercise of the right to vend under the patent law as granting to the purchaser of the patented article full title without permitting the patent owner to retain the incidents of it, patent owners renewed their battle to fasten control on patented articles after their sale, by the device of attaching "License Notices" to those articles, or by restrictive agreements with the purchasers. However, that method fared equally badly, for this Court with unfailing regularity brushed aside "the guise of license or otherwise" (*Boston Store* v. *American Grapho-*

* *Dr. Miles Medical Co.* v. *Park & Sons*, 220 U. S. 373, citing with approval *Park & Sons* v. *Hartman*, 153 Fed. 24, 39 in which it was held that "a covenant which may be valid and run with land will not run with or attach itself to a mere chattel". See, to the same effect, *Taddy* v. *Sterious*, L. R. (1904), 1 Ch. 354, 358; and *Barker* v. *Stickney* (1919), 1 K. B. 121, 132.

phone Co., 246 U. S. 8, 24) and refused to hold such purchasers as infringers.

Some time before the "license notice" issue was presented to this Court in patent cases, it had decided against the practice in the closely analogous copyright cases of *Bobbs-Merrill* v. *Straus*, 210 U. S. 339 (1908) and *Scribners* v. *Straus*, 210 U. S. 352 (1908), in which resale price restrictions by "notice" on copyrighted books, after their sale, were held void. The use of such "license notices" on sold patented articles was termed "dangerous doctrine" by a former Assistant Commissioner of Patents,* who observed and warned against the material growth of such practice, and its occasional support in the lower Federal Courts before 1912. When the question did come before this Court the entire system of "license notice" restrictions sought to be attached to patented articles upon their sale, was finally repudiated in its entirety.

1. *Attempted "License Notice" Restrictions on Resale Prices.*

In *Bauer* v. *O'Donnell*, 229 U. S. 1, the first of the series of patent cases in which the issue was raised, a retail drug store proprietor was sued for patent infringement for having disregarded a notice on original Sanatogen packages he purchased, purporting to license their "sale or use at a price not less than one dollar". The notice also recited the purchase as constituting an acceptance of the condition, with right of reverter in the event of violation.

The case came up on certificate from the Court of Appeals of the District of Columbia and "the question presented restricted the case to determining whether the right to limit the price existed because within the monopoly

* Walter H. Chamberlain in 6 Illinois Law Review 357 (January, 1912).

granted by the patent law" (*Boston Store v. American Graphophone*, 246 U. S. 8, 22-23, interpreting the *Bauer* decision).

In deciding that no right under the patent law was involved, and that the purchaser was free to use the patented article at will, Mr. Justice Day, writing for this Court, said (229 U. S. 1, 13):

> "The sale of a patented article is not essentially different from the sale of a book. In each case to vend is to part with the thing for a consideration."

In reaching the conclusion that once the right to vend, conferred by the patent law, has been exercised, "the added restriction is beyond the protection and purpose of the act" (229 U. S. 1, 17), this Court expressly predicated its decision *inter alia*, on *Bloomer* v. *McQuewan*,[*1] *Adams* v. *Burks*,[*2] and *Keeler* v. *Standard Folding Bed Co.*,[*3] thus bringing its decision precisely in line with the doctrine *fundamental* to all those cases, that once title to a patented article has passed to a purchaser, and the right to vend thus exhausted with respect thereto, the article has passed "beyond the limits of the monopoly secured by the patent act" (*Bauer* v. *O'Donnell*, 229 U. S. 17).

In *Straus* v. *Victor Talking Machine Co.*, 243 U. S. 490 (1917), this Court was next called upon to decide the legal effect of a "License Notice" affixed to a patented machine. The Victor Company manufactured phonographs and distributed them under "license contracts", reserving title to the machine until expiration of its patent and compliance with certain conditions appearing on a "License Notice". This license authorized dealers to convey a license to use

[*1] 14 How. 539.
[*2] 84 U. S. (17 Wall.) 453.
[*3] 157 U. S. 659.

the machine upon a minimum payment of $200. The defendant bought a quantity of the machines at less than the fixed price stated in the "License Notice". The Victor Company sought to enjoin this alleged infringement by preventing the defendant from selling them, presumably at lower prices.

This Court, in dismissing the bill for infringement, held the "Notice" invalid, and the full purport of its holding was later summarized in the following language in *Boston Store of Chicago* v. *American Graphophone Co.*, 246 U. S. 8, 24:

> "Basing its action upon the substance of things, and disregarding mere forms of expression as to license, etc., the court held that the contract was obviously * * * not different from the one which had come under review in Bauer v. O'Donnell. Thus brushing away disguises resulting from forms of expression in the contract, and considering it in the light of the patent law, it was held that **the attempt to regulate the future price or the future marketing of the patented article was not within the monopoly granted by the patent law** * * *."

It is interesting to note that this Court, undeceived by the patentee's use of the word "license" to cloak what was really a sale, found that the facts involved an attempted price restriction on patented articles "after they have passed into the possession of dealers and of the public", and held:

> "We conclude that it falls within the principle of Adams v. Burks, 17 Wall. 453, 456 and of Bauer v. O'Donnell, 229 U. S. 1."

Adams v. Burks, on the page indicated in the *Straus* opinion, holds that upon sale "the article, in the language of the Court, passes without the limit of the monopoly"

("the language of the Court" refers to *Bloomer* v. *McQuewan*, 14 How. 539). That, also, is the principle restated in *Bauer* v. *O'Donnell*. Price limitation was no issue in *Adams* v. *Burks*, or *Bloomer* v. *McQuewan*. The only principle common to the *Adams*, *Bloomer*, *Bauer*, and *Straus* cases is that *a sale, whether with or without a license notice*, takes the patented article out of the patent monopoly.

Thereafter, in *Boston Store of Chicago* v. *American Graphophone*, 246 U. S. 8, the "license notice" method which had failed of recognition in the *Bauer* and *Straus* v. *Victor* cases, was supplanted by written contracts between marketing agents of the patentee and purchasers of the patented articles whose resale prices were sought to be controlled thereby.

The District Court in that case conceded that a patentee

> "cannot make a notice attached to the article discharge the function of a 'covenant running with the land'" (225 Fed. 785, 787).

but was misled by the contract device, and sustained the bill alleging patent infringement because of a violation of that agreement.

This Court, however, on a certificate from the Circuit Court of Appeals for the Seventh Circuit in that case, inquiring whether "the recited facts disclose that some right or privilege granted by the patent laws has been violated" answered in the negative and dismissed the bill. After reviewing its prior decisions invalidating restrictions sought to be imposed under the patent law on patented articles after their sale, this Court held (pp. 25, 26):

> "Thus concluding, it becomes, we think unnecessary to do more than say that we are of opinion that the attempt in argument to distinguish the cases by the assumption that they rested upon a mere question

> of the form of notice on the patented article, or the right to contract solely by reference to such notice, is devoid of merit, since the argument disregards the fundamental ground upon which, as we have seen, the decided cases must rest."

That "fundamental ground" of which this Court spoke, was that the monopoly of the patent cannot (p. 26):

> "be extended beyond the scope of that law, or, in other words, applied to articles after they have gone beyond its reach."

Indeed, so firmly did this Court deem that rule to be established that it expressly rejected any further attempts "judicially to correct doctrines which by reiterated decisions have become conclusively fixed" (p. 26).

2. *Attempted "License Notice" Restrictions on Use.*

The doctrines of the foregoing cases were again presented to this Court, but from a different aspect, in *Henry v. A. B. Dick Co.*, 224 U. S. 1, and *Motion Picture Patents Co. v. Universal Film Mfg. Co.*, 243 U. S. 302. In those cases renewed attempts were made by patent owners to control patented articles in the hands of purchasers, this time by "license notices" attached to the articles and purporting to restrict their *use*.

As indicated above, in the *Dick* case, by a four to three decision later expressly overruled, such a notice, requiring the patentee's unpatented supplies to be used with the patented device, was held effective and its violation recognized as an infringement of the patent.

The *Dick* case was expressly overruled in the *Motion Picture Patents* case. There this Court had presented to it two closely analogous questions—(1) whether a patentee who licenses the manufacture and sale of the patented de-

vice can, by a mere notice attached to the article, limit the purchaser from such licensee to films which were not part of the patented machines, and (2) whether the patentee, by a mere notice so attached, can reserve conditions to be fixed in the future.

Both questions were answered in the negative by this Court. With respect to the "License Notice", it held (p. 509):

> **"The statutes relating to patents do not provide for any such notice and it can derive no aid from them."**

This Court thereupon proceeded to hold that (p. 516):

> "* * * we are convinced that the exclusive right granted in every patent must be limited to the invention described in the claims of the patent, and that **it is not competent for the owner of a patent, by notice attached to its machine, to, in effect, extend the scope of its patent monopoly by restricting the use of it** to materials necessary in its operation, but which are no part of the patented invention, or to send its machines forth into the channels of trade of the country **subject to conditions as to use** or royalty to be paid, to be imposed thereafter at the discretion of such patent owner. The patent law furnishes no warrant for such a practice, and the cost, inconvenience, and annoyance to the public which the opposite conclusion would occasion forbid it."

(To the same effect, see the later case of *Carbice Corp.* v. *American Patents Development Corp.* (1931), 283 U. S. 27.)

Of course, there is no distinction in principle between attempting to restrict the *materials to be used* by an attached "License Notice", and attempting to restrict the *use of the device itself*, as is done by Hazeltine. Both of the attempted restrictions consist of nothing more or less

than attempts on the part of the patent owner to "extend the scope of its patent monopoly" in a manner neither contemplated nor permitted by the patent statutes.

The only distinction that exists between the decisions of this Court in the *Bauer, Straus, Boston Store* and *Motion Picture Patent* cases, on the one hand, and the case at bar, is in the character of the restrictions sought to be effected by the "License Notice" attached to the goods sold, a distinction without a difference. Under these cases no valid restriction on the use of a patented article purchased from the patentee or his licensee, and the full price paid therefor, can be effected by a mere "License Notice" attached to that article.

4. The *General Talking Pictures* Case.

In the case of *General Talking Pictures Corp.* v. *Western Electric Co.*, 304 U. S. 175 (1938), the Supreme Court granted certiorari to pass on three questions. The first two of these questions were again considered by the Court on rehearing which is reported at 305 U. S. 124. The two questions, as quoted from 305 U. S. 125, are identical, respectively, with the second and third questions here.

In the *General Talking Pictures* case the patent owner sued, as an infringer, the purchaser of a patented device from a licensee having a license limited to sales for non-commercial uses, where the purchaser knew that the licensee had no license to sell for the commercial uses to which the purchaser intended to put the device, and where the licensee knew that the purchaser intended to put the device to commercial use.

The majority of the Court by a vote of 5 to 2 on the rehearing decided that the two questions presented were not in the case, because of the "controlling facts" (304 U. S.

at p. 180) of knowledge on the part of the licensee and purchaser of the limitations in the license, and expressly reserved decision on both questions.

This must be distinguished from the present case, where these questions are squarely raised as elements in Hazeltine's misuse of patents.

The majority *General Talking Pictures* opinion, written by Mr. Justice BRANDEIS, speaking for himself and for Messrs. Justices HUGHES, MCREYNOLDS, BUTLER and STONE, failed to distinguish between a license limited to certain uses *by the licensee*—such as a manufacturer licensed to use a patented machine in canning beans—and a license imposing restrictions on the use of a patented device *after the device itself is sold* by a patent owner or his licensee, such as a radio sold across the counter in a retail store.

The vigorous dissenting opinion of Mr. Justice BLACK, in which Mr. Justice REED concurred, not only makes this clear, but expressly held that both questions presented, on which the majority reserved decision, should have been answered in the negative.

In the present case the radio sets made by Hazeltine licensees are sold to the public across the counters of retail stores. The purchasers therefore do not have notice of any license restrictions unless the restrictive use license notices are themselves effective to provide such notice. If they are effective, they provide a device for effecting the control by the patent owner of patented devices after their sale, which this Court has refused to permit for over 100 years.

It should be noted that the present Hazeltine agreements go far beyond the license notice considered by this Court in the *General Talking Pictures* case, since the notice here is required to be put upon *all licensed apparatus*, which in-

cludes not only patented apparatus, *but also completely patent-free apparatus.* In this respect, in addition, the present case is fully distinguishable from the *General Talking Pictures* case.

However, if the Court regards the cases as indistinguishable, we submit that the *General Talking Pictures* case has been overruled by subsequent decisions.

b. Cases Since the *General Talking Pictures* Case.

Any thought that the *General Talking Pictures* case has established any departure from traditional doctrine on remote control of use of apparatus once sold by a patentee has been dispelled by the cases decided since then.

In *United States* v. *Univis Lens Co.*, 316 U. S. 241 (1942), this Court again decided that sale of a patented or unpatented product by the licensee of the patent owner exhausted the patent monopoly. The Court said (at p. 250):

> "The patentee may surrender his monopoly in whole by the sale of his patent or in part by the sale of an article embodying the invention. His monopoly remains so long as he retains the ownership of the patented article. **But sale of it exhausts the monopoly in that article and the patentee may not thereafter, by virtue of his patent, control the use or disposition of the article.** Bloomer v. McQuewan, 14 How. (U. S.) 539, 549, 550, 14 L. ed. 532, 537; Adams v. Burke, 17 Wall. (U. S.) 453, 21 L. ed. 700; Hobbie v. Jennison, 149 U. S. 355, 37 L. ed. 766, 13 S. Ct. 879. Hence the patentee cannot control the re-sale price of patented articles which he has sold, either by resort to an infringement suit, or, consistently with the Sherman Act (unless the Miller-Tydings Act applies), by stipulating for price maintenance by his vendees. Bauer v. O'Donnell, 229 U. S. 1, 57 L. ed. 1041, 33 S. Ct. 616, 50 L. R. A. (N. S.) 1185, Ann. Cas. 1915A 150; Boston Store v.

American Graphophone Co., 246 U. S. 8, 62 L. ed. 551, 38 S. Ct. 257, Ann. Cas. 1918C 447; Straus v. Victor Talking Mach. Co., 243 U. S. 490, 61 L. ed. 866, 37 S. Ct. 412, L. R. A. 1917E 1196, Ann. Cas. 1918A 955; Ethyl Gasoline Corp. v. United States, 309 U. S. 436, 456, 457, 84 L. ed. 852, 861, 862, 60 S. Ct. 618, and cases cited.

. . . . . .

"In construing and applying the patent law so as to give effect to the public policy which limits the granted monopoly strictly to the terms of the statutory grant, Morton Salt Co. v. G. S. Suppiger Co., 314 U. S. 488, ante, 363, 62 S. Ct. 402, the particular form or method by which the monopoly is sought to be extended is immaterial.

"**The first vending of any article manufactured under a patent puts the article beyond the reach of the monopoly which that patent confers.** Whether the licensee sells the patented article in its completed form **or sells it before completion** for the purpose of enabling the buyer to finish and sell it, he has equally parted with the article, and made it the vehicle for transferring to the buyer ownership of the invention with respect to that article. To that extent **he has parted with his patent monopoly in either case**, and has received in the purchase price every benefit of that monopoly which the patent law secures to him. If he were permitted to control the price at which it could be sold by others he would extend his monopoly quite as much in the one case as in the other, and he would extend it beyond the fair meaning of the patent statutes and the construction which has hitherto been given to them."

The specific holding was thus that, after sale, the price of uncompleted lens blanks (which were *unpatented*) or of completed and patented lens blanks, could not be fixed by the patentee or its licensee. It is clear that exactly the

same reasoning applies to *use* after sale. No distinction in principle can be drawn between these types of after-sale control, and the authorities relied upon in this *Univis* case impel a negative answer to the second and third questions in this case.

The concurrently decided case of *United States* v. *Masonite Corp.*, 316 U. S. 265 (1942), is to the same effect. That case reaffirmed the old line of cases from *Bloomer* v. *McQuewan* on, and held that sale by the patentee to a *del credere* agent "exhausts his limited privilege" (p. 279).

These conclusions are strongly reenforced by this Court's recent opinions in *United States* v. *Line Material Co.*, 333 U. S. 287 (1948). The specific question decided was that price fixing under pooled patents is illegal even if the patents are valid.

Three opinions were written in the *Line Material* case, the majority opinion, a separate concurring opinion by four justices, and a dissenting opinion by three. *All three opinions expressly reaffirm the old cases, and all cite, with approval the Motion Picture Patents case.*

The minority opinion, by Mr. Justice Burton, says (333 U. S. at 342, footnote 16):

> "The instant case also is to be distinguished sharply from those in which the parties to a license have sought to fix prices for the resale by the license(e) of patented products previously sold to the licensee by the patentee or others. United States v. Univis Lens Co., 316 U. S. 241, 252; Ethyl Gasoline Corp. v. United States, 309 U. S. 436, 452, 456-457; **Motion Picture Patents Co. v. Universal Film Mfg. Co.**, 243 U. S. 502, 516; Straus v. Victor Talking Machine Co., 243 U. S. 490, 500-501; Bauer v. O'Donnell, 229 U. S. 1, 16-17. See also, Standard Oil Co. v. United States, 283 U. S. 163; United Shoe

Mach. Co. v. United States, 258 U. S. 451, 463-464; Standard Sanitary Mfg. Co. v. United States, 226 U. S. 20, 48049; Adams v. Burks, 17 Wall. 453, 455-456."

It is significant that the dissenting minority, which favored price fixing, cited the *Motion Picture Patents* case as one from which the *Line Material* case "is to be distinguished sharply", although it was listed with the other cases similarly to be "distinguished sharply" which were stated to be cases in which the control of resale prices was involved. The *Motion Picture Patents* case, as discussed above, involved restrictions on *use* by the purchaser of the patented device, sought to be effected by a restrictive-use notice placed on the device, exactly as Hazeltine is now doing. Control of the use of a device in the hands of a purchaser from the patentee or his licensee was condemned in the *Motion Picture Patents* case, and marking notices held to be legally ineffective to control such use as shown above. This was decided by the analogy to the cases on control of resale price.

The Supreme Court in the *Line Materials* case, by relying on or distinguishing from the *Motion Picture Patents* case was therefore unanimous in reaffirming the right of one who purchases a patented device from the patentee or his licensee, to use it for any purpose without further control by the patentee, and in condemning patent marking notices seeking to effect such control as an attempt illegally to extend the monopoly of the patent.

POINT III.

(Fourth Question Presented)

It is a misuse of patents rendering them unenforceable for the administrator of a pool of 570 patents and 200 patent applications to require its licensees to place restrictive use notices on millions of radio sets sold to the public across the counters of retail stores.

In the present case we go one step farther than the prior cases and, on the basis that the correct answer to both the second and third questions is in the negative, assert that the use of such notices, *especially on completely unpatented goods*, constitutes a misuse of patents, making the patents unenforceable. (For notice, see p. 3 above.)

This additional step makes it easier to answer the two questions on which the Court reserved decision in the *General Talking Pictures* case. Tens of millions of radio receivers have been sold and are in use in the United States. Fifteen million were sold in 1946 alone (R. 261). Probably more than one hundred million are now in use. Millions of electric phonographs are in use. Three million television sets were in use by the end of 1949. The large majority of these sets bear a license notice purporting to restrict the uses to which they may be put.

One proposition is not open to argument. That is, that Hazeltine would not have had its licensees place such restrictive notices on one hundred million sets unless it was a profitable thing to do. We therefore accept it as a fact, proved conclusively and beyond question, that the use of

these notices has resulted in the sale of unnecessary and unwanted sets. If one wants to give a concert of his favorite records at his Church or Lodge or to operate a phonograph or a radio or television set in his restaurant he must, if these notices are legal, go out and buy an extra "commercial" phonograph or an extra "commercial" radio or an extra "commercial" television set for these purposes. Of course Hazeltine collects further royalty on these "commercial" devices, under its "commercial" license.

How many thousands or millions of unneeded and unwanted sets have been bought we do not know, but we do know that the public has for twenty years been effectively and illegally restrained from the lawful use of the apparatus it has bought and paid for.

If one hundred million radios have been sold by Hazeltine's licensees to date, and if each marking notice plate cost one cent, both of which are reasonable estimates, then it has cost Hazeltine's licensees $1,000,000.00 so far just to place these restrictive license notices on the sets sold. This expense would not have been incurred and required by Hazeltine unless it resulted in a profit through the sale of unwanted and unneeded sets.

The millions of dollars which the public has thus illegally been forced to pay for the use of apparatus which had passed beyond the limits of a patent monopoly is, we submit, conclusive proof that such restrictive notices are illegal and unenforceable, and that their use constitutes a misuse of patents.

The vice of the Hazeltine license does not end merely with forcing the public to buy unnecessary sets by having

its licensees apply the restrictive use notice to sets which are actually *covered by Hazeltine patents*. The Hazeltine license goes far beyond that, and far beyond any of the prior cases discussed above, in the following extremely important particular: whereas in each of these cases the attempted remote control of use which was stricken down by the Court related to the use of a *patented* device, so that there was at least a colorable attempt to justify the attempted restriction of use on the basis of the patent grant, in the present case the attempted restriction on use applies not only to patented products, but also to *completely unpatented* products. Thus Hazeltine's restrictive use notice *seeks to restrict the uses to which the purchasing public may put unpatented* sets.

This Court has consistently refused to sanction the control of *unpatented* products under the guise of the patent monopoly. The present situation involves merely a slightly different type of control of the unpatented goods from those already declared illegal, namely, the restriction of the use of *unpatented* goods *to certain fields* rather than the restriction of their use *to certain patented machines or processes*. This is a distinction without a difference, a mere matter of degree. The net result is the same. The patents are being used to attempt to control unpatented goods, which is a kind of control not granted by the patent itself.

Not only is the restriction completely illegal and invalid as to the public, but the requirement that, as a condition to a license under Hazeltine's patents, the licensee must participate in such a scheme of illegal control, is a clear case of using the weight of Hazeltine's 570 pooled patents in an attempt to coerce the public into buying unwanted and unneeded further sets.

Hazeltine's "standard" license, in this respect also, thus constitutes a clear attempt to extend the monopoly of its patents to control unpatented products and is a definite misuse of patents, which, as shown above, renders the Hazeltine license agreement unenforceable against petitioner.

A. The Opinion Below on Points II and III.

The opinion below on these points was based entirely upon this Court's decision in the *General Talking Pictures* case. The Court below stated (R. 318) " * * * we decline to speculate on whether the case would now be followed by the Supreme Court. If the case is to be overruled, that must be done by the Supreme Court. Meanwhile it is our duty to follow it."

The Court of Appeals failed to recognize two major points of distinction with respect to this Court's decision in the *General Talking Pictures* case.

1. The questions presented are exactly those presented to this Court in that case but on which decision was specifically reserved. Therefore, this Court did not rule upon the questions involved as the Court below appeared to believe.

2. This case is sharply distinguishable from the *General Talking Pictures* case, because here the license notice required by the agreement had to be applied *to the entire production of* radio sets, *whether patented or unpatented*. Therefore, the present agreement requires such a notice to be placed upon *unpatented* sets. As discussed above, such a requirement goes far beyond any powers granted under the patents, and we assert it constitutes a misuse of Hazeltine's patents, rendering them unenforceable here.

POINT IV.

(Fifth Question Presented)

A licensee sued for royalties under a pool of 570 patents may challenge the validity of the patents he is charged with using in defense of the suit.

We assert that the misuses shown above permit Automatic Radio to challenge the validity of the patents it is charged with using.

It is now well settled that a licensee may challenge patent validity when the patent license agreement would be illegal but for valid patents; that is, when the patents are being misused (*Sola Electric Co.* v. *Jefferson Electric Co.* (1942), 317 U. S. 173; *Edw. Katzinger Co.* v. *Chicago Metallic Mfg. Co.* (1947); 329 U. S. 394; *MacGregor* v. *Westinghouse Electric & Mfg. Co.* (1947), 329 U. S. 402).

Certainly, Hazeltine's forcing payment of royalties based on the entire production of its 130 licensees in the single field of radio, amounting to millions of dollars a year, would be even more of a misuse if all of its patents were invalid; it would constitute a sizable restraint of trade by exaction of tribute from a large portion of the industry, without any semblance of right whatever. The same is true of the restrictive use notice requirement. Automatic should therefore be entitled to attack the validity of the Hazeltine patents asserted against it in order to determine whether such restraint exists.

We assert further the right to challenge validity no matter what use is being made of the patents.

The fact that a patent holder controls and operates a vast pool of patents cannot and does not give it any greater rights than does the sum of the individual patents. But

the economic power represented by such a pool is readily capable of abuse to gain advantages outside the patent monopoly. For this reason, the Courts scrutinize carefully the operations of such a pool, and circumscribe them with safeguards for the public. For example, while an individual patentee may, under a valid patent, fix resale prices by his licensee (*U. S.* v. *General Electric* (1926), 272 U. S. 476), a patent pool operator may not, regardless of the validity of its patents (*U. S.* v. *Line Material Co.* (1948), 333 U. S. 289).

In *Pope* v. *Gormully*, 144 U. S. 224 (1892) it was held that a license agreement strikingly similar to the Hazeltine license here in suit, in which the licensee agreed not to contest the validity of 65 patents, was void and unenforceable because it was contrary to public policy. The Court said:

> "The real question is whether the defendant can estop himself from disputing patents which may be wholly void, or to which the plaintiff may have no shadow of title."

In answering this question, the Court said:

> **"It is as important to the public that competition should not be repressed by worthless patents, as that the patentee of a really valuable invention should be protected in his monopoly;** and it is a serious question whether public policy permits a man to barter away beforehand his right to defend unjust actions or classes of actions, though, in an individual case, he may doubtless assent that a judgment be rendered against him, even without notice."

The Court further said:

> "With regard to all such matters of public policy, it would seem that no man can bind himself by estoppel not to assert a right which the law gives him on reasons of public policy."

And in finally answering the question, the Court said:

> "* * * we are of the opinion that a contract not to set up any defense whatever to any suit that may be begun upon fifty different causes of action is in violation of public policy. See as pertinent to this question, Home Ins. Co. v. Morse, 87 U. S. 20 Wall. 445 (22:365); Doyle v. Continental Ins. Co., 94 U. S. 535 (24:148); Barron v. Burnside, 121 U. S. 186 (30:915)."

Therefore, if this license agreement is interpreted as creating an estoppel against Automatic Radio which prevents it from challenging the validity of any of Hazeltine's 570 patents, and specifically of the four patents Hazeltine charges it uses, the *license itself is necessarily void* under this authority and may not be enforced. It necessarily follows that Automatic Radio *may* challenge the validity of the patents, *or* should have judgment in its favor because the contract is void.

Indeed, in view of the strong public policy against the unauthorized extension of patent control beyond the limits fixed by the patent, it is believed that any licensee under a patent pool may now challenge validity regardless of any question of misuse. In the case of *Katzinger* v. *Chicago Metallic*, 329 U. S. 394, the Court said at page 400:

> "In Scott Paper Co. v. Marcalus Mfg. Co., 326 U. S. 249, 90 L. Ed. 47, 66 S. Ct. 101, it was held that even an assignor who had sold a patent issued to itself was free to challenge the validity of the patent and thereby defeat an action for infringement by showing that the invention had been described in an expired patent. **In thus emphasizing the necessity of protecting our competitive economy by keeping open the way for interested persons to challenge the validity of patents which might be shown to be invalid**, the Court was but stating an often expressed

> policy that 'It is the public interest which is dominant in the patent system', Mercoid Corp. v. Mid-Continent Invest. Co., 320 U. S. 661, 665, 88 L. Ed. 376, 380, 64 S. Ct. 268 (60 U. S. P. Q. 21, 24) and that **the right to challenge 'is not only a private right to the individual, but is founded on public policy which is promoted by his making the defense, and contravened by his refusal to make it.'** Pope Mfg. v. Gormully, 144 U. S. 224, 235, 36 L. Ed. 414, 418, 12 S. Ct. 632."

This is reenforced by this Court's statement in the *U. S. Gypsum* case, 333 U. S. 364, at 387-8:

> "In an antitrust suit instituted by a licensee against his licensor **we have repeatedly held that the licensee may attack the validity of the patent under which he was licensed, because of the public interest in free competition,** even though the licensee has agreed in his license not to do so. Sola Electric Co. v. Jefferson Electric Co., 317 U. S. 173, 87 L. Ed. 165, 63 S. Ct. 172; Edward Katzinger Co. v. Chicago Metallic Mfg. Co., 329 U. S. 394, 91 L. Ed. 374, 67 S. Ct. 416, 424; MacGregor v. Westinghouse Electric & Mfg. Co., 329 U. S. 402, 91 L. Ed. 380, 67 S. Ct. 421, 424."

Public policy certainly requires judicial scrutiny of ten patents which have been held to be worthless, plus 560 unadjudicated pooled patents admittedly of even less value, if that is possible, upon which the public is paying millions of dollars a year in royalties and on which patents, and their successors, the public may have to continue paying in perpetuity unless challenged in this case.

The citation of *Pope v. Gormully* in *Scott Paper* v. *Marcalus* and again in *Katzinger* v. *Chicago Metallic* appears to be of great significance. This reaffirmation of the doctrine of *Pope* v. *Gormully*, 144 U. S. 224 (1892) in the context in

which it was cited in the quotation above, seems to leave no doubt of Automatic Radio's right to challenge the validity of Hazeltine's four patents asserted in this action.

Conclusion.

Accordingly, the First, Fourth and Fifth questions presented should be answered in the affirmative, and the Second and Third questions presented should be answered in the negative, and the decision below reversed because of Hazeltine's misuse of patents.

Respectfully submitted,

FLOYD H. CREWS,
Counsel for Petitioner.

GEORGE K. WOODWORTH,
DARBY & DARBY,
MORRIS RELSON,
Of Counsel.

New York, N. Y., March 13, 1950.

LIBRARY
SUPREME COURT, U.S.

Office Supreme Court, U. S.
FILED
MAR 15 1950
CHARLES ELMORE CROPLEY

IN THE

United States Supreme Court

October Term, 1949

No. 455

AUTOMATIC RADIO MANUFACTURING COMPANY, INC.,

Petitioner,

vs.

HAZELTINE RESEARCH, INC.,

Respondent.

OBJECTION ON BEHALF OF AUTOMATIC RADIO MANUFACTURING COMPANY, INC. TO MOTION ON BEHALF OF EDWIN H. ARMSTRONG FOR LEAVE TO FILE A BRIEF AS *AMICUS CURIAE*.

FLOYD H. CREWS,
405 Lexington Avenue,
New York 17, New York,
Counsel for Petitioner.

GEORGE K. WOODWORTH,
25 Kilsyth Road,
Brookline 46, Mass.,

DARBY & DARBY,
MORRIS RELSON,
405 Lexington Ave.,
New York 17, N. Y.,
Of Counsel.

IN THE

United States Supreme Court

October Term, 1949

No. 455

AUTOMATIC RADIO MANUFACTURING COMPANY, INC.,
Petitioner,

vs.

HAZELTINE RESEARCH, INC.,
Respondent.

OBJECTION ON BEHALF OF AUTOMATIC RADIO MANUFACTURING COMPANY, INC. TO MOTION ON BEHALF OF EDWIN H. ARMSTRONG FOR LEAVE TO FILE A BRIEF AS *AMICUS CURIAE*.

Petitioner, Automatic Radio Manufacturing Company, Inc., objects to the granting of the motion of Edwin H. Armstrong for the reason that said motion violates Paragraph 9(c) of Rule 27 of this Court in the following four respects:

1. The motion is not independent of the brief.

2. The motion is not timely. Certiorari was granted January 16, 1950 (R. 330). The motion is dated March 14, 1950, but was received by us on March 16, 1950.

3. It does not state the nature of Armstrong's interest. The only interest expressed by Armstrong is his concern with the protection of other inventors and an unexplained "vital interest" in the issues on his own behalf.

4. It does not set forth any facts or questions of law that have not been, or reasons for believing that they will not adequately be, presented by the parties, and their relevancy to the disposition of the case.

Respectfully submitted,

FLOYD H. CREWS,
Counsel for Petitioner.

GEORGE K. WOODWORTH,
DARBY & DARBY,
MORRIS RELSON,
Of Counsel.

New York, N. Y., March 17, 1950.

LIBRARY
SUPREME COURT, U.S.

Office - Supreme Court, U.S.
FILED
APR 4 1950
CHARLES E. MOSE, CLERK

IN THE

United States Supreme Court

October Term, 1949

No. 455

AUTOMATIC RADIO MANUFACTURING COMPANY, INC.,

Petitioner,

vs.

HAZELTINE RESEARCH, INC.,

Respondent.

REPLY BRIEF FOR PETITIONER.

FLOYD H. CREWS,
405 Lexington Avenue,
New York 17, New York,
Counsel for Petitioner.

GEORGE K. WOODWORTH,
25 Kilsyth Road,
Brookline 46, Mass.,

DARBY & DARBY,
MORRIS RELSON,
405 Lexington Ave.,
New York 17, N. Y.,
Of Counsel.

IN THE

United States Supreme Court

October Term, 1949

No. 455

AUTOMATIC RADIO MANUFACTURING COMPANY, INC.,
Petitioner,

vs.

HAZELTINE RESEARCH, INC.,
Respondent.

REPLY BRIEF FOR PETITIONER.

Throughout its brief Hazeltine flatly asserts that Automatic Radio is using 10 of its patents. At some places Hazeltine further asserts that this "is not denied" (*e. g.*, p. 7); and at some places goes so far as to assert that it is "admitted" (*e. g.*, pp. 27, 69).

These statements are all incorrect. In paragraph 9 of its answer, at R. 46, Automatic makes the flat assertion:

> "9. That from the effective date of said agreement, to wit: September 1, 1942, to the date of the complaint herein, it has not made or sold radio apparatus of any type whatsoever covered by the claims of plaintiff's patents * * *."

At places Hazeltine supports these numerous incorrect statements by reference to its answers to interrogatories at R. 50-52 (*e. g.*, pp. 7, 34). Hazeltine there answered Interrogatory No. 2 (R. 48), asking which of Automatic's

sets "are *claimed by plaintiff* to embody" its patents. Hazeltine's answer, at R. 51-52, is to list ten patents. The fact that Automatic has not denied that Hazeltine *claims* 10 of its patents to be used, is thus converted by Hazeltine into an "admission" that those patents *are* used, despite Automatic's flat denial in its answer.

This is of importance because this case was decided below on summary judgment with affidavits only. Since there is a dispute of fact as to whether any of Hazeltine's patents is used by Automatic, there can be no proper judgment against Automatic unless it be accepted as a fact that none of Hazeltine's patents is used, and held in law that this is immaterial (Rule 56(e) F. R. C. P.).

The importance which Hazeltine attaches to its assertions that its patents are used by Automatic is indicated not only by the numerous reiterations, but by its position with respect to apparatus sold by its licensees which use none of its patents.

To understand that position let us consider a specific example.

Let us assume that a restaurant proprietor orders from a Hazeltine licensee a radio for use in his restaurant. Let us further assume that the receivers being made by that licensee use no Hazeltine patents (although this might be unknown to the licensee, since to find it out "might well involve engineering and accounting costs in excess of the royalties due"—Hazeltine's brief, p. 7). The licensee, realizing that he is licensed to sell radios "only for use in homes", and that this sale will therefore be outside the scope of his license, removes the Hazeltine patent marking notice, including the restrictive use notice and sells the receiver to the restaurant proprietor, who proceeds to use it in his restaurant.

This is therefore a sale in the commercial field, by a "home" licensee of apparatus not using any Hazeltine patent.

This is the status of that sale as stated by Hazeltine on page 10 of its brief:

> "If a 'home' licensee, such as Petitioner, chooses to sell outside of his license in the 'commercial' field without taking an additional license, he may do so, in common with all other non-licensees in this field, solely at the risk of infringement of applicable patents—not at the risk of breach of contract with Hazeltine."

Since the licensee is said to be risking infringement of Hazeltine patents, we assume this means that he is *not* obligated to pay Hazeltine any royalties.

We agree with that interpretation.

That is the exact position which Automatic Radio finds itself in in this case as to its entire production. It has not used any Hazeltine patents and it has not marked any Hazeltine patents on any of its sets (R. 177(c), (d)). Its production has therefore all been "commercial" apparatus. There is no other difference between a "home" radio (for use in a home) and a "commercial" radio (for use in a restaurant) other than that the former is marked "only for use in homes". The apparatus itself is identical. Yet Hazeltine here asserts royalties *are* due.

The Court below held royalties are due on such apparatus, and expressly so held in that portion of its opinion quoted on page 26 of Hazeltine's brief. The Court there said:

> "But as we read the license agreement in the case at bar, Automatic would not break the agreement by manufacturing and selling for unrestricted use radio

> apparatus which in fact does not embody any of the inventions covered by Hazeltine's patents. This is true notwithstanding the fact that Automatic, in making such a sale, would be required by Article IV, Section 1, of the agreement to pay Hazeltine the stipulated percentage of the selling price as royalty for the *right* to utilize the patents covered by the license agreement."

Thus the Court below held that Automatic would not break the agreement by selling commercial apparatus, but *must* pay royalties to Hazeltine on that apparatus even though it does *not* use any Hazeltine patent.

Hazeltine asserts Automatic would not break the agreement by selling commercial apparatus, but need *not* pay royalties to Hazeltine even though it *uses* Hazeltine's patents in such apparatus—yet it here demands royalties.

To confuse the situation more, Hazeltine asserts on page 50 of its brief that apparatus which does not use its patents is not "licensed apparatus" and need not carry the license notice, but on page 49 asserts that this apparatus must nevertheless pay royalties—a position at least consistent with its demand for royalties here.

On page 4 of its brief Hazeltine attempts to bolster its tottering patent position by the boast that Radio Corporation of America is one of its licensees. This is readily explained by the fact that Hazeltine grants licenses under the Atwater Kent patents, which are owned by RCA (R. 31-32, 37-38, 255).

On page 4, in a lengthy footnote, Hazeltine presents glowing biographies of Professor Alan Hazeltine and Mr. Harold A. Wheeler, whom it mentions as "among Hazel-

tine's principal contributors to the progress of the radio and television art". The footnote does not mention any contribution of Professor Hazeltine other than the Neutrodyne receiver, nor does the record indicate whether he remained associated with the company. Mr. Wheeler has an affidavit in the record from which it appears (R. 119) that he has no connection with Hazeltine.

At pages 40, 50, 52 and elsewhere in its brief Hazeltine refers to its waiver of the restrictive marking notice. This is supported by the Binns affidavit in Appendix 2 to its brief on page 78. It is to be noted from that affidavit that on September 5, 1945, Hazeltine waived the restrictive use notice until January 1, 1946 (R. 79). The licenses issued by Hazeltine since that time have all required the restrictive use notice (R. 80). Although Hazeltine has unilaterally and revocably waived such notice from time to time, Hazeltine has kept itself in a position so that immediately upon the decision of this case it may if it desires (and this Court permits), require the universal use of the restrictive use notices by its licensees.

Respectfully submitted,

FLOYD H. CREWS,
Counsel for Petitioner.

GEORGE K. WOODWORTH,
DARBY & DARBY,
MORRIS RELSON,
Of Counsel.

New York, New York, April 4, 1950.

LIBRARY
SUPREME COURT U S

Office - Supreme Court, U. S.
FILED
DEC 14 1949
CHARLES ELMORE CROPLEY
CLERK

IN THE

Supreme Court of the United States

October Term, 1949

No. 455

AUTOMATIC RADIO MANUFACTURING COMPANY, INC.,

Petitioner,

against

HAZELTINE RESEARCH, INC.,

Respondent.

BRIEF FOR RESPONDENT IN OPPOSITION TO PETITION FOR WRIT OF CERTIORARI

MILES D. PILLARS,
National Press Building,
Washington 4, D. C.,
Attorney for Respondent.

Of Counsel:

PHILIP F. LAFOLLETTE,
LEONARD A. WATSON,
LAURENCE B. DODDS.

JUDICIAL PRINTING CO., INC., 82 Beekman St., N. Y.—BEekman 3-9084-5-6

INDEX

	PAGE
I—Introduction	1
II—Statement of the Case	2
III—Questions Presented	6
IV—Argument	7
A. General	7
B. Summary of Argument	9
C. The provision for the payment of royalties on all sales of apparatus of the type licensed does not, under the facts of this case, constitute a misuse of Respondent's patents (Question 1)	12
(1) Judge Woodbury's Dissenting Opinion	16
(2) Petitioner's Statement and Argument	20
D. The License Notice specified in the Agreement merely informs the public of the limits of licensee's rights and does not constitute a misuse of the licensed patents (Questions 2, 3 and 4)	25
(1) Petitioner's Argument	27
E. A licensee under a simple, non-exclusive patent license agreement containing no restrictive provisions cannot challenge the validity of the licensed patents (Question 5)	29
F. Conclusion	33
Appendix	34

Table of Cases

PAGE

B. B. Chemical v. Ellis, 314 U. S. 495, 498 ..... 16, 17

Ethyl Gasoline v. United States, 309 U. S. 436 28

Hazeltine Research, Inc. v. Admiral Corp. (N. D. Ill., 1949); F. Supp. , 83 U. S. P. Q. 340, 345 .. 15

International Carbonic Engineering Co. v. Natural Carbonic Products Inc. (S. D. Cal., 1944); 57 F. Supp. 248; affirmed C. C. A. 9 (1946), 158 F. (2d) 285 15

Katzinger v. Chicago Metallic, 329 U. S. 208 30

Kinsman v. Parkhurst, 18 How. 289 29

MacGregor v. Westinghouse, 329 U. S. 402 30

Mercoid v. Midcontinent, 320 U. S. 661, 665 ..... 16, 18

Morton Salt v. Suppiger, 314 U. S. 488, 492 .... 16, 17, 18

Motion Picture Patents v. Universal Film, 243 U. S. 502 ..... 28, 29

Pope v. Gormully, 144 U. S. 224 31

Sola v. Jefferson, 317 U. S. 173 30

United States v. General Electric, 272 U. S. 476 ..... 28, 29

United States v. Harvey Steel Co., 196 U. S. 310 30

United States v. Paramount Pictures, 334 U. S. 131 .. 22

United States v. U. S. Gypsum, 333 U. S. 364 22

Western Electric v. General Talking Pictures (1938), 304 U. S. 175 ..... 26, 27, 28

Other Authority Cited

Federal Rules of Civil Procedure, Rule 56(e) 11, 12

IN THE

Supreme Court of the United States

October Term, 1949

No. 455

AUTOMATIC RADIO MANUFACTURING COMPANY, INC.,
Petitioner,

against

HAZELTINE RESEARCH, INC.,
Respondent.

BRIEF FOR RESPONDENT IN OPPOSITION TO PETITION FOR WRIT OF CERTIORARI

I. Introduction.

This is an action brought by Respondent against Petitioner to collect delinquent royalties under a simple, non-exclusive patent License Agreement between the parties (R. 5-41). Petitioner is a manufacturer of radio and television receivers located in Boston, Massachusetts. Respondent is not a manufacturer but operates a laboratory in Chicago, Illinois, engaged in research and development work in the radio and television field. The Agreement in issue contains no restrictive provisions whatever—there is no price fixing; there is no limitation upon production; there is no tying in of sales of unpatented commodities; there is no provision of any kind that has been criticized by this Court or any other Court.

There is no conflict between the decision below and the decisions of other circuits. Petitioner asserts conflict with applicable decisions of this Court but the assertion proves

to be unfounded. No new questions, and no questions of importance not already well settled are presented by the decisions below.

The Statement in the Petition (pp. 2-3) of the subject matter involved is inaccurate and incomplete; the Statement of the Case in the supporting Brief (pp. 5-10) is almost wholly wishful fiction and much of it is irrelevant; and the purported Questions found in the Petition (pp. 3-4) are "loaded" questions and do not represent issues presented by the facts of record. Therefore, Respondent finds it necessary to restate the essential facts of record and to reformulate the questions presented. The errors, inaccuracies and distortions found in Petitioner's Statement of the Case are so numerous that merely to restate them, together with the briefest of comment, would inordinately extend this Brief. However, collectively these many misstatements paint a provocative and false picture of the actual situation. Therefore, to avoid any implied acquiescence by failure to refute the assertions of Petitioner's Statement, there are included as an Appendix, portions of the Petition and Supporting Brief in question with appropriate corrections and comments set opposite thereto.

II. Statement of the Case.

Before discussing the immediate facts which precipitated this litigation, it is believed that it would be helpful to the Court to review briefly the background of the relations between the parties. Respondent is not a manufacturer of apparatus in competition with Petitioner, but, as set forth in the affidavit of Mr. John R. Binns, Respondent's President (R. 79-86), Hazeltine* is and has been for more than

* For convenience, Hazeltine Corporation and its subsidiary companies Hazeltine Electronics Corporation and Hazeltine Research, Inc., Respondent herein, are collectively referred to as "Hazeltine".

twenty years an organization engaged in extensive research and development in the radio and television fields, having expended many millions of dollars in this effort, its budget for these purposes for the year 1947 having been $500,000. This extensive research work has resulted in numerous inventions which have been patented. Hazeltine freely licenses all manufacturers under such patents at a nominal royalty and also renders an extensive engineering, design, and testing assistance to its licensee manufacturers, which include many small companies which cannot afford expensive engineering departments of their own. This engineering assistance to small manufacturers aids and promotes their competition with the larger integrated companies. Its licensees number some 130 manufacturers, the majority of which are small companies but the value of its contributions is also recognized by numerous ones of the leading companies in the radio industry, such as Radio Corporation of America, Westinghouse, Zenith, Stromberg-Carlson, etc., which operate under license from Hazeltine (R. 79-80). Hazeltine's activities have not created a monopoly in any one or in any group of manufacturers; they have not reduced, but greatly encouraged competition.

Petitioner, desirous of obtaining rights under these patented inventions and the engineering services available, *voluntarily* took a license on October 1, 1935, but, *immediately after the issuance* of that license, it refused to make royalty reports or payments, advising Hazeltine's counsel by a letter of March 9, 1936, "that it is our present belief that our product does not embody any of the inventions described and claimed in the patents set forth in the license". As a result, Hazeltine, on December 18, 1936, brought an action in the Massachusetts State Court to compel Petitioner to pay the royalties due under the license. After the filing of Interrogatories in that action, which showed a very extensive use of Hazeltine's patented inventions by Petitioner, that suit was settled and a Consent

Decree was entered September 24, 1937 (Exh. P, R. 103), adjudging that Petitioner's entire production, constituting numerous models of radio broadcast receivers, embodied the inventions of twenty-seven of Hazeltine's patents and that such patents were valid (R. 80-81).

At the time of the entry of the Consent Decree, a general Settlement Agreement was executed (Exh. Q, R. 109) and Petitioner also *voluntarily* entered into a *second* license agreement dated October 1, 1937, for a period of 5 years, replacing the earlier license, which was terminated by mutual consent. For a period of about two and a half years thereafter, Petitioner did pay royalties under that second Agreement on the basis of its entire production of broadcast receivers, but such payments and reports were made belatedly in nearly every instance and only after insistent demands by Hazeltine. About February, 1940, Petitioner *again* became delinquent and failed and refused to pay royalties and an application was made by Hazeltine to the Court to make the interlocutory Consent Decree final. Though opposed by Petitioner in some respects, such a Final Decree was entered on December 3, 1941 (Exh. R, R. 113), continuing in substance the provisions of the prior interlocutory Consent Decree (R. 81-82).

After the entry of the Final Decree, there were extended negotiations with respect to a settlement of Petitioner's unpaid royalties under the license of October 1, 1937, which ended in a *second* Settlement Agreement between Hazeltine and Petitioner on or about September 18, 1942, and the *voluntary* execution by Petitioner of a *third* license agreement dated as of September 1, 1942, which is the agreement here involved (Exh. A, R. 5; 81-82).

At the effective date of this current license, September 1, 1942, the country was at war and the production of all civilian radio apparatus was prohibited and this condition continued until August 30, 1945. Since the resumption of

the manufacture of civilian radio apparatus, Petitioner has been engaged in the manufacture and sale of apparatus of the general nature of that outlined in subsections (a), (c), and (d) of Section 2 of Article III of the license (R. 8), particularly radio broadcast receivers (R. 83).

And now again *for the third time*, Petitioner has refused to make royalty reports and payments. Therefore, this action was brought by Respondent to recover the royalties due it under that license agreement.

The license agreement in issue is rather conventional in form and requires the payment of a moderate royalty of 1.05% upon the selling prices (with certain deductions) of, *inter alia*, complete radio broadcast receivers of sound (Article III, Section 2, subsection (a) (R. 8-9)). Since the license is granted under a large group of patents, since Hazeltine has more than 130 licensee manufacturers, and since each licensed manufacturer markets many different models of radio receivers each season, it was found in practice an undue burden on both licensor and licensee to consider all of the permutations involved in comparing the many hundreds of models of licensed radio receivers with the claims of each of such groups of patents. To do so might well involve engineering and accounting costs in excess of the royalties due. Therefore, in 1937, Hazeltine modified its standard license agreement by adopting a new yardstick for computing royalties. In its earlier licenses royalties were computed as stated percentages on apparatus *actually licensed*. The royalty provision in the agreement adopted in 1937 and still in use measures royalties as stated percentages on all apparatus *of the type licensed* (R. 79-80; 81-82). Such a provision in a license agreement has been approved by an unbroken line of authorities, discussed in the decision below (R. 300).

The license agreement does not fix prices; it does not limit production; it does not restrict the licensee's freedom

in the selection of its designs or the manufacture of its products; in fact, it contains no restrictive provisions.

The courts below concurred in approving (a) the license provision by which royalties are measured by licensee's sales of radio receivers irrespective of the extent of use of the licensed patented inventions and (b) the license notice in issue informing of the scope of the licensee's license and in holding that they do not singly or collectively relieve Petitioner of its contractual obligation to pay royalties. The courts below also concurred in holding the license valid and enforceable and Petitioner, the licensee, estopped from contesting the validity of the licensed patents.

III. Questions Presented.

Petitioner's formulation of the questions presented are based on false factual premises and include many malicious and unfounded innuendoes. Therefore, the questions actually presented by the *facts* of this case must be restated, the numbering corresponding to that of the Petition:

1. May the owner of a group of patents resulting from its extensive research and development lawfully grant to all applicants simple non-exclusive licenses without price-fixing or other restrictive provisions and giving the licensee the right to use not only any number of its presently owned group of patents, but also a right to use any or all of the inventions which may, during the term of the license, result from licensor's continuing research and development, and including a provision under which royalties are computed at a nominal rate on the sales of apparatus of the type licensed, irrespective of the extent of use of the patents. This question should be answered "Yes".

2, 3, 4. Is it a defense in a suit against a licensee for delinquent royalties that the owner of a group of patents resulting from its extensive research and development and having application to different classes of apparatus includes in its licensee agreements issued under such patents a provision requiring the licensee to attach a notice to the licensed apparatus sold by it informing the public of the scope of its license. This question should be answered "No".

5. May a licensee under a simple non-exclusive patent license agreement containing no price-fixing or other restrictive provisions which violate the anti-trust laws under any circumstances, challenge the validity of the licensed patents in an action to collect delinquent royalties. This question should be answered "No".

It is interesting to note that *none* of the defenses implicit in either Petitioner's formulation of the Questions Presented or in the correct formulation of these Questions above, was pleaded either in Petitioner's Answer (R. 45) or in its Amended Answer (R. 71). Hazeltine submits that Petitioner's eleventh-hour shift in position is but a belated attempt to bolster a desperately weak case.

IV. Argument.

A. General.

Petitioner's whole approach to its defense of this action reflects a studied disrespect for business honesty. Here we have a manufacturer who refuses to recognize its solemn contractual obligations, is haled into Court, makes a settlement and a new agreement, *only to repeat the process a second time and a third time.* The whole attitude of the company is reflected in the actions of its President, Mr. David Housman, on whose shoulders the obligations of an

oath apparently weigh lightly. Mr. Housman filed an affidavit in support of Petitioner's Motion to Amend its Answer to allege fraud in the inducement of the license agreement (R. 71, para. 14). That affidavit stated, *inter alia:*

> "* * * at the time I was induced to acquire the patent license the principal patents with which I was concerned had been held to be invalid, *the most important of all of them by the Supreme Court of the United States,* which facts were not known to me. * * *
>
> "Reissue Patent No. 19,744 was invalidated by the Supreme Court of the United States on May 12, 1941, as reported in 313 U. S. 259." (R. 72-73; italics added)

When confronted with a copy of Hazeltine's letter to him dated May 14, 1941, notifying him of the above-mentioned decision of the Supreme Court (R. 117) and his acknowledgment of such letter (R. 18), both some *16 months prior* to the execution of the license agreement, he glibly admitted in a supplemental affidavit (R. 197-201) that, with respect to his former affidavit,

> "* * * The statements contained therein were based solely on recollection"

of events occurring more than six years prior.

Petitioner is attempting to reap where it has not sown. In 1941 it was using the inventions of *twenty-seven* of the Hazeltine patents in various of its broadcast receivers (Exh. R, R. 113-116). In 1947 it was using the inventions of *ten* of the Hazeltine patents (Plaintiff's Answers to Defendant's Interrogatories, R. 50-52). *This use of Hazeltine's patented inventions is not denied.* While an affidavit of Leo A. Kelley (R. 207-213), filed on behalf of Petitioner makes various attacks on the *validity* of certain of these ten patents, it contains no allegation of non-use of any of them by Petitioner.

These patented inventions are the partial results of millions of dollars spent by Hazeltine in research and development work in the radio field over a period of more than twenty years. Petitioner has made *no* contribution to the development of the art, but has chosen freedom to enjoy the fruits of Hazeltine's work under license but resists payment of its royalty obligations therefor.

Petitioner's appraisal of Respondent's patents must be discounted in the light of its hostile attitude toward all patents as expressed by the statements in its Brief:

> "A single patent is a potent weapon of business aggression. Its potency is enhanced if it is related to a mass production industry where the penalty for guessing wrong as to its validity or infringement may be the complete ruin of a business." (p. 11).
>
> * * *
>
> "And it (an industry) must pay, however poor the patents, because of the cost of litigation, or the disastrous consequences if a single suit should be decided wrong without being able to get a review by this Court, or both" (p. 12).

The latter quotation is particularly informative because, first, it conclusively presumes that a holding of validity and infringement of *any* patent by *any* lower court must be "wrong" and, second, it contemptuously presumes that every patent reviewed by this Court will be held invalid or not infringed!

In the light of its background, it is not surprising to find Petitioner's resorting to the wholesale use of unfounded and slanderous attacks upon Hazeltine and its business in an effort to distract the Court's attention from its total lack of legal defenses based upon facts.

B. Summary of Argument.

This is an action for delinquent royalties under a simple non-exclusive patent license contract having no restrictive

provisions. Petitioner asserts no direct defense to the contract but attempts to evade its obligation to pay royalties by raising a number of spurious collateral issues which are insufficient in law and unfounded in fact.

Petitioner's Brief further utilizes the familiar maxim of the propagandist that if an untruth is repeated often enough, it will ultimately be believed. Thus, in twenty-seven instances (pp. 2 (twice), 3 (twice), 4, 6, 9, 12, 14 (twice), 17 (three times), 18 (seven times), 19, 26, 27 (twice), 29 and 30), it falsely attempts to attach the stigma of a "patent pool" to the patents resulting from Hazeltine's extensive research work. There is no "pool" of patents in this case within the usual meaning of that term. The term "pool" in the obviously intended derogatory sense refers to the collection of patents by interested competitors for their joint and monopolistic benefit. Hazeltine's patented inventions are the fruit of millions of dollars and years of effort spent by it in research and development to advance the radio art (R. 80), and are freely licensed to *all* manufacturers at a nominal royalty. In addition, it has license rights (not ownership) under a few patents which it acquired as partial consideration of damages under infringement judgments; these rights are made available to licensees generally without extra charge (R. 255).

The Court's attention is directed particularly to the fact that Petitioner's references to the Record in support of its distorted Statement are almost entirely to an affidavit of its counsel, George K. Woodworth, occupying 25 printed pages of the Record (R. 172-197). This affidavit comprises numerous allegations which are general and sweeping in character and are very clearly conclusions reached from industry gossip and rumor since, in such a large part, they are unsupported by, or completely inconsistent with, actualities; it is little more than a sworn brief of Petitioner's counsel in which it is frankly acknowledged:

> "This affidavit is made on information and belief, except as to matters of public record and as to matters stated to be within my own knowledge." (R. 172)

Paragraph 7(b), (R. 189-190) is the only allegation purporting to be made on personal knowledge and that allegation is wholly irrelevant; matters of public record require no supporting affidavit.

Mr. Woodworth's Affidavit is incompetent for three reasons:

(1) It is not "made on personal knowledge" as required by Rule 56(e) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure;

(2) It does not "set forth such facts as would be admissible in evidence" (Rule 56(e)) since the allegations are almost entirely hearsay or rumor;

(3) It does not "show affirmatively that the affiant is competent to testify to the matters stated therein" (Rule 56(e)). In fact, the great bulk of the Affidavit deals with subject matter of which Mr. Woodworth could not possibly have any direct personal knowledge. Lacking such personal knowledge, he obviously would be incompetent to testify with respect thereto in open court.

The District Court so held with respect to the Woodworth affidavit, saying:

> "* * * I have reviewed the pleadings and affidavits and find no specific allegation of facts on personal knowledge required by Rule 56 (e)." (R. 299)

The Court of Appeals similarly characterized this affidavit:

> "* * * A lengthy affidavit executed by one of counsel for Automatic, and filed by Automatic in support

> of its motion for summary judgment, contains many sweeping claims and charges, but the affidavit was made for the most part 'on information and belief,' and not on personal knowledge, as required by Rule 56 (e)." (R. 316-317)

Therefore, any assertions in the Petition or supporting Brief, based on references to pages 172-197 of the Record, must be completely disregarded.

Petitioner's purported Statement of the Case is substantially a verbatim copy of corresponding portions of its Brief in the Court of Appeals. In view of its intemperate use of unfounded vilification and innuendo, the Court of Appeals found it appropriate to remark, with admirable restraint:

> "* * * In its brief, Automatic has enveloped the case in an atmosphere of overreaching and chicanery hardly warranted on the record * * *." (R. 316)

Respondent is confident this Court will not be misled by this hallmark of an unsupportable case.

Respondent's argument which follows is necessarily confined to a refutation of Petitioner's collateral defenses, which are taken up in order.

C. The provision for the payment of royalties on all sales of apparatus of the type licensed does not, under the facts of this case, constitute a misuse of Respondent's patents (Question 1).

The facts are briefly these. The license agreement in question grants to the licensee a license to manufacture and sell certain types of radio apparatus (Article III, Section 2, R. 8). The license extends to the licensee the *right or privilege* to use any one or more of the patents enumerated in the agreement and *also the right or privilege* to use any or all of the inventions which may come from

the continuing research work of the Hazeltine laboratories during the term of the agreement (Article III, Section 1, R. 7). It also provides that the licensee pay a nominal royalty measured as a percentage of the licensee's selling price of all apparatus of the type licensed (Article IV, Section 1, R. 9). This provision is one of several different types sanctioned by custom and by authority for the measurement of royalties, among which may be mentioned monthly or annual flat sum payments; payments based on volume rather than price; and royalties based upon the selling prices of apparatus covered by claims of a specifically enumerated patent or patents and including a guaranteed minimum irrespective of sales. From the viewpoint of the licensor, the provision in issue has the advantage of avoiding an examination of each new model sold by each licensee to determine if licensed patents are used; from the viewpoint of the licensee, it has the advantages of saving patent counsel and other fees and enabling the licensee to know in advance that each model will bear a fixed cost for royalties so that it can price its receivers without waiting for the licensor to advise it if royalties are payable on any specific model. It appears particularly advantageous to a small licensee which does not maintain extensive legal and accounting departments and to which speed in merchandising is frequently vital to profitable operation in the intensely competitive radio industry.

Under such a license, the licensee has complete freedom of design under Hazeltine's present and future inventions. So far as the license agreement is concerned, licensee is free to market any type of apparatus he chooses without restriction; it can embody in any given receiver one patented invention or several patented inventions, as does Petitioner (R. 119-121), or it may use none. For this privilege the licensee pays a nominal royalty averaging less than 1% of its selling price of apparatus within the field of the license, which corresponds to less than 1% of

the retail list price of the apparatus (R. 249). Petitioner may now consider that it made a bad bargain in agreeing to pay royalties on all receivers for the right to use Hazeltine's patented inventions, but there is nothing illegal in computing royalties in this manner, and it does not in any way enlarge the scope of Hazeltine's patent rights. This method selected by Hazeltine is merely one of several ways of measuring royalty payments.

This type of license has received judicial sanction in all cases in which it has been considered.

Both the District Court and the Court of Appeals agreed that this was a legitimate and equitable business arrangement which did not in any way contravene the public interest. This was lucidly explained in the opinion of Judge MAGRUDER:

> "*Royalty Payments.* It has been pointed out above that the license agreement gave Automatic the right to make use of any of Hazeltine's patents, and required Automatic to pay royalties measured by a percentage of the selling price of all radio apparatus of specified types manufactured and sold by Automatic, whether or not any particular apparatus in fact utilized any of the inventions of the Hazeltine patents, with a minimum royalty payment of $10,000 a year. There is no valid objection to this sort of agreement; the parties are free to bargain as to the basis upon which the royalties are to be computed. *H-P-M Development Corp.* v. *Watson-Stillman Co.*, 71 F. Supp. 906 (D. N. J. (fol. 323) 1947). *Cf. Pyrene Mfg. Co.* v. *Urquhart*, 69 F. Supp. 555, 560 (E. D. Pa., 1946); *American Optical Co.* v. *New Jersey Optical Co.*, 58 F. Supp. 601, 606 (D. Mass., 1944); *Ohio Citizens Trust Co.* v. *Air-Way Elec. Appliance Corp.*, 56 F. Supp. 1010, 1012 (N. D. Ohio, 1944). As stated in one of Hazeltine's affidavits, this type of royalty clause was originally adopted 'for convenience of accounting'. The Court below stated: 'This is a convenient mode of operation designed by the parties to avoid the necessity of determining whether

> each type of defendant's product embodies any of the hundreds of patents which plaintiff controls." 77 F. Supp. at 496. Certainly a licensee, in consideration of the grant of the right to use a licensor's patent, may lawfully promise to pay the licensor a fixed sum per year during the life of the agreement; and this promise would not become unenforceable merely because the licensee in a particular year happened not to utilize the invention. If this is so, it would be no more against public policy to stipulate for a variable consideration by way of royalty for the right to use the patent, whether such consideration were expressed in terms of a percentage of the net profits of the licensee's business, or (as here) in terms of a percentage of the selling price of certain apparatus manufactured and sold by the licensee. Depending on the circumstances such a percentage royalty might well be a lesser charge upon the licensee's business than a stipulation for payment of a flat sum yearly." (R. 319-320)

In addition to the authorities cited above, the same ruling has been followed elsewhere:

> *International Carbonic Engineering Co.* v. *Natural Carbonic Products, Inc.* (S. D. Cal., 1944), 57 F. Supp. 249; affirmed (C. C. A. 9, 1946); 158 F. (2d) 285;
>
> *Hazeltine Research, Inc.* v. *Admiral Corp.* (N. D. Ill., 1949) — F. Supp. — ; 83 U. S. P. Q. 340, 345.

The latter case is of particular interest in view of the fact that the same defense of misuse of patents because of this same license provision was vigorously urged by counsel for defendant in that case, who is also counsel for Petitioner here. Petitioner makes an odd virtue of necessity by treating this unanimity of the courts, not as a confirmation of the legal soundness of such license provisions, but as an alarming trend (Brief, p. 22). The trend is "alarming"

only to the extent that it indicates a growing tendency of licensees to attempt evasion of the solemn obligations of their contracts.

(1) Judge Woodbury's Dissenting Opinion.

In his dissenting opinion below, Judge Woodbury disagreed with the majority as to the effect of the license in issue and on this factual difference thought applicable the decisions of this Court in the following cases:

Morton Salt v. *Suppiger*, 314 U. S. 488, 492;
B. B. Chemical v. *Ellis*, 314 U. S. 495, 498;
Mercoid v. *Midcontinent*, 320 U. S. 661, 665.

The facts of those cases are pivotally distinguishable and Judge Woodbury's lack of comment on them leaves his dissent empty and unpersuasive.

In the *Morton Salt* case, Suppiger owned a patent on a machine for automatically dispensing salt tablets, useful in the canning industry. It granted licenses requiring the licensees to use the patented machines only with unpatented salt tablets sold by it. Suppiger brought an action of infringement with respect to machines sold to the canning industry by Morton. The defense was that Suppiger was guilty of illegal restraint of trade in the sale of the unpatented salt tablets.

In denying relief to Suppiger because of unclean hands arising from its illegal practices, Mr. Justice Stone said:

> "It thus appears that *respondent is making use of its patent monopoly to restrain competition* in the marketing of unpatented articles, salt tablets, for use with the patented machines, *and is aiding in the creation of a limited monopoly* in the tablets not within that granted by the patent. A patent operates to create and grant to the patentee an exclusive right to make, use and vend the particular device described and claimed in the patent. But a patent affords no immunity for a monopoly not within the grant, Inter-

> state Circuit v. United States, 306 U. S. 208, 228, 230; Ethyl Gasoline Corp. v. United States, 309 U. S. 436, 456, and *the use of it to suppress competition in the sale of an unpatented article* may deprive the patentee of the aid of a court of equity to restrain an alleged infringement by one who is a competitor. * * *" (Italics added; p. 491.)

Neither the facts nor the rule of law involved in the *Morton Salt* case has any application here. The holding of this Court in the *Morton Salt* case was limited to the situation where the patent owner uses his patent to restrain competition by tying-in sales of unpatented commodities, thus creating a monopoly *in a field outside the patent grant.* The facts of the present case distinguish it from the *Morton Salt* case in two essential respects:

(1) There is no use of any patent rights by Hazeltine "to restrain competition in the marketing of unpatented articles" or in *any* articles. Hazeltine does not itself manufacture any apparatus of the type licensed and therefore does not restrain any competition with it. The license includes no restrictions of any kind bearing on competition by the licensees with Hazeltine or with each other.

(2) As a corollary of (1), Hazeltine is not using its patents for "aiding in the creation of a limited monopoly" or in any monopoly of any kind. It freely licenses all manufacturers at a nominal royalty and provides engineering assistance to its licensees including many small companies which could not afford extensive engineering of their own (R. 80) and thus actively *promotes* competition in the industry, the very antithesis of monopoly.

In the *B. B. Chemical* case, that company owned a patent on a method of reinforcing the insoles of shoes. It supplied machines for practicing the method to various shoe manufacturers, retaining ownership of the machines, and also supplied unpatented materials for use with the ma-

chines in practicing the patented method. The lower courts held that this practice operated as a license to use the patented machine only with the unpatented material and thus restrained competition with B-B. Chemical in the sale of the unpatented materials.

This Court found that the issue was the same as that involved in the *Morton Salt* case, saying:

> "But in view of petitioner's use of the patent as the means of establishing a limited monopoly in its unpatented materials, and for the reasons given in our opinion in the Morton Salt Company case, we hold that the maintenance of this suit to restrain any form of infringement is contrary to public policy, and that the district court rightly dismissed it." (p. 497, 498)

In the *Mercoid* case, Midcontinent owned a patent on a domestic heating system. It granted an exclusive license to Minneapolis-Honeywell, the royalty payments to be based *only* upon the sales of an unpatented switch, which was an element of the combination claimed in the patent. None of the parties involved actually sold or installed complete heating systems, but Minneapolis-Honeywell sublicensed heating contractors to use the patented system provided the sublicensee used only unpatented switches purchased from it. This Court did not condemn the provision for royalty measurement there involved but found that:

> "There was ample evidence to sustain the findings of the District Court that respondents endeavored to use the license agreement so as to prevent the sale or use of combustion stoker switches in these heating systems unless they were the switches made by Minneapolis-Honeywell and purchased from it or its sub-licensees." (p. 663)

Midcontinent brought an action for contributory infringement against Mercoid on account of its sales of unpatented

switches for use in the patented heating system. It appeared that such switches had no use other than in the patented system. In holding that Midcontinent was barred from recovery because of its misuse of its patent, this Court said:

> "* * * The struggle is not over a combination patent and the right to make or vend it. The contest is solely over unpatented wares which go into the patented product. Respondents point out that the royalties under the license are measured by the number of unpatented controls which are sold and that no royalty is paid unless a furnace covered by the patent has been installed. But the fact remains that *the competition which is sought to be controlled is not competition in the sale of the patented assembly but merely competition in the sale of the unpatented thermostatic controls.* The patent is employed to protect the market for a device on which no patent has been granted. * * *" (Italics added; pp. 666, 667)

Thus in each of the three cases under discussion the gravamen of the objection to the patent owner's practices was that he was using a patent on *one entity* (machine or process) to restrain competition and create a monopoly in *another and unpatented entity.* These cases have nothing to do with a contract under which royalty payments are made for the *right to use* present *and future* inventions in a particular class of apparatus and in which such payments are made without regard to whether the inventions are actually used, which is the situation presented here. This distinction was brought out clearly by the Court of Appeals as follows:

> "A different problem would be presented if the license agreement had provided that, in part consideration for the right to make use of Hazeltine's patents, Automatic agreed not to compete in the commercial field in the manufacture and sale of any radio apparatus of the types enumerated, even though such apparatus did not embody any of the inventions covered by Hazeltine's patents. Such an

agreement might be unenforceable as constituting an unlawful attempt to extend the monopoly of licensor's patents beyond the limits of the patent grants. But as we read the license agreement in the case at bar, Automatic would not break the agreement by manufacturing and selling for unrestricted use radio apparatus which in fact does not embody any of the inventions covered by Hazeltine's patents. This is true notwithstanding the fact that Automatic, in making such a sale, would be required by Article IV, Section 1, of the agreement to pay to Hazeltine the stipulated percentage of the selling price as royalty for the *right* to utilize the patents covered by the license agreement." (R. 320)

A further important fact distinguishing the instant case from those discussed above is that the license *sub judice* is not merely a license under a single patent; it is a grant to the licensee of the *right or privilege* of using any, or all, of the group of patented inventions now owned by Hazeltine and *in addition* a grant of the right to use any inventions which may be acquired by Hazeltine during the term of the agreement either from its extensive research and development activities or otherwise. There is nothing inherently illegal or unconscionable in an unrestricted contract available to anyone in the industry which guarantees to a licensee a license under all of the fruits of an extensive research laboratory for a perod of years at a nominal rate of royalty based on sales in the field of activity of the laboratory. Thus, the license agreement must be sustained on this ground independently, even if Hazeltine had *no patents at present* and even though *no patented inventions should result* from such research work.

(2) Petitioner's Statement and Argument.

At the outset, Petitioner's challenge of this provision of its license agreement (pp. 11-14, 19-22) is moot for it has used and is using the Hazeltine patented inventions extensively. In 1941 it was using *twenty seven* Hazeltine pat-

ents (Exh. P, R. 103). It is still admittedly using *ten* patented inventions of Hazeltine (R. 50-52; *supra*, p. 8).

In the portions of its Brief dealing with this question (pp. 11-14 and 19-22) Petitioner reaches the zenith of its reckless abuse of Hazeltine and the nadir of its logic. It resorts to name calling (racketeers, p. 12) and postulates an insinuating hypothetical example at page 12 which is malicious but purely frivolous. Petitioner's purported factual discussions and implied assumptions in its argument at this point understandably include no supporting references to the Record; they are pure fantasy.

Petitioner advances the novel contention that the mere fact that Hazeltine has made numerous major and minor advances in the art as a consequence of its general research and development work over a period of years, resulting in a large number of patented inventions, should inflict some sort of a penalty upon Hazeltine. Hazeltine's efforts to comply with the Constitutional injunction "to promote the progress of science and useful arts" (Article I, Section 8) over a period of some 24 years has been intensive, extensive, and expensive. Its efforts have been recognized by the leaders in the industry who have utilized its inventions under license (R. 79-80). Respondent knows of no authority on patent matters which has considered itself above the United States Constitution and attempted to nullify the express Constitutional provision by attaching a penalty to any organization actively engaged in promoting the progress of the useful arts and thereby creating a large number of patentable inventions. Petitioner has cited no such authority.

Contrary to Petitioner's assertion (pp. 12, 18), there is no evidence that Hazeltine has ever coerced or forced anyone, including Petitioner, to enter into a license agreement with it and that assertion is untrue. *Petitioner voluntarily signed three successive license agreements with*

Hazeltine and as many times breached its agreements (R. 80-83). On the other hand, a number of radio manufacturers, both large and small, are now operating without a license from Hazeltine (R. 249-251), which negatives any effective coercion.

The case of *United States* v. *Paramount Pictures* (334 U. S. 131) cited by Petitioner is not in point. That case condemned "block booking". In the portion of the opinion quoted by Petitioner, this Court carefully defined "block booking" and quoted with approval from the opinion of the trial court to the effect that

> "Block booking * * * 'adds to the monopoly of a single copyrighted picture that of another copyrighted picture *which must be taken and exhibited* in order to secure the first'." (Italics added; pp. 156, 157)

Under the license agreement here in issue, the licensee is not required to use any unwanted patented inventions. He merely pays a nominal royalty of less than 1% for the *right or privilege* of using any desired ones of Hazeltine's group of patented inventions *and* any desired ones of the future inventions coming out of the continuing research work of the Hazeltine laboratories during the term of the agreement. This practice has no relation to "block booking".

Petitioner also relies on the case of *United States* v. *U. S. Gypsum*, 333 U. S. 364, but that case is not in point. That case was an action by the United States against U. S. Gypsum and a number of its licensees charging violation of the Sherman Act. The theory of the complaint was that through their license agreements the defendants had entered into a conspiracy in restraint of trade. The licenses provided that the royalty payable for the privilege of manufacturing, using, and selling gypsum board under the patents was an amount equivalent to the designated

percentage of the licensees' sales of *all* gypsum board manufactured by them, whether patented or not.

In sustaining the right of a licensor to provide for such a determination of royalties, a special three-judge statutory court of the District of Columbia held (67 F. Supp. 397):

> "* * * This royalty provision is in effect a provision for a percentage of gross sales, and as such is but a convenient means for measuring the amount to be paid for the privilege of using the patents. It might with equal propriety have been a lump sum. * * * this provision in the license agreements can hardly be looked upon as an attempt to impose a royalty upon an unpatented product." (p. 470)

While this Court did reverse the judgment of the trial court in that case, it did not reverse the holding quoted above. The essence of the decision of this Court in the *U. S. Gypsum* case is that where a licensor and a number of licensees, *acting in concert*, devise a license agreement including a number of restrictive clauses which, but for the existence of valid patents, would represent violations of the anti-trust laws, the arrangement comprises effectively a *conspiracy* in restraint of trade and is illegal, even though it is assumed that the license agreement is perfectly legal when issued by a licensor to its licensees without any concerted action. This is borne out by the following references to the opinion of this Court:

> "* * * The complaint charged that the appellees had violated both Secs. 1 and 2 of the Sherman Act by conspiring to fix prices on patented gypsum board and unpatented gypsum products, to standardize gypsum board and its method of production for the purpose of eliminating competition, and to regulate the distribution of gypsum board by eliminating jobbers and fixing resale prices of manufacturing distributors. (p. 367; this Court found that the evidence supported these charges)

> "Appellees admit that in the absence of whatever protection is afforded by valid patents the licensing arrangements described would be in violation of the Sherman Act." (p. 386)

This Court further held that the particular license provision in question, basing royalties on gross sales, *taken in conjunction with other evidence*, showed a *conspiracy* to restrict the production of unpatented products:

> "* * * The provision in the license contracts that royalties should be paid on the production of unpatented board is strongly indicative of an agreement not to manufacture unpatented board; *and the testimony of the witnesses is ample to show that there was an understanding, if not a formal agreement, that only patented board would be sold.* Such an arrangement in purpose and effect increased the area of the patent monopoly and is invalid." (Italics added; p. 397)

It is clear throughout this Court's opinion that it assumed the legality of the license agreement *sub judice*, when separated from its conspiratorial context:

> "* * * Even in the absence of the specific abuses in this case, which fall within the traditional prohibitions of the Sherman Act, it would be sufficient to show that the defendants, *constituting all former competitors in an entire industry, had acted in concert*, to restrain commerce in an entire industry under patent licenses in order to organize the industry and stabilize prices. *That conclusion follows despite the assumed legality of each separate patent license*, for it is familiar doctrine that lawful acts may become unlawful when taken in concert." (Italics added; p. 401)

The authorities cited by the Court of Appeals and those cited above (p. 15), have adopted a practicable and reasonable rule and one that does not extend the patent monopoly or otherwise impinge upon the public interest. No authorities have reached a different conclusion.

D. The License Notice specified in the Agreement merely informs the public of the limits of licensee's rights and does not constitute a misuse of the licensed patents (Questions 2, 3 and 4).

The license notice provision of the Hazeltine license reads:

> "Licensed * * * only for use in homes, for educational purposes, and for private, non-commercial use, under one or more of the following patents and under pending applications:"

followed by the word

> "Patent * * *." (Exh. A, Article VI, Section 2; R. 14)

This notice is *exactly commensurate with the scope of the license* granted:

> "Section 2. The apparatus for which the said license is granted is as follows; the use in each case is limited to use in homes, use for educational purposes and private non-commercial use:
>
> "(a) Complete radio broadcast receivers of sound; (etc.) * * *" (Exh. A, Article III, Section 2; R. 8.)

Hazeltine's patented inventions are useful in a number of classes of apparatus that have acquired rather distinct status commercially. Licenses under *all* of the Hazeltine patents are readily available to *all* parties with respect to *all* classes of apparatus. But because of the differences in the nature of different classes of apparatus, different royalty rates and different methods of royalty computations are included in the licenses with respect to the several classes of apparatus. The only effect of the license notice in question is to inform the public of the limit of the particular manufacturer's license and whether the apparatus in question *was ever licensed.*

This type of license notice was expressly approved by this Court in the case of *Western Electric* v. *General Talking Pictures* (1938), 304 U. S. 175. In that case, American Telephone and Telegraph Company, through its subsidiary Western Electric, had granted a non-exclusive license under certain patents relating to amplifying equipment to American Transformer Company. This Court described the license notice as

> "* * * stating in substance that the apparatus was licensed only for radio amateur, experimental and broadcast reception under the patents in question. * * *" (p. 180)

The similarity between that license notice and the one in issue is marked. American Transformer made for and sold to defendant amplifying equipment of the licensed type but for use in the talking picture field, even though defendant knew of the restrictions on the license. In accordance with the requirements of the license, these equipments carried a notice as to the restricted field of use. In an infringement action brought against defendant, this Court found that the restriction as to use was a legal and permissible limitation on the license stating:

> "Patent owners may grant licenses extending to all uses or limited to use in a defined field. *Rubber Company* v. *Goodyear*, 9 Wall. 788, 799, 800. *Gamewell Fire-Alarm Telegraph Co.* v. *Brooklyn*, 14 Fed. 255. *Dorsey Rake Co.* v. *Bradley Co.*, Fed. Cas. No. 4,015, 7 Fed. Cas. 946, 947. Robinson on Patents, Secs. 808, 824. Unquestionably, the owner of a patent may grant licenses to manufacture, use or sell upon conditions not inconsistent with the scope of the monopoly. *Bement* v. *National Harrow Co.*, 186 U. S. 70, 93. *United States* v. *General Electric Co.*, 272 U. S. 476, 489. There is here no attempt on the part of the patent owner to extend the scope of the monopoly beyond that contemplated by the patent statute. Cf. *Carbice Corp.* v. *American Patents Corp.*, 283 U. S. 27, 33. *Leitch Mfg. Co.* v. *Barber Co.*, 302 U. S. 458." (p. 181)

Subsequently, a reargument was permitted and again this Court expressed its approval of the limitation as to use, as follows:

> "The question of law requiring decision is whether the restriction in the license is to be given effect. That a restrictive license is legal seems clear. *Mitchell* v. *Hawley*, 16 Wall. 544. As was said in *United States* v. *General Electric Co.*, 272 U. S. 476, 489, the patentee may grant a license 'upon any condition the performance of which is reasonably within the reward which the patentee by the grant of the patent is entitled to secure'. The restriction here imposed is of that character." (305 U. S. 124, 127)

The *General Talking Pictures* case received unusually careful consideration by this Court. It was covered in a decision at 304 U. S. 175; corrected in language at 304 U. S. 546; affirmed on rehearing at 305 U. S. 124; and further rehearing denied at 305 U. S. 675. On rehearing the Solicitor General appeared as *amicus curiae*. Each decision was accompanied by a detailed dissenting opinion. Respondent and the public generally were therefore fully justified in regarding that decision as a final statement of the law. No later authorities have in any way modified the ruling of the *General Talking Pictures* case. If there were ever an instance for appropriately invoking the doctrine of *stare decisis*, this would seem to be it.

(1) Petitioner's Argument.

Petitioner states (p. 15) that there was a vigorous dissent by Mr. Justice BLACK in the *General Talking Pictures* case. It conveniently omits to state that the dissent was on an issue not presented here, as appears from the dissenting opinion itself:

> "The area of the patent monopoly is expanded by the holding that the exclusive right granted an inventor to 'make, use and vend' his patented commercial device, permits the inventor's corporate as-

signee (and other 'patent pool' participants) to *control how, and where the device can be used by a purchaser who bought it in the open market.*

"Petitioner bought amplifying tubes from the American Transformer Company, a licensee authorized to 'manufacture * * * and sell only for radio amateur reception, radio experimental reception and radio broadcast reception.' The devices are of a standard and uniform type generally useful in many 'fields'.

"*We are not here concerned with the right of respondents under the contract with the licensee,* American Transformer Company. * * *" (Italics added; pp. 183, 184)

In fact, in its challenge of the license notice in issue, Petitioner sets up a straw man, the more easily to knock it down. Its entire consideration on this point is as to the effectiveness of such a license notice on an admittedly licensed device *after it has passed through the channels of commerce and into the hands of the purchasing public. But that question is not even before this Court* and, for that reason, none of the cases cited by Petitioner is relevant. This is not a suit by Hazeltine against a *purchaser* of licensed apparatus from Petitioner. The question presented here is solely whether, *as between licensor and licensee*, the requirement of a license notice specifying the field of use is illegal *per se*, but that question is no longer open to dispute, such notice having been expressely found to be valid in the *General Talking Pictures* case, *supra*. That decision has never been reversed or modified.

Neither the case of *Motion Picture Patents* v. *Universal Film* (243 U. S. 502), nor *United States* v. *General Electric* (272 U. S. 476), nor *Ethyl Gasoline* v. *United States* (309 U. S. 436), cited by Petitioner, has any application here, since none of those cases involved the propriety of a license notice of any kind. The *Motion Picture Patents* case and the *Ethyl Gasoline* case involved a clause tying

in the sales of an unpatented commodity with the licensed apparatus while the *General Electric* case involved a price fixing clause.

Petitioner suggests that the *General Talking Pictures* case did not overrule or modify the *Motion Picture Patents* case. Of course it did not, since the two cases decided entirely different questions.

At page 26 of its Brief, Petitioner argues that the license notice in question is an attempt to extend the patent monopoly. *As between the licensor and the licensee* no extension of monopoly has been or can be demonstrated from the use of such a license condition "which is reasonably within the reward which the patentee by the grant of the patent is entitled to secure" (*General Talking Pictures* case, *supra*).

Petitioner has not shown that it is in any way injured by the license notice in question but, even if it could make such a showing, it would be irrelevant to its obligation to pay royalties.

E. A licensee under a simple, non-exclusive patent license agreement containing no restrictive provisions cannot challenge the validity of the licensed patents (Question 5).

While it is irrelevant whether Petitioner can contest the validity of the licensed patents, since the agreement merely gives it the *privilege* of using any one or more or none of Hazeltine's patents, present and future, as a matter of law, Petitioner as licensee *is* estopped from contesting validity. This is one of the oldest doctrines of the patent law and with certain exceptions not relevant here, has been universally accepted. Ninety years ago this Court unanimously announced the doctrine that a licensee under a patent is estopped from challenging the validity of that patent. *Kinsman* v. *Parkhurst*, 18 How. 289. The rule

expressed in that case has become so much part of our law that fifty years later this Court deemed it unnecessary to discuss it and unanimously applied it even against the United States as licensee. *United States* v. *Harvey Steel Co.*, 196 U. S. 310. This Court has never questioned the rule. The principle has withstood judicial scrutiny for nearly a century.

Petitioner cites *Sola* v. *Jefferson*, 317 U. S. 173; *Katzinger* v. *Chicago Metallic*, 329 U. S. 208; and *MacGregor* v. *Westinghouse*, 329 U. S. 402, cases for the proposition that:

> "* * * a licensee may challenge validity when patents are being used for a purpose which would constitute a misuse of patents if they are invalid * * *."

The decisions do not support this broad proposition. Each of these three cases involved a license agreement having *price-fixing* provisions. The decisions themselves make clear that they are limited to license contracts having *inseparable, intrinsic restrictions* such as price-fixing which, but for the validity of the licensed patents, would *per se* render the contract illegal under the anti-trust laws.

Mr. Justice BLACK, in writing the opinion in the *MacGregor* case, is careful to point out this distinction at the very beginning:

> "This case, like that of Edward Katzinger Co. v. Chicago Metallic Mfg. Co., Nos. 70, 71, this day decided, involves the right of a patent licensee to defend a suit for royalties only under a licensing agreement which contains a price fixing provision. * * *" (pp. 403, 404)

In the instant case the license contract contains no price-fixing provisions nor any restrictive clauses which, but for the existence of valid patents, would cause the contract to run afoul of the anti-trust laws.

Similarly, Petitioner cites the case of *Pope* v. *Gormully* (144 U. S. 224), but that case is not in point. In that case the parties entered into a license agreement relating to bicycles and including licenses under some 65 patents owned by plaintiff. The license included *inter alia* the following restrictive provisions: (1) (Par. 6) Agreement by defendant to sell only at retail and at prices approved by plaintiff and to sell only through agents in Chicago; (2) (Par. 8) Admission by defendant of validity of all patents and of plaintiff's title thereto and admission of use of specific inventions in defendant's bicycles; (3) (Par. 9) Agreement by defendant to make only specified types and sizes of bicycles; (4) (Par. 11) Right of defendant to surrender the license, providing that such surrender should not release it from the above specified obligations, which were stated to be irrevocable.

Plaintiff brought a bill in equity for an accounting and for specific performance of the agreement by defendant alleging that defendant was manufacturing and selling bicycles of the prohibited types. The court below held that defendant was violating the contract but that the contract was not of such a nature as to entitle plaintiff to specific performance. This Court affirmed, stating the facts and its conclusions as follows:

> "*This case involves the question whether a court of equity can be called upon to decree the specific performance of a contract*, wherein the defendant, in consideration of receiving a license to use certain patents belonging to the plaintiff during the life of such patents, agrees never to import, manufacture or sell any machines or devices covered by certain other patents, unless permitted in writing so to do, nor to dispute or contest the validity of such patents or plaintiff's title thereto, and further to aid and morally assist the plaintiff in maintaining public respect for and preventing infringements upon the same, and further agrees that if, after the termina-

tion of his license, he shall continue to make, sell or use any machine or part thereof containing such patented inventions the plaintiff shall have the right to treat him as an infringer, and to sue out an injunction against him without notice." (p. 232)

* * * *

"Ordinarily the law leaves to parties the right to make such contracts as they please, demanding, however, that they shall not require either party to do an illegal thing, and that they shall not be against public policy or in restraint of trade. * * * (p. 233)

* * * * It is impossible to define with accuracy what is meant by that public policy for an interference and violation of which a contract may be declared invalid. * * * (p. 233)

* * * * *The exigencies of this case do not require us to decide the question whether a man may or may not contract beforehand not to set up a certain defense to a particular action;* but we are of the opinion that a contract not to set up any defense whatever to any suit that may be begun upon fifty different causes of action is in violation of public policy. * * * (p. 236)

"*But whether this contract be absolutely void as contravening public policy or not, we are clearly of the opinion that it does not belong to that class of contracts, the specific performance of which a court of equity can be called upon to enforce. To stay the arm of a court of equity from enforcing a contract it is by no means necessary to prove that it is invalid;* * * *" (Italics added; p. 236)

Under this heading Petitioner repeatedly makes derogatory references to Hazeltine's "pool" of patents (Brief pp. 27-30). These references are unwarranted as pointed out above (p. 10). Hazeltine *has not created any pool* of patents. The patents in question are almost wholly the result of its own extensive research and development over a period of more than 20 years, activity which was directed to promoting the progress of the radio and television art.

F. Conclusion.

Accordingly, it is submitted that the Petition must be dismissed for the following reasons:

(1) The license agreement in dispute is a simple, non-exclusive patent license including no restrictive provisions of any kind.

(2) Respondent has not misused its patents in any way.

(3) Petitioner is admittedly using a large number of Respondent's patented inventions under which it is licensed.

(4) Petitioner is estopped from contesting the validity of the licensed patents.

Respectfully submitted,

MILES D. PILLARS,
National Press Building,
Washington 4, D. C.,
Attorney for Respondent.

Of Counsel:

PHILIP F. LAFOLLETTE,
LEONARD A. WATSON,
LAURENCE B. DODDS.

APPENDIX

Portions of Petition and Supporting Brief Including Erroneous, Misleading or Distorting Assertions of Fact With Comment

I. Summary and Short Statement of the Subject Matter Involved (Petition, pp. 2-3).

4. Hazeltine's motion for summary judgment asserted that four of its patents were used by Automatic Radio (R. 119-168). This was disputed (R. 199-200; 207-246; 277-282; 289-292).

5. Hazeltine attempts to restrict the use to which radio receivers may be put, after purchase from its licensees by the public through retail stores, by requiring a restrictive use notice to be placed on every set (R. 10; Art. VI, Sec. 2).

II. Statement of the Case (Supporting Brief pp. 5-40).

2. Before and since 1927 Hazeltine acquired patent rights from other companies and individuals, forming a vast pool of radio patents owned by it or under which

COMMENT

Hazeltine has asserted (R. 50-70) that Petitioner is using *ten* (not four) of Hazeltine's patented inventions. This use is *not disputed*, as Petitioner asserts, except in the safe harbor of its Briefs. The record references do not contain a single allegation that Petitioner is not using any of the ten Hazeltine patents.

Hazeltine has never attempted any such restriction and the record reference does not support the assertion. Licenses are readily available to *all* under *all* Hazeltine patents with respect to *all* classes of apparatus. The license notice in question merely serves to inform the public of the limit of the license under which a particular manufacturer made a particular article.

There is no "pool" of patents. As of the filing of the Complaint, the great majority of the patents under which Hazeltine had the right to grant licenses were

it has licensing rights, which now include some 570 patents and 200 patent applications (R. 79). Most of these are listed at R. 93-101 with the names of the owners in most cases.

4. Hazeltine has, however, spent only a very small percentage of the money it has received as royalties for research on radio receivers (R. 173(h); 248), with the result that none of its patents has any value. Every patent on which it has sued since the Neutrodyne patents has been held invalid or not infringed or both (R. 179) * * *.

5. Hazeltine has kept its licensees in line by a succession of suits against non-licensees and their dealers (R. 188-189). It actually sued 26 Atwater-Kent dealers simultaneously (34 F. (2d) 50). Despite these suits some large companies, who could afford to defend suits of this magnitude, have refused to take a Hazeltine

patents which it owned outright and which resulted almost entirely from its own research during a period of more than twenty years (R. 80). The remaining patents comprised those under which Hazeltine acquired its rights as partial consideration for the settlement of past infringement liability (R. 255). There is not now and never has been any plurality of control or interest in the licensing program by which Hazeltine makes its patents available to all manufacturers.

These assertions are based entirely on the incompetent hearsay affidavit of Petitioner's counsel, Mr. Woodworth. The first assertion is also wholly untrue while the second assertion is largely untrue and misleading (R. 254). Prior to the filing of the Petition, one Hazeltine patent was held valid and infringed in the case of *Hazeltine* v. *Admiral*, F. Supp. ; 83 U. S. P. Q. 340, a case in which the defendant was represented by Petitioner's counsel.

These assertions are irrelevant, largely untrue and based only on the incompetent hearsay affidavit of Petitioner's counsel, Mr. Woodworth.

license or pay tribute to Hazeltine for many years, going back to 1927 (R. 79; R. 178; R. 249-251).

6. The 10 worthless post-Neutrodyne patents listed in No. 4 are admittedly the best patents Hazeltine owns. It has been able to continue to levy tribute from the radio industry without a single valid patent to warrant royalty payments, only because on each trial Hazeltine has spent more than $100,000, thus keeping each licensee in perpetual fear of a suit of this magnitude directed against it, if it failed to renew its license.

This malicious assertion is irrelevant, untrue and based solely on the incompetent hearsay affidavit of Petitioner's counsel, Mr. Woodworth.

7. Because of the admitted pathetic weakness of its patent position Hazeltine, by its own assertions (Binns, Hazeltine's president, R. 81, (f), in 1937 abandoned any attempt to collect royalties for the use of its patents. Instead, it has provided in its "standard" license contracts since 1937 for the payment of royalties on all sets made by its licensees regardless of patents. (Judge Ford's opinion, R. 299; Hazeltine's motion for summary judgment, R. 76, paragraph (b); license agreement, R. 5, Article IV, Section 1; Binns, R. 81-82(f); Opinion of Court below, R. 319-320.) The royalties demanded in this action on Hazeltine's worthless patents amount to 25% of Automatic Radio's net profits for the years 1946 and 1947 (R. 178).

The change of policy noted was unrelated to the strength or weakness of the Hazeltine patent situation but was solely for the accounting convenience of Hazeltine *and* its licensees and to formalize an existing practice (R. 82). At that time (1937) Petitioner was using *27* of Hazeltine's patented inventions in its licensed radio receivers (Exh. P, R. 103-108). The relation between the royalties in controversy and Petitioner's net profits merely reflects upon Petitioner's business ability, which is outside Respondent's responsibility.

10. In support of its motion for summary judgment, Hazeltine has asserted the use by Automatic Radio of only four of its patents, namely, Wheeler patents Nos. 1,951,685; 2,041,273; 1,958,627, and 2,015,327 (Wheeler, R. 119-168): This is denied by Automatic Radio (R. 195, No. 12, 207-246). The first two have since been invalidated in the *General Motors* case, 72 F. Supp. 138, affirmed at 170 F. (2d) 6; second petition for rehearing denied, 171 F. (2d) 680; certiorari denied 336 U. S. 938.

Hazeltine asserts and has pointed out in detail the use of *ten* (not four) of its patented inventions in Petitioner's radio receivers (R. 50-70). This *use is not denied* by Petitioner, except in its Briefs. The references to the Record do not support the assertion. An infringement action on patents 1,951,685 and 2,041,273 is now pending against *General Electric Company* in the Northern District of Illinois, Eastern Division, Civil Action No. 49C645.

III. The First Question Presented Supporting Brief (pp. 11-13).

The people of America have paid tribute to Hazeltine on tens of millions of radio receivers, under the guise of patent royalties, amounting to millions of dollars. Hazeltine has managed to levy this tribute by multiplying its patents and its licenses until practically the whole industry has been regimented. Through its basic patents it has thus perpetuated its control over the industry long after the basic patents expired, and twenty years after they became obsolete.

These reckless assertions are untrue. Understandably, all of these assertions are without citation of record support.

When the patent is backed by strong finances in the hands of an aggressive, litigious owner, its power is multiplied many fold. When the patent owner pools his patent with others to get under

There is no evidence of record as to whether Petitioner or Respondent is the larger company or more strongly financed; actually both are small companies in terms of present business

his single control the vast number of 570 patents and 200 applications, all relating to a single, technically complex, mass production industry, he is in a position to do exactly what Hazeltine has done here—force that industry to pay tribute without regard to the patents. Every patent may be invalid, no patent may be used, but every set must pay. And it must pay, however poor the patents, because of the cost of litigation, or the disastrous consequences if a single suit should be decided wrong without being able to get a review by this Court, or both.* * *

The contention that Hazeltine's block-booking arrangement is justified by convenience because of the burden involved in attempting to find out if any of its patents is used, seems to us to be ridiculous. Mere size does not give a big corporation any special rights or alter public policy with respect to it.***

standards. Again there is n "pooling" of patents as her implied.

There is no "block booking" involved here (supra, p. 22). There is no evidence that Hazeltine is any "bigger" than Petitioner.

LIBRARY
SUPREME COURT, U. S.

Office - Supreme Court, U. S.
FILED
JAN 13 1950
CHARLES ELMORE CROPLEY
CLERK

IN THE

Supreme Court of the United States

OCTOBER TERM, 1949

No. 455

AUTOMATIC RADIO MANUFACTURING COMPANY, INC.,

Petitioner,

against

HAZELTINE RESEARCH, INC.,

Respondent.

BRIEF OF RESPONDENT IN OPPOSITION TO THE MEMORANDUM FOR THE UNITED STATES AS *AMICUS CURIAE*

MILES D. PHILLIPS,
National Press Building,
Washington 4, D. C.,
Attorney for Respondent.

Of Counsel:

PHILIP F. LAFOLLETTE,
LEONARD A. WATSON,
LAURENCE B. DORSEY.

Federal Printing Co., Inc., 82 Beaver St., N. Y.—Whitehall 3-0004-10 182

INDEX

PAGE

INTRODUCTION 1

POINT 1—Licensee's Estoppel to Contest the Validity of the Licensed Patents (Memorandum, pp. 2-5) 2

POINT 2—Measurement of Royalties on Gross Sales (Memorandum, pp. 5-6) 5

POINT 3—The License Notice Informing of the License Scope (Memorandum, pp. 7-11) 7

CONCLUSION 11

TABLE OF CASES

General Talking Pictures Corp. v. Western Electric Co. (304 U. S. 175, 305 U. S. 124) 8, 9, 10, 11

Katzinger v. Chicago, 329 U. S. 394 4

MacGregor v. Westinghouse, 329 U. S. 402 4

Nachman Spring-Filled Corporation v. Kay Mfg. Co. (139 F. 2d 781 (C. A. 2)) 3

RCA Mfg. Co. v. Whiteman (114 F. 2d 86) 10

Sola Electric Co. v. Jefferson Electric Co. (317 U. S. 173) 3, 4

United States v. U. S. Gypsum Co. (333 U. S. 364, 389, 400) 4, 5, 6

IN THE

Supreme Court of the United States

OCTOBER TERM, 1949

No. 455

AUTOMATIC RADIO MANUFACTURING COMPANY, INC.,
Petitioner,

against

HAZELTINE RESEARCH, INC.,
Respondent.

BRIEF OF RESPONDENT IN OPPOSITION TO THE MEMORANDUM FOR THE UNITED STATES AS *AMICUS CURIAE*

Introduction

The Memorandum for the United States as *Amicus Curiae* (hereinafter referred to, for convenience, as the "Memorandum") is predicated upon two fundamental contentions: (1) that the case presents questions of public importance on which the decision of the Court below is in conflict with decisions of this Court or of Courts of Appeals of other circuits, and (2) that the factual situation, as presented by the Memorandum in support of the three issues discussed therein, is not in dispute. Both contentions are vigorously challenged.

POINT 1

Licensee's Estoppel to Contest the Validity of the Licensed Patents (Memorandum, pp. 2-5)

The gravamen of the argument under this Point is that licensee is not estopped to contest validity because of the presence in the license of provisions which would constitute unlawful restraint on trade *in the absence of valid patents* (pp. 4-5). There are two difficulties in this argument: *Firstly*, it *assumes* that the royalty payment and license notice provisions of the license *sub judice* would, in the absence of valid patents, constitute an unlawful restraint on trade. It will be shown hereinafter under Points 2 and 3 that this assumption is erroneous and the argument fails for that reason.

Secondly, its assumption apparently *concedes* the complete legality of the royalty payment and license notice provisions if the licensed patents are valid. This concession flatly contradicts its contentions under Points 2 and 3 in which it is urged that the royalty payment and license notice provisions represent *absolute* unlawful extensions of the monopoly *without regard to the existence of valid licensed patents*. Clearly, if the legality of the license contract is to be determined *without regard to the validity* of the licensed patents, there is no occasion to make an exception to the time-honored rule of estoppel to contest validity and permit a determination of validity. Therefore, the question of licensee's estoppel to contest validity is a separable issue which must be independently determined, as in the case of any simple, non-exclusive license agreement. Respondent has shown in its Main Brief (pp. 29-32) that in such case the licensee *is* estopped to contest the validity of the licensed patents. Neither the Petitioner nor the Solicitor General has cited any decisions to the contrary.

The Memorandum cites (p. 3) the decision in *Nachman Spring-Filled Corporation* v. *Kay Mfg. Co.* (139 F. 2d 781 (C. A. 2)), as being in conflict with the decision of the Court below. In that case, plaintiff, in prior litigation with defendant, had obtained a judgment under patents not involved in the instant case. In consideration for a release for damages under that judgment, defendant entered into an agreement with plaintiff in which it—

> "* * * acknowledged the validity of the patent involved in the present suit; agreed 'not to manufacture or sell' any devices which would infringe that patent; and further agreed to 'discontinue the manufacture and sale of devices embodying the invention' of the patent now in suit 'throughout the balance of the unexpired term thereof,' which was then approximately thirteen years. * * *"

The action was based on the charge of patent infringement and breach of contract by defendant. Defendant contested the validity of the patent but plaintiff contended that it was estopped to do so under the contract provision quoted above.

The Court of Appeals, in extending the rule of *Sola Electric Co.* v. *Jefferson Electric Co.* (317 U. S. 173), to the facts of the case, because of the restraint on competition involved in the agreement not to manufacture devices covered by a patent under which it was not, and never had been, licensed, said:

> "* * * As that Act (the Sherman Act) renders unlawful not merely price-fixing agreements but all agreements which, in any way, *unreasonably restrain competition* in interstate commerce, the conclusion is inescapable that the Sola case doctrine applies to any such agreement. * * *" (Emphasis added.)

In the present case it is a fact that Hazeltine imposes on none of its licensees any restraint whatsoever in their competition with each other or with Hazeltine. The *Nachman Spring-Filled Corp.* case is, therefore, inapplicable.

The Memorandum also cites (p. 4) the case of *United States* v. *U. S. Gypsum Co.* (333 U. S. 364, 389, 400), in support of its contention, but the very portion of the decision quoted refers to "an Anti-Trust suit instituted by a licensee against his licensor" which points up its inapplicability here. Petitioner has asserted here no claim for damages for alleged violation of the Anti-Trust Laws.

It is not true, as suggested in the Memorandum (p. 2), that the Court below "thought that the decisions of this Court * * * (*Sola* v. *Jefferson*, 317 U. S. 173, *Katzinger* v. *Chicago*, 329 U. S. 394 and *MacGregor* v. *Westinghouse*, 329 U. S. 402) should be restricted to the precise situation" where the license included a price fixing clause. The Court below concluded that this Court in those cases

> "pointedly declined to lay down the broader rule that a licensee may *in all cases* defend on the ground of invalidity of the patent * * *"

and expressed its own holding in the words:

> "* * * we are disinclined to extend the holdings in the Katzinger and MacGregor cases so as to *throw into the discard altogether* the long line of earlier cases disallowing a licensee to challenge the validity of the licensor's patent." (Emphasis added, R. 323.)

Only by such an extension could Petitioner in this case be relieved of estoppel, because neither any other Court of Appeals nor this Court has yet permitted a licensee to attack his licensor's patents in the absence of contractual provisions which, but for a valid patent, would result in contravention of federal anti-trust laws.

The decision of the Court below on the estoppel of a licensee under a simple, non-exclusive license to contest the validity of the licensed patents is in accord with the decisions of this Court and is not in conflict with the decisions of the Courts of Appeals of other circuits. There is no occasion for this Court to review that issue.

POINT 2

Measurement of Royalties on Gross Sales (Memorandum, pp. 5-6)

The Memorandum distorts the factual situation. The license in question grants the licensee the *right* to use not only any of the patents presently owned by Hazeltine but *also the right to use any of the future inventions* resulting from its extensive research and development during the term of the agreement. The payment for this privilege is measured as a nominal percentage of licensee's sales of apparatus of the type licensed (see Respondent's Brief, pp. 12-14). This payment or "royalty" is more in the nature of a fee for the grant of complete freedom of design under all of licensor's *present and future* inventions. Any convenient yardstick might be used in measuring the amount of such a fee. Completely neglecting Hazeltine's present group of valuable patents, certainly it could not be considered illegal for a party to agree to pay such a fee for the right to use any and all inventions which might be devised by a specialized research laboratory staff over a given period. In the instant case, licensee acquires that right and, *in addition*, the right to use any number of Hazeltine's present group of patents, of which it has liberally availed itself in all apparatus which it has sold (Respondent's Brief, p. 8).

No authority has been or can be cited disapproving such a payment provision. The authorities cited in Respondent's Brief (pp. 13, 14) uniformly approve this principle of royalty measurement. The Memorandum cites *United States v. U. S. Gypsum Co.* (333 U. S. 364, 389, 400), for the proposition that:

> "* * * a license arrangement whereby royalties were based on the value of unpatented as well as pat-

> ented products *contributed to the restraint of trade involved in that case.* Such a provision has the effect of exerting the power of the patent monopoly over unpatented products, a practice repeatedly held unlawful by this Court. * * *" (P. 6, emphasis added.)

The *U. S. Gypsum* case was an action by the United States against U. S. Gypsum and a number of its licensees charging violation of the Sherman Act. The theory of the complaint was that through their license agreements the *defendants had entered into a conspiracy in restraint of trade.* In that case, this Court did not condemn, but impliedly sanctioned, the measurement of royalties on the gross sales of the licensee (see Respondent's Brief, pp. 22-24). What this Court condemned in that case were the restrictive agreements entered into in concert by all competitors in an industry. The situation presented here is the very antithesis of a restraint of trade. Hazeltine readily grants licenses to *all* applicants under *all* of its inventions at a nominal "royalty", thus *promoting* competition.

The decision of the Court below on this issue is not in conflict with any prior decision of this Court or the Courts of Appeals of other circuits. Moreover, it is based on sound legal and equitable principles and there is no occasion for this Court to review it.

POINT 3

The License Notice Informing of the License Scope (Memorandum, pp. 7-11)

This section of the Memorandum, as well as the discussion under Estoppel at page 4, evidences a serious misconception of the practical operation and effect of the license notice in question. It *assumes* (without Record support) that a licensee who has a "home" license is *contractually bound* not to sell apparatus for commercial use; it further *assumes* (without Record support) that apparatus manufactured and sold for home use is also suitable for commercial use and would be sold for such use but for the license notice; and it further *assumes* (without Record support) that the effect of such license notice is to eliminate competition between holders of the "home" license and holders of the "commercial" license. *All of these assumptions are contrary to fact.*

The true factual situation is that, in general, apparatus intended for home use is of a design and construction substantially different than that intended for commercial use. Obviously, there is little similarity between a complex shipboard radar costing tens of thousands of dollars and a table model home radio receiver retailing for $12.95, and there is little likelihood that anyone would care to interchange their use. Hazeltine has two forms of license agreements, conveniently termed the "home" license and the "commercial" license, particularly adapted to different classes of apparatus. These licenses include different items of deduction in determining the base for royalty computations and different royalty rates, in order to accommodate the differences in commercial practices. Hazeltine freely grants both "home" licenses and "commercial" licenses *to all applicants*. If any licensee under

a "home" license, such as Petitioner here, has a market for apparatus suitable for "commercial" use, all he need do is apply for a "commercial" license; in such case he pays a royalty on each apparatus under the applicable license, there is no double royalty. Some eight companies, both large and small, are now operating under both of Hazeltine's "home" and "commercial" licenses.

Thus, no licensee is *contractually prevented* by Hazeltine from selling any apparatus of any nature whatsoever; all of Hazeltine's licensees are *contractually free to compete* in all classes of apparatus; and Hazeltine's open license situation actually *promotes* competition in the industry. If a "home" licensee, such as Petitioner, chooses to sell outside of his license in the "commercial" field, he may do so, in common with all other non-licensees in this field, solely at the risk of infringement of applicable patents—not at the risk of breach of contract with Hazeltine. It is only in case of such an infringement suit against a licensee or its customer with respect to unlicensed apparatus that the effectiveness of the license notice provision might properly be presented for adjudication. That was the situation in the case of *General Talking Pictures Corp.* v. *Western Electric Co.* (304 U. S. 175; 305 U. S. 124), discussed hereinafter.

The Memorandum confuses the issue by insistently referring to the effectiveness of the license notice with respect to licensed articles which have passed through the channels of commerce into the hands of "ordinary purchasers" (p. 9). But that issue is not presented here either by the pleadings or the facts. We are here concerned solely with the effect of such a license notice on the obligation of licensee to pay royalties. No one claiming injury arising from the license notice in issue is a party to this Action.

The Memorandum cites *General Talking Pictures Corp.* v. *Western Electric Co. supra*, and correctly states that the license notice

> "* * * upheld in that case is substantially identical with that in the case at bar. * * *" (p. 7).

The Memorandum quotes two issues which it states this Court reserved in the *General Talking Pictures* case. Both issues referred to restrictions upon freedom of use of the licensed article in the hands of a "*purchaser in the ordinary channels of trade*". No such question is involved here and these issues must therefore also be reserved by the Court in this case.

In fact, in the *General Talking Pictures* case, this Court went much further than the Court below was called upon to do in the instant case. In the former case, this Court gave effect to a license notice against a *purchaser with knowledge*. In the instant case, the Court below was not concerned with the effect of such a notice upon *any* purchaser, but only with its effect upon the obligation of the licensee to pay royalties. This is evident from the following statement of the Court:

> "* * * There may be circumstances under which a notice of restricted use would be inoperative and unenforceable as against subsequent purchasers, *but that problem is not presented in the case at bar.* And it is to be noted that the judgment from which this appeal is taken does not even command Automatic, the licensee, to comply with the term of the agreement requiring it to attach the restrictive use notices to the licensed apparatus sold by it." (Emphasis added.)

> "In fact, it appears that none of the radio apparatus made and sold by Automatic has been marked with the restrictive use notice required by Article VI; in other words, Automatic (fol. 322) has consistently ignored this provision of the agreement. Automatic makes the curious suggestion that its own breach of this term of the contract affords an independent ground for relieving it of the obligation to pay the stipulated percentage royalties. * * *"

In brief, the Memorandum is asking this Court to hold that Respondent's license notice, patterned in conformity with that specifically approved in the *General Talking Pictures* case, constitutes a violation of the anti-trust statutes which, however, have not relevantly changed since the decision in the *General Talking Pictures* case. No rational basis is advanced for urging this complete reversal upon this Court to the detriment of the public which have acted in reliance on its prior decisions.

The Memorandum cites (p. 10) the decision in *RCA Mfg. Co.* v. *Whiteman* (114 F. 2d 86), as in conflict with the opinion of the Court below. That case involved the asserted infringement of a common law trademark by the resale of phonograph records of Paul Whiteman's orchestra for uses outside of a license notice attached to the records. The Court found that plaintiff had no copyrights in the resold records and considered only in passing the legality of the license notice, expressly declining to decide the question, saying:

> "• • • We do not, however, have that question to decide, for we think that the 'common-law property' in these performances ended with the sale of the records and that the restriction did not save it; and that if it did, the records themselves could not be clogged with a servitude" (p. 88).

Thus, the *RCA Mfg. Co.* case is inapplicable here both because the Court expressly reserved decision on the question of the legality of the license notice and because the factual situation involved the rights of a purchaser of the licensed articles in the ordinary channels of commerce, a situation not present in this case.

Therefore, on sound legal principles and on the authorities, the holding of the Court below that the license notice in issue does not relieve the licensee of its obligation to pay royalties is in accord with the decision of this Court in the

General Talking Pictures case and is not in conflict with decisions of the Courts of Appeals of other circuits. There is no occasion for this Court to review this issue.

Conclusion

No new questions of law and no important questions of law not already settled by the decisions of this Court are presented by the decision of the Court below. The decision of the Court below is not in conflict with decisions of this Court or of Courts of Appeals of other circuits. There is no occasion for this Court to review the decision of the Court below.

Respectfully,

MILES D. PULLARS,
National Press Building,
Washington 4, D. C.,
Attorney for Respondent.

Of Counsel:

PHILIP F. LAFOLLETTE,
LEONARD A. WATSON,
LAURENCE B. DODDS.

LIBRARY
SUPREME COURT, U.S.

Office - Supreme Court, U. S.
FILED
MAR 28 1950
CHARLES ELMORE CROPLEY

IN THE

Supreme Court of the United States

October Term, 1949

No. 455

AUTOMATIC RADIO MANUFACTURING COMPANY, INC.,

Petitioner,

v.

HAZELTINE RESEARCH, INC.,

Respondent.

BRIEF FOR RESPONDENT

MILES D. PILLARS,
National Press Building,
Washington 25, D. C.,
Attorney for Respondent.

PHILIP F. LAFOLLETTE,
LEONARD A. WATSON,
LAURENCE B. DODDS,
Of Counsel.

JUDICIAL PRINTING CO., INC., 82 Beekman St., N. Y.—BEekman 3-9084-5-6 182

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	PAGE
I. Introduction	1
II. Statement of the Case	3
II(a): There is no restraint upon competition nor extension of the lawful scope of the licensed patents	8
III. Questions Presented	11
IV. Argument	13
A. General	13
B. Summary of Argument	14
C. The provision for the measurement of the license fee on all sales of apparatus of the type licensed does not, under the facts of this case, constitute a misuse of Respondent's patents (Question 1)	15
(1) Judge Woodbury's Dissenting Opinion (R. 329-330)	22
(2) Petitioner's Argument (Petitioner's Brief, pp. 12-30)	27
(3) The Department of Justice Brief (Question II, pp. 19-25)	34
D. The License Notice specified in the Agreement merely informs the public of the limits of licensee's rights and does not constitute a misuse of the licensed patents (Questions 2, 3 and 4)	37

PAGE

(1) Petitioner's Argument (Petitioner's Brief, pp. 30-54) 45

(2) There is no requirement that license notices be applied to unpatented apparatus 49

(3) The Brief of the Department of Justice (Question IV, pp. 29-40) 50

E. A licensee under a simple, non-exclusive patent license agreement containing no provisions which, save for the existence of a valid patent, would run afoul of the anti-trust laws, cannot challenge the validity of the licensed patents (Question 5) 55

(1) Petitioner's Argument (Petitioner's Brief, pp. 55-59) 56

(2) The Department of Justice Brief (Question I, pp. 9-18) 60

F. No monopolistic practices are herein involved (Department of Justice Brief, pp. 26-29, Question III) 66

G. Conclusion 69

APPENDIX I
Portions of Petitioner's Brief Including Erroneous, Misleading or Distorting Assertions of Fact With Comment 71

APPENDIX II
Affidavit of John R. Binns 78

APPENDIX III
The Activities of the Department of Justice Toward Nullifying the *General Talking Pictures* Case ... 81

TABLE OF CASES

PAGE

Bauer v. O'Donnell, 229 U. S. 1 46
B. B. Chemical v. Ellis, 314 U. S. 495-498 ..... 22, 24

Carbice v. American Patents Development, 283 U. S. 27 46
Charles Peckat, et al. v. Jacobs (1949), 178 F. (2d) 794, Cert. den. —— U. S. —— 48

Detrola v. Hazeltine, 117 F. (2d) 238; 313 U. S. 259 ... 74

General Talking Pictures v. Western Electric, 304 U. S. 175; 305 U. S. 124 ..... 38, 40, 45, 46, 47, 48, 51, 68, 78

Hazeltine Research, Inc. v. Admiral Corp. (N. D. Ill., 1949), 87 F. Supp. 72 ..... 19, 74
Hazeltine Research, Inc. v. De Wald Radio Corp. (N. Y. Sup. Ct., 1948), 84 N. Y. S. (2d) 597; 79 U. S. P. Q. 446 19
Henry v. A. B. Dick, 224 U. S. 1 64
H-P-M Development Corp. v. Watson-Stillman Co. (D. N. J., 1947), 71 F. Supp. 906 ..... 18, 21

International Carbonic Engineering Co. v. Natural Carbonic Products, Inc. (S. D. Cal., 1944), 57 F. Supp. 249; Affirmed (C. A. 9, 1946), 158 F. (2d) 285 18

Katzinger v. Chicago Metallic, 329 U. S. 208 56
Kinsman v. Parkhurst, 18 How. 289 56
Lathrop v. Rice et al. (W. D. N. Y., 1936), 17 F. Supp. 622 64

MacGregor v. Westinghouse, 329 U. S. 402 ..... 56, 57, 62
Mercoid v. Midcontinent, 320 U. S. 661, 665 ..... 21, 22, 24
Morton Salt v. Suppiger, 314 U. S. 488, 491, 492 ... 22, 23, 24
Motion Picture Patents v. Universal Film, 243 U. S. 502 46

Naehman Spring-Filled Corporation v. Kay Mfg. Co. (C. A. 2, 1943), 139 F. (2d) 781 ..... 3, 61

PAGE

Philadelphia Creamery Supply Co. v. Davis & Rankin (N. D. Ill., 1896), 77 F. 879 59
Pope v. Gormully, 144 U. S. 224 ..... 36, 57, 58, 59
Pyrene Mfg. Co. v. Urquhart (E. D. Pa., 1946), 69 F. Supp. 555, 560 ..... 18, 20

Scott Paper v. Marcalus, 326 U. S. 249, 251 54
Sola Electric Co. v. Jefferson Electric Co., 317 U. S. 173 ..... 56, 61

United States v. Harvey Steel Co., 196 U. S. 310 56
United States v. Line Material, 333 U. S. 287 41
United States v. Paramount Pictures, 334 U. S. 131 29
United States v. United States Gypsum, et al. (D. Col., 1946), 67 F. Supp. 397 (Reversed on other grounds, 333 U. S. 364) 19, 29, 30, 35, 62

Westinghouse Electric Corp. v. Bulldog Electric Products Co. (C. A. 4, 1950), 179 F. (2d) 139; 84 U. S. P. Q. 115 41
Williams Mfg. v. United Shoe Machinery (1942), 316, U. S. 364 14

Other Authorities

American Law Institute Restatement of the Law of Contracts (1932 Edition, Section 603 (p. 1119)) 43

Temporary National Economic Committee 81

Created by Public Resolution No. 113 of the 75th Congress, approved June 16, 1938 89

Senate Document 95 of the 76th Congress, Reproduced in "Proceedings of the TNEC", Vol. IV, No. 19, p. 642 89

Supplemental Data Submitted to the Temporary National Economic Committee, Part 31-A, pp. 18473-18483 89

PAGE

Final Report and Recommendations of the Temporary National Economic Committee transmitted to the Congress of the United States—Senate Document No. 35, 77th Congress..... 90

The "American Patent System"—Message from the President of the United States transmitting the Report of the National Patent Planning Commission, House Document No. 239, 78th Congress..... 90

Williston on Contracts (Rev. Edition 1937, Baker Voorhis & Co., Section 1659 (Vol. Five, p. 4679))..... 43

IN THE

Supreme Court of the United States

October Term, 1949

No. 455

AUTOMATIC RADIO MANUFACTURING COMPANY, INC.,
Petitioner,

v.

HAZELTINE RESEARCH, INC.,
Respondent.

BRIEF FOR RESPONDENT

I. Introduction.

This is an action brought by Respondent against Petitioner to collect delinquent royalties under a simple, non-exclusive patent License Agreement between the parties (R. 5-41). Petitioner is a manufacturer of radio and television receivers located in Boston, Massachusetts. Respondent is not a manufacturer but operates a laboratory in Chicago, Illinois, engaged in research and development work in the radio and television field and in rendering engineering assistance to its licensee manufacturers.

The Agreement in issue contains no provisions which in any way restrain competition or extend the lawful scope of the patent grant—there is no price fixing; there is no limitation upon production; there is no tying-in of sales of unpatented commodities; there is no provision of any kind that has been criticized by this Court or any other

Court. Petitioner has made this simple non-exclusive license uniformly available to all members of the radio industry.

There is no conflict between the decision below and the decisions of other circuits. Petitioner asserts conflict with applicable decisions of this Court but the assertion proves to be unfounded.

The Statement in the Petition (pp. 2-3) of the subject matter involved is inaccurate and incomplete; the Statement of the Case in Petitioner's Brief (pp. 2-8) is almost wholly wishful fiction and much of it is irrelevant; and the purported Questions Presented (p. 9) are "loaded" questions and do not represent issues presented by the facts of record. Therefore, Respondent finds it necessary to restate the essential facts of record and to reformulate the questions presented. The errors, inaccuracies, distortions and intemperate accusations found in Petitioner's Statement of the Case and throughout its Brief are so numerous that merely to restate them, together with the briefest of comment, would inordinately extend this Brief. However, collectively, these many misstatements paint a provocative and false picture of the actual situation. Therefore, to avoid any implied acquiescence by failure to refute the assertions of Petitioner's Statement, there are included as Appendix I, portions of Petitioner's Brief in question with appropriate corrections and comments set opposite thereto.

The Court's attention is directed to the fact that Petitioner's references to the Record in support of its distorted Statement are almost entirely to an affidavit of its counsel, George K. Woodworth (R. 172-197) comprising allegations which are general and sweeping in character and are mere opinions based on industry, gossip and rumor.

The Court of Appeals similarly characterized this affidavit:

> "• • • A lengthy affidavit executed by one of counsel for Automatic, and filed by Automatic in

> support of its motion for summary judgment, contains many sweeping claims and charges, but the affidavit was made for the most part 'on information and belief,' and not on personal knowledge, as required by Rule 56(e)" (R. 316-317).

Therefore, any assertions in the Petition or in the Brief, based on references to pages 172-197 of the Record, must be completely disregarded.

Petitioner's purported Statement of the Case is substantially a verbatim copy of corresponding portions of its Brief in the Court of Appeals. In view of its intemperate use of unfounded vilification and innuendo, the Court of Appeals found it appropriate to remark, with admirable restraint:

> "• • • In its brief, Automatic has enveloped the case in an atmosphere of overreaching and chicanery hardly warranted on the record • • • •". (R. 316).

Respondent is confident this Court will not be misled by this hallmark of an unsupportable case.

II. Statement of the Case.

Before discussing the immediate facts which precipitated this litigation, it may be helpful to the Court to review briefly the background of the relations between the parties. Respondent is not a manufacturer of apparatus in competition with Petitioner, but, as set forth in the affidavit of Mr. John R. Binns, Respondent's President (R. 79-86), Hazeltine* is and has been for more than twenty years an organization engaged in extensive research and development in the radio and television fields, having expended many millions of dollars in this effort, its budget for these purposes for the most recent full year having been $500,000.

---

* For convenience, Hazeltine Corporation and its subsidiary companies Hazeltine Electronics Corporation and Hazeltine Research, Inc., Respondent herein, are collectively referred to as "Hazeltine."

This activity has contributed enormously to the promotion of "the progress of science and useful arts" as encouraged by the Constitution (Art. 1, Sec. 8). This extensive research work has resulted in numerous inventions which have been patented. Hazeltine freely licenses all manufacturers under such patents at a nominal royalty and also renders an extensive engineering, design, and testing assistance to its licensee manufacturers, which include many small companies which cannot afford expensive engineering departments of their own. This engineering assistance to small manufacturers *aids and promotes their ability to compete* with the larger integrated companies in this highly technical and rapidly advancing art. Its licensees number some 130 manufacturers, the majority of which are small companies, but the value of its contributions is also recognized by many of the major companies in the radio industry, such as Radio Corporation of America, Westinghouse, Zenith, Stromberg-Carlson, etc., which operate under license from Hazeltine (R. 79-80).*

---

*Among Hazeltine's principal contributors to the progress of the radio and television art might be mentioned Professor Alan Hazeltine, whose inventions on the Neutrodyne receiver Hazeltine was originally organized to exploit, and Mr. Harold A. Wheeler associated with Hazeltine for more than twenty years. Professor Hazeltine is a physicist, scientist and inventor active in the radio field for more than thirty years; during World War I he was a consultant for the Navy and designed a receiver which went into widespread use in the Services; he joined Stevens Institute of Technology and rose through various grades to that of full Professor of Electrical Engineering and head of the department; he received the honorary degree of Doctor of Science from that Institute in 1933; he is a Fellow, the highest grade of membership, in the Institute of Radio Engineers, the American Institute of Electrical Engineers, the American Physical Society, and the American Association for the Advancement of Science; he is a past president of the Institute of Radio Engineers and has served that body on various occasions as a director and a member of its committees; he has published a large number of scientific papers over a period of years and is an author of a textbook on electrical engineering. Mr. Wheeler has been active in the radio field since 1924. He is a Fellow of the Institute of Radio Engineers, a Director thereof for several years, a member of its Board of Editors, and a Chairman or member of a large number of its committees; he is a Fellow of the American Institute of Electrical Engineers; in 1940 he received from The Institute of Radio Engineers the Morris Liebmann Memorial Prize for his outstanding work in broad-band high frequency amplifier circuits. In 1940 both Professor Hazeltine and Mr. Wheeler received the coveted Modern Pioneer Award on the occasion of the 150th anniversary celebration of the patent system.

Hazeltine's activities have not created a monopoly in any one or in any group of manufacturers; they have not reduced, but have greatly encouraged, competition.

Petitioner, desirous of obtaining rights under these patented inventions and the engineering services available, *voluntarily* took a license on October 1, 1935, but, *immediately after the issuance* of that license, it refused to make royalty reports or payments, advising Hazeltine's counsel by a letter of March 9, 1936,

> "that it is our present belief that our product does not embody any of the inventions described and claimed in the patents set forth in the license" (R. 81).

As a result, Hazeltine, on December 18, 1936, brought an action in the Massachusetts State Court to compel Petitioner to pay the royalties due under the license. After the filing of Interrogatories in that action, which showed a very extensive use of Hazeltine's patented inventions by Petitioner, that suit was settled and a Consent Decree was entered September 24, 1937 (Exh. P, R. 103), adjudging that Petitioner's entire production, constituting numerous models of radio broadcast receivers, embodied the inventions of twenty-seven of Hazeltine's patents and that such patents were valid (R. 80-81).

At the time of the entry of the Consent Decree, a general Settlement Agreement was executed (Exh. Q, R. 109) and Petitioner also *voluntarily* entered into a *second* license agreement dated October 1, 1937, for a period of 5 years, replacing the earlier license, which was terminated by mutual consent. For a period of about two and a half years thereafter, Petitioner did pay royalties under that second Agreement on the basis of its entire production of broadcast receivers, but such payments and reports were made belatedly in nearly every instance and only after insistent demands by Hazeltine.

About February, 1940, Petitioner *again* became delinquent and failed and refused to pay royalties and an application was made by Hazeltine to the Court to make the interlocutory Consent Decree final. Though opposed by Petitioner in some respects, such a Final Decree was entered on December 3, 1941 (Exh. R; R. 113), continuing in substance the provisions of the prior interlocutory Consent Decree (R. 81-82).

After the entry of the Final Decree, there were extended negotiations with respect to a settlement of Petitioner's unpaid royalties under the license of October 1, 1937, which ended in a *second* Settlement Agreement between Hazeltine and Petitioner on or about September 18, 1942, and the *voluntary* execution by Petitioner of a *third* license agreement dated as of September 1, 1942, which is the agreement here involved (Exh. A, R. 5; 81-82).

At the effective date of this current license, September 1, 1942, the country was at war and the production of all civilian radio apparatus was prohibited and this condition continued until August 30, 1945. Since the resumption of the manufacture of civilian radio apparatus, Petitioner has been engaged in the manufacture and sale of apparatus of the general nature of that outlined in subsections (a), (c), and (d) of Section 2 of Article III of the license (R. 8), particularly radio broadcast receivers (R. 83).

And now again, *for the third time*, Petitioner has refused to make royalty reports and payments. Therefore, this action was brought by Respondent to recover the royalties due it under that license agreement.

Petitioner is attempting to reap where it has not sown. In 1941 it was using the inventions of *twenty-seven* of the Hazeltine patents in various of its broadcast receivers (Exh. R, R. 113-116). In 1947 it was using the inventions of *ten* of the Hazeltine patents (Plaintiff's Answers to

Defendant's Interrogatories, R. 50-52). *This use of Hazeltine's patented inventions is not denied.*

These patented inventions are the partial fruits of millions of dollars spent by Hazeltine in research and development work in the radio field over a period of more than twenty years. Petitioner has made *no* contribution to the development of the art, but has chosen freedom to enjoy the fruits of Hazeltine's work under license but resists payment of its royalty obligations therefor.

The license agreement in issue is rather conventional in form and requires the payment of a moderate royalty of 1.05% upon the manufacturer's selling prices (with certain deductions) of, *inter alia*, complete radio broadcast receivers of sound (Article III, Section 2, subsection (a) (R. 8)). Since the license is granted under a large group of patents, since Hazeltine has more than 130 licensee manufacturers, and since each licensed manufacturer markets many different models of radio receivers each season, it was found in practice an uneconomic charge on *both licensor and licensee* to consider all of the permutations involved in comparing the many hundreds of models of licensed radio receivers with the claims of each of such group of patents. To do so might well involve engineering and accounting costs in excess of the royalties due. Therefore, in 1937, Hazeltine modified its standard license agreement by adopting a new yardstick for computing license fees. In its earlier licenses royalties were computed as stated percentages on apparatus specifically covered by the licensed patents. In the agreement adopted in 1937 and still in use, license fees are computed as stated percentages on all apparatus *of the type licensed* (R. 79-82). Such a provision in a license agreement has been approved by an unbroken line of authorities, discussed in the decision below; no authority has disapproved it (R. 300).

II(a). There is no restraint upon competition nor extension of the lawful scope of the licensed patents.

Petitioner's attack is leveled principally upon two clauses of the license agreement in suit:

(1) The license provision by which license fees are measured by licensee's sales of radio receivers irrespective of the extent of embodiment of the licensed patented inventions, which Petitioner asserts unlawfully extends the scope of the licensed patents, and

(2) The license notice provision informing of the scope of the licensee's license, which Petitioner asserts constitutes a restraint upon competition and trade and thus a "misuse" of the licensed patents.

In fact, there is no restraint upon competition nor any extension of the lawful scope of the licensed patents. The license agreement does not fix prices; it does not limit production; it does not restrict the licensee's freedom in the selection of its designs or the manufacture of its products; it does not tie-in sales of unpatented commodities; in fact it contains no provisions which in any way restrain competition, promote monopoly or extend the lawful scope of the licensed patents.

The provision for measuring royalties on gross sales of apparatus of the type licensed is not beyond Respondent's lawful exercise of its rights under licensed patents as alleged. The license clause in question grants the licensee the *right* to use not only any of the patents presently owned by Hazeltine but *also the right to use any of the future inventions* resulting from its extensive research and development during the term of the agreement. The payment for this privilege is measured as a nominal percentage of licensee's sales of apparatus of

the type licensed. This payment or "royalty" is more in the nature of a fee for the grant of complete freedom of design under all of licensor's *present and future* inventions. Any convenient and mutually agreed yardstick might be adopted for measuring the amount of such a fee.

Further, the license notice provision in issue does not in any way effect a restraint on trade or lessen competition; it is merely informatory of the scope of licensee's license, that is, broadcast receivers and related apparatus for home use. Apparatus intended for home use is of a design and construction substantially different than that intended for commercial use. Obviously, there is little similarity between a complex shipboard radar costing tens of thousands of dollars and a table model home radio receiver retailing for $12.95, and there is little likelihood that anyone would care to interchange their use. Hazeltine has two forms of license agreements, conveniently termed the "home" license and the "commercial" license, particularly adapted to different classes of apparatus. These licenses include different items of deduction in determining the base for royalty computations and different royalty rates, in order to accommodate the differences in commercial practices. Hazeltine freely grants both "home" licenses and "commercial" licenses *to all applicants*. If any licensee under a "home" license, such as Petitioner here, has a market for apparatus suitable for "commercial" use, all he need do is apply for a "commercial" license; in such case he pays a royalty on each apparatus under the applicable license, there is no double royalty. Some eight companies, both large and small, are now operating under both of Hazeltine's "home" and "commercial" licenses.

Thus, no licensee is *contractually prevented* by Hazeltine from selling any apparatus of any nature whatsoever; all of Hazeltine's licensees are *contractually free to compete* in all classes of apparatus; and Hazeltine's open license situation actually *promotes* competition in

the industry. If a "home" licensee, such as Petitioner, chooses to sell outside of his license in the "commercial" field without taking an additional license, he may do so, in common with all other non-licensees in this field, solely at the risk of infringement of applicable patents—not at the risk of breach of contract with Hazeltine.

The very nature of Respondent's business interests are completely antithetical to monopoly. Its income available for continuing research and development is derived solely from its license royalties; it is to Respondent's interest that its patented inventions be used under license as widely as possible and by the greatest number of licensee manufacturers.

The Courts below concurred in approving these two license provisions and in holding that they do not singly or collectively represent a misuse of Respondent's patents nor relieve Petitioner of its contractual obligation to pay royalties. The Courts below also concurred in holding the license agreement valid and enforceable and Petitioner, the licensee, estopped from contesting the validity of the licensed patents.

Actually the license notice provision is not properly an issue in this case for three reasons:

(1) This is not an action against a manufacturer who has exceeded his license by selling apparatus for unlicensed uses or against a purchaser who has put the apparatus to unlicensed uses. Respondent has not asked that the license notice provision of the license be enforced and the Judgment of the Trial Court (R. 293) does not enforce it. Therefore, the enforceability of this license clause is purely academic in this case.

(2) Since September, 1945, before the resumption of the manufacture of civilian radio apparatus at the con-

clusion of the war, Respondent has expressly waived the license notice provision in question. At that time Respondent notified Petitioner and all its other licensees in writing that, in lieu of the license notice specified in the license agreement forms, licensee might use the simple legend:

This apparatus is licensed under the
United States patent rights of
HAZELTINE CORPORATION

(Binns' Affidavit, Appendix II, pp. 78-80).

(3) The defense of alleged illegal license notice was not pleaded by Petitioner either in its Answer (R. 45) or in its Amended Answer (R. 71). Therefore, this issue is not properly presented for decision by this Court.

(4) Petitioner admits that it has not complied with the license notice provision of the agreement but has failed to apply license notices to its apparatus since the date of the agreement (R. 177) so that it cannot have been damaged thereby.

In brief, the enforceability and effect of the license notice provision of the agreement are moot questions in this case and certainly do not bar Respondent's right to recover delinquent royalties owed by Petitioner.

III. Questions Presented.

Petitioner's formulation of "The Questions Presented" (p. 9) is based on false factual premises and includes many malicious and unfounded innuendoes. Therefore, the questions actually presented by the *facts* of this case must be restated, the numbering corresponding to that of the Brief:

(1) May the owner of a group of patents resulting from its extensive research and development lawfully grant to all applicants simple non-exclusive licenses without price-fixing or other restrictive provisions and giving the licensee the right to use not only any number of its presently owned group of patents, but also a right to use any or all of the inventions which may, during the term of the license, result from licensor's continuing research and development, and including a provision under which royalties are computed at a nominal rate on the sales of apparatus of the type licensed, irrespective of the extent of use of the patents? This question should be answered "Yes."

(2, 3, 4) Is it a defense in a suit against a licensee for delinquent royalties that the owner of a group of patents resulting from its extensive research and development and having application to different classes of apparatus include in its license agreements issued under such patents a provision requiring the licensee to attach a notice to the licensed apparatus sold by it informing the public of the scope of its license? This question is not actually presented for decision but, if considered, should be answered "No."

(5) May a licensee under a simple non-exclusive patent license agreement containing no price-fixing or other restrictive provisions which, save for the existence of a valid patent, would run afoul of the anti-trust laws, challenge the validity of the licensed patents in an action to collect delinquent royalties? This question should be answered "No."

It is interesting to note that *none* of the defenses implicit in either Petitioner's formulation of the Questions Presented or in the correct formulation of these Questions above, was pleaded either in Petitioner's Answer (R. 45) or in its Amended Answer (R. 71).

IV. Argument.

A. General.

Petitioner's whole approach to its defense of this action reflects a studied disrespect for business honesty. Here we have a manufacturer who refuses to recognize its solemn contractual obligations, is haled into Court, makes a settlement and a new agreement, *only to repeat the process a second time and a third time.* The whole attitude of the company is reflected in the actions of its President, Mr. David Housman, on whose shoulders the obligations of an oath apparently weigh lightly. Mr. Housman filed an affidavit in support of Petitioner's Motion to Amend its Answer to allege fraud in the inducement of the license agreement (R. 71, para. 14). That affidavit stated (R. 72, 73), *inter alia:*

> "• • • at the time I was induced to acquire the patent license the principal patents with which I was concerned had been held to be invalid, the most important of all of them by the Supreme Court of the United States, *which facts were not known to me.* • • •
>
> "Reissue Patent No. 19,744 was invalidated by the Supreme Court of the United States on May 12, 1941, as reported in 313 U. S. 259." (Emphasis added.)

When confronted with a copy of Hazeltine's letter to him dated May 14, 1941, notifying him of the above-mentioned decision of the Supreme Court (R. 117) and his acknowledgment of such letter (R. 118), both some *16 months prior* to the execution of the license agreement, he callously stated (R. 197-201) that, with respect to his former affidavit,

> "• • • The statements contained therein were based solely on recollection"

of events occurring more than six years prior.

B. Summary of Argument.

This is an action for delinquent royalties under a patent license contract. The case presents a simple factual issue: Does the license unlawfully extend the scope of Respondent's exercise of its rights under its patents or does it restrain competition and promote monopoly? If it does not, then Petitioner has no case. It has been pointed out above (*supra*, pp. 8-10), and the concurrent decisions of the Courts below found on undisputed evidence, that in fact the license contract does not as a practical matter extend the scope of Respondent's exercise of its patent rights and it does not restrain competition or promote monopoly but, on the contrary, promotes competition. In accordance with principles long recognized by this Court, such concurrent factual findings of the lower courts should not be lightly overturned. As was said in *Williams Mfg.* v. *United Shoe Machinery* (1942), 316 U. S. 364, (p. 376):

> "• • • These are findings of fact, despite the petitioner's apparent contention to the contrary, and we will not disturb such concurrent findings where, as here, there is evidence to support them. • • •" Continental Paper Bag Co. v. Eastern Paper Bag Co., 210 U. S. 405, 416, 422; Adamson v. Gilliland, 242 U. S. 350.

Petitioner asserts no direct defense to the contract but attempts to evade its obligation to pay royalties by raising a number of spurious collateral issues which are insufficient in law and unfounded in fact. Respondent's Argument which follows will take up these collateral defenses in order.

C. The provision for the measurement of the license fee on all sales of apparatus of the type licensed does not, under the facts of this case, constitute a misuse of Respondent's patents (Question 1).

The facts are briefly these. The agreement in question grants a license to manufacture and sell certain types of radio apparatus (Article III, Section 2, R. 8). It conveys the *right or privilege* to make and sell apparatus under any one or more of the patents enumerated in the agreement and *also the right or privilege* to make and sell apparatus embodying any or all of the inventions which may emanate from the continuing research work of the Hazeltine laboratories during the term of the agreement (Article III, Section 1, R. 7). It provides that the licensee pay a nominal license fee measured as a percentage of the licensee's selling price of all apparatus of the type licensed (Article IV, Section 1, R. 9). This provision is one of several reasonable forms of charge sanctioned by custom and by authority for the measurement of royalties, among which may be mentioned monthly or annual flat sum payments; payments based on volume rather than price; royalties based on a percentage of the licensee's profits on the licensed apparatus; royalties based upon the selling prices of apparatus covered by claims of a specifically enumerated patent or patents; and licenses of either of the two latter types including a guaranteed minimum irrespective of any sales.

From the viewpoint of both the licensor and the licensee, the provision in issue has the advantage of great economies in accounting and other overhead costs; it avoids an examination of each new model sold by each licensee to determine if licensed patents are used; from the viewpoint of the licensee, it has the advantages of saving patent counsel and other fees and enabling the licensee to know in advance that each model will bear a fixed cost for

royalties so that it can price its receivers without waiting for the licensor to advise it if royalties are payable on any specific model. It is particularly advantageous to small licensees which do not maintain extensive legal and accounting departments and to which speed in merchandising is frequently vital to profitable operation in the intensely competitive radio industry; to such small licensees without individual research departments it is additionally an inexpensive insurance premium against failure on account of technical obsolescence in a rapidly advancing art.

Under such a license, the licensee has complete freedom of design under Hazeltine's present and future inventions. So far as the license agreement is concerned, licensee is free to market any type of apparatus he chooses without restriction; it can embody in any given receiver one patented invention or several patented inventions, as does Petitioner (R. 119-121), or it may embody none without losing its option to utilize such inventions in future apparatus. For this privilege the licensee pays a nominal royalty which, with deductions (R. 40), averages less than 1% of its selling price of apparatus within the field of the license, which corresponds to less than ½% of the retail list price of the apparatus (R. 249). This nominal royalty constitutes a mutually agreed evaluation of a reasonable return to licensor and a reasonable expense to licensee for intangible property rights respectively conveyed and received.

Even completely neglecting Hazeltine's present group of valuable patents, a licensee may have well justified faith in Hazeltine's continuing inventiveness and ingenuity so as to consider it good business insurance to pay a nominal fee for the right to be kept informed of the future developments of the Hazeltine laboratories and to use such of them as it chooses, whether or not such inventions result in valid patents. Certainly it can not be considered

illegal for a party to agree to pay such a nominal fee for the right to use any and all inventions which may be devised by a specialized research laboratory staff over a given period. In the instant case, licensee acquires that right and, *in addition and for the same nominal fee* the right to use any number of Hazeltine's present group of patents, of which Petitioner has liberally availed itself in all apparatus which it has sold (*supra*, p. 6). The lawful agreement to pay such a fee for the right to use Hazeltine's future inventions cannot be converted into an unlawful agreement by the inclusion of other rights, without additional charge, under Hazeltine's present patented inventions.

Petitioner may now consider that it made a bad bargain in agreeing to pay license fees on all receivers for the right to use Hazeltine's present patented inventions and future inventions whether or not patented, but there is nothing inherently illegal in computing license fees in this manner and it does not in any way enlarge the scope of Hazeltine's patent rights. This method selected by Hazeltine is merely one of several alternative ways of measuring license fees.

This type of royalty payment provision has received judicial sanction in all cases in which it has been considered.

Both the District Court and the Court of Appeals agreed that this was a legitimate and equitable business arrangement which did not in any way contravene the public interest. This was lucidly explained in the opinion of Judge Magruder (R. 319, 320):

> "*Royalty Payments.* It has been pointed out above that the license agreement gave Automatic the right to make use of any of Hazeltine's patents, and required Automatic to pay royalties measured by a percentage of the selling price of all radio apparatus of specified types manufactured and sold by Automatic, whether or not any particular apparatus in

fact utilized any of the inventions of the Hazeltine patents, with a minimum royalty payment of $10,000 a year. There is no valid objection to this sort of agreement; the parties are free to bargain as to the basis upon which the royalties are to be computed. *H-P-M Development Corp.* v. *Watson-Stillman Co.*, 71 F. Supp. 906 (D. N. J. 1947). *Cf. Pyfene Mfg. Co.* v. *Urquhart*, 69 F. Supp. 555, 560 (E. D. Pa., 1946); *American Optical Co.* v. *New Jersey Optical Co.*, 58 F. Supp. 601, 606 (D. Mass., 1944); *Ohio Citizens Trust Co.* v. *Air-Way Elec. Appliance Corp.*, 56 F. Supp. 1010, 1012 (N. D. Ohio, 1944). As stated in one of Hazeltine's affidavits, this type of royalty clause was originally adopted 'for convenience of accounting'. The Court below stated: 'This is a convenient mode of operation designed by the parties to avoid the necessity of determining whether each type of defendant's product embodies any of the hundreds of patents which plaintiff controls.' 77 F. Supp. at 496. Certainly a licensee, in consideration of the grant of the right to use a licensor's patent, may lawfully promise to pay the licensor a fixed sum per year during the life of the agreement; and this promise would not become unenforceable merely because the licensee in a particular year happened not to utilize the invention. If this is so, it would be no more against public policy to stipulate for a variable consideration by way of royalty for the right to use the patent, whether such consideration were expressed in terms of a percentage of the net profits of the licensee's business, or (as here) in terms of a percentage of the selling price of certain apparatus manufactured and sold by the licensee. Depending on the circumstances such a percentage royalty might well be a lesser charge upon the licensee's business than a stipulation for payment of a flat sum yearly."

In addition to the authorities cited above, the same ruling has been followed elsewhere:

International Carbonic Engineering Co. v. *Natural Carbonic Products, Inc.* (S. D. Cal., 1944), 57 F. Supp. 249; affirmed (C. A. 9, 1946); 158 F. (2d) 285;

United States v. *United States Gypsum, et al.* (D. Col., 1946), 67 F. Supp. 397 (Reversed on other grounds, 333 U. S. 364);
Hazeltine Research, Inc. v. *Admiral Corp.* (N. D. Ill., 1949), 87 F. Supp. 72;
Hazeltine Research, Inc. v. *De Wald Radio Corp.* (N. Y. Sup. Ct., 1948), 84 N. Y. S. (2d) 597; 79 U. S. P. Q. 446.

The latter two cases are of interest in view of the fact that the same defense of misuse of patents because of this same license provision was vigorously urged by counsel for defendant in each of those cases, who is also counsel for Petitioner here.

The *De Wald* case is of particular interest since it is a statement of the New York Law, which the contract in issue expressly provides is the applicable law (R. 14) and which the Court below correctly applied (R. 325). In the *De Wald* case, Justice HOFSTADTER stated the rule (p. 603):

> "The fourth defense alleges a misuse of the patents here involved by reason of the requirement for the payment of royalties on devices which do not incorporate the plaintiff's patents. But it has been held that such provision, without more, merely fixes the measure of compensation for the license and is not unlawful. Ohio Citizens Trust Co. v. Air-Way Electric Appliance Corp., 56 F. Supp. 1010, 1012 (62 U. S. P. Q. 493, 494-495). This defense is, therefore, insufficient."

The reasoning of the Court in the *United States Gypsum* case, *supra*, is persuasive. That case was an action by the United States against U. S. Gypsum and a number of its licensees charging violation of the Sherman Act. The theory of the complaint was that through their license agreements the defendants had entered into a conspiracy in restraint of trade. The licenses provided that the

royalty payable for the privilege of manufacturing, using, and selling gypsum board under the patents was an amount equivalent to the designated percentage of the licensees' sales of *all* gypsum board manufactured by them, whether patented or not. The Government's position was that this provision constituted a misuse of the patents.

In sustaining the right of a licensor to provide for such a determination of royalties, a special three judge statutory Court held (67 F. Supp. 397) (p. 470):

> "* * * This royalty provision is in effect a provision for a percentage of gross sales, and as such is but a convenient means for measuring the amount to be paid for the privilege of using the patents. It might with equal propriety have been a lump sum. * * * this provision in the license agreements can hardly be looked upon as an attempt to impose a royalty upon an unpatented product."

The facts in the *Pyrene Manufacturing* case, cited by Judge MAGRUDER, *supra*, were quite similar to those present here. Pyrene brought an action for a declaratory judgment of patent invalidity relative to two patents owned by Urquhart and the latter counterclaimed for patent infringement. The patents related to the method of and apparatus for distributing foam. Plaintiff alleged misuse of the patents by the defendant in its method of computing royalties. The Court approved such royalty provisions, but found misuse of the patents on other grounds, saying (p. 560):

> "The Urquharts do not manufacture or sell any equipment or any material used with it, but confine their business to the granting of licenses. They are willing to grant licenses both to persons desiring to manufacture and sell the equipment and to persons desiring merely to use the patented process. The manufacturers who have taken licenses make and sell unpatented stabilizer as well as the patented equipment. Under the Urquhart licenses they pay royal

ties based on both the price which their customers pay for the equipment and the price which they pay for the stabilizer. *So far as the royalty which the manufacturing licensees pay is concerned, the arrangement is not objectionable, since any convenient method of fixing a royalty fee may be adopted, including using the price of unpatented articles sold with the equipment as a basis.*" (Emphasis added.)

In the *H-P-M Development* case, cited by Judge MAGRUDER, *supra*, the Court expressly distinguished a royalty provision of the type here involved from the practice condemned in *Mercoid* v. *Mid-Continent* (320 U. S. 661) and related cases. That case was an action under a license agreement covering hydraulic presses and control circuits. The license contract included, *inter alia* the provision (p. 912):

"• • • It is contemplated by the parties that in practice one or more patents and inventions of hydraulic will be embodied in the foregoing subject matter on which the royalty will be paid, and as a matter of convenience in accounting, said royalty will be paid on all the foregoing apparatus irrespective of whether or not any particular patent or patents of Hydraulic are embodied therein"—(Art. 4c).

The Court denied defendant's motion to dismiss on the ground that the royalty provisions were illegal, saying (p. 910):

"• • • *defendant contends that the contract unlawfully ties in as a condition of the license a provision that defendant shall pay a royalty on all of its hydraulic presses of the certain kind, whether or not covered by any patents of plaintiffs* included in the license or whether or not the patents of plaintiff have expired or whether or not such patents are valid.

"*The instant case differs from Mercoid Corporation* v. *Mid-Continent Investment Co.* and Philad Company v. Lechler Laboratories, Inc., supra, *in that*

royalty here is not based solely upon the unpatented part of the whole. On the contrary, it covers the whole which of course includes unpatented parts.

"Here again we are unable to say that there is any illegality about this arrangement. The language of the provisions alone or inferentially creates no design to extend patent monopoly or restrict competition. *It seems that the arrangement is consistent with the convenience of the parties and the holding in the case of American Optical Co. v. New Jersey Optical Co., supra, appears applicable.*" (Emphasis added.)

Here, if ever, is an appropriate case in which to invoke the principle of stare decisis and impart some stability to the law to avoid the severe penalties otherwise attaching to ordinary business men who in good faith adopt practices specifically approved (and never disapproved) by a wide range of authorities.

(1) Judge Woodbury's Dissenting Opinion.
(R. 329-330)

In his dissenting opinion below, Judge WOODBURY disagreed with the majority as to the *effect* of the license in issue and on this *factual difference* thought applicable the decisions of this Court in the following cases:

Morton Salt v. *Suppiger*, 314 U. S. 488, 491;
B. B. Chemical v. *Ellis*, 314 U. S. 497, 498;
Mercoid v. *Midcontinent*, 320 U. S. 661, 665.

The facts of those cases are pivotally distinguishable and Judge WOODBURY's lack of comment on them leaves his dissent empty and unpersuasive.

In the *Morton Salt* case, Suppiger owned a patent on a machine for automatically dispensing salt tablets, useful in the canning industry. It granted licenses requiring

the licensees to use the patented machines only with unpatented salt tablets sold by it. Suppiger brought an action of infringement with respect to machines sold to the canning industry by Morton. The defense was that Suppiger was guilty of illegal restraint of trade in the sale of the unpatented salt tablets.

In denying relief to Suppiger because of unclean hands arising from its illegal practices, Mr. Justice STONE said (p. 491):

> "It thus appears that *respondent is making use of its patent monopoly to restrain competition* in the marketing of unpatented articles, salt tablets, for use with the patented machines, *and is aiding in the creation of a limited monopoly* in the tablets not within that granted by the patent. A patent operates to create and grant to the patentee an exclusive right to make, use and vend the particular device described and claimed in the patent. But a patent affords no immunity for a monopoly not within the grant, Interstate Circuit v. United States, 306 U. S. 208, 228, 230; Ethyl Gasoline Corp. v. United States, 309 U. S. 436, 456, and *the use of it to suppress competition in the sale of an unpatented article* may deprive the patentee of the aid of a court of equity to restrain an alleged infringement by one who is a competitor. * * *" (Emphasis added.)

Neither the facts nor the rule of law involved in the *Morton Salt* case has any application here. The holding of this Court in the *Morton Salt* case was directed to the situation where the patent owner uses his patent to restrain competition by tying-in sales of unpatented commodities, thus *creating a monopoly in a field outside the patent grant.* The facts of the present case distinguish it from the *Morton Salt* case in two essential respects:

(1) There is no use of any patent rights by Hazeltine "to restrain competition in the marketing of unpatented articles" or in *any* articles. Hazeltine does not itself manu-

facture any apparatus of the type licensed and therefore does not restrain any competition with it. The license includes no restrictions of any kind bearing on competition by the licensees with Hazeltine or with each other.

(2) As a corollary of (1), Hazeltine is not using its patents for "aiding in the creation of a limited monopoly" or in any monopoly of any kind. It freely licenses all manufacturers at a nominal royalty and provides engineering assistance to its licensees, including many small companies which could not afford extensive engineering of their own (R. 80), and thus actively *promotes* competition in the industry, the very antithesis of monopoly.

In the *B. B. Chemical* case, that company owned a patent on a method of reinforcing the insoles of shoes. It supplied machines for practicing the method to various shoe manufacturers, retaining ownership of the machines, and also supplied unpatented materials for use with the machines in practicing the patented method. The lower courts held that this practice operated as a license to use the patented machine only with the unpatented material and thus restrained competition with B. B. Chemical in the sale of the unpatented materials.

This Court found that the issue was the same as that involved in the *Morton Salt* case, saying (pp. 497, 498):

> "But in view of petitioner's use of the patent as the means of establishing a limited monopoly in its unpatented materials, and for the reasons given in our opinion in the Morton Salt Company case, we hold that the maintenance of this suit to restrain any form of infringement is contrary to public policy, and that the district court rightly dismissed it."

In the *Mercoid* case, Midcontinent owned a patent on a domestic heating system. It granted an exclusive license to Minneapolis-Honeywell, the royalty payments to be based *only* upon the sales of an unpatented switch, which was an

element of the combination claimed in the patent. None of the parties involved actually sold or installed complete heating systems, but Minneapolis-Honeywell sublicensed heating contractors to use the patented system provided the sub-licensee used *only* unpatented switches purchased from it. This Court did not condemn the provision for royalty measurement there involved but found that (p. 663):

> "There was ample evidence to sustain the findings of the District Court that respondents endeavored to use the license agreement so as to prevent the sale or use of combustion stoker switches in these heating systems unless they were the switches made by Minneapolis-Honeywell and purchased from it or its sublicensees."

Midcontinent brought an action for contributory infringement against Mercoid on account of its sales of unpatented switches for use in the patented heating system. It appeared that such switches had no use other than in the patented system. In holding that Midcontinent was barred from recovery because of its misuse of its patent, this Court said (pp. 666, 667):

> "• • • The struggle is not over a combination patent and the right to make or vend it. *The contest is solely over unpatented wares* which go into the patented product. Respondents point out that the royalties under the license are measured by the number of unpatented controls which are sold and that no royalty is paid unless a furnace covered by the patent has been installed. But the fact remains that *the competition which is sought to be controlled is not competition in the sale of the patented assembly but merely competition in the sale of the unpatented thermostatic controls.* The patent is employed to protect the market for a device on which no patent has been granted. • • •". (Emphasis added.)

Thus in each of the three cases under discussion the gravamen of the objection to the patent owner's practices

was that he was using a patent on *one entity* (machine or process) to restrain competition and create a monopoly in *another and unpatented entity*. These cases have nothing to do with a contract under which royalty payments are made for the *right to use* present *and future* inventions in a particular class of apparatus and in which such payments are made without regard to the extent of use of the licensed inventions, which is the situation presented here. This distinction was brought out clearly by the Court of Appeals as follows (R. 320):

> "A different problem would be presented if the license agreement had provided that, in part consideration for the right to make use of Hazeltine's patents, Automatic agreed not to compete in the commercial field in the manufacture and sale of any radio apparatus of the types enumerated, even though such apparatus did not embody any of the inventions covered by Hazeltine's patents. Such an agreement might be unenforceable as constituting an unlawful attempt to extend the monopoly of licensor's patents beyond the limits of the patent grants. But as we read the license agreement in the case at bar, Automatic would not break the agreement by manufacturing and selling for unrestricted use radio apparatus which in fact does not embody any of the inventions covered by Hazeltine's patents. This is true notwithstanding the fact that Automatic, in making such a sale, would be required by Article IV, Section 1, of the agreement to pay to Hazeltine the stipulated percentage of the selling price as royalty for the *right* to utilize the patents covered by the license agreement."

A further important fact distinguishing the instant case from those discussed above is that the license *sub judice* is not merely a license under a single patent; it is a grant to the licensee of the *right or privilege* of using any, or all, of the group of patented inventions now owned by Hazeltine and *in addition* a grant of the right to use any inventions which may be acquired by Hazel-

tine during the term of the agreement either from its extensive research and development activities or otherwise. There is nothing remotely illegal or against public policy in an unrestricted contract available to anyone in the industry which guarantees to a licensee a license under all of the future fruits of an extensive research laboratory for a period of years at a nominal rate of royalty based on sales in the field of activity of the laboratory. Thus, the license agreement must be sustained on this ground independently, even if Hazeltine had *no patents at present* and even though *no patented inventions should result* from such research work. The decision of the Court below on this issue is not in conflict with any prior decision of this Court or the Courts of Appeals of other Circuits. Moreover, it is based on sound legal and equitable principles and should be affirmed by this Court.

(2) Petitioner's Argument
(Petitioner's Brief, pp. 12-30)

Basically Petitioner's challenge of this provision of its license agreement is that it requires the payment of royalties on *unpatented* radio receivers. Actually this issue is moot in this case for Petitioner has used and is using the Hazeltine patented inventions extensively in all of its radio receivers. In 1941 it was using *twenty-seven* Hazeltine patents (Exh. P, R. 103). It is still admittedly using *ten* patented inventions of Hazeltine (R. 50-52; *supra*, pp. 6-7). In fact, there is no evidence here that radio receivers marketed by other licensees differ from those of Petitioner and thus there is *no evidence that any unpatented apparatus is being sold by any licensee.* This whole question rests upon a flimsy, hypothetical assumption of Petitioner that unpatented apparatus is being sold by Hazeltine's licensees.

In the portion of its Brief dealing with this question Petitioner reaches the zenith of its reckless abuse of Hazeltine and the nadir of its logic. It resorts to name calling (racketeers, p. 27) and postulates an insinuating hypothetical example (p. 27) which is malicious but purely frivolous. Petitioner's purported factual discussions and implied assumptions in its Argument at this point understandably include no supporting references to the Record; they are pure fantasy.

Petitioner advances the novel contention (p. 24) that the mere fact that Hazeltine has made numerous major and minor advances in the art as a consequence of its general research and development work over a period of years, resulting in a large number of patented inventions, should inflict some sort of a penalty upon Hazeltine. Hazeltine's efforts to comply with the Constitutional injunction "to promote the progress of science and useful arts" (Article I, Section 8) over a period of some 24 years has been intensive, extensive, and expensive. Its efforts have been recognized by the leaders in the industry who have utilized its inventions under license (R. 79-80). This work has been a major contributing factor to the progressive reduction in cost and improvement in performance in radio receivers during the last 20 years. Respondent knows of no authority on patent matters which has considered itself above the United States Constitution and attempted to nullify the express Constitutional provision by attaching a penalty to any organization actively engaged in promoting the progress of the useful arts and thereby creating a large number of patentable inventions. Petitioner has cited no such authority.

Petitioner rests its case basically on the prior decisions of this Court which have prohibited attempts of patent owners to extend the scope of the licensed patents beyond the statutory grant, saying (p. 12):

> "Such prior attempts (to extend patent monopoly) have been directed towards (a) requiring the purchase of unpatented goods from the patentee for use with patented apparatus or processes, (b) prohibiting the purchaser or lessee of patented apparatus or the licensee under patents from producing or selling unpatented competing goods or (c) conditioning a license under one monopoly grant upon accepting another and different license (block-booking)."

Petitioner then discusses (pp. 12-22) a number of decisions of this Court bearing on the three named types of monopoly extensions. But the fallacy in this position is that none of the three prohibited practices is involved here and none of the cases discussed is relevant. There is not present here: (a) any requirement for the purchase of unpatented goods from Hazeltine or from anyone; (b) any prohibition on the licensee against the manufacture of any type of apparatus whatever; or (c) any conditioning of the license upon acceptance by the licensee of another and different license.

While none of the cases relied on by Petitioner is any way inconsistent with the large number of authorities cited and discussed above (pp. 17-22) which have uniformly approved the measurement of royalties on gross sales of apparatus of the type licensed, comment seems appropriate on the cases of *United States* v. *Paramount Pictures*, 334 U. S. 131 and *United States* v. *U. S. Gypsum*, 333 U. S. 364, in view of the unusual emphasis put upon them by Petitioner. The *Paramount Pictures* case condemned "block booking." In the portion of the opinion quoted by Petitioner, this Court carefully defined "block booking" and quoted with approval from the opinion of the Trial Court to the effect that

> "Block booking . . . adds to the monopoly of a single copyrighted picture that of another copyrighted picture *which must be taken and exhibited*

in order to secure the first'." (Emphasis added; pp. 156, 157.)

Under the license agreement here in issue, the licensee is not required to use any unwanted patented inventions. He merely pays a nominal royalty of less than 1% for the *right or privilege* of using any desired ones of Hazeltine's group of patented inventions *and* any desired ones of the future inventions coming out of the continuing research work of the Hazeltine laboratories during the term of the agreement. This practice has no relation to "block booking."

The *U. S. Gypsum* case was an action by the United States against U. S. Gypsum and a number of its licensees charging violation of the Sherman Act. The theory of the complaint was that through their license agreements the defendants had entered into a conspiracy in restraint of trade. The licenses provided that the royalty payable for the privilege of manufacturing, using, and selling gypsum board under the patents was an amount equivalent to the designated percentage of the licensees' sales of *all* gypsum board manufactured by them, whether patented or not. The District Court dismissed the complaint. While this Court did reverse the judgment of the Trial Court in that case, it did not reverse the holding quoted above (p. 20). The essence of the decision of this Court in the *U. S. Gypsum* case is that where a licensor and a number of licensees, *acting in concert*, devise a license agreement including a number of restrictive clauses which, but for the existence of valid patents, would represent violations of the anti-trust laws, the arrangement comprises effectively a *conspiracy* in restraint of trade and is illegal, even though it is assumed that the license agreement is perfectly legal when issued by a licensor to its licensees without any concerted action. This is borne out by the following references to the opinion of this Court:

"• • • The complaint charged that the appellees had violated both Secs. 1 and 2 of the Sherman Act by conspiring to fix prices on patented gypsum board and unpatented gypsum products, to standardize gypsum board and its method of production for the purpose of eliminating competition, and to regulate the distribution of gypsum board by eliminating jobbers and fixing resale prices of manufacturing distributors (p. 367; this Court found that the evidence supported these charges).

"Appellees admit that in the absence of whatever protection is afforded by valid patents the licensing arrangements described would be in violation of the Sherman Act" (p. 386).

This Court further held that the particular license provision in question, basing royalties on gross sales, *taken in conjunction with other evidence,* showed a *conspiracy* to restrict the production of unpatented products:

"• • • The provision in the license contracts that royalties should be paid on the production of unpatented board is strongly indicative of an agreement not to manufacture unpatented board, *and the testimony of the witnesses is ample to show that there was an understanding, if not a formal agreement, that only patented board would be sold.* Such an arrangement in purpose and effect increased the area of the patent monopoly and is invalid" (Emphasis added; p. 397).

It is clear throughout this Court's opinion that it *assumed* the legality of the license agreement *sub judice,* when separated from its conspiratorial context:

"• • • Even in the absence of the specific abuses in this case, which fall within the traditional prohibitions of the Sherman Act, it would be sufficient to show that the defendants, *constituting all former competitors in an entire industry, had acted in concert,* to restrain commerce in an entire industry under patent licenses in order to organize the industry and stabilize prices. *That conclusion follows de-*

> *spite the assumed legality of each separate patent license;* for it is familiar doctrine that lawful acts may become unlawful when taken in concert" (Emphasis added; p. 401).

* * * * * *

The authorities cited by the Court of Appeals (R. 319) and those cited above (pp. 18-19), have adopted a practicable and reasonable rule and one that does not extend the patent monopoly or otherwise impinge upon the public interest. No authorities have reached a different conclusion.

Petitioner (p. 23) makes a number of distorted, unsupported and untrue allegations as to Hazeltine's conduct of its business. Understandably, it gives no supporting references to the Record. Thus, Petitioner asserts (p. 23): (1) that Hazeltine has organized a "pool" of 700 patents and patent applications; (2) that in that group of patents and applications there is "not a single valid patent"; and (3) that Hazeltine

> "makes no attempt to seek a return based upon use of these patents. Rather, it brazenly exacts a tribute upon the entire production of its licensees, both patented and unpatented."

This is sheer unfounded vilification. In the first place, Hazeltine has no "pool" of patents within the ordinary meaning of that term (Appendix I, pp. 71-72). Secondly, the statement that none of this large group of patents, granted to Hazeltine as a result of its extensive research and development work over a period of some twenty years, is valid is indicative of Petitioner's supreme contempt for the United States Patent Office and for our entire patent system. Lastly, there is no evidence in this case that any royalties have ever been paid to Hazeltine on any unpatented apparatus.

At pages 24-34 of its Brief, Petitioner attempts to show that white is black; that measurement of royalties on gross sales of apparatus of the type licensed:

> "is exactly analogous to the requirement that unpatented goods be purchased from the patent holder" (p. 25).

The difficulty with this assertion is that there is no evidence to support it and it simply is not true. Licenses "tying-in" the sale of unpatented commodities have the practical effect of restraining competition in such commodities and that is their sole purpose. In the case at bar, as previously pointed out (*supra*, pp. 7-10), there is absolutely no restraint on competition. *There is no compulsion on licensee to buy or sell or not to buy or sell any apparatus from anyone.* The effect of the royalty provision is to insure to Hazeltine a reasonable reward for the use of its patents on a practical business basis.

Petitioner (p. 29) attempts to distinguish in principle between a royalty of a fixed sum per year and a royalty on gross sales of apparatus of the type licensed on the ground that the former represents an actual evaluation of the licensed patents while the latter does not, because of possible changes in the extent of use of the licensed patents. The distinction is unsound. In fact, any basis of royalty payment other than that measured directly and solely by the extent of use of the licensed inventions will not continually reflect the party's original evaluation of the licensed patents when subsequent fluctuations in the extent of use occur. Yet no one, not even Petitioner, has questioned the legality of a fixed sum annual royalty payment. On principle, the measurement of royalties on the gross sales of apparatus of the type licensed is equally unassailable.

(3) The Department of Justice Brief (Question II, pp. 19-25).

The Department of Justice's criticisms of the royalty provision in issue appear to be largely economic rather than legal and stem from a number of erroneous factual assumptions and premises which it apparently believed to raise questions of restraint of trade and unlawful extension of patent rights:

(a) It assumes that the royalty provision in issue inherently and necessarily constitutes a "toll on unpatented apparatus" (p. 19) repeating and ringing the changes on this proposition over and over. The evidence is to the contrary. Petitioner has embodied the inventions of *ten* Hazeltine patents in its receivers (*supra*, pp. 6-7). Those receivers are typical of the receivers marketed by other licensees, although many licensees make even more extensive use of the Hazeltine inventions. *There is no evidence, nor even any assertion, that any licensee ever sold any radio receivers that did not embody any of the Hazeltine patented inventions.*

(b) The Department of Justice Brief considers only Hazeltine's present and existing patented inventions, completely disregarding the fact that the licensees also acquire the right or option to use any or all of the *future* inventions coming from Hazeltine's extensive research and development work. It has been pointed out above (pp. 16-17) that this right to future inventions alone may well be adequate and legal consideration for the nominal royalty which licensee pays and that the addition of rights under Hazeltine's present patents, whether or not valid, does not convert such a legal bargain into an illegal one.

(c) It further asserts (p. 28) that the license provision was adopted to avoid attempts by the licensees to minimize royalty payments by refusing to make widespread

use of the Hazeltine inventions. However, in licenses under groups of patents, such as present here, the general custom is to charge a single rate of royalty irrespective of whether the licensed apparatus embodies the invention of a single claim of a single patent or the inventions of a number of claims of each of a number of patents. Therefore, a licensee using one claimed invention might use as many as he considered advantageous without increasing his royalty payments. In any event, it completely overlooks the practical fact that the royalty rate is so low that it does not influence the design of radio receivers—the controlling factors are material and labor costs and performance.

(d) The Department of Justice Brief suggests (p. 25) that the license provision distinguishes in principle from an annual fixed-sum payment since the latter is an overhead expense while a royalty based on sales increases unit costs. This assertion overlooks the fact that the overhead is just as much an element of unit cost as a percentage on sales, though it may fluctuate up and down with the volume of sales. There is no difference in principle.

The Department of Justice Brief in footnotes to pages 20 and 21 cites the case of *United States* v. *U. S. Gypsum*, 333 U. S. 364, in support of its attack on the royalty provision in issue.

That case was an action by the United States against U. S. Gypsum and a number of its licensees charging violation of the Sherman Act. The theory of the complaint was that through their license agreements *the defendants had entered into a conspiracy in restraint of trade*. In that case, this Court did not condemn, but impliedly sanctioned, the measurement of royalties on the gross sales of the licensee (*supra*, pp. 30-32). What this Court condemned in that case were the restrictive agreements *entered into in concert by all competitors in an industry*. The situation

presented here is the very antithesis of a restraint of trade. Hazeltine readily grants licenses to *all* applicants under *all* of its inventions at a nominal "royalty", thus *promoting* competition. *It has not acted in concert* with any number of its licensees. Furthermore, *it would not be possible* for Hazeltine or its licensees to establish any monopolistic prices or restraints on trade since a large segment of the radio industry, including such leading companies as Emerson, Motorola, General Motors, Crosley and Admiral, operates outside the Hazeltine license in competition with Hazeltine's licensees (R. 249-250).

In the footnote at page 20, the Department of Justice criticizes the cases on which the Court below relied (R. 319) in sustaining the license provision in question and alleges that they factually distinguish from the instant case. However, the distinctions are immaterial details—the cited cases all involve the same basic principle (See also the additional cases cited and discussed above, pp. 18-20). At page 24, the Brief refers to *Pope* v. *Gormully*, 144 U. S. 224. It is shown below (pp. 57-59) that the facts and ruling of that case have no application here.

In conclusion, the Brief suggests that this case be remanded to determine the "effect upon competition" of the license provision in controversy. There is no evidence that it has any effect on competition and as a fact it does not have. The Department of Justice is creating a new and different controversy rather than aiding the disposition of the issues presented.

It has been shown (*supra*, pp. 8-10) that the license agreement in suit does not in any way tend to restrain trade or extend the lawful scope of licensed patents but, on the contrary, actually promotes competition. The criticisms of the Department of Justice are unrealistic and based upon hypothetical assumptions of what, under other circumstances, might happen. They do not provide a use-

ful guide in resolving the practical controversy before this Court.

D. The License Notice specified in the Agreement merely informs the public of the limits of licensee's rights and does not constitute a misuse of the licensed patents (Questions 2, 3, and 4).

The license notice provision of the Hazeltine license reads:

> "Licensed • • • only for use in homes, for educational purposes, and for private, non-commercial use, under one or more of the following patents and under pending applications:"

followed by the word

> "Patent • • •." (Exh. A, Article VI, Section 2; R. 14.)

This notice is *exactly commensurate with the scope of the license* granted:

> "Section 2. The apparatus for which the said license is granted is as follows; the use in each case is limited to use in homes, use for educational purposes and private non-commercial use:
>
> "(a) Complete radio broadcast receivers of sound; (etc.) • • •" (Exh. A, Article III, Section 2; R. 8.)

Thus, neither the license itself nor the license notice contractually restrains any manufacturer from making and selling any type of apparatus it chooses. The license notice in question does not constitute a misuse of patents.

In any event, Petitioner in this case is not relieved from its obligation to pay royalties merely because of the license notice provision for any of three reasons:

(a) The license notice is of the type expressly approved by this Court in the case of *General Talking Pictures* v. *Western Electric* (304 U. S. 175; 305 U. S. 124).

(b) The license notice in question is not properly an issue in this case because, as pointed out above (pp. 10-11), Petitioner has not complied with it; because the license notice has been waived for more than four years; and because it was not pleaded as a defense.

(c) The license notice in question does not go to the essence of the agreement and is a severable provision. Even if it were unenforceable, it would not render the whole agreement unenforceable.

(a) *The license notice was expressly approved by this Court in the General Talking Pictures case.* In that case, American Telephone and Telegraph Company, through its subsidiary Western Electric, had granted a non-exclusive license under certain patents relating to amplifying equipment to American Transformer Company. The Court described the license notice (p. 180) as

> "* * * stating in substance that the apparatus was licensed only for radio amateur, experimental and broadcast reception under the patents in question. * * *"

The parallel between that license notice and the one in issue is exact. American Transformer made for and sold to defendant amplifying equipment of the licensed type but for use in the talking picture field, an unlicensed field, even though defendant knew of the restrictions on the license. In accordance with the requirements of the license, these equipments carried a notice as to the restricted field of use. In an infringement action brought against defendant, this Court found that the restriction as to use was a legal and permissible limitation on the license stating (p. 181):

> "Patent owners may grant licenses extending to all uses or limited to use in a defined field. *Rubber Com-*

pany v. *Goodyear*, 9 Wall. 788, 799, 800. *Gamewell Fire-Alarm Telegraph Co.* v. *Brooklyn*, 14 Fed. 255. *Dorsey Rake Co.* v. *Bradley Co.*, Fed. Cas. No. 4,015, 7 Fed. Cas. 946, 947. Robinson on Patents, Secs. 808, 824. Unquestionably, the owner of a patent may grant licenses to manufacture, use or sell upon conditions not inconsistent with the scope of the monopoly. *Bement* v. *National Harrow Co.*, 186 U. S. 70, 93. *United States* v. *General Electric Co.*, 272 U. S. 476, 489. There is here no attempt on the part of the patent owner to extend the scope of the monopoly beyond that contemplated by the patent statute. Cf. *Carbice Corp.* v. *American Patents Corp.*, 283 U. S. 27, 33. *Leitch Mfg. Co.* v. *Barber Co.*, 302 U. S. 458."

Subsequently, a reargument was permitted and again this Court expressed its approval of the limitation as to use, as follows (p. 427):

"The question of law requiring decision is whether the restriction in the license is to be given effect. That a restrictive license is legal seems clear. *Mitchell* v. *Hawley*, 16 Wall. 544. As was said in *United States* v. *General Electric Co.*, 272 U. S. 476, 489, the patentee may grant a license 'upon any condition the performance of which is reasonably within the reward which the patentee by the grant of the patent is entitled to secure'. The restriction here imposed is of that character. The practice of granting licenses for a restricted use is an old one, see *Rubber Company* v. *Goodyear*, 9 Wall. 788, 799, 800; *Gamewell Fire-Alarm Telegraph Co.* v. *Brooklyn*, 14 F. 255. So far as appears, its legality has never been questioned. * * *"

Consequently, the Court continued (p. 127), there was

"* * * no occasion to consider what the rights of the parties would have been if the amplifier had been manufactured 'under the patent' and 'had passed into the hands of a purchaser in the ordinary channels of trade.' Nor have we occasion to consider the effect of a 'licensee's notice' which purports to restrict the use of articles lawfully sold."

The *General Talking Pictures* case received unusually careful consideration by this Court. It was covered in a decision at 304 U. S. 175; corrected in language at 304 U. S. 546; affirmed on rehearing at 305 U. S. 124; and further rehearing denied at 305 U. S. 675. On rehearing the Solicitor General appeared as *amicus curiae*. Each decision was accompanied by a detailed dissenting opinion. Respondent and the public generally were therefore fully justified in regarding that decision as a final statement of the law. No later authorities have in any way modified the ruling of the *General Talking Pictures* case. No rational basis is advanced for urging this Court to reverse itself to the serious detriment of patentees and industry at large who have acted in reliance upon its decisions. If there were ever an instance for appropriately invoking the doctrine of *stare decisis*, this would seem to be it.

(b) *The license notice in question is not properly an issue in this case.* Petitioner admits that it has not complied with the license notice provision of the agreement since the date of the agreement (R. 171) so that it can not have been damaged thereby. Respondent has not asked that this provision of the license be specifically enforced and the judgment of the Trial Court (R. 293) does not enforce it. In view of these facts, Petitioner can not have been damaged in any way by the license provision and is in no position to urge its illegality.

Furthermore, the license notice in question was waived with respect to all licensees, including Petitioner, in September, 1945 (*supra*, p. 9). Hazeltine has since September, 1945, continuously and uniformly followed the practice of granting to its licensees the right to use the following simple form of license notice:

> This apparatus is licensed under the
> United States patent rights of
> HAZELTINE CORPORATION
> (or Hazeltine Research, Inc.)
> (Appendix II, pp. 78-80)

Also, the defense of alleged illegal license notice was not pleaded by Petitioner either in its Answer (R. 45) or in its Amended Answer (R. 71).

For all of these reasons, the issue of the legality of the license notice is not properly presented for decision by this Court and has become moot. A very similar situation was presented in the recent case of *Westinghouse Electric Corp.* v. *Bulldog Electric Products Co.*, (C. A. 4; 179 F. (2d) 139; 84 U. S. P. Q. 115). In that case, Westinghouse had a series of license agreements, including a cross-license agreement, which had price-fixing clauses. After the decision of this Court in *United States* v. *Line Material*, 333 U. S. 287, Westinghouse became apprehensive of these price-fixing provisions and sent a letter to each of its licensees waiving the price-fixing clause and withdrawing previously issued price schedules D, in the following terms (p. 118):

> "Westinghouse Electric Corporation hereby irrevocably waives the provisions of Article VI of said modified agreement for the full life of said modified agreement, insofar as such provisions are applicable to latching contact bar type circuit breaker devices, and hereby withdraws and cancels each and every schedule D submitted to you under said Article VI of said modified agreement."

In holding that the foregoing waiver cured any illegality which might have attached to the licenses because of the price-fixing clause, the Court of Appeals said (p. 119):

> "We need not decide, however, whether the price maintenance provisions of the multibreaker licenses are illegal, as we think it clear that any illegality that may have existed has been purged as a result of the action of Westinghouse in promptly surrendering all rights under these provisions following the decision in the *Line Material* case and abandoning all efforts at price control.
>
> "* * * It is argued that the unlawful conduct has not been abandoned because the letters sent out by

> Westinghouse constituted unilateral action on its part not joined in by its licensees; but no such joinder was necessary. The price maintenance provisions of the contract were for the protection and benefit of Westinghouse; and it is elementary that a party may waive a condition or stipulation made in his own favor. See *Ins. Co.* v. *Norton*, 96 U. S. 234. No one would contend that, if the price fixing provision were lawful, Westinghouse could have insisted upon compliance by the licensees after the sending out of the letter waiving it. Not only has it done everything that it could do to purge its licenses of the illegal provision, but there can be no question but that its action has had that effect."

In brief, this Court is not called upon to decide the question of the asserted illegality of the license notice since it was waived more than a year before the present controversy arose and since this waiver alone serves to nullify Petitioner's collateral defense to its obligation to pay royalties under the license agreement.

(c) *The license notice in question is an unessential provision.* Even if it be assumed, arguendo, that the license notice is unenforceable and even neglecting its waiver in September, 1945, still the license notice does not go to the essence of the license agreement and is a severable provision. The essential considerations of the license agreement are the grant of a license by Hazeltine and the payment of royalties by Petitioner. The requirement that Petitioner apply the license notice to its receivers is an unessential provision, the breach of which might subject Petitioner to any damages which Hazeltine sustained as a result of such breach, but one which would not afford either party justification for repudiation or cancellation of the agreement. This is corroborated by the fact that, in spite of the admission by Petitioner that it has breached this provision of the agreement by failing to apply license notices to its receivers (R. 177), Respondent has made no

claim on account of this breach and Judge FORD's Judgment (R. 293) did not require Petitioner to comply with this license notice provision.

Such an unessential contract provision, even if illegal or unenforceable, does not render the whole contract unenforceable. The rule is well stated in the American Law Institute Restatement of the Law of Contracts (1932 Edition, Section 603 (p. 1119)):

> "A bargain that is illegal only because of a promise or a provision for a condition, disregard of which will not defeat the primary purpose of the bargain, can be enforced with the omission of the illegal portion by a party to the bargain who is not guilty of serious moral turpitude unless this result is prohibited by statute. Recovery is more readily allowed where there has been part performance of the legal portion of the bargain." (The 1945 Ed. Glossary at p. 521 under Section 603 of "Contracts" cites *Forbes* v. *Forbes*, 159 Pa. Super. 243; *White* v. *E. C. McKallor Drug Co.*, 268 N. Y. Supp. 371; *United Radio, Inc.* v. *Cotton*, 22 N. E. (2d) 532.)

The New York Annotation states (p. 371) that

> "This Section seems in accord with the New York Law."

The License Agreement in question is a New York contract and is to be construed by New York law, as expressly recited in the agreement (R. 14) and as held by the Court below (R. 325).

The rule is stated similarly by Williston on Contracts (Rev. Edition 1937, Baker Voorhis & Co.) in Section 1659 (Vol. Five, p. 4679):

> "Contracts containing promises unlawful because of too extended restrictive effect have not been held so unlawful in their general purpose as to invalidate the whole transaction of which they were a part (Note 1

on that page cites Hall Manufacturing Co. v. Western Steel and Iron Works, 227 F. 588, L. R. A. 1916C 620); and the fact that a covenant in restraint of trade is more extended than the law allows will not preclude the enforcement of separable lawful restrictive promises. (Note 2 on that page cites Guth v. Minnesota M & M Co., 77 F. (2d) 385; Fox Film Corp. v. Ogden Theater Co., 17 P. (2d) 294 (Utah), 90 A. L. R. 1299; also on p. 4681 Note 13 cites Edgecomb v. Edmonston, 153 N. E. 99 (Mass.) as an example of the recent tendency to enforce the valid portion of an indivisible contract.)".

In Section 1629A (p. 4559), Williston states:

> "Thus the courts enforce the severable legal parts of an illegal divisible contract where the unlawfulness does not permeate the whole and even in the case of indivisible contracts they strive to segregate and uphold if possible such portions as may be legal. * * *"

After referring to the views of this Court as to a patent owner imposing a restriction on the buyer, Williston further states with respect to patent license notices (Section 1647, pp. 4630-1):

> "This can only mean, however, that the patent laws give no protection to restrictive promises exacted from a buyer and that they must stand or fall under the common law as if the article was unpatented. Probably this depends on whether such a contract or condition is part of a scheme to obtain a monopoly wider than that of the patented article. Certainly this result cannot be achieved by mere notices on patented articles." (Note 46 on P. 4631 cites Straus v. Victor Talking Mach. Co., 243 U. S. 490; 66 L. Ed. 866; Motion Picture Mfg. Co. v. Universal Film Mfg. Co., 243 U. S. 502; 61 L. Ed. 871; Carbice Corp. v. American Patents Dev. Corp., 283 U. S. 27; 75 L. Ed. 819; The 1943 Cumulative Supplement to Volume Five, Section 1647 at p. 87 cites General Talking Pictures Corp. v. Western Electric Co., 305 U. S. 124; 83 L. Ed. 81).

In brief, the license notice clause of the agreement in issue, even if illegal and unenforceable, which Respondent vigorously denies, does not thereby render the whole agreement unenforceable and relieve Petitioner of its obligation to pay royalties for the use of the Hazeltine patents, which it has admittedly enjoyed.

(1) Petitioner's Argument
(Petitioner's Brief, pp. 30-54).

In its challenge of the license notice in issue, Petitioner sets up a straw man, the more easily to knock it down. Its entire consideration on this point is limited to the effectiveness of such a license notice on an admittedly licensed device *after it has passed through the channels of commerce and into the hands of the purchasing public. But that question is not even before this Court* and, for that reason, none of the cases cited by Petitioner is relevant. This is not a suit by Hazeltine against a *purchaser* of licensed apparatus from Petitioner. The question presented here is solely whether, *as between licensor and licensee*, the requirement of a license notice specifying the licensed field is illegal *per se*, but that question is no longer open to dispute, such notice having been expressly found to be valid in the *General Talking Pictures* case, *supra*. The validity of such a license notice was not even questioned in the dissenting opinions of Mr. Justice Black. That decision has never been reversed or modified.

In its review of authorities considering the effectiveness of limitations in a license agreement against a purchaser in the ordinary channels of trade, Petitioner (pp. 31-45) considers several types of limitations which have been held ineffective against such purchasers of licensed apparatus; it also discusses a number of authorities which have held that license notices are ineffective to enforce

against such purchasers license limitations which are not otherwise enforceable in the absence of license notices. Thus Petitioner states that this Court in *Bauer* v. *O'Donnell*, 229 U. S. 1, brought

> "* * * its decision precisely in line with *the doctrine fundamental to all those cases, that once title to a patented article has passed to a purchaser*, and the right to vend thus exhausted with respect thereto, the article has passed 'beyond the limits of the monopoly secured by the patent act' * * *" (p. 40; (Emphasis added).

But those cases have no application here.* No purchaser of licensed apparatus is a party to this action and no rights of such a purchaser are here involved. Neither the case of *Motion Picture Patents* v. *Universal Film*, 243 U. S. 502 or *Carbice* v. *American Patents Development*, 283 U. S. 27, cited by Petitioner (pp. 43-44) has any application here, since neither of those cases involved the propriety of a license notice of any kind. Both of such cases involved a clause tying-in the sales of an unpatented commodity with licensed apparatus and are not relevant here.

Petitioner refers (p. 45) to the *General Talking Pictures* case, *supra*, and to two questions which Petitioner in that case formulated but which this Court found were not properly presented for decision because they involved

---

* The Court may be interested to note that pages 31-45 of Petitioner's Brief are substantially a verbatim copy of pages 15-29 of the "Brief for Petitioner", in the *General Talking Pictures* case and of pages 11-26 of the "Brief for Petitioner on Rehearing" in the same case. Counsel for Petitioner in that case was a member of the firm Darby & Darby which is also counsel for Petitioner here. That argument failed to persuade this Court in that case that a license notice essentially identical to that involved here was illegal *per se*. It also failed to persuade this Court that a purchaser *with notice* that the apparatus is purchased from a licensee with a license notice affixed should not be held as an infringer. *A fortiori*, it must fail to persuade this Court that, *as between licensor and licensee*, such a license notice represents an illegal bargain.

rights of a "purchaser in the ordinary channels of trade."* Those questions are not properly presented here for the same reason. Petitioner refers (p. 46) to a vigorous dissent by Mr. Justice BLACK in that case but it conveniently omits to state that the dissent was on an issue not presented here, as appears from the dissenting opinion itself:

> "The area of the patent monopoly is expanded by the holding that the exclusive right granted an inventor to 'make, use and vend' his patented commercial device, permits the inventor's corporate assignee (and other 'patent pool' participants) to *control how, and where the device can be used by a purchaser who bought it in the open market.*
>
> "Petitioner bought amplifying tubes from the American Transformer Company, a licensee authorized to 'manufacture * * * and sell only for radio amateur reception, radio experimental reception and radio broadcast reception.' The devices are of a standard and uniform type generally useful in many 'fields'.
>
> *"We are not here concerned with the right of respondents under the contract with the licensee,* American Transformer Company. * * *" (Emphasis added; pp. 183, 184.)

Petitioner refers (pp. 47-50) to a number of decisions of this Court after the *General Talking Pictures* case and makes the astounding assertion with respect to them:

> "* * * we submit that the *General Talking Pictures* case has been overruled by subsequent decisions."

---

* The two questions referred to read:

"1. Can the owner of a patent, by means thereof, restrict the use made of a device manufactured under the patent, after the device has passed into the hands of a purchaser in the ordinary channels of trade, and full consideration paid therefor?

"2. Can a patent owner, merely by a 'license notice' attached to a device made under the patent, and sold in the ordinary channels of trade, place an enforceable restriction on the purchaser thereof as to the use to which the purchaser may put the device?"

None of the cases referred to by Petitioner even *cites* the *General Talking Pictures* case. Is it possible that this Court has overruled one of its decisions as recent as the *General Talking Pictures* case without even referring to the decision overruled! Obviously not. The reason that none of the later cases cited by Petitioner refers to the *General Talking Pictures* case is clear—none of them involved the same issue, so that there was no occasion to refer to it. The *General Talking Pictures* case is the last word of this Court on the legality of a patent license notice informing of the scope of the license in question. None of the other cases cited by Petitioner is relevant.

Petitioner (pp. 51-54) launches into pure fantasy without a scintilla of record support, referring to receivers which are "probably" in use (p. 51); accepting "as a fact, proved conclusively and beyond question" its own absurd assumptions (p. 51); indulging in fantastic "ifs" (p. 52); and conjecturing as to facts that "we do not know" (p. 52). It appears unnecessary to refute each of these frivolous and malicious assertions and assumptions which Petitioner has conjured up in an effort to distract the Court's attention from the simple issues to be decided. Petitioner, in an effort to evade its obligations under its simple non-exclusive license while enjoying the use of Hazeltine's patented inventions, feigns an earnest solicitude for the public interest. Its actions were well described in *Charles Peckat, et al.* v. *Jacobs* (1949), 178 F. (2d) 794, cert. den. —— U. S. —— (p. 803):

> "• • • One who has exactly copied that which is patented, who so strongly asserts that he is acting to protect the public interest in attacking the claims of the patent, brings himself within the category mentioned in Hawkinson Co. v. Dennis, et al., 5 Cir., 166 F. 2d 61, 62. 'In short, the case as we have it is one in which the defendants, by the device of presenting themselves as defenders of the public interest, draw attention from the less savory role

assigned them by plaintiff as infringers pirating plaintiff's invention. This role of invoking the public interest, "that is, the interest of others than the parties," to enable the defendant to keep the fruits of his contract without standing to his bargain, became so familiar in ordinary contract cases that the courts have latterly been quite slow to follow such interested leading'."

(2) There is no requirement that license notices be applied to unpatented apparatus.

Petitioner emphasizes by repetition (pp. 46-47, 51, 53) its deliberate statement that the license agreement in suit *requires* that the license notice in question be applied not only to licensed apparatus *but also to unlicensed apparatus* not embodying any of the Hazeltine patented inventions. The Department of Justice Brief adopts this assertion as its own, repeating it over and over (pp. 5, 9, 31, 32). A large portion of the argument of both Petitioner and the Department involves this assertion as its premise. These tactics are strongly reminiscent of the first maxim of the propagandist—if an untruth is repeated often enough, it will be ultimately believed.

The license agreement is perfectly clear and unambiguous on this point. It expressly recites that the license notice in issue is to be applied to "*all licensed apparatus*" (Art. VI, Sec. 2, R. 14). Clearly apparatus not embodying any of Hazeltine's patented inventions is not "licensed apparatus". This is the only permissible interpretation in view of the distinction of Art. IV, Sec. 1 (R. 9), specifying that royalties are payable not with respect to "licensed apparatus" but with respect to each complete apparatus of the type identified in Art. III, Sec. 2.

(3) The Brief of the Department of Justice (Question IV, pp. 29-40).

The whole discussion of the Department of Justice on this point has become academic since, as previously stated (pp. 10-11), the license notice in question was completely waived in 1945 and has not been used by any Hazeltine licensee since that time. Nevertheless, for the sake of completeness, it will be shown that the position of the Department of Justice on this license notice is, in any event, untenable.

Again, the argument of the Department of Justice is based on a number of erroneous factual premises:

(a) It asserts that the agreement in suit *requires* the application of the license notice to *all apparatus* whether or not patented (p. 31), and that such a provision *per se* is contrary to statute (p. 32). It has been shown above (p. 49) that the agreement requires the use of the license notice *only on licensed apparatus*, that is, on apparatus embodying the licensed inventions.

(b) It repeats (p. 31) the assumption made in the previous section that *unpatented apparatus* is necessarily involved in the licensee's operations. It has been shown above (pp. 6-7) that this assumption is wholly unfounded.

(c) It reiterates the contention that this Court is called upon to determine the enforceability of the license notice *against a purchaser in the ordinary channels of trade* but that issue is not presented here, either by the pleadings or by the facts. We are concerned here only with the effect of such a license notice on the obligation of a licensee to pay royalties. No one claiming injury arising from the license notice in issue is a party to this action.

(d) It asserts (p. 37) that the license notice in question is for the benefit of the licensees and not of Hazeltine.

On the contrary, the license notice was adopted solely for the benefit of Hazeltine in the administration of its licenses in different fields (*supra*, p. 9).

The argument of the Department of Justice on this issue is heavily weighed with discussion of hypothetical possibilities rather than the realities of this case. Thus it asserts (p. 31) that the license notice "may become" the basis of illegal use, not that it has become so; that it involves "potential deception" not, an accomplished deception (p. 31); that the license notice might "intimidate the public," not that the Public has been intimidated (p. 39). This argument loses sight of the fact that there is here involved an actual controversy which is necessary to give the Court jurisdiction. The Department of Justice is asking this Court to give an advisory opinion—to determine the legality of a license agreement *in vacuo*, isolated from all realities.

At page 34, the Brief suggests that Automatic Radio:

> "* * * should be allowed to demonstrate any restraint upon competition which may flow from Hazeltine's system of licensing. * * *"

This suggestion neglects the fact that Automatic filed a Countermotion for Summary Judgment (R. 169) alleging that there were no facts in dispute and that it filed voluminous affidavits setting forth all the facts which it considered material. Petitioner does not now suggest the omission of any relevant facts. Therefore, there is no occasion to remand the case to the District Court for further proceedings on this point.

On this issue of license notice the Department of Justice Brief contains an extended discussion of the *General Talking Pictures* case (304 U. S. 175; 305 U. S. 124). It suggests that the instant case is distinguishable from the *General Talking Pictures* case. We agree, but for different

reasons. In the *General Talking Pictures* case, this Court went much further than the Court below was called upon to do in the instant case. In the former case, this Court gave effect to a license notice *against a purchaser with knowledge*. In the instant case, the Court below was not concerned with the effect of such a notice upon *any* purchaser, but only with its effect upon the obligation of the licensee to pay royalties. This is evident from the following statement of the Court (R. 318):

> "• • • There may be circumstances under which a notice of restricted use would be inoperative and unenforceable as against subsequent purchasers, *but that problem is not presented in the case at bar.* And it is to be noted that the judgment from which this appeal is taken does not even command Automatic, the licensee, to comply with the term of the agreement requiring it to attach the restrictive use notices to the licensed apparatus sold by it." (Emphasis added.)
>
> • • • • • • •
>
> "In fact, it appears that none of the radio apparatus made and sold by Automatic has been marked with the restrictive use notice required by Article VI; in other words, Automatic (Fol. 322) has consistently ignored this provision of the agreement. Automatic makes the curious suggestion that its own breach of this term of the contract affords an independent ground for relieving it of the obligation to pay the stipulated percentage royalties. • • •"

In its discussion of the *General Talking Pictures* case, the Department of Justice Brief discusses a series of cases decided both before and since that case, but it does not appear profitable to pursue them further. Clearly the prior cases will not prevail over the *General Talking Pictures* case and the later cases have not even referred to the *General Talking Pictures* case, much less have they purported to modify it.

In fact, the Department of Justice is urging this Court to "re-examine" (that is, to overrule) the *General Talking Pictures* case. This is but the latest skirmish in a persistent campaign of attrition against the patent system which the Department of Justice has waged for many years and by which it has sought not only to obtain a reversal or nullification of the decision of this Court in the *General Talking Pictures* case but also to put a straightjacket upon patent owners, particularly licensors, in other respects. A documented summary of that activity is given below in Appendix III (pp. 81-90).

In brief, at the instigation of the Department of Justice, a series of bills were introduced in Congress between 1939 and 1945 to give effect to certain recommendations which the Department of Justice made to Congress. In essence, these recommendations were:

(1) To prohibit the assignment or licensing of a patent by an agreement imposing any restrictions of any nature upon the assignee or licensee;

(2) To make it unlawful for a patentee grantee or licensee under such a license to dispose of any licensed article on any such restrictive conditions;

(3) To provide for the registration of all patent assignments and licenses with the Federal Trade Commission;

(4) To require that infringement suits with respect to licensed articles be brought initially against the grantor of the license;

(5) To provide for forfeiture of any patent used in violation of any of the preceding recommendations;

(6) To provide that all of the foregoing recommendations should be applicable to any renewal or modification of any existing contract.

Its specific recommendation with respect to licenses is interesting:

> "1. It should be made unlawful for any person to sell or assign a patent, or to grant any right or license under a patent, on any condition which restricts the assignee or grantee in respect of the amount of any article which he may produce under the patent, the price at which he may sell any such article, *the purpose for which or manner in which he may use the patent or any article produced thereunder*, or the geographical area within which he may produce or sell such article * * *" (Emphasis added).

Impartial public service officials and groups having a knowledge of the practical workings of the patent system uniformly opposed these recommendations of the Department. Congress consistently refused to pass enabling legislation, although four of the bills sponsored by the Department were directed specifically to recommendation (1) above.

Nevertheless, Congress has not been neglectful of *constructive* changes to the patent laws and during the same period amended no less than 17 sections of the Revised Statutes comprising the patent laws.

Thwarted in its attempt to enforce these unwanted patent restrictions on the public by direct legislative processes, it now seeks to achieve its objectives indirectly by judicial legislation. It is respectfully submitted that legislation should properly be left to Congress.

Stating conversely the essence of the quotation from *Scott Paper* v. *Marcalus*, 326 U. S. 249, 251, at page 40 of the Department Brief—within the appropriate exercise of the legislative power, the interest in private good faith is a universal touchstone. In this case there has been a marked lack of "private good faith" on the part of Petitioner, which should not be condoned.

It is submitted that a party to private litigation who has scrupulously followed the law of the land as interpreted by the latest judicial decisions should not be penal-

ized in favor of one who has consistently violated its contractual obligations over and over in order to put into effect legislative proposals of the Department of Justice which Congress has repeatedly rejected.

* * * * *

On sound legal principles and on the authorities, the holding of the Court below that the license notice in issue does not relieve the licensee of its obligation to pay royalties is in accord with the decision of this Court in the *General Talking Pictures* case and is not in conflict with the decisions of the Courts of Appeals of other circuits; Congress has specifically refused to enact legislation, at the instance of the Department of Justice, which would nullify the decision of this Court in that case; the enforceability of the license notice has become moot by its general waiver; by its deliberate breach of the license notice provision Petitioner is not in a position to attack its legality; and in any event, the license notice is an unessential separable provision which, even if unenforceable, does not affect the enforceability of the license agreement as a whole. The holding of the Court below should be affirmed on this point.

E. A licensee under a simple, non-exclusive patent license agreement containing no provisions which, save for the existence of a valid patent, would run afoul of the anti-trust laws, cannot challenge the validity of the licensed patents (Question 5).

While it is irrelevant whether Petitioner can contest the validity of the licensed patents, since its contractual obligation is independent of the validity of any of the licensed patents, as a matter of law, Petitioner as licensee is estopped from contesting validity. This is one of the oldest doctrines of the patent law and, with certain exceptions not relevant here, has been universally accepted.

Ninety years ago this Court unanimously announced the doctrine that a licensee under a patent is estopped from challenging the validity of that patent. *Kinsman* v. *Parkhurst*, 18 How. 289. The rule expressed in that case has become so much part of our law that fifty years later this Court deemed it unnecessary to discuss it and unanimously applied it even against the United States as licensee. *United States* v. *Harvey Steel Co.*, 196 U. S. 310. This Court has never questioned the rule. The principle has withstood judicial scrutiny for nearly a century.

The Court below pointed out a common-sense basis for the Rule, particularly applicable here, saying (R. 323-324):

> "• • • It is not uncommon for the parties to a patent infringement suit, in which there is a genuine issue as to the validity of the patent, to make a settlement of the litigation by an agreement under which the patentee gives a license to the alleged infringer in consideration of the payment of a stipulated royalty. Indeed, the license agreement in suit seems to have been by way of settlement of earlier litigation between the parties. It is not apparent to us that the public interest would be served by rendering such common-sense business settlements nugatory, which would be the result of a ruling that the licensee could reopen the issue of validity when sued for the stipulated royalty."

(1) Petitioner's Argument
(Petitioner's Brief, pp. 55-59)

Petitioner cites (p. 55) *Sola* v. *Jefferson*, 317 U. S. 173; *Katzinger* v. *Chicago Metallic*, 329 U. S. 208; and *MacGregor* v. *Westinghouse*, 329 U. S. 402, for the proposition that:

> "• • • a licensee may challenge patent validity when the patent license agreement would be illegal but for valid patents • • •."

The decisions do not support this broad conclusion. Each of these three cases involved a license agreement having *price-fixing* provisions. The decisions themselves make clear that they are limited to license contracts having *inseparable, intrinsic restrictions* such as price-fixing which, but for the validity of the licensed patents, would *per se* render the contract illegal under the anti-trust laws.

Mr. Justice BLACK, in writing the opinion in the *MacGregor* case, is careful to point out this distinction at the very beginning:

> "This case, like that of Edward Katzinger Co. v. Chicago Metallic Mfg. Co., Nos. 70, 71, this day decided, involves the right of a patent licensee to defend a suit for royalties *only* under a licensing agreement which contains a price-fixing provision. * * *" (pp. 403, 404; Emphasis added.)

In the instant case the license contract contains no price-fixing provisions nor any restrictive clauses which, but for the existence of valid patents, would cause the contract to run afoul of the anti-trust laws.

Similarly, Petitioner cites the case of *Pope* v. *Gormully* (144 U. S. 224), but that case is not in point. In that case the parties entered into a license agreement relating to bicycles and including licenses under some 65 patents owned by plaintiff. The license included *inter alia* the following restrictive provisions: (1) (Par. 6) an agreement by defendant to sell only at retail and at prices approved by plaintiff and to sell only through agents in Chicago; (2) (Par. 8) an admission by defendant of validity of all patents and of plaintiff's title thereto and admission of use of specific inventions in defendant's bicycles; (3) (Par. 9) an agreement by defendant to make only specified types and sizes of bicycles; (4) (Par. 11) the right of defendant to surrender the license, providing that such surrender should not release it from the above specified obligations, which were stated to be irrevocable.

Plaintiff brought a bill in equity for an accounting and for specific performance of the agreement by defendant alleging that defendant was manufacturing and selling bicycles of the prohibited types. The Court below held that defendant was violating the contract but that the contract was not of such a nature as to entitle plaintiff to specific performance. This Court affirmed, stating the facts and its conclusions as follows:

> "*This case involves the question whether a court of equity can be called upon to decree the specific performance of a contract,* wherein the defendant, in consideration of receiving a license to use certain patents belonging to the plaintiff during the life of such patents, agrees never to import, manufacture or sell any machines or devices covered by certain other patents, unless permitted in writing so to do, nor to dispute or contest the validity of such patents or plaintiff's title thereto, and further to aid and morally assist the plaintiff in maintaining public respect for and preventing infringements upon the same; and further agrees that if, after the termination of his license, he shall continue to make, sell or use any machine or part thereof containing such patented inventions the plaintiff shall have the right to treat him as an infringer, and to sue out an injunction against him without notice (p. 232).
>
> • • • • • •
>
> "Ordinarily the law leaves to parties the right to make such contracts as they please, demanding, however, that they shall not require either party to do an illegal thing, and that they shall not be against public policy or in restraint of trade • • • (p. 233).
>
> "• • • It is impossible to define with accuracy what is meant by that public policy for an interference and violation of which a contract may be declared invalid • • • (p. 233).
>
> "• • • *The exigencies of this case do not require us to decide the question whether a man may or*

> *may not contract beforehand not to set up a certain defense to a particular action;* but we are of the opinion that a contract not to set up any defense whatever to any suit that may be begun upon fifty different causes of action is in violation of public policy. • • • (p. 236).
>
> *"But whether this contract be absolutely void as contravening public policy or not, we are clearly of the opinion that it does not belong to that class of contracts, the specific performance of which a court of equity can be called upon to enforce. To stay the arm of a court of equity from enforcing a contract it is by no means necessary to prove that it is invalid;* • • •" (p. 236; Emphasis added).

The argument has previously been urged, and rejected, that *Pope* v. *Gormully et al.* was authority for the proposition that a licensee under a group of patents is not estopped to contest the validity of the patents. Thus in *Philadelphia Creamery Supply Co.* v. *Davis and Rankin* (N. D. Ill. 1896), 77 F. 879, the Court said:

> "• • • Pope Manuf'g Co. v. Gormully & Jeffery Co., 144 U. S. 224, 12 Sup. Ct. 632, was not such a case as is here presented. The attempt there was to specifically enforce a contract in itself unreasonable, and tainted with the suspicion that it had not been fairly obtained. The court expressly declines to determine whether a man may or may not contract beforehand not to set up a defense against the validity of a patent. • • •"

At this point, Petitioner repeatedly makes derogatory references to Hazeltine's "pool" of patents. These references are unwarranted as previously pointed out. Hazeltine *has not created any pool* of patents. The patents in question are almost wholly the result of its own extensive research and development over a period of more than 20 years, activity which was directed to promoting the progress of the radio and television arts.

(2) The Department of Justice Brief (Question I, pp. 9-18).

The gravamen of the Brief's argument under this Point is that licensee is not estopped to contest validity because of the presence in the license of provisions which would constitute unlawful restraint on trade *in the absence of valid patents.* There are two difficulties in this argument: *Firstly,* it *assumes* that the royalty payment and license notice provisions of the license *sub judice* would, in the absence of valid patents, constitute an unlawful restraint on trade. It has been shown (*supra,* pp. 15-22; 37-45) that this assumption is erroneous and the argument fails for that reason.

Secondly, its assumption apparently *concedes* the complete legality of the royalty payment and license notice provisions if the licensed patents are valid, but this concession flatly contradicts its contentions under its Questions II and IV (pp. 19-25 and 29-40) in which it is urged that the royalty payment and license notice provisions represent *absolute* unlawful extensions of the monopoly *without regard to the existence of valid licensed patents.* Clearly, if the legality of the license contract is to be determined *without regard to the validity* of the licensed patents, there is no occasion to make an exception to the time-honored rule of estoppel to contest validity and permit a determination of validity. Therefore, the question of licensee's estoppel to contest validity is a separable issue which must be independently determined, as in the case of any simple, non-exclusive license agreement. Respondent has shown (*supra,* pp. 55-56) that in such case the licensee *is* estopped to contest the validity of the licensed patents. The Solicitor General has cited no decisions to the contrary.

The Brief cites (p. 10) the decision in *Nachman Spring-Filled Corporation* v. *Kay Mfg. Co.* (C. A. 2, 1943),

139 F. (2d) 781, as being in conflict with the decision of the Court below. In that case, plaintiff, in prior litigation with defendant, had obtained a judgment under other patents not involved in the instant case. In consideration for a release for damages under that judgment, defendant entered into an agreement with plaintiff in which (p. 782) it:

> "• • • acknowledged the validity of the patent involved in the present suit; agreed 'not to manufacture or sell' any devices which would infringe that patent; and further agreed to 'discontinue the manufacture and sale of devices embodying the invention' of the patent now in suit 'throughout the balance of the unexpired term thereof,' which was then approximately thirteen years. • • •"

The action was based on the charge of patent infringement and breach of contract by defendant. Defendant contested the validity of the patent but plaintiff contended that it was estopped to do so under the contract provision quoted above.

The Court of Appeals, in extending the rule of *Sola Electric Co.* v. *Jefferson Electric Co.* (317 U. S. 173), to the facts of the case, *because of the restraint on competition* involved in the agreement not to manufacture devices covered by a patent under which it was not, and never had been, licensed, said (p. 784):

> "• • • As that Act (the Sherman Act) renders unlawful not merely price-fixing agreements but all agreements which, in any way, *unreasonably restrain competition* in interstate commerce, the conclusion is inescapable that the Sola case doctrine applies to any such agreement. • • •" (Emphasis added.)

In the present case it is a fact that Hazeltine imposes on none of its licensees any restraint whatsoever in their competition with each other or with Hazeltine. The *Nachman Spring-Filled Corp.* case is, therefore, inapplicable

The Brief also cites (p. 10) the case of *United States* v. *U. S. Gypsum Co.* (*supra*), in support of its contention, but the very portion of the decision quoted refers to "an anti-trust suit instituted by a licensee against his licensor" which points up its inapplicability here. Petitioner has asserted here no claim on account of alleged violation of the anti-trust Laws.

However, the Department of Justice devotes the greater portion of this section of its Brief to a reargument of its propositions that the royalty provision and the license notice provision of the license agreement in suit are illegal. These contentions have been fully met in preceding sections of this Brief and need not be reargued here. Suffice it to say once again, no licensee of Hazeltine is contractually prevented, either expressly or impliedly, from competing against any one it chooses in any field it chooses (Department Brief, p. 12). Further, there is no attempt by Hazeltine to exert any control of any kind on articles in the hands of any purchasers from licensee (Department Brief, p. 13).

The Department of Justice suggests (pp. 14-18) that the rule that a licensee under a simple non-exclusive license is estopped to contest validity should be "re-examined and rejected". This suggestion of the Department is legally and economically unsound and must be rejected. From the legal viewpoint, the doctrine has gone unquestioned for nearly a hundred years. In the case of *MacGregor* v. *Westinghouse* (1947), 329 U. S. 402, a dissenting opinion by Mr. Justice FRANKFURTER included a restatement of the estoppel of a licensee to contest validity (a portion of the dissent which was not, however, in conflict with the majority opinion) which is a model of clarity and conciseness (pp. 408-409):

> "The Court deems the issues in these cases to be controlled by our decision in Sola Electric Co. v. Jefferson Co., 317 U. S. 173. Such is not my under-

standing of the Sola decision. These cases cannot be properly decided, I believe, without consideration of one of the oldest doctrines of the patent law, namely, that a licensee cannot challenge the validity of the patent though everyone else may.

"Ninety years ago this Court unanimously announced the doctrine that a licensee under a patent is estopped from challenging the validity of that patent. Kinsman v. Parkhurst, 18 How. 289. The case may perhaps be explained, or even explained away. But the rule it expressed had become so much part of our law that fifty years later the Court deemed it unnecessary to discuss it and unanimously applied it even against the United States as licensee. United States v. Harvey Steel Co., 196 U. S. 310. It is significant that the licensee in that case, while vigorously contesting its liability upon the particular facts, conceded that the doctrine of estoppel was law 'as a general proposition.'

"Before those cases and since, in all English-speaking jurisdictions, in the courts of England, of the Dominions and of the various States, as well as in the lower federal courts, where most patent litigation originates and stops, a weighty body of cases affirmed and applied that doctrine with rare unanimity.[1] This Court has never questioned the rule.[2] The principle has withstood judicial scrutiny for nearly a century."

The whole nerve system of the patent structure and the fabric of myriads of commercial patent licenses would be shattered by adopting the suggestions of the Department. It would necessarily be retroactive in its effect.

---

[1] The early cases are collected in 14 Ann. Cas. 1184. Note also the unanimity among the authors of treatises. Amdur, Patent Law and Practice 598; Ellis, Patent Assignments and Licenses Sec. 692 *et seq.*; 2 Frost, Patent Law and Practice 201; Moulton, Patents 244; Rivise and Caesar, Patentability and Validity Sec. 10; 2 Robinson, Patents Sec. 820; 2 Walker, Patents (Deller's ed.) Sec. 383. And see the cases cited, especially in Walker, Patents, *supra*.

[2] *Cf. Eureka Company* v. *Bailey Company*, 11 Wall. 488, 492; *Eclipse Bicycle Company* v. *Farrow*, 199 U. S. 581, 587.

Litigation would be enormously multipled, as the many concerns always ready to reap where they have not sown would use such a ruling as a pretext to avoid the payment of royalties, regardless of the merits or the contribution to the progress of the arts represented by the licensed patents, and would take advantage of the progressive but unrealistic raising of the standards of invention by the Courts.

A simple, non-exclusive license has been described by this Court as merely an immunity from suit. Thus in the case of *Henry* v. *A. B. Dick*, 224 U. S. 1, this Court said (p. 24):*

> "* * * As a license passes no interest in the monopoly, it has been described as a mere waiver of the right to sue by the patentee. * * *"

It has also been held that a licensee under such a license has received his consideration by obtaining freedom from suit and that that consideration supports his obligation to pay royalties, even though the licensed patents should all be held invalid. Thus, in the case of *Lathrop v. Rice, et al.*, (W. D. N. Y., 1936); 17 F. Supp. 622, the parties had been involved in prior infringement litigation in which defendant made a settlement payment and took a license. A decree was entered finding the patents valid and infringed with respect to specified claims of a large number of patents. Defendant paid royalties for a period and then refused to make further payments. When sued for royalties, defendant alleged that it was not using any of the licensed inventions and counterclaimed to recover royalties paid. The Court entered judgment for plaintiff, saying:

* The *Henry* v. *A. B. Dick* case was reversed on other grounds in *Motion Picture Patents* v. *Universal Film* (243 U. S. 502) but the quoted definition of a license was subsequently quoted with approval by Mr. Chief Justice TAFT in an unanimous opinion in *De Forest* v. *United States* (273 U. S. 236, 242).

"• • • If any of those claims (involved in the decree) are involved in the present action, the defendant will not be permitted either to show invalidity or that it is not infringing as to any features of its present machines or dairy equipment that were in its machines at the time the contract was entered into. Kessler v. Eldred, 206 U. S. 285, 27 S. Ct. 611, 51 L. Ed. 1065.

• • • • • •

"• • • It is too much to ask us to believe that defendant paid the royalties to plaintiffs under any misapprehension as to the nature and scope of plaintiffs' patents or under any honest mistake as to infringement thereof. It would hardly have paid the price it did for peace if it had no legal liability. To decide on the question of legal liability for infringement, it had the advantage of the advice of eminent counsel, • • • Even though the patents were entirely invalid, there was adequate continuing consideration to sustain the agreement and to compel defendant to pay royalties until an unequivocal notice of repudiation was given to the licensor. Universal Rim Co. v. Scott, supra; Humphrey v. Sea Gull Specialty Co., 242 F. 271; Skinner v. Walter A. Wood M. & R. M. Co., 140 N. Y. 217, 35 N. E. 491, 37 Am. St. Rep. 540; Martin v. New Trinidad Lake Asphalt Co., 255 F. 93. • • •"

Thus in the case of simple non-exclusive licenses such as that in suit, the right to contest validity becomes academic. The licensee is obligated to pay royalties irrespective of the validity of the patents and the estoppel rule is a common sense one, since an attack upon the validity of the patents by the licensee would be a futility.

The Department of Justice refers to the public interest in invalidating "worthless patents" (pp. 15, 16), slyly insinuating without any justification that the Hazeltine patents fall in that category. All of the Hazeltine license agreements have been either for five-year or ten-year periods, at the option of the licensee. Obviously any radio

manufacturer who considered the patents "worthless" would not accept such a license agreement in the first instance. A number of manufacturers have refused to operate under license from Hazeltine. Any licensee has always been at liberty to discontinue the license relationship at the end of any period. A few companies have not renewed prior licenses, yet a great many Hazeltine licensees have taken successive new licenses extending over continuous periods of more than twenty years. It is clear that they would not have done so unless convinced that the use of the Hazeltine inventions justified the royalty payments.

Finally the Department of Justice's suggestion of repeal of the general doctrine of estoppel is unconvincing, since none of the Governmental bodies which has recently reviewed all phases of the patent system with a view to their improvement has found a need for any such drastic action (See Appendix III, pp. 81-90). The Department of Justice has demonstrated no such need at this time.

* * * * * * * *

The decision of the Court below on the estoppel of a licensee under a simple, non-exclusive license to contest the validity of the licensed patents is in accord with the decisions of this Court and is not in conflict with the decisions of the Courts of Appeals of other circuits.

F. No monopolistic practices are herein involved *(Department of Justice Brief, pp. 26-29, Question III).*

The Department of Justice is attempting to *create* a controversy where none previously existed and suggests that the case be remanded to the Trial Court for the introduction of further evidence on its inspired controversy, implying that somehow Petitioner has been thwarted in

its efforts to establish this point. The argument is hollow and unconvincing. Petitioner's Answer, as amended (R. 45, 71), follows the usual shotgun pattern, including general allegations of all types of misuse known to the skilled patent practitioner, in order to afford a basis for any evidence which it might hope to develop later.

However, Petitioner was in no sense deprived of its day in Court. It filed a Countermotion for Summary Judgment (R. 169) agreeing with Respondent that no genuine issue of fact was presented. Petitioner filed voluminous Affidavits in opposition to Respondent's Motion for Summary Judgment and in support of its Countermotion, including Affidavits of its President (R. 72-74; 197-201); of its counsel (R. 172-197; 202-204; 281-289); of its Chief Engineer (R. 277-279) and of its patent expert (R. 207-246). *Petitioner* has never suggested that it has been foreclosed from adducing all available evidence, by Affidavit or otherwise, relevant to any of its defenses. Certainly the Department of Justice cannot be more familiar with any of the vaguely alleged monopolistic practices of Hazeltine than is Petitioner, who has operated under Hazeltine license for some fifteen years and who made the initial allegation. As a matter of fact, Petitioner's allegation of monopolistic practices is based solely on the erroneous legal conclusions which it has drawn from the license agreement itself. There are no relevant extraneous facts and an order remanding the case to the Trial Court would be a futile gesture, the only result of which would be an indefinite postponement of the final conclusion of this litigation, now pending approximately three years.

The improbabilities of this defense of alleged monopoly are confirmed by Petitioner's own lack of faith in it. Petitioner did not rely upon this defense in either its Main

Brief or its Reply Brief before the Court of Appeals.* It did not include this defense among its Questions Presented in its Petition in this Court (pp. 3-4); it has made no reference to any monopolistic practices of Hazeltine either in its Brief in Support of its Petition or in its Main Brief on argument. Petitioner has been afforded every opportunity to support this contention with evidence but has not done so, simply because there is no substance to it.

But, in any event, the defense of alleged monopolistic practices is not before this Court for decision under the express terms of Rule 38(2) which unequivocally provides:

> "• • • Only the questions specifically brought forward by the petition for writ of certiorari will be considered. • • •"

This Court has uniformly adhered to this rule. Thus, in the *General Talking Pictures* case, Petitioner argued in its Brief and urged this Court to decide issues not included

---

* The following is an excerpt from pages 8-9 of Petitioner's Brief on Appeal:

Statement of the Points Intended to be Relied Upon.

1. Hazeltine has misused its patents by requiring its licensees to apply a restrictive use notice to the sets sold by them in the ordinary course of business. Its patents may not be enforced for that reason. Therefore the present judgment enforcing them should be set aside.

2. Hazeltine has misused its patents by organizing a pool of patents under which it collects royalties on unpatented radio sets. The judgment enforcing its patents should be set aside for that reason.

3. Automatic Radio has been evicted from its license by the adjudications holding all of Hazeltine's best patents invalid, or not infringed, or both, rendering the license unenforceable for failure of consideration and for eviction.

4. Hazeltine has no valid patents which have been used in any sets made by Automatic Radio. Automatic Radio may challenge the scope and validity of Hazeltine's patents in this action.

5. Automatic Radio has sold no radio sets licensed by Hazeltine. It has applied no Hazeltine patent markings and the license expressly provides, at Article 6, Section 2 (R. 14), that:

> "apparatus not bearing such markings is not licensed."

Automatic Radio is therefore under no duty to account for its sets.

6. Automatic Radio has repudiated its license, and it may not be enforced for that reason.

in its formulation of the questions presented. This Court declined to do so saying (pp. 177, 178):

> "Our consideration of the case will be limited to the questions specifically brought forward by the petition. Rule 38, paragraph 2 • • •"

The defense of alleged monopolistic practices on the part of Hazeltine is insubstantial and unsubstantiated and in any event is not properly before this Court for decision.

C. Conclusion.

Accordingly, it is submitted that the decisions of the Courts below must be affirmed for the following reasons:

(1) The license agreement in dispute is a simple, non-exclusive patent license including no provisions which in any way tend to restrain trade or extend the lawful scope of the licensed patents.

(2) Respondent has not misused its patents in any way.

(3) Petitioner is admittedly using a large number of Respondent's patented inventions under which it is licensed.

(4) Petitioner is estopped from contesting the validity of the licensed patents.

Respectfully submitted,

MILES D. PILLARS,
National Press Building,
Washington 4, D. C.,
Attorney for Respondent.

PHILIP F. LAFOLLETTE,
LEONARD A. WATSON,
LAURENCE B. DODDS,
Of Counsel.

[APPENDICES FOLLOW]

APPENDIX I

Portions of Petitioner's Brief Including Erroneous, Misleading or Distorting Assertions of Fact With Comment

	COMMENT
Page 2, Para. 4: Hazeltine's affidavits in support of its motion for summary judgment asserted that four of its patents were used by Automatic Radio (R. 119-168). This was disputed (R. 199-200; 207-246; 277-282; 289-292).	Hazeltine has asserted (R. 50-70) that Petitioner is using *ten* (not four) of Hazeltine's patented inventions. This use is *not disputed*, as Petitioner asserts, except in the safe harbor of its Briefs. The record references do not contain a single allegation that Petitioner is not using any of the ten Hazeltine patents.
Page 3, Para. 5: Hazeltine attempts to restrict the use to which radio receivers may be put, after purchase from its licensees by the public through re ail stores, by requiring a restrictive use notice to be placed on every set (R. 10; Art. VI, Sec. 2).	Hazeltine has never attempted any such restriction and the record reference does not support the assertion. Licenses are readily available to *all* under *all* Hazeltine patents with respect to *all* classes of apparatus. The license notice in question merely serves to inform the public of the limit of the license under which a particular manufacturer made a particular article.
Page 4, Para. 8: Before and since 1927 Hazeltine acquired patent rights from other companies and individuals, forming a vast pool of radio patents owned by it or under which it has licensing rights, which now include some 570 patents and 200 patent applications (R. 79). Most of these are listed at R. 93-101	There is no "pool" of patents. As of the filing of the Complaint, the great majority of the patents under which Hazeltine had the right to grant licenses were patents which it owned outright and which resulted almost entirely from its own research during a period of more than twenty years (R. 80). The remaining patents

with the names of the owners in most cases.

Page 4, Para. 10: Hazeltine has, however, spent only a very small percentage of the money it has received as royalties for research on radio receivers (R. 173(h); 248), with the result that none of its patents has any value. Every patent on which it has sued since the Neutrodyne patents has been held invalid or not infringed or both (R. 179) • • •.

Page 6, Para. 11: Hazeltine has kept its licensees in line by a succession of suits against non-licensees and their dealers (R. 188-189). It actually sued 26 Atwater-Kent dealers simultaneously (34 F. (2d) 50). Despite these suits so large companies, who could afford to defend suits of this magnitude, have refused to take a Hazeltine license or pay tribute to Hazeltine for many years, going back to 1927 (R. 79; R. 178; R. 249-251).

COMMENT

comprised those under which Hazeltine acquired its rights as partial consideration for the settlement of past infringement liability (R. 255). These patent rights were acquired more than 15 years ago and did not include future inventions; as a consequence, most of the patents in question have expired. There is not now and never has been any plurality of control over, or interest in, the licensing program by which Hazeltine makes its patents available to all manufacturers.

These assertions are based entirely on the incompetent hearsay affidavit of Petitioner's counsel, Mr. Woodworth. The first assertion is also wholly untrue while the second assertion is largely untrue and misleading (R. 254).

These assertions are irrelevant, largely untrue and based only on the incompetent hearsay affidavit of Petitioner's counsel, Mr. Woodworth, which is made up almost entirely of rumor and gossip.

	Comment
Page 6, Para. 12: The 10 worthless post-Neutrodyne patents listed in No. 4 are admittedly the best patents Hazeltine owns. It has been able to continue to levy tribute from the radio industry without a single valid patent to warrant royalty payments, only because on each trial Hazeltine has spent more than $100,000, thus keeping each licensee in perpetual fear of a suit of this magnitude directed against it, if it failed to renew its license.	This assertion is irrelevant, untrue and based solely upon a distortion of the incompetent hearsay affidavit of Petitioner's counsel, Mr. Woodworth.
Page 7, Para. 14: Because of the admitted pathetic weakness of its patent position Hazeltine, by its own assertions (Binns, Hazeltine's president, R. 81, (f), in 1937 abandoned any attempt to collect royalties for the use of its patents. Instead, it has provided in its "standard" license contracts since 1937 for the payment of royalties on all sets made by its licensees regardless of patents. (Judge Ford's opinion, R. 299); Hazeltine's motion for summary judgment, R. 76, paragraph (b); license agreement, R. 5, Article IV, Section 1; Binns, R. 81-82(f); Opinion of Court below, R. 319-320). The royalties demanded in this action on Hazeltine's worthless patents amount to 25% of Automatic Radio's net profits for the years 1946 and 1947 (R. 178).	The change of policy noted was unrelated to the strength or weakness of the Hazeltine patent situation but was solely for the accounting convenience of Hazeltine *and* its licensees and to formalize an existing practice (R. 82). At that time (1937) Petitioner was using *27* of Hazeltine's patented inventions in its licensed radio receivers (Exh. P, R. 103-108). The relation between the royalties in controversy and Petitioner's net profits merely reflects upon Petitioner's business ability, which is outside Respondent's responsibility.
Page 7, Para. 16: The previous differences also involved the pay-	The malicious characterization of Hazeltine patents as "worth-

ment of royalties on Hazeltine's worthless patents.

COMMENT

less" (repeated at Page 6, Para. 12, Page 7, Para. 14 and Page 58, second paragraph) is typical of Petitioner's distortion of the facts. One important Hazeltine patent Re. 19,744 was held valid and infringed in *Detrola* v. *Hazeltine* (117 F. (2d) 238) by the Court of Appeals for the Sixth Circuit, affirming the judgment of the District Court. A patent unanimously upheld by four federal judges can scarcely be called "worthless" even though this Court later reached an opposite conclusion (313 U. S. 259). Another important Hazeltine patent 2,208,374 was held valid and infringed in *Hazeltine* v. *Admiral*, 87 F. Supp. 72, in which defendant was represented by Petitioner's counsel.

Page 8, Para. 17: In support of its motion for summary judgment, Wheeler's affidavit asserted the use by Automatic Radio of only four of its patents, namely, Wheeler patents Nos. 1,951,685; 2,041,273; 1,958,627, and 2,015,327 (Wheeler, R. 119-168). This is denied by Automatic Radio (R. 195, No. 12, 207-246). The first two have since been invalidated in the *General Motors* case, 72 F. Supp. 138, affirmed at 170 F.(2d) 6; second petition for rehearing denied, 171 F.(2d) 680; certiorari denied 336 U. S. 938.

Hazeltine asserts and has pointed out in detail the use of *ten* (not four) of its patented inventions in Petitioner's radio receivers (R. 50-70). This *use is not denied* by Petitioner, except in its Briefs. The references to the Record do not support the assertion. An infringement action on patents 1,951,685 and 2,041,273 is now pending against *General Electric Company* in the Northern District of Illinois, Eastern Division, Civil Action No. 49C645.

Page 23, lines 20-27: Apt words for what Hazeltine has done! By

There is no patent pool here involved (see comment to page 4,

agreement and purchase it has pooled 770 patents and applications for patent, of at least five different owners, all in the single field of radio, and has entered into 130 license agreements. And with not a single valid patent to justify *any* royalties, it now illegally compels its licensees to pay royalties on unpatented radio sets, and, as shown below, compels the public to buy additional, unwanted sets, to increase its tribute.

Page 23, line 28 to Page 24, line 5: Despite its multitude of patents, Hazeltine makes no attempt to seek a return based upon use of these patents. Rather, it exacts a tribute upon the entire production of its licensees, both patented and unpatented. It *ignores* the use of its patents, so long as it can collect royalties from its licensees, regardless of these patents. Its patents are used as an economic weapon, a threat, for the exaction of tribute, by its scheme of private taxation of the radio industry.

We submit that the collection of royalties under a vast pool of patents for the manufacture and sale of articles using none of the patents, by means of the overpowering threat of disastrous litigation, is a clear misuse of patents which prevents their enforcement.

COMMENT

paragraph 8, *supra*). At least one important patent now in wide commercial use stands adjudicated as valid and infringed (87 F. Supp. 72) in spite of the best efforts of Petitioner's counsel to invalidate it. There is no evidence that anyone has ever paid any royalties on unpatented radio receivers. All of Petitioner's radio receivers have made extensive use of Hazeltine's inventions (*supra*, pp. 6-7). No member of the public has ever been compelled to purchase any unwanted receivers.

There is not a scintilla of competent evidence in support of these reckless assertions and they are untrue. All of Hazeltine's licensees, *including Petitioner*, make extensive use of Hazeltine patented inventions (*supra*, pp. 6-7). There is no evidence that Hazeltine has ever used its patents as an "overpowering threat of disastrous litigation" or in any threatening manner and this is not a fact. Did Hazeltine, a small company, "overpower" Radio Corporation of America, Sears-Roebuck, Crosley, General Motors or Emerson, to mention but a few of the defendants listed by Petitioner (pp. 4-5)? One is reminded of the charge that tiny Finland threatened Russia.

	COMMENT
Page 51, lines 19-23: Millions of electric phonographs are in use. Three million television sets were in use by the end of 1949. The large majority of these sets bear a license notice purporting to restrict the uses to which they may be put.	There is no evidence as to the extent of use of the license notices in issue. Hazeltine has not required them since 1945 (*supra*, pp. 10-11).
Page 51, line 24 to Page 52, line 15: One proposition is not open to argument. That is, that Hazeltine would not have had its licensees place such restrictive notice on one hundred million sets unless it was a profitable thing to do. We therefore accept it as a fact, proved conclusively and beyond question, that the use of these notices has resulted in the sale of unnecessary and unwanted sets. If one wants to give a concert of his favorite records at his Church or Lodge or to operate a phonograph or a radio or television set in his restaurant he must, if these notices are legal, go out and buy an extra "commercial" phonograph or an extra "commercial" radio or an extra "commercial" television set for these purposes. Of course Hazeltine collects further royalty on these "commercial" devices, under its "commercial" license.	There is no evidence to support any of these accusations and they are all untrue. No Hazeltine license notice of the type in issue has been used since 1945; the use of such a license notice prior to World War II had no relation to profit, but was only an administrative aid (*supra*, p. 9). There is no evidence that the license notice in issue ever resulted in the sale of a single additional or unwanted radio receiver and, in fact, it has not.
How many thousands or millions of unneeded and unwanted sets have been bought we do not know, but we do know that the public has for twenty years been effectively and illegally re-	

strained from the lawful use of the apparatus it has bought and paid for.

Page 52, lines 16-29: If one hundred million radios have been sold by Hazeltine's licensees to date, and if each marking notice plate cost one cent, both of which are reasonable estimates, then it has cost Hazeltine's licensees $1,000,000.00 so far just to place these restrictive license notices on the sets sold. This expense would not have been incurred and required by Hazeltine unless it resulted in a profit through the sale of unwanted and unneeded sets.

The millions of dollars which the public has thus illegally been forced to pay for the use of apparatus which had passed beyond the limits of a patent monopoly is, we submit, conclusive proof that such restrictive notices are illegal and unenforceable, and that their use constitutes a misuse of patents.

Both assumptions are false. It is customary for licensees to add any required license notice to its regular name plate or label, involving no additional cost. The figure 100 million receivers sold under Hazeltine license is fantastic and without record support. No Hazeltine license notice has ever resulted in the sale of a single additional or unwanted receiver. The public has not paid a single dollar under the circumstances alleged. All of this reckless discussion about license notices is unrealistic and utterly without record support.

APPENDIX II

Affidavit of John R. Binns

State of New York,
County of Queens, } ss.:

JOHN R. BINNS, being duly sworn, deposes and says:

That he is President of Respondent and is the John R. Binns who on or about October 27, 1947, executed a certain Affidavit in support of Respondent's Motion for Summary Judgment in the above-entitled cause;

That in September, 1945, Respondent waived, as to all of its licensees, the license notice provision attacked by Petitioner, under the following circumstances:

For many years and in reliance on the decision of this Court in *General Talking Pictures v. Western Electric* (304 U. S. 175; 305 U. S. 124) Respondent and its predecessor, Hazeltine Corporation, have included in all of their license agreements relating to radio and television broadcast receivers, a patent license notice provision substantially in the form of that contained in the license agreement herein involved, namely:

> "• • • Licensee agrees to mark all licensed apparatus manufactured and sold by Licensee hereunder, in readily legible form, with the statement 'Licensed by Hazeltine Corporation only for use in homes, for educational purposes, and for private, non-commercial use, under one or more of the following patents and under pending applications:' followed by the word 'Patent' • • •" (R. 14).

and in practice such license notice was followed by a composite list of patents representing those in current use by Respondent's several licensees, a sample copy of which is in evidence as Exh. EE (R. 257);

In the fall of 1945, certain licensees of Respondent's predecessor, Hazeltine Corporation, requested permission to use a shorter form of license notice and one not requiring periodic revision to take account of expiring patents, newly granted patents, and changes in receiver designs;

During the month of September, 1945, prior to the resumption of the manufacture of civilian radio apparatus at the conclusion of World War II, Respondent's predecessor sent a letter to each of its licensees giving the licensee the right to use, in lieu of the license notice specified in its license agreement forms, a simple license notice reading:

"This apparatus is licensed under the
United States patent rights of
HAZELTINE CORPORATION"

and one of aforesaid letters was sent to Petitioner under date of September 5, 1945;

Each of aforesaid letters read substantially as follows, the letter below being a copy of that sent to Petitioner:

"Enclosed is a revised License Notice including a composite list of patents with respect to which you are licensed by Hazeltine Corporation and which are now employed in apparatus manufactured by our licensees.

"In case you use a composite list for the patent markings on any of the apparatus manufactured and/or sold by you, will you please take the steps necessary to revise your License Notice to conform to the attached, in accordance with the provisions of Article VI, Section 2, of your license agreement, and notify us when this has been done. This list will be effective until on or about January 1, 1946.

"In case you do not wish to use this composite list for patent marking, it will be satisfactory to us if the apparatus is marked as follows:

This apparatus is licensed under the
United States patent rights of
HAZELTINE CORPORATION";

That since September, 1945, it has continuously and uniformly been the practice of Respondent and its predecessor, Hazeltine Corporation, to grant to each new Hazeltine licensee in writing, at the time of execution of its respective license, the right to use aforesaid simplified license notice either in a form identical to that quoted above or with the words, "HAZELTINE RESEARCH, INC." substituted for the words "HAZELTINE CORPORATION" and since September, 1945, none of such licensees has used the longer form of license notice specified in the license agreement forms;

That, while new license agreement forms issued by Respondent since September, 1945, have continued to include a license notice provision substantially in the form of that contained in the license agreement here involved, such provision has been retained solely because it substantially conforms to that approved by this Court in the *General Talking Pictures* case while no Court has yet ruled upon the question as to whether the simpler form of license notice which Respondent has given its licensees the right to use complied with the patent marking requirements of Revised Statutes, Section 4900 (35 U. S. C. 49).

JOHN R. BINNS

Sworn to and subscribed before me this 24th day of March, 1950.

CAROLINE B. SCOTT
Notary Public
Commission Expires March 30, 1950

[Seal]

APPENDIX III

The Activities of the Department of Justice Toward Nullifying the *General Talking Pictures* Case

A summary of the activities of the Department of Justice toward nullifying the decision of this Court in the *General Talking Pictures* case and placing other impediments in the way of the legitimate exploitation of patent rights, with supporting bibliography, follows:

The Department of Justice initially submitted to the Temporary National Economic Committee (TNEC),[1] a joint Congressional Committee conducting an "Investigation of Concentration of Economic Power", its recommendations on changes to the Patent Laws to overcome abuses which it felt existed. Those recommendations were included and adopted in a Preliminary Report and Recommendations of the TNEC submitted to Congress on July 17, 1939.[2] The latter recommendations included one that would unconditionally outlaw any provision in a license agreement:

> "• • • which restricts the assignee or grantee in respect of the amount of any article which he may produce under the patent, the price at which he may sell any such article, the purpose for which or manner in which he may use the patent or any article produced thereunder, or the geographical area within which he may produce or sell such article. • • •" (p. 642).

In the same Preliminary Report were included (pp. 641-642) Recommendations of the Department of Commerce as to desirable amendments to the Patent Laws, which the Committee also adopted and recommended to Congress.

Commencing in January, 1941, the TNEC conducted extensive public hearings preparatory to formulating final

recommendations. At the request of the Committee, the Honorable Conway P. Coe, Commissioner of Patents, submitted his written comments on the recommendations of the Department of Justice. Mr. Thurman Arnold, then Assistant Attorney General, filed a reply to Commissioner Coe's submission (Id. pp. 18483-18489). The TNEC issued its Final Report and Recommendations under date of March 31, 1941, adopting in substance the recommendations of the Department of Justice including the recommendation that:

> "(b) *Unrestricted licenses.*—We recommend that the owner of any patent be required to grant only unrestricted licenses, and that he not be permitted to impose restrictions upon the buyer in sales of patented articles. In other words, the holder of a patent should not be permitted to restrict a licensee in respect of the amount of any article he may produce, the price at which he may sell, the purpose for which or the manner in which he may use the patent or any article produced thereunder, or the geographical area within which he may produce or sell such article. * * *"

As a result of the foregoing recommendations of the TNEC, a large number of bills were introduced in Congress to implement them. Considering only those bills dealing with the recommendation of unrestricted licenses, in 1942 there was introduced a Bill, S. 2303 (77th Congress), to provide for the use of patents in the interests of National Defense, including essentially the recommendation of the Department of Justice with respect to unrestricted licenses. During the hearings on this Bill, a representative of the Department of Justice suggested that provisions outlawing restricted licenses should be incorporated in a separate bill. Thereafter, on April 28, 1942, Senator O'Mahoney introduced a Bill, S. 2491 (77th Congress), providing, *inter alia*:

"Sec. 4. * * * it shall be unlawful, whether in connection with the selling or assigning of any rights under any patent previously or thereafter issued, or in connection with the granting of any license thereunder or otherwise, to impose or accept or agree to any condition or restriction on the said grant or license * * * where the said conditions or restrictions directly or indirectly restrict the purchaser, or assignee, or grantee, or licensee in respect of * * * (c) the purpose for which or the manner in which he may use any process covered by the patent on any article, machine, or composition produced under such patent; * * *."

Congress failed to enact into law either S. 2303 or S. 2491.

On June 13, 1945, Representative Voorhis introduced into the 79th Congress a Bill HR. 3462, and an identical Bill S. 2482 was introduced in the Senate. Each of these Bills proposed to amend the Clayton Act by adding a Section 29, reading in part as follows:

"Any use of a patent or patent application or of any interest therein which extends the monopoly granted by a patent beyond the invention covered by such grant including, but not limited to, any use which limits or restricts the licensor or any licensee, or the assignor or any assignee, with respect to the amount of any article he may produce, the price at which or terms or conditions on which he may sell any article, the purpose for which or the manner in which he may use the invention or any article produced thereunder, or the geographical area in which he may use the invention or produce or sell any article is hereby declared to be illegal. The use of any patent or patent application or of any interest therein in violation of this section shall render such patent or patent application null and void, and any court having jurisdiction of an action under the antitrust laws, civil or criminal, involving violation of this section shall adjudge that such patent or patent application is null and void. * * *"

S. 2482 was reintroduced in the 80th Congress by Senator Morse as S. 72. Congress failed to enact any of these three Bills.

Thus, Congress has repeatedly refused to enact legislation sponsored by the Department of Justice prohibiting the customary practice of dividing patent license rights among licensees in different fields of industry to which the patent may be applicable.

Undoubtedly, an influential factor in the persistent refusal of Congress to enact such legislation under the persuasion of the Department of Justice was the universal opposition of those disinterested groups and officials who had a knowledge of the practical workings of our Patent System. Thus, in the TNEC Hearings, Commissioner Coe expressed opposition to the recommendation of the Department of Justice on unrestricted licenses, saying:[3]

> "The granting of licenses containing restrictions as to use is usually well within the public interest, particularly with respect to inventions which have applications in different fields.
>
> "As an example, there may be mentioned the case of an inventor who developed a particular type of internal combustion engine after a great deal of experimental and development work. His company further developed the invention for use in stationary internal combustion engines which was their particular field. As soon as the interested public became aware of the value of the invention, a motor car company applied for and obtained a license to manufacture engines under the patent, the license being confined to automobile engines. A motorcycle company then applied for and obtained a license in the field of motorcycle engines. Another company, builders of marine motors, applied for and secured a license for using the invention in the marine motor field; many other special fields were developed and numerous separate licenses in those fields were granted. If nothing

but a general license could have been issued by the original inventor and his company these various fields of use might have had to wait until the expiration of the patent before the benefits of the invention could be fully utilized, because the company would have been unwilling to have others enter its specific field in which it was manufacturing under the patent.

"Illustrations like this can be multiplied indefinitely. There is no valid reason why, if a patented invention is susceptible of use in various fields, the patent owner should be prohibited generally from granting restricted licenses to allow others to practice the invention in these different fields.

"The Supreme Court has considered licenses of this character and stated, through Justice BRANDEIS, in the *General Talking Pictures* case, that they are 'reasonably within the reward which the patentee by the grant of the patent is entitled to secure.' 305 U. S. 124; 127."

The recommendation of the Department of Justice with respect to unrestricted licenses was also opposed by the National Patent Planning Commission, created by Executive Order of President Roosevelt on December 12, 1941, and directed to survey the American patent system and to recommend any changes which it might conclude were needed. The Commission's Report was transmitted by President Roosevelt to Congress on June 18, 1943.[5]

The Commission was composed of leaders of industry, education and labor:

Dr. Charles F. Kettering, Chairman of the National Inventors' Council and Vice-President of General Motors Corporation in charge of its Research Laboratories;
Chester C. Davis, Member of the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System;
Francis P. Gaines, President of Washington and Lee University;

Edward F. McGrady, formerly First Assistant Secretary of Labor, then in charge of Labor Relations for Radio Corporation of America;
Owen D. Young, Honorary Chairman of the Board of the General Electric Company;
Andrey A. Potter, Executive Director, and
Conway P. Coe, then Commissioner of Patents, Executive Secretary.

A portion of one section of this Report is reproduced herewith:

"X. Subjects Considered Without Recommendation

"During the course of its investigation the Commission received and gave serious study to many suggestions and proposals for reforming the patent system which *have not been made the subject of recommendation for one or more of the following reasons*:

"(1) The *proposed reforms would not be a beneficial innovation in our patent system.* Examples of such proposals are a broad compulsory licensing system, *outlawing certain limitations in patent licenses*, major and minor patents, patents for different terms of years, and opposition proceedings." (Emphasis added.)

The "Introduction" to the Commission Report is also instructive:

"In accordance with Executive Order No. 8977 of December 12, 1941, the National Patent Planning Commission has been engaged in a study of the American patent system and its operation.

"The American patent system established by the Constitution giving Congress the 'power to promote the progress of science and useful arts', is over 150 years old. The System has accomplished all that the framers of the Constitution intended. It is the only provision of the Government for the

promotion of invention and discovery and is the basis upon which our entire industrial civilization rests.

"The American people and their Government should recognize the fundamental rightness and fairness of protecting the creations of its inventors by the patent grant. The basic principles of the present system should be preserved. The system has contributed to the growth and greatness of our Nation; it has—

"(1) Encouraged and rewarded inventiveness and creativeness, producing new products and processes which have placed the United States far ahead of other countries in the field of scientific and technological endeavor;

"(2) Stimulated American inventors to originate a major portion of the important industrial and basic inventions of the past 150 years;

"(3) Facilitated the rapid development and general application of new discoveries in the United States to an extent exceeding that of any other country;

"(4) Contributed to the achievement of the highest standard of living that any nation has ever enjoyed;

"(5) Stimulated creation and development of products and processes necessary to arm the Nation and to wage successful war;

"(6) Contributed to the improvement of the public health and the public safety; and

"(7) Operated to protect the individual and small business concerns during the formative period of a new enterprise.

"*The strongest industrial nations have the most effective patent systems and after a careful study, the Commission has reached the conclusion that the American system is the best in the world.* However, as with any system of long standing, conditions arise which were not foreseen at the time of its

establishment. The American patent system should be adjusted to meet existing conditions without destroying its basic principles." (Emphasis added.)

During this same period (1939 to date), however, Congress, ever vigilant of the public interest, did enact into law a number of changes to the Patent Laws recommended by the Department of Commerce. Thus, its recommendation No. 3, providing for expediting Patent Office proceedings by eliminating appeals in interference cases, was embodied in amendments dated August 5, 1939, to Revised Statutes, Secs. 4904, 4909, 4911, and 4915 (35 U. S. C., Secs. 52, 57, 59(a), and 63, respectively); its recommendation No. 4, abolishing renewal applications, was effected by an amendment dated August 9, 1939, to Revised Statutes, Sec. 4885 (35 U. S. C., Sec. 41) and repeal of Revised Statutes, Sec. 4897 (35 U. S. C., Sec. 38); its recommendation No. 5, reducing the permitted public use prior to applying for a patent from two (2) years to one (1) year, was embodied in amendments dated August 5, 1939, to Revised Statutes, Secs. 4886, 4887, and 4920 (35 U. S. C., Secs. 31, 32, and 69, respectively); its recommendation No. 6, reducing the period within which a patent applicant might copy claims from an issued patent of another from two (2) years to one (1) year, was enacted in an amendment dated August 5, 1939, to Revised Statutes, Sec. 4903 (35 U. S. C., Sec. 51). Finally, its recommendation No. 7, permitting the Commissioner of Patents to require an applicant to respond to an official action in less than six months under appropriate circumstances, was enacted in an amendment dated August 7, 1939, to Revised Statutes, Sec. 4894 (35 U. S. C., Sec. 37). In addition, the following sections of the Patent Laws have been amended in the intervening period in minor and major respects:

Revised Statutes, Sec. 482 (35 U. S. C., Sec. 7), amended August 7, 1946;

35 U. S. C., Sec. 16, amended July 9, 1947;
35 U. S. C., Sec. 42, amendments of July 1, 1940 and June 16, 1942;
Revised Statutes, Sec. 4898 (35 U. S. C., Sec. 47), amended August 18, 1941;
Revised Statutes, Sec. 4921 (35 U. S. C., Sec. 70), amendment dated August 1, 1946;
Revised Statutes, Sec. 4934 (35 U. S. C., Sec. 78), amendment dated July 5, 1946.

The only conclusion to be drawn from the foregoing actions of Congress is that it has been ever diligent in making constructive amendments to the Patent Laws but has refused to be stampeded into taking hasty and unsound actions at the behest of the Department of Justice and has refused to tamper with a set of laws that has served the nation so well for so long and which the National Patent Planning Commission aptly characterized as "the best in the world".[3]

Defeated in its direct attack upon our patent system, the Department of Justice is now attempting to achieve the same objective indirectly. This subversive attempt should be quashed.

Bibliography

[1] Created by Public Resolution No. 113 of the 75th Congress, approved June 16, 1938.

[2] Senate Document 95 of the 76th Congress, Reproduced in "Proceedings of the TNEC", Vol. IV, No. 19, p. 642.

[3] Supplemental Data Submitted to the Temporary National Economic Committee, Part 31-A, pp. 18473-18483.

[4] Final Report and Recommendations of the Temporary National Economic Committee transmitted to the Congress of the United States—Senate Document No. 35, 77th Congress.

[5] The "American Patent System"—Message from the President of the United States transmitting the Report of the National Patent Planning Commission, House Document No. 239, 78th Congress.

LIBRARY
SUPREME COURT, U.S.

Office-Supreme Court, U. S.
FILED
JAN 6 1950
CHARLES ELMORE CROPLEY
CLERK

No. 435

In the Supreme Court of the United States

October Term, 1949

AUTOMATIC RADIO MANUFACTURING COMPANY, INC.,
Petitioner,
vs.
HAZELTINE RESEARCH, INC.,

ON PETITION FOR A WRIT OF CERTIORARI TO THE UNITED STATES COURT OF APPEALS FOR THE FIRST CIRCUIT.

PETITION FOR A WRIT OF CERTIORARI AND BRIEF IN SUPPORT THEREOF.

INDEX

	Page
1. Estoppel to challenge the validity of the licensed patents	2
2. Royalty payment upon unpatented products	5
3. The validity of a use restriction applicable to licensees and purchasers from licensees	7
Conclusion	11

CITATIONS

Cases:	
Addyston Pipe & Steel Co. v. *United States*, 175 U. S. 211	4
B. B. Chemical Co. v. *Ellis*, 314 U. S. 495	6
Bloomer v. *McQuewan*, 14 How. 539	9
General Talking Pictures Corp. v. *Western Electric Co.*, 304 U. S. 175, 305 U. S. 124	7, 8, 9, 10
Katzinger Co., Edward v. *Chicago Metallic Mfg. Co.*, 329 U. S. 394	2
MacGregor v. *Westinghouse Electric & Mfg. Co.*, 329 U. S. 402	2
Mercoid Corp. v. *Mid-Continent Investment Co.*, 320 U. S. 661	2, 6
Morton Salt Co. v. *Suppiger Co.*, 314 U. S. 488	2, 6
Nachman Spring-Filled Corporation v. *Kay Mfg. Co.*, 139 F. 2d 781	3, 4
Pope Mfg. Co. v. *Gormully*, 144 U. S. 224	2
RCA Mfg. Co. v. *Whiteman*, 114 F. 2d 86	10, 11
Scott Paper Co. v. *Marcalus Mfg. Co.*, 326 U. S. 249	2, 6
Sola Electric Co. v. *Jefferson Electric Co.*, 317 U. S. 173	2
United States v. *Line Material Co.*, 333 U. S. 287	10
United States v. *Paramount Pictures*, 334 U. S. 131	10, 11
United States v. *Yellow Cab Co.*, 332 U. S. 218	4
United States v. *U. S. Gypsum Co.*, 333 U. S. 364	4–5, 6, 10

876946—50

In the Supreme Court of the United States

OCTOBER TERM, 1949

No. 455

AUTOMATIC RADIO MANUFACTURING COMPANY, INC.,
PETITIONER

v.

HAZELTINE RESEARCH, INC.

ON PETITION FOR A WRIT OF CERTIORARI TO THE UNITED STATES COURT OF APPEALS FOR THE FIRST CIRCUIT

MEMORANDUM FOR THE UNITED STATES AS AMICUS CURIAE IN SUPPORT OF THE PETITION

This case raises a number of questions as to the use and misuse of patents which are of consequence in the field in which the patent and antitrust laws interlock. Because of the importance of the questions and because the decision below in our opinion is in several respects in conflict with principles repeatedly approved by this Court and with decisions of courts of appeals in other circuits, we believe that grant of the petition for certiorari would be in the public interest.

The Government has no concern as to the private interests of the parties to this litigation. As

this Court has repeatedly pointed out, "It is the public interest which is dominant in the patent system". *Edward Katzinger Co.* v. *Chicago Metallic Mfg. Co.*, 329 U. S. 394, 401; *Mercoid Corp.* v. *Mid-Continent Investment Co.*, 320 U. S. 661, 665; *Morton Salt Co.* v. *Suppiger Co.*, 314 U. S. 488, 492–493; *Pope Mfg. Co.* v. *Gormully*, 144 U. S. 224, 235. And this interest dictates that private equities in individual cases must bow to the overriding public policy which forbids misuse of a patent. See cases cited *supra* and *Scott Paper Co.* v. *Marcalus Mfg. Co.*, 326 U. S. 249.

Since the pertinent facts are adequately set forth in the petition and brief in opposition, we shall only state briefly our reasons for believing the case worthy of review. There is no dispute as to the facts which we believe to be controlling.

1. *Estoppel to challenge the validity of the licensed patents.*—The court below held petitioner estopped to challenge the validity of respondent's patents. While the court recognized that the doctrine estopping a licensee from attacking the validity of a patent did not apply when the license included a price fixing feature, it thought that the decisions of this Court so holding (*Sola Electric Co.* v. *Jefferson Electric Co.*, 317 U. S. 173; *Edward Katzinger Co.* v. *Chicago Metallic Mfg. Co.*, 329 U. S. 394; *MacGregor* v. *Westinghouse Electric & Mfg. Co.*, 329 U. S. 402) should be restricted to that precise situation.

This limitation is both unwarranted in principle and in conflict with the decision of the Second Circuit in *Nachman Spring-Filled Corporation* v. *Kay Mfg. Co.*, 139 F. 2d 781 (C. A. 2), which involved an agreement by a competitor to cease making and selling the product covered by plaintiff's patent, accompanied by a covenant acknowledging the patent's validity. In that case the court said (at pp. 783–784):

> It is suggested, however, that the Sola doctrine is inapplicable to an agreement which unreasonably restrains competition but does not fix prices. We cannot agree. True, the court in the Sola case [317 U. S. 173, 63 S. Ct. 173, 87 L. Ed. 165] specifically referred to "the doctrine of estoppel" as being "in conflict with the Sherman Act's prohibition of price-fixing." But the rationale of the opinion is that there can be no valid estoppel to deny the validity of a patent if the estoppel will result in a contravention of federal anti-trust laws. The court concluded its opinion with the statement that "rules of estoppel which would fasten upon the public as well as the petitioner the burden of an agreement in violation of the Sherman Act must yield to the Act's declaration that such agreements are unlawful, and to the public policy of the Act which in the public interest precludes the enforcement of such unlawful agreements. Cf. *Morton Salt Co.* v. *G. S. Sup-*

piger Co., 314 U. S. 488, 492, 493, 62 S. Ct. 402, 405, 86 L. Ed. 363." As that act renders unlawful not merely price-fixing agreements but all agreements which, in any way, unreasonably restrain competition in interstate commerce, the conclusion is inescapable that the Sola case doctrine applies to any such agreement.

In the instant case the refusal of respondent to permit all the licensees in petitioner's position to sell to purchasers who might use the product commercially, and the attempted restriction upon the purchasers themselves, would unquestionably constitute an unlawful restraint of competition apart from the protection afforded by the patent laws. The restrictions upon the licensees under the "Home" or non-commercial license necessarily involve an enforced undertaking by these licensees not to compete in the "Commercial" field, similar to the agreement not to compete in the *Nachman* case. In the absence of patent protection all such restraints of trade have been held invalid. *Addyston Pipe & Steel Co.* v. *United States*, 175 U. S. 211; *United States* v. *Yellow Cab Co.*, 332 U. S. 218, 229.

Furthermore, the reasoning and language of this Court in *United States* v. *U. S. Gypsum Co.*, 333 U. S. 364, 387–388, strongly suggest that the principle which precludes estopping a licensee from attacking the validity of a patent encompasses all

conduct which would otherwise be in violation of the antitrust laws. The Court there stated:

> In an antitrust suit instituted by a licensee against his licensor we have repeatedly held that the licensee may attack the validity of the patent under which he was licensed, because of the public interest in free competition, even though the licensee has agreed in his license not to do so.

Thus, it seems clear that the validity of the licensed patents may be challenged in any case where the contract would be illegal in the absence of valid patents.

The court below was concerned with the difficulties of allowing the validity of the patents to be assailed when the license covered over 500 patents. But this case does not call for a resolution of any such troublesome problem. For respondent has charged only that petitioner has used ten of those patents (Br. in opp. p. 8), and the validity of these could be determined without unduly burdening the district court. In any event the aggregation and package licensing of patents in a large pool should not give a patentee freedom to impose restrictions, whether or not the patents are valid, because of the "intolerable burden" of determining their validity (176 F.2d at 807).

2. *Royalty payment upon unpatented products.*—The Court of Appeals held valid the provision of the agreement requiring the licensee to pay royalties upon every radio set, or other specified apparatus, manufactured and sold by the licensee regardless of whether or not it em-

bodied any of the patented inventions. Judge Woodbury dissented on this ground, considering that such a requirement necessarily had the effect of expanding the patent monopoly. In *United States* v. *U. S. Gypsum Co.*, 333 U. S. 364, 389, 400, this Court held that a license arrangement whereby royalties were based on the value of unpatented as well as patented products contributed to the restraint of trade involved in that case. Such a provision has the effect of exerting the power of the patent monopoly over unpatented products, a practice repeatedly held unlawful by this Court. *Mercoid Corp.* v. *Mid-Continent Investment Co.*, 320 U. S. 661; *Morton Salt Co.* v. *Suppiger Co.*, 314 U. S. 488. Such a charge upon unpatented products would also seem to amount to the imposition of a toll upon acts which members of the public should be permitted to undertake freely. See *Scott Paper Co.* v. *Marcalus Mfg. Co.*, 326 U. S. 249.

The fact that this may have been a convenient method of computing royalties in the instant case, and that as large an amount could have been obtained by the use of other formulas, does not justify the requirement that the licensee pay royalties on products plainly not within the scope of the patent. The convenience of the patentee does not justify an enlargement of the patent monopoly, in view of the adverse effect of this practice upon competition and prices. *Scott Paper Co.* v. *Marcalus Mfg. Co.*, *supra*, at 255. *B. B. Chemical Co.* v. *Ellis*, 314 U. S. 495, 498.

3. *The validity of a use restriction applicable to licensees and purchasers from licensees.*—In *General Talking Pictures Corp.* v. *Western Electric Co.*, 304 U. S. 175, 305 U. S. 124, this Court sustained the validity of a license limiting manufacturers of patented radio amplifiers to the non-commercial field. Justices Black and Reed dissented. Petitioner in that case purchased amplifiers from a licensee for commercial use with knowledge of the restriction, and was held to have infringed the patents covering the amplifiers. The restriction upheld in that case is substantially identical with that in the case at bar. The Court did not consider it necessary to pass upon the validity of the restriction as applied to a purchaser "in the ordinary channels of trade." We think that the following issues referred to and reserved in the *General Talking Pictures* case are presented here (305 U. S. 125):

> 1. Can the owner of a patent, by means thereof, restrict the use made of a device manufactured under the patent, after the device has passed into the hands of a purchaser in the ordinary channels of trade, and full consideration paid therefor?
>
> 2. Can a patent owner, merely by a "license notice" attached to a device made under the patent, and sold in the ordinary channels of trade, place an enforceable restriction on the purchaser thereof as to the use to which the purchaser may put the device?

The above issues are before the Court in the case at bar for the reason that this case poses the question whether a contract between a patentee and his licensee which precludes the free use of the patented article in the hands of a purchaser is illegal and constitutes a misuse of patents. The license contract if performed will necessarily have the effect of interfering with the purchaser's free use of the patented article since (a) if the licensee abides by the contract he will refuse to sell to one who intends to disregard the notice; and (b) if the licensee violates the contract and sells to a purchaser for unrestricted use, the purchaser may be subject to a suit for infringement under the *General Talking Pictures* case. Under that case, apparently any purchaser, no matter how remote, would be liable for infringement as long as he had notice of the restriction, and every purchaser would have notice by virtue of the required "License Notice" forbidding commercial use stamped on the article. The restriction and notice together thus clearly extend the patentee's control to a purchaser in the ordinary channels of trade.

It is said that this case only involves the obligation of the licensee to pay royalties and not the rights of any purchasers. But, the restriction on use combined with the compulsory license notice will have the inevitable effect of subjecting all purchasers to the restriction.

This remote control by the patentee is contrary to a long established rule of this Court that when

a patented article is sold and "passes to the hands of a purchaser, it is no longer within the limits of the monopoly. It passes outside of it, and is no longer under the protection of the act of Congress * * *." *Bloomer* v. *McQuewan*, 14 How. 539, 549–50. See cases collected in dissenting opinion of Justice Black in the *General Talking Pictures* case, 305 U. S. at p. 128.

As a practical matter the only means of eliminating this method of carrying the patent monopoly too far is to treat it as a misuse of the patent *ab initio*. For the restrictions imposed upon ordinary purchasers will be effective in practice if a purchaser is faced with expensive litigation if he disregards the restriction.

For these reasons we believe that this case presents the issues reserved in the *General Talking Pictures* case. If the Court regards the cases as indistinguishable, however, we respectfully submit that that case should be reconsidered and the views advanced in the dissenting opinions accepted. Many cases therein cited have emphasized the fact that a patentee may not extend his control over a patented product beyond that granted by the patent law, which only protects the exclusive right to make use or vend, not the right to control subsequent sales by others. Subsequent decisions, cited at p. 2, *supra*, have confirmed the limited nature of the patent monopoly.

Furthermore, we also believe questionable the holding in the *General Talking Pictures* case sus-

taining the division of fields of manufacture by a patentee. The necessary effect of this would seem to be that competitors obtaining licenses in different fields would thereby obtain immunity from competition in the particular field covered by their license. But in any event, it does not appear that in the *General Talking Pictures* case the question of the validity of such a restriction with reference to multiple licenses was considered. Since that case was decided, this Court has clearly indicated that patents cannot be used to prevent competition between licensees. In three recent cases, it has been held to be a misuse of patents or copyrights to use them to restrain or regulate competition among multiple licensees. *United States* v. *Paramount Pictures,* 334 U. S. 131, 144; *United States* v. *U. S. Gypsum Co., supra,* pp. 389, 393, 401; *United States* v. *Line Material Co.,* 333 U. S. 287, 312.

The decision of the lower court with respect to the use restriction would also appear to be in conflict with the holding of the Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit in the case of *RCA Mfg. Co.* v. *Whiteman,* 114 F. 2d 86 (1940), in which it was held that the copyright privilege did not enable a copyright owner, or a licensee thereunder who manufactured and sold phonograph records embodying the copyrighted work (an orchestra rendition by Paul Whiteman), to restrict the use of the records in the hands of a purchaser even though a notice was

attached to the records limiting their use to "non-commercial use on phonographs in homes." The court held that the "common law property" or common law copyright privilege in Whiteman's performances "ended with the sale of the records and that the restriction did not save it; and that if it did, the records themselves could not be clogged with a servitude" (p. 88). The court further stated (p. 88):

> * * * even if Whiteman's "common law property" in his performances survived the sale of the records on which they were inscribed, it would be very difficult to see how he, or *a fortiori* the maker of the records, could impose valid restrictions upon their resale.

This Court has indicated that the copyright monopoly is comparable in scope to the patent monopoly. *United States* v. *Paramount Pictures, Inc.*, 334 U. S. 131, 157–158. Accordingly, if a patentee may not, himself, attach conditions to the patented article after sale, then, as indicated by the court in the *Whiteman* case, he cannot attach such conditions through a licensee.

CONCLUSION

In our view, the public importance of the above issues is such that this Court should grant the petition for certiorari. This Court, in past decisions, has emphasized the public policy inherent in the patent laws. Unwarranted restrictions

which extend the scope of the patent monopoly are a danger to a free economy. In addition, the decision of the lower court is in conflict with decisions of other courts of appeals and with principles repeatedly approved by this Court.

For the foregoing reasons, it is respectfully submitted that the petition for writ of certiorari should be granted.

PHILIP B. PERLMAN,
Solicitor General.

JANUARY 1950.

U. S. GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE: 1950

INDEX

	Page
Interest of the United States	1
Questions presented	3
Statement	3
Summary of argument	7
Argument:	
I. Automatic Radio is entitled to challenge the validity of Hazeltine's patents	9
II. A package licensing system under which royalties are charged upon unpatented as well as patented products is unlawful	19
III. Automatic Radio's allegations of monopolistic practices are relevant to the legality of the license agreement and should have been fully tried	26
IV. The validity of the provisions of the license agreement restricting manufacture and use	29
A. The restrictive use notice here would bar recovery even under the rule of the *General Talking Pictures* case	30
B. The rule of the *General Talking Pictures* case should be reexamined	33
1. Division of fields among licensees	34
2. The legality of restrictions upon the use of patented articles by purchasers	37
Conclusion	40

CITATIONS

Cases:

Addyston Pipe & Steel Co. v. *United States*, 175 U. S. 211	12
Aero Spark Plug Co. v. *E. G. Corporation*, 130 F. 2d 290	15
American Optical Co. v. *New Jersey Optical Co.*, 58 F. Supp. 601	20
B. B. Chemical Co. v. *Ellis*, 314 U. S. 495	23, 28, 38
Bloomer v. *McQuewan*, 14 How. 539	35
Bloomer v. *Millinger*, 1 Wall. 340	35
Bresnick v. *United States Vitamin Corp.*, 139 F. 2d 239	17
Brown v. *Piper*, 91 U. S. 37	16
Bruce's Juices, Inc. v. *American Can Co.*, 330 U. S. 743	28
Carbice Corp. v. *American Patents Development Corp.*, 283 U. S. 27	2, 28, 38

Cases—Continued

	Page
Chaffee v. *Boston Belting Co.*, 22 How. 217	35
Gamewell Fire-Alarm Telegraph Co. v. *Brooklyn*, 14 Fed. 255	35, 36
Gebhard v. *General Motor Sales Corp.*, 135 F. 2d 248	15
General Talking Pictures Corp. v. *Western Electric Co.*, 304 U. S. 175, 305 U. S. 124	9, 30, 34, 37, 38, 39
Hazeltine Research, Inc. v. *De Wald Radio Mfg. Co.*, 194 Misc. 81, 84 N.Y.S. 2d 597	22
Hobbie v. *Jennison*, 149 U. S. 355	39
H-P-M Development Corp. v. *Watson-Stillman Co.*, 71 F. Supp. 906	20
Edward Katzinger Co. v. *Chicago Metallic Mfg. Co.*, 329 U. S. 394	2, 3, 7, 8, 10, 13, 16, 19, 24, 28, 33
Keystone Driller Co. v. *Excavator Co.*, 290 U. S. 240	29
Kinsman v. *Parkhurst*, 18 How. 289	14, 19
Leitch Mfg. Co. v. *Barber Co.*, 302 U. S. 458	2, 28, 38
MacGregor v. *Westington Electric & Mfg. Co.*, 329 U. S. 402	2, 10, 13, 19, 28, 33
Marconi Wireless Co. v. *United States*, 320 U. S. 1	3, 17, 24
McCullogh v. *Kammerer Corp.*, 166 F. 2d 759, certiorari denied, 335 U. S. 813	21
Mercoid Corp. v. *Honeywell Co.*, 320 U. S. 680	28
Mercoid Corp. v. *Mid-Continent Investment Co.*, 320 U. S. 661	1; 18, 23, 28, 33, 38
Mitchell v. *Hawley*, 16 Wall. 544	35
Morton Salt Co. v. *Suppiger Co.*, 314 U. S. 488,	1, 2, 8, 19, 28, 29, 33, 38
Motion Picture Patents Co. v. *Universal Film Mfg. Co.*, 243 U. S. 502	2, 8, 19, 28, 38
Nachman Spring-Filled Corp. v. *Kay Mfg. Co.*, 139 F. 2d 781	10, 13
Ohio Citizens Trust Co. v. *Air-Way Electric Appliance Corp.*, 56 F. Supp. 1010	20
Pope Mfg. Co. v. *Gormully*, 144 U. S. 224	2, 8, 15, 16, 24, 28
Pyrene Mfg. v. *Urquhart*, 69 F. Supp. 555	20
RCA Mfg. Co. v. *Whiteman*, 114 F. 2d 86	14
Rubber Company v. *Goodyear*, 9 Wall. 788	35, 36
Scott Paper Co. v. *Marcalus Mfg. Co.*, 326 U. S. 249,	2, 17, 19, 28, 32, 40
Sinclair Co. v. *Interchemical Corp.*, 325 U. S. 327	17
Sola Electric Co. v. *Jefferson Electric Co.*, 317 U. S. 173	2, 10, 12, 28
Standard Oil Co. v. *United States*, 283 U. S. 163	21
Standard Water Systems Co. v. *Griscom-Russell Co.*, 278 Fed. 703 certiorari denied, 259 U. S. 580	17
Transparent-Wrap Machine Corp. v. *Stokes & Smith Co.*, 329 U. S. 637	8, 25, 28
United States v. *General Electric Co.*, 80 F. Supp. 989	25, 31

Cases—Continued

	Page
United States v. *General Electric Co.*, 82 F. Supp. 753	25, 31
United States v. *Harvey Steel Co.*, 196 U. S. 310	14, 19
United States v. *Line Material Co.*, 333 U. S. 287	9, 34
United States v. *Paramount Pictures*, 334 U. S. 131	34
United States v. *United States Gypsum Co.*, 333 U. S. 364	7, 10, 19, 20, 21, 34
United States v. *Univis Lens Co.*, 316 U. S. 241	20
United States v. *Yellow Cab Co.*, 332 U. S. 218	12-13
White v. *Lee*, 14 Fed. 789	16

Statutes:

Revised Statutes, Section 4886, 35 U.S.C. 31	18
Revised Statutes, Section 4898, 35 U.S.C. 47	36
Revised Statutes, Section 4901, 35 U.S.C. 50	32
Robinson-Patman Act, 49 Stat. 1526, 15 U.S.C. 13 *et seq.*	28

In the Supreme Court of the United States

OCTOBER TERM, 1949

No. 455

AUTOMATIC RADIO MANUFACTURING COMPANY, INC.,
PETITIONER

v.

HAZELTINE RESEARCH, INC.

ON WRIT OF CERTIORARI TO THE UNITED STATES COURT OF APPEALS FOR THE FIRST CIRCUIT

BRIEF FOR THE UNITED STATES AS AMICUS CURIAE

INTEREST OF THE UNITED STATES

This case presents important issues of public policy with respect to the availability in private patent litigation of defenses based upon invalidity of patents and misuse of patent rights. The United States has no concern with the private interests involved in such litigation, but it is concerned with the vindication of the dominant public interest in the patent system. *Morton Salt Co.* v. *Suppiger Co.*, 314 U. S. 488, 493; *Mercoid Corp.* v. *Mid-Con-*

tinent Investment Co., 320 U. S. 661, 665; *Edward Katzinger Co.* v. *Chicago Metallic Mfg. Co.*, 329 U. S. 394, 401. One of the most effective safeguards of the public interest in this field has been the refusal of the courts to lend their aid to the enforcement of rights claimed under patents, or under contracts based upon patents, where the patents have been used in a manner contrary to public policy or contrary to the patent or antitrust laws.[1] As this Court stated in *Morton Salt Co.* v. *Suppiger Co.*, *supra*, at p. 494, "The patentee, like * * * other holders of an exclusive privilege granted in the furtherance of a public policy, may not claim protection of his grant by the courts where it is being used to subvert that policy."

The decision of the majority of the court below has failed, we believe, both to allow the latitude in raising defenses based upon misuse of patents and to make the inquiry into the legality of the license agreement, which the public interest requires. And the court's holding that petitioner is estopped in this action to challenge the validity of any of the 500 patents and 200 patent applications held by re-

---

[1] *E.g.*, *Pope Mfg. Co.* v. *Gormully*, 144 U.S. 224; *Morton Salt Co.* v. *Suppiger Co.*, 314 U.S. 488; *Motion Picture Patents Co.* v. *Universal Film Mfg. Co.*, 243 U.S. 502; *Carbice Corp.* v. *American Patents Development Corp.*, 283 U.S. 27; *Leitch Mfg. Co.* v. *Barber Co.*, 302 U.S. 458; *Mercoid Corp.* v. *Mid-Continent Investment Co.*, 320 U. S. 661. Compare *Sola Electric Co.* v. *Jefferson Electric Co.*, 317 U.S. 173; *Scott Paper Co.* v. *Marcalus Mfg. Co.*, 326 U.S. 249; *Edward Katzinger Co.* v. *Chicago Metallic Mfg. Co.*, 329 U.S. 394; *MacGregor* v. *Westinghouse Electric & Mfg. Co.*, 329 U.S. 402.

spondent is contrary to the sound public policy of protecting the public from the threat of invalid patents. Compare *Marconi Wireless Co.* v. *United States*, 320 U. S. 1, 58; *Edward Katzinger Co.* v. *Chicago Metallic Mfg. Co.*, *supra*, at 401.

QUESTIONS PRESENTED

1. Is petitioner licensee estopped from challenging the validity of respondent licensor's patents in a suit for patent royalties?

2. Is a package licensing system under which royalties are charged upon unpatented as well as patented products lawful?

3. Should the licensee's allegations of the licensor's monopolistic practices have been fully tried instead of being dismissed as irrelevant to the licensor's right to recover?

4. Is a patent license agreement valid which requires the licensee to affix restrictive use notices to articles sold by him irrespective of whether the articles embody any of the licensed inventions?

5. May a patentee validly restrict manufacturing licenses to the non-commercial field, and limit the use of articles purchased from its licensees to that field?

STATEMENT

The facts pertinent to the issues which are of concern to the United States may be briefly stated.

Hazeltine Research, Inc. brought this action against Automatic Radio Manufacturing Com-

pany, Inc., for royalties and injunctive relief under a patent license agreement (R. 5) dated September 1, 1942, whereby Automatic Radio was given a non-transferable, non-exclusive license under several hundred specified patents and patent applications and all other patents with respect to which Hazeltine should acquire the right to grant licenses during the ten year term of the agreement (R. 313-314).[2] The license authorized Automatic Radio to utilize such patents, in the manufacture and sale of certain classifications of radio, phonographic and other equipment,[3] and it was provided that "the use in each case is limited to use in homes, use for educational purposes and private non-commercial use" (R. 8). The licensee was required by the agreement to mark all licensed apparatus as follows (R. 14):

> "Licensed by Hazeltine Corporation only for use in homes, for educational purposes, and for

[2] The agreement was subject to earlier termination by the licensor in certain situations (R. 16-17).

[3] "(a) Complete radio broadcast receivers of sound;
(b) Complete radio broadcast receivers of pictures (including television);
(c) Chassis of radio broadcast receivers of sound;
(d) Complete carrier current receivers of sound;
(e) Complete carrier current receivers of pictures;
(f) Complete electrical phonographs;
(g) Complete apparatus for reproducing pictures and talking pictures, from films or other records used in such apparatus, to be seen or heard in the immediate vicinity of such apparatus; and
(h) Combination of the apparatus specified in (a), (b), (f) and (g) of this section or of any two or more of them." (R. 8)

> private, non-commercial use, under one or more of the following patents and under pending applications:" followed by the word "Patent" and the numbers of the patents which are, in the opinion of Licensor, involved in apparatus of the types licensed hereunder manufactured by one or more licensees of Licensor.

Thus the patents to be listed in the restrictive notices were not limited to those actually embodied in the particular apparatus, or even those thought by Hazeltine to cover the particular apparatus to which the restrictive notice was to be affixed, but were to be such patents as Hazeltine thought to be "involved" in apparatus of the general "type" manufactured by *any* of the licensees of Hazeltine under this form of license. Under the agreement, therefore, the license notice would be affixed to radio receivers and other apparatus of the types described in footnote 3, *supra*, p. 4, which petitioner sold, even though they embodied none of Hazeltine's patented inventions.

Automatic Radio agreed to pay royalties in specified percentages upon each complete apparatus under any of the described classifications of equipment which it sold (R. 9), and a minimum royalty of $10,000 per annum was specified (R. 11). The obligation to pay royalties was not conditioned on use by the licensee of any of the patents licensed nor was the amount of royalty measured by the extent of such use. Whether or not petitioner's products were covered by any of the licensed pat-

ents, and without regard to the extent to which the patents were actually used, royalties would be payable on all sales of apparatus of this type made by Automatic Radio.

The license agreement here involved is one of many issued by Hazeltine, which is one of the largest licensors in the radio field (R. 314). At the time of this suit it owned, or had the right to grant licenses under, some 500 patents and 200 patent applications (*ibid.*). Of these patents it has been asserted by Hazeltine that Automatic Radio has been using ten (R. 51-52), while Automatic Radio has denied that it is using any (Ans., par. 9, R. 46).

There is no dispute that Automatic Radio has failed to pay the royalties, to affix the restrictive use notices to its apparatus, or to do the other things called for by the license agreement. It raised defenses based upon alleged misuse of patents by Hazeltine, the illegality of the license agreement, and the invalidity of Hazeltine patents. These defenses included contentions (1) that Hazeltine had acquired the patents covered by the license agreement in an illegal endeavor to eliminate all competition and secure an unlawful monopoly; (2) that the restriction on use imposed by the license notice is illegal and invalidates the royalty agreement; (3) that the requirement of royalty payments based upon gross sales of specified apparatus, irrespective of the use of Hazeltine patents in such

apparatus, constitutes an unlawful extention of the patent monopoly; and (4) that the Hazeltine patents are invalid. Each of these defenses was considered and rejected by the District Court and the Court of Appeals (R. 299-300, 301, 302, 317, 319, 321, 323). The District Court granted a summary judgment in favor of Hazeltine (R. 293) which the Court of Appeals affirmed by a divided vote (R. 330). The summary judgment ordered, adjudged, and decreed that the license agreement of September 1, 1942, is "good and valid at law and in full force and effect;" that Hazeltine recover a minimum royalty as specified under the agreement, and such further sums as are provided for according to its terms; and that a permanent injunction issue restraining Automatic Radio and its officers and directors from breaching provisions of the agreement relating to royalties (R. 293-294).

SUMMARY OF ARGUMENT

I

Petitioner licensee is entitled to challenge the validity of respondent licensor's patents because the license agreement contains provisions which would be violative of the antitrust laws unless authorized in exercise of patent rights. *Edward Katzinger Co.* v. *Chicago Metallic Mfg. Co.*, 329 U.S. 394; *United States* v. *United States Gypsum Co.*, 333 U.S. 364, 387-388. In any event, it is contrary to the public interest in removing the threat

of invalid patents for a patent licensee to be estopped judicially from challenging his licensor's patents. *Pope Mfg. Co.* v. *Gormully*, 144 U.S. 224; *Edward Katzinger Co.* v. *Chicago Metallic Mfg. Co.*, *supra*.

II

The royalty scheme of the license agreement, requiring payment of royalties based upon a percentage of the licensee's gross sales irrespective of use by the licensee of the licensor's patents, involves an enlargement of the patent monopoly by placing a toll on unpatented goods which is illegal *per se* (*cf. Motion Picture Patents Co.* v. *Universal Film Mfg. Co.*, 243 U.S. 502; *Morton Salt Co.* v. *Suppiger Co.*, 314 U.S. 488), or, at the least, makes appropriate a hearing and determination as to the effects of the agreement upon competition. *Transparent-Wrap Machine Corp.* v. *Stokes & Smith Co.*, 329 U.S. 637.

III

Petitioner's allegations of monopolistic practices on the part of respondent involve the purposes and effect of the acquisition of the very patents here licensed. Petitioner is entitled to a full hearing on these allegations since their truth is relevant to respondent's right to recover in this action for royalties. The District Court should not have disposed of this contention on motion for summary judgment.

IV

Even under the rule of *General Talking Pictures Corp.* v. *Western Electric Co.*, 304 U.S. 175, 305 U.S. 124, the provision of the license agreement requiring restrictive notices to be affixed to radio apparatus sold by the licensee is unlawful. Unlike the notices prescribed in the earlier case, the notices here are required without regard to whether the apparatus utilizes the patents to be listed, or utilizes any patents of the licensor at all, and are therefore plainly illegal. In any event, the *General Talking Pictures* case should now be re-examined in the light of later cases (*e.g.*, *United States* v. *Line Material Co.*, 333 U.S. 287). The holdings in *General Talking Pictures* that a patentee may divide manufacturing fields among licensees, and that the validity of restrictive use notices need not be considered in determining the validity of a license agreement requiring them, are at odds with the cases decided both before and since the *General Talking Pictures* decision was rendered.

ARGUMENT

I

Automatic Radio Is Entitled to Challenge the Validity of Hazeltine's Patents

A. It is now settled that the judicial doctrine of estoppel which has sometimes been applied against a patent licensee who challenges his licensor's patent may not be availed of where the license

agreement contains a price-fixing provision which would render the agreement illegal under the antitrust laws in the absence of valid patents. *Sola Electric Co.* v. *Jefferson Electric Co.*, 317 U.S. 173; *Edward Katzinger Co.* v. *Chicago Metallic Mfg. Co.*, 329 U.S. 394; *MacGregor* v. *Westinghouse Electric & Mfg. Co.*, 329 U.S. 402. The court below recognized this principle (R. 323) but refused to apply it to any antitrust violations except price-fixing.

We can perceive no reason in principle for this limitation, and believe it to be in conflict with this Court's opinion in *United States* v. *United States Gypsum Co.*, 333 U.S. 364, and with the decision of the Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit in *Nachman Spring-Filled Corp.* v. *Kay Mfg. Co.*, 139 F. 2d 781. In the *Gypsum* case this Court unequivocally approved the principle of permitting a licensee to attack the validity of a patent where the license agreement contained provisions which would, absent a valid patent, violate the antitrust laws. This Court stated (333 U.S. at 387-388):

> In an antitrust suit instituted by a licensee against his licensor we have repeatedly held that the licensee may attack the validity of the patent under which he was licensed, because of the public interest in free competition, even though the licensee has agreed in his license not to do so.

In the *Nachman* case there was an agreement by a competitor to discontinue making and selling the

patented product and the agreement included a covenant acknowledging the validity of the patent. In an infringement action by the patentee against the other party to the agreement, the Court of Appeals rejected the contention that the rule of the *Sola* case should be limited to price-fixing situations, saying (139 F. 2d at 783-784):

> It is suggested, however, that the Sola doctrine is inapplicable to an agreement which unreasonably restrains competition but does not fix prices. We cannot agree. True, the court in the Sola case [317 U.S. 173, 63 S. Ct. 173, 87 L. Ed. 165] specifically referred to "the doctrine of estoppel" as being "in conflict with the Sherman Act's prohibition of price-fixing." But the rationale of the opinion is that there can be no valid estoppel to deny the validity of a patent if the estoppel will result in a contravention of federal anti-trust laws. The court concluded its opinion with the statement that "rules of estoppel which would fasten upon the public as well as the petitioner the burden of an agreement in violation of the Sherman Act must yield to the Act's declaration that such agreements are unlawful, and to the public policy of the Act which in the public interest precludes the enforcement of such unlawful agreements. Cf. *Morton Salt Co. v. G. S. Suppiger Co.*, 314 U.S. 488, 492, 493, 62 S. Ct. 402, 405, 86 L. Ed. 363." As that act renders unlawful not merely price-fixing agreements but all agreements which, in any way, unreasonably restrain competition in

interstate commerce, the conclusion is inescapable that the Sola case doctrine applies to any such agreement.

It is clear that the fundamental policy underlying the rejection in *Sola* of the artificial bar of estoppel is to prevent the patent owner from resting on asserted patent rights to justify activities that would otherwise be in restraint of trade or unlawful in other respects, except in the cases where the asserted rights really exist—*i.e.*, where the patents are valid. In the instant case there can be no doubt that the license agreement on its face involves an illegal restraint of trade unless that restraint is justified under patent monopolies.[4] Automatic Radio is not licensed to sell to purchasers who might use the product commercially, and the license notice provision is an attempted restriction upon the purchasers themselves. These restrictions would seem necessarily to involve an enforced undertaking by the "Home" licensees, such as petitioner, not to compete in the "Commercial" field with any apparatus covered by Hazeltine's patents (cf. R. 320). In the absence of patent protection, such restraints of trade have been held to be unlawful. *Addyston Pipe & Steel Co.* v. *United States*, 175 U.S. 211; *United States*

[4] We assume, *arguendo*, in this Point I that the method of measuring royalty payments (discussed in Point II) and the license notice requirements (discussed in Point IV) are lawful *if the patents are valid*. If, as we argue below, these provisions are unlawful, even if based on valid patents, there is, of course, no need for petitioner to attack respondent's patents.

v. *Yellow Cab Co.*,[4] 332 U.S. 218, 229; *Nachman Spring-Filled Corp. v. Kay Mfg. Co.*, 139 F. 2d 781 (C.A. 2).[5] Even if no express agreement to avoid the "Commercial" sphere can be spelled out, restrictions of this nature (particularly the license notice provision) plainly impede free competition and, if unpatented articles were involved, would fall under antitrust prohibitions. Nor would it save the license agreement from invalidity if "Home" licensees could freely secure "Commercial" licenses—a fact stated by the respondent in its briefs but which the record does not show; the requirement that two licenses be obtained for the same type of equipment would still clog competition, especially since it seems that even a holder of both licenses could not sell the same radio for both "Home" and "Commercial" use.[6] Likewise, the attempted control by the patentee over articles in the hands of purchasers would be invalid in the absence of patent rights, without regard to the anti-

---

[5] It is immaterial that petitioner never affixed the required license notice to its products (R. 318). *Edward Katzinger Co.* v. *Chicago Metallic Mfg. Co.*, 329 U.S. 394, 397, 401, and *MacGregor* v. *Westinghouse Electric & Mfg. Co.*, 329 U.S. 402, 405-406, hold that, since it is the unlawful agreement, whether or not executed, which violates the antitrust laws, the licensee may attack the patent's validity even though he did not abide by the invalid agreement.

[6] Inquiry into the other monopoly charges made by Automatic Radio which, as we urge below (in Point III), should have been fully tried by the District Court, might have revealed other antitrust violations, aside from those appearing on the face of the license agreement, which would also provide ground for an attack on the validity of Hazeltine's patents.

trust laws. As the court stated in *RCA Mfg. Co. v. Whiteman*, 114 F. 2d 86, 89 (C.A. 2), certiorari denied, 311 U. S. 712:

> Restrictions upon the uses of chattels once absolutely sold are at least prima facie invalid; they must be justified for some exceptional reason, normally they are "repugnant" to the transfer of title.

The Court of Appeals envisioned practical difficulties if Automatic Radio should be permitted to challenge the validity of the Hazeltine patents (R. 324). Such difficulties, however, arise from the inherent nature of package licensing. It should hardly be suggested that the *Sola* doctrine may validly be circumvented by including large numbers of patents in the patent license. In any event, respondent has charged only that petitioner has used ten of its patents (Br. in opp. p. 8), and the validity of these could be determined without unduly burdening the District Court.

B. Quite apart from the fact that the license agreement in question flatly violates the antitrust laws unless it comes within the protection of valid patents, we think the general doctrine of estoppel by licensees to challenge licensed patents should be reexamined and rejected. Cf. *Kinsman* v. *Parkhurst*, 18 How. 289; *United States* v. *Harvey Steel Co.*, 196 U.S. 310. To require one claiming a patent right to defend the validity of his claim is hardly more than a necessary corollary of the universally recognized principle that the holder of an exclusive

privilege granted by the public must be strictly confined to his grant.

Monopolies are generally repugnant to public policy. The patent system, in so far as it legitimizes monopoly as an inceptive to invention, must be considered a departure, however appropriate, from the normal requirements of competition as expressed by Congress in the federal antitrust laws and embodied in the common law. The policy thus declared in favor of free competition and the striking down of monopoly will be contravened if, on the basis of judicially created estoppel, the validity of monopoly privileges, asserted under letters patent which would never have been issued if all the pertinent facts had been known, may escape judicial scrutiny.

Since every patent necessarily restrains trade by its very nature as a monopoly, the existence of which, apart from the patent, would usually raise questions of legality under the antitrust laws, "It is as important to the public that competition should not be repressed by worthless patents, as that the patentee of a really valuable invention should be protected in his monopoly * * *." *Pope Mfg. Co.* v. *Gormully*, 144 U.S. 224, 234. "An invalid patent masquerading as a valid one is a public menace, and should be fair game" (Frank, J, concurring in *Aero Spark Plug Co.* v. *B.G. Corporation*, 130 F. 2d 290, 294 (C.A. 2)); "it discourages enterprise and encourages litigation" (*Gebhard* v *General Motors Sales Corp.*, 135 F. 2d 248, 249 (C.A. D.C.)).

Yet the doctrine of estoppel may prevent a challenge to a patent's validity by those members of the public who are best prepared to make the challenge. Situations are not infrequent in which the owners of dubious patents have bought the silence of persons in a position to expose invalidity by granting licenses to them on favorable terms.[7]

This Court has frequently given practical application to its recognition of the special public interest involved in invalidating worthless patents. The right to challenge "is not only a private right to the individual, but it is founded on public policy which is promoted by his making the defence, and contravened by his refusal to make it." *Mfg. Co.* v. *Gormully, supra,* at 235.[8] And the Court has stated that it is the duty of courts to invalidate a patent, bad on its face, even though the invalidity is not asserted by the litigants. *Brown* v. *Piper,* 91 U.S. 37, 44. It has pointed out for the guidance of lower courts that, though an infringement suit may be disposed of on the ground of non-infringement, the question of the

[7] A recognition that the licensee alone may be in a position to challenge the patent's validity has been used in curious fashion to support the application of an estoppel in certain older cases. It has been suggested that an underlying reason for the estoppel doctrine is that the licensees may have had the benefit of the patent, even though invalid, to keep off competition. See *White* v. *Lee,* 14 Fed. 789, 791 (C.C. D. Mass.) and cases cited.

[8] This language was quoted with approval by the Court in *Edward Katzinger Co.* v. *Chicago Mfg. Co.,* 329 U. S. 394, 401.

patent's validity has the greater public importance and to inquire fully into this question will usually be the better practice. *Sinclair Co.* v. *Interchemical Corp.*, 325 U.S. 327, 330. It has stressed the "protection of the public from the threat of an invalid patent" as the purpose of the rule that a patent is invalid in its entirety if any part of it be invalid. *Marconi Wireless Co.* v. *United States*, 320 U.S. 1, 58.[9]

Perhaps the clearest illustration of the conflict between the estoppel doctrine and the public interest is found in *Scott Paper Co.* v. *Marcalus Mfg. Co.*, 326 U.S. 249, a suit for infringement brought by the assignee of a patent against his assignor. The machine alleged to infringe was a copy of an expired, prior art patent. The Court held that, irrespective of whether an assignor is ordinarily estopped to challenge the validity of his patent as against his assignee, the patent laws precluded invocation of the doctrine of estoppel in the situation there presented. The Court recognized that any form of private arrangement

[9] Lower courts have similarly recognized the desirability of invalidating worthless patents. The public interest has been held to require adjudication of the validity of a patent even though the patent assignor was deemed estopped to deny validity. *Standard Water Systems Co.* v. *Griscom-Russell Co.*, 278 Fed. 703, 705 (C.A. 3), certiorari denied, 259 U. S. 580. In an infringement suit involving only one claim of a patent, it has been held proper to declare the patent as a whole invalid so that it will not "remain in the art as a scarecrow" even though the single claim involved was invalid for reasons independent of the general invalidity of the patent. *Bresnick* v. *United States Vitamin Corp.*, 139 F. 2d 239, 242 (C.A. 2).

which would invest a patent covering an "invention" already revealed by an expired patent with the monopoly attributes contemplated by the patent laws, runs counter to the policy and purpose of those laws—that the invention disclosed by a patent shall, after its expiration, be in the public domain.[10]

Just as the patent law limits the life of a patent to 17 years, so the law confines the issuance of patents to inventions not previously known or used by others. R. S. § 4886, 35 U.S.C. 31. To invest with patent privileges, by virtue of an estoppel doctrine foreclosing inquiry into the true facts, a device or process known to the prior art and therefore not a patentable invention, would equally run counter to the policy and purpose of the patent laws.

It thus appears that there are compelling considerations flowing from the patent and antitrust statutes, as well as from the law's general attitude toward monopoly, for the conclusion that one who seeks to enforce a patent monopoly should be required to defend against any challenge of the validity of his patent.[11]

---

[10] Similarly, in *Mercoid Corp.* v. *Mid-Continent Investment Co.*, 320 U. S. 661, 670, the Court refused to apply the ordinary rule of *res judicata* "governing the settlement of private litigation" to a suit involving a misuse of the patent privilege and a violation of the antitrust laws, because of the important public interest in preventing extension of a patent beyond its legitimate scope.

[11] A more extended discussion of the estoppel doctrine is contained in the Government's brief *amicus curiae* in *Mac-*

A Package Licensing System under Which Royalties Are Charged Upon Unpatented as Well as Patented Products Is Unlawful

Since the royalties under the present agreement have not been made to depend upon use by Automatic Radio of any of the patented inventions, but upon a percentage of the gross sales of enumerated classes of radio apparatus, it is obvious that the royalties would constitute a toll upon unpatented goods. We think such a toll represents an illegal enlargement of the patent monopoly which renders the royalty agreement illegal *per se*. *Cf. Motion Picture Patents Co.* v. *Universal Film Mfg. Co.*, 243 U.S. 502; *Morton Salt Co.* v. *Suppiger Co.*, 314 U.S. 488; *Mercoid Corp.* v. *Mid-Continent Investment Co.*, 320 U.S. 661; *United States* v. *United States Gypsum Co.*, 333 U.S. 364; *Scott Paper Co.* v. *Marcalus Mfg. Co.*, 326 U.S. 249. The controlling principle is that "In construing and applying the patent law so as to give effect to the public policy which limits the granted monopoly strictly to the terms of the statutory grant . . . the particular form or method by which the monopoly is sought to be extended is immaterial."

Gregor v. *Westinghouse Electric & Mfg. Co.*, and *Edward Katzinger Co.* v. *Chicago Metallic Mfg. Co.*, Oct. Term, 1946, Nos. 28, 70, and 71. In addition to the arguments made above, it is there shown that (a) under the general principles governing the doctrine of estoppel there is little, if any, basis for applying a rule of estoppel to patent licensees, and (b) the cases of *Kinsman* v. *Parkhurst*, 18 How. 289, and *United States* v. *Harvey Steel Co.*, 196 U. S. 310, on which the patent estoppel doctrine is said to rest, do not appear to represent square, considered holdings on the point.

United States v. Univis Lens Co., 316 U.S. 241, 251-252.[12]

There are several objectionable consequences which flow from the imposition of royalties on unpatented as well as patented items. The toll on unpatented goods tends to discourage their production by the licensee who may have to compete with other sellers of unpatented goods not burdened with such a toll, and thus partakes of the same evils as a direct agreement not to manufacture unpatented

[12] In the *Gypsum* case, one of the abuses of the patents involved was the measurement of royalties "by a percentage of the value of all gypsum products, patented or unpatented" (333 U. S. at 389). This Court pointed out that "Patents grant no privilege to their owners of organizing the use of those patents to monopolize an industry through price control, through royalties for the patents drawn from patent-free industry products and through regulation of distribution" (*id.* at 400).

The cases cited by the Court of Appeals to sustain the instant royalty provision (R. 319) involve situations distinguishable from that here at issue. The case most nearly in point, *H-P-M Development Corp. v. Watson-Stillman Co.*, 71 F. Supp. 906 (D. N.J.), involved a royalty charged on certain types of hydraulic presses irrespective of whether or not any particular patent or patents of the licensor were embodied therein (p. 908). The court held this provision valid on the theory that it was lawful to charge a royalty upon an article as a whole which embodied patented parts (p. 912), and the agreement recited that it was contemplated that one or more patents would be embodied in the manufactured products. Similarly, *American Optical Co. v. New Jersey Optical Co.*, 58 F. Supp. 601, 606 (D. Mass.) and *Ohio Citizens Trust Co. v. Air-Way Elec. Appliance Corp.*, 56 F. Supp. 1010, 1012 (N.D. Ohio), stand for the proposition that a royalty may be charged upon an unpatented completed unit embodying patented parts. Whether or not these cases are sound, they clearly fall short of standing as authority for the present royalty arrangement. The statement as to royalties in *Pusey Mfg. Co. v. Urquhart*, 69 F. Supp. 555, 560 (E.D. Pa.), which we believe to be erroneous, is mere dictum since the licensing system there was held invalid.

products.[13] As this Court has observed, "The rate of royalties may, of course, be a decisive factor in the cost of production." *Standard Oil Co. v. United States*, 283 U. S. 163, 174. Granted that the patent monopoly gives the patentee a lawful right to affect the cost of production of the patented article by a royalty charge, there is the ever-present check that, if he charges a prohibitively high royalty, he may price the article out of the market by rendering it unable to compete with unpatented articles of a similar nature, or articles produced under other patents bearing a lower royalty. Where, as here, the royalties apply to unpatented as well as patented goods, the salutary effect of this competition is diminished or eliminated. The patented products, if any are sold, bear only a portion of the total royalty charge, and the remainder is spread over the unpatented goods; it even may be that the full royalty is borne by the unpatented articles. In these circumstances, there is decidedly less economic compulsion to keep royalties to the lowest appropriate level. In addition, this form of agreement lends itself to indefinite expansion of the coverage of the number and types of unpatented products, far out of proportion to the number and types of patented arti-

[13] Cf. *McCullough v. Kammerer Corp.*, 166 F. 2d 759 (C. A. 9), certiorari denied, 335 U. S. 813, holding invalid an agreement by a patent licensee to manufacture only articles embodying the patented inventions. See also *United States v. United States Gypsum Co.*, 333 U. S. 364: "The provision in the license contracts that royalties should be paid on

cles—with similar serious consequences for the proper adjustment of the royalty rate.

The vice of a system which relieves patentees of the need to prove the worth of individual patents in the open market is greatly intensified in a situation in which large numbers of patents in a particular field become aggregated in the hands of one company and are licensed by it on a package basis. Cf. *Hazeltine Research, Inc.* v. *DeWald Radio Mfg. Co.*, 194 Misc. 81, 85, 84 N.Y. S. 2d 597, 602. Instead of the royalty being based upon the economic value of individual inventions, as determined by the premium which articles embodying such inventions will bring in a free market, the royalty rate tends to be a measure of the nuisance value of potential infringement suits based on any one or more of hundreds of patents. If the royalty rate is made superficially nominal by being set at a low percentage of sales price (a result facilitated by applying the royalty to all products sold, whether or not patented), the tendency of most manufacturers will be to take a license to avoid litigation—a form of litigation insurance—and then to comply with the agreement without ever questioning the validity of any of the patents. Thus the patentee's general monopoly control will be perpetuated. In this way the public ultimately

---

the production of unpatented board is strongly indicative of an agreement not to manufacture unpatented board * * * " (p. 397); "The license agreements provided that royalties should be paid on the sales of all board sold, patented or unpatented, a provision which would tend to discourage the production of higher cost unpatented board" (p. 385).

bears the extra burden represented by the royalties without necessarily receiving anything in return.

The argument, found persuasive by the court below (R. 319-320), that basing royalties on gross sales price without regard to use of patents is a convenient, and therefore permissible, system merely serves to emphasize the disadvantages from the standpoint of the public. The reasons it would be inconvenient for Hazeltine to collect royalties based upon the patents used, if any, are (1) it would necessitate determining which apparatus actually embodies the patented inventions, and licensees would be free to dispute Hazeltine's claims in this respect; (2) it would discourage use of the licensed patents unless they were deemed of sufficient usefulness to justify the payment of the royalty charged; (3) royalties would have to be higher (percentage-wise) to produce the same net return, thus increasing resistance by licensees; and (4) to the extent that the validity of Hazeltine's patents is open to challenge, licensees would be in a position to challenge the particular patents used, whereas it might be wholly impractical for a licensee to challenge all of Hazeltine's patents, should that be required.[14]

It is clear that the convenience of the patentee does not justify an enlargement of the patent monopoly. See *B. B. Chemical Co. v. Ellis*, 314 U. S. 495, 498; *Mercoid Corp. v. Mid-Continent Invest-*

[14] In the instant case Hazeltine claims but ten of its 700 patents and patent applications are actually used by Automatic Radio (Br. in Opp., p. 8).

ment Co., 320 U. S. 661, 666, 679-680. Here, the convenience of the patentee is based upon considerations which militate against the public interest. The public should be burdened with royalties only for valid patents on valuable inventions which are actually embodied in the articles which it buys.

In *Pope Mfg. Co.* v. *Gormully*, 144 U. S. 224, this Court found the pledge of a licensee not to challenge any of the numerous patents of his licensor to be against public policy and void. In that case it appears that the pledge ran not only to patents which the licensee was authorized to use, but to other patents as well. Here there is no formal pledge not to challenge patents, but the package licensing system under a blanket percentage royalty has a strong deterrent effect upon such challenges, for, in view of the uncertain state of the law on the subject, the licensee cannot be sure that he will not be required to prove invalidity of one or all of the many patents he does not use as well as the few which he uses. The philosophy of the *Pope* case, resting on the public policy of discouraging a wholesale bar against attacks upon validity of patents, would require disapproval of the present license agreement. And see *Marconi Wireless Co.* v. *United States*, 320 U. S. 1, 58; *Edward Katzinger Co.* v. *Chicago Metallic Mfg. Co.*, 329 U. S. 394, 401.

It may be argued that the imposition of royalties on unpatented goods is merely a permissible method of measuring the royalties on patented goods. And since a lump sum royalty would con-

ciently be valid, it is suggested that there can be no vice in percentage royalties which may well impose a lower toll. The economic difference between the two types of royalties, and the dissimilar effect upon competition, are, however, significant. A lump sum royalty becomes an overhead expense which presumably will encourage maximum production and sales to spread overhead. The sales percentage royalty, on the other hand, raises the minimum break-even point above which articles must be priced in order to return a profit. It is the type of cost of production which cannot be reduced by increased sales, and hence has a tendency to act as a clog upon commerce. Where such a burden is placed upon patented goods only, we concede that it is a lawful exercise of the patent monopoly. But where, as here, the toll is placed upon unpatented goods, or upon goods in which the patented invention plays only a minor part, we think the patentee has attempted unlawfully to expand his monopoly. Cf. *United States v. General Electric Co.*, 80 F. Supp. 989, 1005 (S. D. N. Y.); *United States* v. *General Electric Co.*, 82 F. Supp. 753, 814-815 (D. N. J.).

Even if the Court should conclude that the royalty scheme here involves is not illegal *per se*, it would seem appropriate that there be a full hearing below to determine its effect upon competition. Cf. *Transparent-Wrap Mfg. Co.* v. *Stokes & Smith Co.*, 329 U. S. 637, 648. Disposition by the District Court of this case on motion for summary judgment has prevented any exploration of this matter.

III

Automatic Radio's Allegations of Monopolistic Practices Are Relevant to the Legality of the License Agreement and Should Have Been Fully Tried

Automatic Radio attempted to put in issue Hazeltine's alleged monopolistic activities. It charged "That the plaintiff, in an illegal endeavor to eliminate all competition and secure an unlawful monopoly in violation of the antitrust laws of the United States, acquired the approximately 425 United States letters patent and the approximately 120 applications * * * from its employees * * * [and from other corporations]" (Ans., par. 10, R. 47), and on the basis of this charge Automatic Radio contended that "plaintiff is not entitled to the aid of this Court in maintaining this action" (*ibid.*).

The District Court, in its opinion on the motions for summary judgment, characterized the above contention as "Defendant's most substantial defense," and stated that "If the issue of whether a monopoly existed was relevant to this case, I would not decide the question on summary procedure, but would require that it be submitted for trial" (R. 302). The trial judge concluded, however, that it was not necessary to reach the question on the ground that (R. 302-303):

> The license contract involved here is entirely separate from any action of plaintiff to eliminate competition or engage in a monopoly. Assuming, arguendo, it was engaged in an

> unlawful scheme to maintain a monopoly, the contract here was not an integral part of it. The contract in suit did not help to promote any monopoly plaintiff had established.

The Court of Appeals expressly approved this view, stating that "the license agreement, being itself a valid contract, will not be rendered unenforceable by collateral activities of the plaintiff in violation of the antitrust laws" (R. 322).

It is not possible on this record to determine whether Hazeltine has engaged in illegal monopolistic practices, and we do not suggest that it has. But we think it was error for the courts below to exclude this issue from consideration on the theory that the license agreement at issue should be considered separately. It is clear that this license agreement is not an exceptional individual contract. It appears to be a standard form used by Hazeltine in some 130 licenses and thus represents a typical example of Hazeltine's pattern of operation.[15] If Hazeltine's purpose and plan were to

---

[15] This pattern was succinctly described by the court below as follows (R. 314):

> For many years Hazeltine has engaged in a program of radio research, as a result of which it has developed many patented inventions. Other patents have been acquired by it through various business arrangements. At the time of this suit, Hazeltine owned, or had the right to grant licenses under, five hundred and more patents and approximately two hundred patent applications, chiefly pertaining to radio and television. As one of the largest licensors in the radio field, it has granted nonexclusive licenses to radio manufacturers, permitting them

monopolize and regiment the radio patent field (cf. *Transparent-Wrap Machine Corp.* v. *Stokes & Smith Co.*, 329 U. S. 637, 646), the package license with its restrictive use provisions and its imposition of royalties regardless of use of its patents would fit in as an integral part of the scheme. It would seem that a full hearing on this question would be appropriate. It can hardly be said, on the record before the Court, that this license agreement is no more than "collateral" to the alleged monopolistic conduct. By the same token, *Bruce's Juices, Inc.* v. *American Can Co.*, 330 U. S. 743, does not support the holding below. That case turned largely on the civil remedies provided in the Robinson-Patman Act, 49 Stat. 1526, 15 U.S.C. 13 *et seq.*, for violation of that Act; it had no relation to, nor did it purport to modify, the unbroken line of authority denying the aid of the courts to patentees who have used their patents in a manner violating the patent or anti-trust laws or contrary to public policy.[16]

---

to use any or all of Hazeltine's patents, in return for a royalty payment of a fixed percentage of gross sales of various types of radio equipment.

[16] *Pope Mfg. Co.* v. *Gormully*, 144 U. S. 224; *Motion Picture Patents Co.* v. *Universal Film Mfg. Co.*, 243 U. S. 502; *Carbice Corp.* v. *American Patents Development Corp.*, 283 U. S. 27; *Leitch Mfg. Co.* v. *Barber Co.*, 302 U. S. 458; *Morton Salt Co.* v. *Suppiger Co.*, 314 U. S. 488; *B. B. Chemical Co.* v. *Ellis*, 314 U. S. 495; *Mercoid Corp.* v. *Mid-Continent Co.*, 320 U. S. 661; *Mercoid Corp.* v. *Honeywell Co.*, 320 U. S. 680. Cf. *Scott Paper Co.* v. *Marcalus Mfg. Co.*, 326 U. S. 249; *Sola Electric Co.* v. *Jefferson Electric Co.*, 317 U. S. 173; *Edward Katzinger Co.* v. *Chicago Metallic Mfg. Co.*, 329 U. S. 394; *MacGregor* v. *Westinghouse Electric & Mfg. Co.*, 329 U. S. 402.

In *Morton Salt Co.* v. *Suppiger Co.*, 314 U. S. 488, in particular, a patentee was barred from suing an asserted infringer, on the ground that the misuse of the patents in license agreements *between the patentee and others* was a complete defense in the infringement suit. The *Morton Salt* case does not depart from the rule that suitors need not lead blameless lives in order to invoke the aid of the courts, but it points out that "additional considerations must be taken into account where maintenance of the suit concerns the public interest as well as the private interests of suitors" (314 U. S. at 493). Cf. *Keystone Driller Co.* v. *Excavator Co.*, 290 U. S. 240, 241-245. *Morton Salt* stands for the principle that a suit based upon rights claimed under patents may not be maintained where the patents have been misused to the disadvantage of the public and other parties. And see cases cited in footnote 16, *supra*, p. 28. An application of that principle here requires determination of the monopoly allegations which the courts below thought it unnecessary to reach, and calls for a full trial of those issues.

IV

The Validity of the Provisions of the License Agreement Restricting Manufacture and Use

As has been discussed in Point I, *supra*, pp. 12-14, the restrictive use provisions of the Hazeltine-Automatic Radio license agreement would clearly be invalid unless somehow protected by the patent

monopoly. Assuming, *arguendo,* that the Hazeltine patents are valid, or that Automatic Radio is estopped to challenge their validity, it becomes necessary to consider whether the patent monopoly legalizes the type of restriction here employed. The court below found the case of *General Talking Pictures Corp. v. Western Electric Co.,* 304 U. S. 175, 305 U. S. 124, controlling on this question. It is our position that the instant case is distinguishable from the *General Talking Pictures* case, but that in any event that case is inconsistent with the main stream of decision—both the cases preceding it, and those which have been decided since—and should be reexamined, at least insofar as it is applicable to the present type of proceeding by a patentee to collect royalties.

A. *The Restrictive Use Notice Here Would Bar Recovery Even Under the Rule of the General Talking Pictures Case*

In the *General Talking Pictures* case, this Court sustained the validity of a license limiting manufacturers of patented radio amplifiers to the non-commercial field. Justices Black and Reed dissented. The petitioner in that case purchased amplifiers, for commercial use, from a licensee, with full knowledge of this restriction, and was held to have infringed the patents covering the amplifiers. The separation between commercial and non-commercial licenses upheld in that case is substantially identical with that in the case at

bar, and the Court did not consider it necessary to pass upon the validity of the restriction or the license notice as applied to a purchaser "in the ordinary channels of trade." But in that case the restrictive use notices were required to be attached to amplifiers embodying the patented devices only. Here, the notices are in terms required to be attached to all apparatus of prescribed categories (*supra*, pp. 4-5), whether or not such apparatus embodies any of Hazeltine's patents. The notices are required to include the numbers of all patents which in Hazeltine's opinion are involved in apparatus "of the types licensed hereunder manufactured by one or more licensees of Licensor" (R. 14). Thus, the patent license-notice may become the vehicle for an attempt illegally to restrict the use of unpatented articles in the hands of the public.[17] We think this provision constitutes a misuse of patents which should render the license agreement unenforceable.

The potential deception and compulsion of the public which this license agreement makes possible is plainly an unlawful extension of the patent monopoly. It is no answer to say, as did the District Court, that "If the restriction is invalid, then the article may go to the purchaser free of the

[17] Even if apparatus sold by petitioner contains patented parts, the attempt to control use of the entire apparatus may amount to an attempt to expand the patent monopoly. Cf. *United States* v. *General Electric Co.*, 80 F. Supp. 989, 1005 (S.D. N.Y.); *United States* v. *General Electric Co.*, 82 F. Supp. 753, 814-815 (D.N.J.).

restriction, but the contract between licensor and licensee is not affected" (R. 302). This view fails to take into consideration the fact that every prospective purchaser is given warning by the required notice that he must not use the article in the excluded field. Even assuming that the restriction is unenforceable, it is a threat to a prospective purchaser not to do acts which the public has a right to do. See *Scott Paper Co.* v. *Marcalus Mfg. Co.*, 326 U. S. 249. And it is a violation of law to place the marking "patent" on unpatented articles (which, as we have pointed out, would also be covered by the license-notice requirement here) for the purpose of deceiving the public. R. S. 4901, 35 U.S.C. 50. It hardly seems appropriate to await a challenge of the limitation by a member of the public—which in fact may never occur—when the license agreement is now before the courts for enforcement. The practical difficulty for a purchaser of a radio to determine whether each of a number of patents listed in a notice is embodied in the machine, and is valid, would be enough to discourage any tendency to risk disregard of the use notices.

It is true that this provision, like other provisions of the license agreement, has not been complied with by Automatic Radio, but non-compliance obviously does not cure inherent illegality. (See footnote 5, *supra*, p. 13.) The District Court specifically adjudged the agreement valid (R. 293), and although the opinion of the Court of Appeals

can be construed as reserving the question of legality of the restrictive use notice provision (R. 318), that court has nevertheless affirmed the judgment of the District Court upholding the entire agreement. The vice of this holding is not cured by the failure of the District Court specifically to enjoin compliance with the restrictive notice provision; the upholding of the agreement as a whole apparently amounts to a declaration that Automatic Radio is under a duty to affix the notices. And, in any case, the making of an agreement of this character is a sufficiently serious misuse of the patents to warrant barring the respondent from recovery. *Morton Salt Co.* v. *Suppiger Co.*, 314 U. S. 488; *Mercoid Corp.* v. *Mid-Continent Investment Co.*, 320 U. S. 661. Compare *Edward Katzinger Co.* v. *Chicago Metallic Mfg. Co.*, 329 U. S. 394; *MacGregor* v. *Westinghouse Electric & Mfg. Co.*, 329 U. S. 402.

B. *The Rule of the General Talking Pictures Case Should Be Reexamined*

In the *General Talking Pictures* case, the Court was presented with two principal issues, both concerning restrictions placed by a patentee on the use of his patent. The first question, which the Court decided, was whether a patentee may legally restrict his licensee to a particular field of manufacture. The Court held that he may. The second question, which the Court did not determine, was whether a purchaser in the ordinary channels of

trade is bound by use restrictions imposed by the patentee. With respect to this latter question the Court held that no decision was required. We think both of these holdings should be reexamined.

1. *Division of Fields Among Licensees*

In three cases decided by this Court since the *General Talking Pictures* case, it has been held that it is a misuse of patents or copyrights to use them as vehicles for restraint of competition among multiple licensees. *United States* v. *Paramount Pictures*, 334 U. S. 131, 144; *United States* v. *United States Gypsum Co.*, 333 U. S. 364, 389, 393, 401; *United States* v. *Line Material Co.*, 333 U. S. 287, 312. Thus, whether or not division of fields of manufacture by a patentee is *per se* illegal, it is unlawful when it effects restraints or regulations of competition among numerous licensees. In the instant case, we think that Automatic Radio should be allowed to demonstrate any restraint upon competition which may flow from Hazeltine's system of licensing, and to contest Hazeltine's assertions (Br. in Opp., p. 25) that licenses under all its patents are readily available to all parties with respect to all classes of apparatus on fair terms, and that its licensing practices in this regard do not in fact restrain competition.

In the *General Talking Pictures* case, the Court held, however, that a division of fields similar to that here involved is lawful, regardless of its

effect upon competition. The cases cited by the Court (305 U. S., at 127) for this holding (*Mitchell v. Hawley*, 16 Wall. 544; *Rubber Company v. Goodyear*, 9 Wall. 788; and *Gamewell Fire-Alarm Telegraph Co. v. Brooklyn*, 15 Fed. 255 (C.C.E.D. N.Y.)) do not appear to us to sustain the proposition.

In the case of *Mitchell* v. *Hawley*, the licensee was given the exclusive right to make and use patented hat felting machines and to license others to use the same for the life of the original patent. The right to vend was not given. The licensee made four machines and sold them with the "right to run" for the duration of the original term of the patent, the date being specified. Under these circumstances, the Court held that, since the licensee had no right to sell the machines but only the right to license their use, the purchaser acquired no right to use the machines under an extension of the patent.[18] Whatever view may be taken now as to the correctness of this decision with respect to the validity of a license which only covers the right to make and use, but not to sell, the patented article, the instant case is clearly different, since here the right to sell was granted to and was exercised by the licensee. Whether or not a patentee may withhold

[18] Compare the holdings that one who purchases a patented article from a seller with power to vend may use the article after the life of the original patent and during an extension period. *Bloomer* v. *McQuewan*, 14 How. 539, 549-50; *Chaffee* v. *Boston Belting Co.*, 22 How. 217, 223; *Bloomer* v. *Millinger*, 1 Wall. 340, 351.

from his licensee the right to sell altogether, it is clear that if he permits sale at all, he cannot limit such sale to use in certain fields if the article is perfectly usable in other fields as well.

The *Goodyear* case upheld a restriction that the licensee use the patent "at his own establishment." Whether or not this is the law at the present time, the rule is clearly distinguishable from the field restriction in the instant case. The patent statute expressly recognizes geographical limitations (R.S. 4898, 35 U.S.C. 47), and this may have influenced the Court's decision in the *Goodyear* case.

The *Gamewell* case involved a license which included a restriction that the patented invention be used only for fire alarm devices. The validity of the restriction was not raised and was not decided. The only issue was whether such a limited licensee had a sufficient interest in the patent to sue in his own name. The Court held that he did not. Moreover, the type of restriction involved in the *Gamewell* case is distinguishable from that in the case at hand. In the former case, there was a "dividing up" of a patent in the sense of limiting the licensee's use of the patent to certain types of articles—fire alarm devices. But in that situation, unlike the one presented here, there was no impairment of utility, no restraint upon use by the public, and no remote control of the article in the hands of purchasers. In the instant case, the utility of the article is impaired since, although it is

capable of various uses, purchasers are deprived of many of these uses.

In all of the cases cited in the *General Talking Pictures* opinions it appears that no one but the patentee was advantaged by the restriction and that it was imposed for his benefit. The restriction in the instant case certainly does not come within this category, for Hazeltine is not itself a manufacturer. Accordingly, it seems that the restriction must have been primarily imposed upon the "Home" licensees for the benefit of the "Commercial" licensees, and *vice versa*. *Prima facie*, this appears improperly to restrain competition among the licensees.

2. *The Legality of Restrictions Upon the Use of Patented Articles by Purchasers*

The *General Talking Pictures* case was considered by the Court in the framework of the rights of a patentee against a contributory infringer who had knowingly participated in infringement by a licensee. By expressly declining to consider the validity of the license-notice restrictions on use by purchasers the Court unduly narrowed, we believe, the scope of inquiry which should be pursued when a patentee seeks aid of the courts to enforce patent rights.

The doctrine that a court of equity will withhold its aid from a patentee who is misusing his patents was implicit in several cases prior to the *General*

Talking Pictures case (cf. *Motion Picture Patents Co.* v. *Universal Film Mfg. Co.*, 243 U.S. 502; *Carbice Corp.* v. *American Patents Development Corp.*, 283 U.S. 27; *Leitch Mfg. Co.* v. *Barber Co.*, 302 U.S. 458), but that doctrine was only fully enunciated and developed in later opinions (*Morton Salt Co.* v. *Suppiger Co.*, 314 U.S. 488; *B. B. Chemical Co.* v. *Ellis*, 314 U.S. 495; *Mercoid Corp.* v. *Mid-Continent Investment Co.*, 320 U.S. 661). Had the misuse doctrine been developed at the time of the *General Talking Pictures* case to the extent which it is today, we think the Court would have been impelled to consider the legality of the use restrictions upon purchasers in the ordinary channels of trade. In any event, in the present case, where the validity of a patent license agreement is directly in issue, the Court is inescapably faced with the question of the legality of the attempted use restrictions embodied in that agreement.[19] For the reasons cogently advanced in the dissenting opinions in the *General Talking Pictures* case (304 U.S. at 183; 305 U.S. at 128), we think that the attempt to restrict the use of patented articles after they have been sold involves an extension of the patent monopoly which is against the public interest and is unwarranted.

[19] In *General Talking Pictures*, the Court declined to consider the legality of the use restriction because it held that the devices there involved "were not manufactured or sold 'under the patent[s]' and did not 'pass into the hands of a purchaser in the ordinary channels of trade.'" 305 U. S. at 125. In contrast, Hazeltine's suit—as its complaint plainly shows (R. 3)—assumes and insists that Automatic Radio's devices were manufactured and sold under the license agreement.

by prior authority. And subsequent decisions stressing the need to contain the patent monopoly within its proper scope (*supra*, pp. 2, 17, 19-20, 34) confirm this view.

As pointed out in the dissenting opinion on rehearing (305 U.S. 131), the fact that the purchaser had notice of the restriction upon use should not affect the established rule that once a patent article is sold, it passes beyond the scope of the patent monopoly.[20] It is obvious that if a patentee's monopoly ends with sale of a patented article, that monopoly cannot be enlarged by a purchaser's knowledge of the patentee's desires as to use of the article.

To regard the legality of the attempted use restriction upon purchasers as extraneous to the legality of the license agreement is to ignore the public interest in the license contract. If a patentee may not lawfully restrict the use of patented articles after they are once sold, he should not be able to intimidate the public by claiming to have that power. An unlawful restriction may well be effective in inducing compliance by the great majority of the public, as well as by most licensees; indeed, the legality of the restriction may never be put to a judicial test either by a member of the public or by a licensee. It is clearly in the public

[20] Cf. *Hobbie* v. *Jennison*, 149 U. S. 355, where the Court held that a purchaser was not bound by a territorial limitation which the patentee had imposed upon his licensee, although the purchaser had notice of the limitation. See also fn. 18, *supra*, p. 35.

interest to permit and encourage a non-compliant licensee, who is required to place the restrictive notices on apparatus sold by him, to challenge the validity of this requirement and of the entire agreement, even though he has not performed his contract in this respect. See *supra*, pp. 14-18, 28-29, 32-3.[21] As the Court said in *Scott Paper Co. v. Marcalus Mfg. Co.*, 326 U.S. 249, 257: "The interest in private good faith is not a universal touchstone which can be made the means of sacrificing a public interest secured by an appropriate exercise of the legislative power."

CONCLUSION

For the foregoing reasons, the judgment should be reversed.

Respectfully submitted,

PHILIP B. PERLMAN,
Solicitor General.
HERBERT A. BERGSON,
Assistant Attorney General.
JOHN C. STEDMAN,
WILBUR L. FUGATE,
J. ROGER WOLLENBERG,
Special Assistants to the Attorney General.

MARCH 1950.

[21] In the instant case, moreover, the District Court, as pointed out above (*supra*, pp. 7, 32), has upheld the entire agreement, and has thus given fresh vitality to the license-notice provision which, if we are right, is illegal.

☆ U. S. GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE 1950

LIBRARY
SUPREME COURT U S

MOTION FILED MAR-15 1950

IN THE

Supreme Court of the United States

OCTOBER TERM, 1949

No. 455

AUTOMATIC RADIO MANUFACTURING COMPANY, INC.,

Petitioner,

against

HAZELTINE RESEARCH, INC.,

Respondent.

ON WRIT OF CERTIORARI TO THE UNITED STATES COURT OF APPEALS FOR THE FIRST CIRCUIT

MOTION ON BEHALF OF EDWIN H. ARMSTRONG FOR LEAVE TO FILE A BRIEF AS *AMICUS CURIAE* AND BRIEF

ALFRED MCCORMACK,
Attorney for Edwin H. Armstrong as Amicus Curiae.

WALTON H. HAMILTON,
Of Counsel.

INDEX

PAGE

MOTION ON BEHALF OF EDWIN H. ARMSTRONG FOR LEAVE TO FILE A BRIEF AS AMICUS CURIAE..... 1

BRIEF FOR EDWIN H. ARMSTRONG AS AMICUS CURIAE 5

POINT I—The Court Should Reject the Contention of the Solicitor General That a License to Manufacture for Particular Uses, Either Alone or When Coupled With a Notice of the Type Required by the Respondent, Is Unlawful..... 10

POINT II—The Solicitor General's Contention That the Measurement of Royalties on a Basis Other Than the Actual Use of the Licensed Patents Constitutes a Toll on Commerce Beyond the Scope of Patents Should Be Rejected..... 22

POINT III—The Contention That the Petitioner Should Be Permitted to Prove Invalidity of the Patents as a Defense to This Action Should Be Rejected..... 30

TABLE OF CASES CITED

Appleton Toy & Furniture Co. v. *Lehman Co.*, 165 F. (2d) 801, 803..... 31, 32

DeForest Radio Co. v. *General Electric Co.*, 283 U. S. 664..... 33

Drackett Chemical Co. v. *Chamberlain Co.*, 63 F. (2d) 853, 855..... 31

PAGE

General Talking Pictures Co. v. *Western Electric Co.*, 304 U. S. 175, 305 U. S. 124 . . . . . 2, 11, 12, 22, 35, 37

Hartford Empire v. *United States*, 323 U. S. 386 11

Katzinger Co. v. *Chicago Mfg. Co.*, 329 U. S. 394 30

MacGregor v. *Westinghouse Co.*, 329 U. S. 402 30

Marconi Wireless Co. v. *United States*, 320 U. S. 1 . . . 33

Mitchell v. *Hazeley*, 16 Wall. 544 21

Nachman Spring-Filled Corporation v. *Kay Mfg. Co.*, 139 F. (2d) 781 . . . . . 31, 36

Radio Corporation v. *Radio Engineering Laboratories, Inc.*, 293 U. S. 1 34

Rubber Company v. *Goodyear*, 9 Wall. 788, 799-800 . . 21

Sola Electric Co. v. *Jefferson Co.*, 317 U. S. 173 . . . 30, 36

United States v. *U. S. Gypsum Co.*, 333 U. S. 364 . . . 24, 30

IN THE

Supreme Court of the United States

OCTOBER TERM, 1949

No. 455

AUTOMATIC RADIO MANUFACTURING COMPANY, INC.,
Petitioner,

against

HAZELTINE RESEARCH, INC.,
Respondent.

MOTION ON BEHALF OF EDWIN H. ARMSTRONG FOR LEAVE TO FILE A BRIEF AS *AMICUS CURIAE*

To the Honorable, The Chief Justice of the United States and the Associate Justices of the Supreme Court of the United States:

Now comes Alfred McCormack, attorney for Edwin H. Armstrong, and respectfully moves this Court, pursuant to Rule 27, paragraph 9, of the Rules of this Court, for leave to file the accompanying brief in this case *amicus curiae*. The consent of the attorney for the respondent herein to the filing of this brief has been obtained and filed with the Clerk of the Court. The consent of the attorney for the petitioner was requested but was refused. The interest of

Edwin H. Armstrong and his reasons for asking for leave to file a brief *amicus curiae* are set forth below.

The Solicitor General, as *amicus curiae*, has filed in this case a brief in support of the petition for certiorari, in which he has asked this Court to overrule *General Talking Pictures Co.* v. *Western Electric Co.*, 304 U. S. 175, 305 U. S. 124, and to adopt a number of rules of thumb in connection with patent licenses.

Dr. Edwin H. Armstrong, Professor of Electrical Engineering at Columbia University, is an inventor and patentee in the field of radio. In 1940, upon the 150th anniversary of the patent system, he was one of the 19 living Americans who were singled out as having made great contributions of an inventive character to American life. Among the many awards that have been made to him for his achievements is the Medal of Merit, for his work for the Armed Forces during the recent war. He is not, and never has been, engaged in manufacturing or selling goods and has never been employed by any business corporation. He is perhaps the outstanding example in this country of the "independent" inventor.

Dr. Armstrong desires that the accompanying brief be filed on his behalf in order that the Court may have before it the point of view of the inventor and independent patentee on the issues framed by the Solicitor General, because the decision of this case might have far-reaching implications for them. As one who has granted many patent licenses and derives from them the revenues that enable him to maintain a research laboratory and experimental radio stations, Dr. Armstrong has a vital interest in those issues. As one who has had almost 40 years of experience with

inventions and with the patent system, Dr. Armstrong is in a position to understand the problems and express the viewpoint of the individual inventor. He is concerned with the protection of inventors and the furtherance of invention in aid of the constitutional and statutory purpose of the patent laws—to promote science and the useful arts.

The considerations of public policy that attach to that purpose are important at any time. They are especially important at the present time, Dr. Armstrong believes, because the future of the nation and even its survival may depend upon its continuing progress in science and the useful arts.

Respectfully submitted,

ALFRED MCCORMACK,
Attorney for Edwin H. Armstrong.

WALTON H. HAMILTON,
Of Counsel.

March 14, 1950.

IN THE

Supreme Court of the United States

OCTOBER TERM, 1949

No. 455

AUTOMATIC RADIO MANUFACTURING COMPANY, INC.,
Petitioner,
against
HAZELTINE RESEARCH, INC.,
Respondent.

BRIEF FOR EDWIN H. ARMSTRONG AS *AMICUS CURIAE*

Edwin H. Armstrong, on whose behalf this brief is submitted, is an electrical engineer whose life has been devoted to research and invention in the field of radio communication. A member of the faculty of Columbia University as a Professor of Electrical Engineering, he has received world-wide recognition for having made a number of fundamental contributions of an inventive character in the radio field. He has never been engaged in any manufacturing business and has never been employed by any corporation or other business organization. He has never attempted by means of his inventions to obtain control over any field of manufacture, sale or use of devices covered by his patents, but has derived revenues from his numerous

inventions by selling his patents or granting licenses under them.

Professor Armstrong is chiefly known to the public at present as the inventor of "FM", the system of radio communication which solved the "insoluble" problem of static and noise disturbances in radio and opened up a great many new uses for radio communication.

Finding that the large companies in the radio industry were in no hurry to put his FM inventions into public use, Dr. Armstrong pioneered the field himself. He demonstrated the effectiveness of his system by building a high-powered broadcasting station and providing receivers at his own expense with which it could be tested. Then, having publicly proved the capabilities of his system, he began to grant licenses to companies that were willing to go forward in the FM field. All his licenses are non-exclusive; and any applicant can obtain a license in any field, or in any number of fields, in which he desires to operate.

Professor Armstrong is not concerned with the outcome of this case, insofar as the fortunes of the respective parties may be affected. But he is deeply concerned with the rights of inventors and patentees, which he believes will be affected seriously and adversely if, in deciding the case, the Court should accept the viewpoint expressed in the Memorandum of the Solicitor General in support of the petition for certiorari or adopt any of the rules of thumb of "*per se* misuse" which he urges.

In its decisions over the last few years, this Court has shown an overwhelming concern with the danger that manufacturers and other holders of large portfolios of patents may employ them to restrain trade or obtain monopolies be-

yond the proper scope of those patents. The Court's concern with that danger has resulted in a continually evolving doctrine of "misuse", which, however salutary its results in the few cases which have reached this Court, has tended to become a "rule of thumb" in the lower courts, and for the patent bar, to be applied equally where the mischief which this Court has struck at exists and where it does not exist.

In its decisions over the last few years, this Court has frequently emphasized the principle that the dominant interest in the patent system is the public interest. But the cases in which the Court has reiterated that principle have been, for the most part, cases in which the public interest was served only negatively—by the invalidation of patents or prevention of their enforcement. Only infrequently has this Court had the opportunity to consider, and give effect to, the affirmative aspect of the public interest which is the objective of the patent law, namely, the promotion of science and the useful arts.

Many thoughtful citizens, mindful of the considerations of public interest that are involved in the progress of science and the useful arts, have become deeply concerned in recent years about the effectiveness of the patent system in encouraging invention. Dr. Vannevar Bush, for instance, in his recent book "Modern Arms and Free Men", has considered it necessary to plead for the inventor. He has urged (p. 230):

> "Above all we need to return to the conviction that he who makes two blades of grass grow where one grew before, who creates a new product or service that the public desires, who is creating worthwhile things that are genuinely new, and following the laws

of the land and of decency as he does so, is a public benefactor. We need also the conviction that the best way to encourage him is to unwind the red tape from about his neck and allow him to keep a reasonable fraction of his gains."

Dr. Armstrong has been engaged in the making of inventions for nearly 40 years. He has studied the lives and work of great inventors and has closely observed the roles of inventors and inventions in peace and war. He is convinced that invention has played a determinative role in the industrial progress and the social progress of the people of the United States and that the encouragement of invention for the future is today a matter of the greatest public interest, most especially from the standpoint of national defense and security. He is well qualified to speak on that subject, since all his time during two world wars, as well as much of his time before and since the recent war, has been devoted to inventive activities in aid of the national defense.

Professor Armstrong makes the point that, in order to have inventions, there must be inventors; and if the making of inventions is to be encouraged, there must be a patent system that reasonably protects inventors' rights. He believes that the lot of inventors has been made more difficult by the trends of judicial decisions in the patent law over the last 20 years, that the sometimes adverse attitude of the Federal courts toward patents, the development of unrealistic and over-technical rules about disclosures and claims, the creation of exceptions to patentability not contemplated by the Constitution or the patent law as framed and re-enacted by Congress from time to time, the restrictions which inventors have been

forced to accept for fear of being held guilty of "misuse", and the impairment and partial (if not almost complete) destruction of the time-honored and frequently essential protection of contributory infringement—have tended to weaken the position of the individual inventor and the small-business patent holder as compared with their larger competitors, thus bringing about a result quite opposite to that which the courts have sought to produce.

A more liberal attitude toward inventions and inventors is called for if the constitutional purpose of the patent law, to promote the progress of science and the useful arts, is to be given effect. It is Dr. Armstrong's conviction that the constitutional purpose has been lost sight of in some of the decisions of the courts over the past 20 years. He adds his plea for a return to first principles of the patent law to that of Dr. Vannévar Bush, quoted above. He urges particularly that the inventor and patentee be allowed a fair degree of freedom to license his patents upon terms suited to the business situations *in which he finds* himself.

We shall attempt to show in this brief, by reference to specific situations that have confronted patentees, how seriously their freedom would be restricted and their rights impaired if this Court were to adopt the niggardly attitude toward patent rights which the Solicitor General takes or to accept any of the rules of thumb which he advocates.

POINT I

THE COURT SHOULD REJECT THE CONTENTION OF THE SOLICITOR GENERAL THAT A LICENSE TO MANUFACTURE FOR PARTICULAR USES, EITHER ALONE OR WHEN COUPLED WITH A NOTICE OF THE TYPE REQUIRED BY THE RESPONDENT, IS UNLAWFUL.

In his Memorandum in support of the petition for certiorari, the Solicitor General has condemned both licenses to manufacture for limited fields of use and the requirement found in many of such licenses that the licensee must affix a notice relating to the scope of his license. His attack is twofold:

(1) There is, first, a broad attack on all "limited use" licenses under patents. The thesis seems to be that, if a patent owner gives a manufacturer a license to invade one field of use of the patented product, he must go on and license all fields; that nothing less than a complete grant suffices, because "the necessary effect would seem to be that competitors obtaining licenses in different fields would thereby obtain immunity from competition in the particular field covered by their license." (p. 10).

We do not stop to elaborate the point that every new field of use opened up by a patent license increases competition, and *pro tanto* waives the patent monopoly. What we particularly point out is that the Solicitor General's argument is made without reference to the facts of the case. The record shows that the respondent is in the business of granting patent licenses to anybody and everybody who wants to use or obtain the right to use its patents in the fields where they do business, or may want to do business; so that the

element of protecting licensees from competition by division of fields is obviously not present in the case.

The Solicitor General is confusing "restricted use" with "exclusive grant". He is not talking about the present case, but about one where the licensor is in control of an industry and has the power to subdivide patent rights into fields that are not only limited but exclusive. *Cf. Hartford Empire* v. *United States*, 323 U. S. 386.

(2) The second attack, a more narrow one, is directed at this Court's two decisions in *General Talking Pictures Co.* v. *Western Electric Co.*, 304 U. S. 175; 305 U. S. 124. It is said that the limited license, plus the requirement of affixing a notice of the limited license, restrains trade because "if the licensee violates the contract and sells to a purchaser for a restricted use, the purchaser may be subject to a suit for infringement under the *General Talking Pictures* case" and, under that case, "apparently any purchaser, no matter how remote, would be liable for infringement as long as he had notice of the restriction and every purchaser would have notice by virtue of the required 'License Notice' forbidding commercial use stamped on the article. The restriction and notice together thus clearly extend the patentee's control to a purchaser in the ordinary channels of trade" (p. 8).

Such an interpretation of the *General Talking Pictures* case is not justified either by the holding of the case or by anything said in the opinions. In the *General Talking Pictures* case, which was a real controversy over the effect of a limited license, this Court decided only that a commercial company, intending to use patented apparatus for a commercial use, was guilty of participating in an infringe-

ment when—instead of getting the apparatus from a company licensed to furnish it for commercial use—it chose to do business with a manufacturer who, to its knowledge, had taken a license to manufacture and sell for only non-commercial uses. That is all the Court decided. It did not decide that "any purchaser, no matter how remote, would be liable for infringement", nor did it decide that "the patentee's control" extended "to a purchaser in the ordinary channels of trade".

On the contrary, Mr. Justice Black in his dissent having invoked the rule of property that the owner of a chattel purchased in the ordinary channels of trade may do with it what he pleases, the majority of the Court found that rule inapplicable on the ground that the apparatus involved in the *General Talking Pictures* case had never got into the channels of trade; that an act of infringement had occurred when the defendant made the purchase.

We can conceive of a variety of situations in which the rule of patent law upon which the *General Talking Pictures* case was decided might come into conflict with the rule of property invoked by Mr. Justice Black. To the extent that such conflicts come before the courts, a line must be drawn which gives proper effect to the opposing considerations of public policy. But the Solicitor General wants this Court to give up trying to resolve such conflicts intelligently from case to case, in the light of the facts, by treating "as a misuse of the patents *ab initio*" the combining of a limited use license with a notice designed to give it effect, on the ground that "the restrictions imposed upon ordinary purchasers will be effective in practice if the purchaser is faced with expensive litigation if he disregards the restriction" (p. 9).

That argument is merely an assertion, not based on anything in the record. There is nothing to show that any purchaser of petitioner's radio sets ever wanted them for any use other than "use in homes, for educational purposes and for private, non-commercial use". There is nothing to show, in fact, that they were capable of such other use.* Moreover, if they were capable of such a use, there is nothing to show that purchasers have not put them to that use, especially since, according to the petitioner's answer (par. 9), it made a practice of *not* affixing the license notice to its sets.

Thus the Solicitor General is asking this Court to speculate on the possible effects of a limited license notice—and a non-existent one at that—and, on the basis of such speculation, to decide a question upon which on the facts there is no controversy between the parties.

Professor Armstrong does not require limited use license notices in any of his license agreements. He can, however, conceive of a situation in which such a notice would be necessary in order to make a limited use license effective and promote the wide use of a patented invention in different fields. That point may be illustrated by some of the practical examples of limited licenses that we will presently mention.

Limited use licenses, such as that employed by the respondent, ought not to be condemned merely because they are antiquated and inaptly worded, so that their purpose appears to be much broader than it actually is—and broader than any legal effect that they could have—because in the practical world the inaptly broad wording does no harm.

*We believe that this Court might well take judicial notice of the fact that home receiving sets are built to receive the radio frequencies assigned to broadcasting and are *totally useless* on the wave lengths assigned to the commercial services.

We doubt if any informed person today believes, or has believed at any time in recent years, that a patentee can limit the use of a device by one who has purchased it merely by putting a limited use license notice on it. And certainly nobody thinks that such a notice prevents a member of the public who buys a home receiving set from using it for whatever purpose pleases him. Actually, it is not adapted to any purpose except to receive broadcast programs. No matter how good a set it may be, it would have to be redesigned and rebuilt, so as to respond to widely different radio frequencies, before it could be used in commercial communication.

But the notice is not merely silly, since it has two practical purposes, neither of which has any implication adverse to the public interest, (a) to deter manufacturers, who have sought and obtained a license to manufacture apparatus suitable for non-commercial purposes, from making and selling entirely different apparatus without obtaining an appropriate license, under the pretense that the apparatus is intended for non-commercial use, and (b) to deter the commercial user from inducing a broadcast receiver manufacturer to make commercial apparatus for him without obtaining an appropriate license.

We venture to submit to the Court a number of illustrations of business situations in which limited licenses are essential to the protection of patentees and the promotion of the widest use of inventions.

In the fall of 1914, shortly before issuance of Professor Armstrong's patent on the regenerative circuit, the sole existing embodiment of his invention was a radio receiving apparatus in the laboratory at Columbia University where he worked. World War I had broken out, cable connections with Germany had been cut, and there was only one

means of rapid communication from Germany to the United States—radio telegraph messages from the Telefunken Company's transmitting station at Nauen to the Sayville, Long Island, receiving station of Telefunken's American affiliate, the Atlantic Communications Company. The Sayville station, however, had been unable to develop receiving equipment that would detect the Nauen signals under any but the most favorable radio conditions; and the Nauen-Sayville link proved to be a failure.

In the laboratory at Columbia University, however, there was the one piece of apparatus in the United States by which the Nauen signals could be received without difficulty. Consequently, Professor Armstrong's hand-built receiving set was moved to Sayville; and there, until a duplicate could be built, it served as the sole means of fast communication from Germany to the United States at a critical time. For the rental of his set and the right to make and use additional sets at the Sayville station, the Atlantic Communications Company paid Armstrong a monthly sum beginning at $100 and finally increasing to $250—the first royalties he ever collected under a patent. At such a price the Atlantic Communications Company bought itself out of total failure and certain bankruptcy.

Now it happened that, in addition to the commercial wireless telegraph companies, there was at the time another market for radio receiving sets employing the regenerative circuit—the wireless amateurs or "hams", who communicated among themselves and listened to the commercial stations, for their own amusement and education. Several companies were manufacturing amateur apparatus, and those, or some of them, Professor Armstrong licensed under his regenerative patent. As the "hams" were not engaged in the radio business and were not deriving profits from the

use of the invention, only a small royalty on sets sold to them could be justified.

Let us suppose that the licenses to the manufacturers, "for amateur use only", had antedated the arrangement with the Atlantic Communications Company and that that company, instead of obtaining a license from Armstrong, had gone to one of the manufacturers of amateur sets and induced it to go beyond its license by selling a set for commercial purposes, and, with the apparatus so purchased, had saved itself from its desperate plight. Would anyone think it right and proper that the patentee, holding a patent on one of the great inventions of modern times, should have been without a remedy, or that his remedy should lie only against the little manufacturer and not against the big customer who had induced the infringement?

If it were the law that the patentee in such a situation would be without an adequate remedy, his course would be clearly indicated. He would either confine himself to licensing the commercial companies or would insist on royalties at the commercial rates on non-commercial uses. Such a rule would be a great deterrent to the licensing of patents.

During the recent war, Professor Armstrong granted royalty-free licenses under his patents for FM communication apparatus for the Army, the Navy and other agencies engaged in war activities, and about a quarter of a billion dollars worth of such apparatus was sold to the Government without any royalty charge. Much of the equipment was capable of use for non-military purposes, such as police communication, railroad switching-yard operations, bus line signaling, inter-car communication on freight trains, taxicab dispatching and a variety of other uses.

Let us suppose that a wholesale supplier engaged in furnishing apparatus to the Government had purchased military apparatus from a manufacturer and, instead of selling it to the Government, had been induced by some railroad, bus line or taxicab company to sell the apparatus to it for non-military purposes. Would it be right and proper that the patentee should be without a remedy against such an intentional infringer, on the ground that the restriction of his free license to military uses was invalid?

Armstrong has made a practice of issuing royalty-free licenses for FM broadcast transmitters to educational and religious organizations, so that manufacturers may build such apparatus for those institutions without being concerned about the Armstrong patents. Should it be held, as the Solicitor General's argument seems to imply, that a restriction to charitable uses is invalid? Or should a restricted use notice, limiting the royalty-free use to the purposes of the educational or charitable organization, be held void, so that anybody who could get a chartered educational institution to buy a transmitter for him could infringe the patents at will?

The Solicitor General apparently does not perceive any reason for subdividing manufacturing rights among different companies except to prevent competition among them. Actually, limited manufacturing licenses in ordinary life conform to the natural divisions of business in a highly industrialized economy. The patentee does not create such divisions; he finds them in existence and must take them into account in his licensing program.* Professor Arm-

* At least one large corporation, which is licensed under a great many patents, makes a practice of taking licenses that are limited to the precise field in which it desires to do business, with a clause that limits its admission of validity of the patents to that precise field.

strong, for example, has four principal types of licensees under his FM patents, and with each type he has a different form of license agreement and collects royalties on a different basis: (1) manufacturers of radio broadcast receivers; (2) users of radio broadcast transmitters; (3) manufacturers of two-way communication apparatus and other commercial apparatus; and (4) companies engaged in public service communication for tolls.

The existence of four types of license agreements and four methods of computing royalties is due to the different kinds of business that the four types represent.

The radio broadcast receiving set manufacturers, who are very numerous, are engaged in mass production with unskilled or semi-skilled labor, employing assembly line techniques. Very few of them make any other type of radio apparatus; and when they do, as in the case of the General Electric Company or the Westinghouse Electric Corporation, they hold more than one kind of license agreement from Armstrong.

The licenses of the broadcast receiving set manufacturers do not grant rights beyond the field of the ordinary non-commercial receiver. The formula for computing royalties is quite complicated, because it is especially adapted to the peculiarities of the business. It is a percentage of the manufacturer's selling price after a variety of deductions—each deduction having been worked out by negotiations with one or another licensee for the purpose of producing a royalty base that would best equalize the economic burden of the royalties among licensees doing business in different price classes of apparatus or employing different methods of distributing their products.

Because the volume of business is large and price competition in the industry very keen, and because the ultimate

consumer does not derive revenue from the use of the patented articles, the royalty rate is low—2½ percent of the royalty base, which amounts to less than ½ of 1 percent of what the public pays for the licensed radio sets.

The users of radio broadcast transmitters are the commercial broadcasters and others maintaining broadcasting stations. One of the most important reasons for licensing them directly is to make possible an extremely simple method of computing royalties—a sliding scale in terms of dollars, according to the operating power of the station. It is the operating power of a station that determines how wide a geographical area the broadcaster can serve, and thus is a major factor in determining the amount of advertising revenue that he can derive. If, after taking a license and erecting the station, the owner increases the operating power, he pays an additional sum as royalty; and he does the same thing on any further increase of power. Here again the royalty arrangement, which came about through negotiations with broadcasters who were going to erect stations, is the one that has been found best adapted to the particular business situation and is considered fairest by those concerned.

Manufacturers of two-way communication apparatus and other commercial apparatus are an entirely different group from the broadcast receiver manufacturers, though there are some duplications between them; and the character of their business is quite different. The apparatus must be engineered and designed to meet the special requirements of particular customers, and must perform according to their specifications. It is a "tailor-made" business, involving a high quality of engineering and skilled labor. The royalty rate is higher than on broadcast receivers, and the computation of the royalty base is entirely different. The

royalty arrangements were arrived at from time to time in negotiations with the companies engaged in the commercial field, and are suited to the requirements of the particular business.

Professor Armstrong has licensed the leading telegraphic communications company to employ his patents in radio communication for tolls, on a royalty basis entirely different from that employed in other situations—a sliding-scale charge based on the mileage of the company's commercial radio circuits and the number of channels per circuit, plus an annual charge for each terminal equipment in use. There were a number of business reasons for this unusual method of computing royalties. One was that the licensee desired to base the royalty payments upon the actual use of radio circuits in its business from time to time, and to spread the payments over a period of years. Another was that the licensee was going to make use of a very important patent, not having application at the time to the business of any other licensee, the use of which was expected to contribute to a substantial reduction of the licensee's operating costs. Again the royalty arrangement was that which both parties considered best suited to the particular business situation.

Under the theories that the Solicitor General would have this Court accept, such a carefully worked out licensing system, adjusted to the needs of the several businesses involved and providing royalties on the basis that is fairest in each particular type of case, would be impossible. For such a system of licensing must rest upon the availability to the licensor of legal remedies which enable him to confine each licensee to the field in which he has chosen to take a license. In a practical world, that requires a remedy against a third party who induces the infringement, as well as

against the licensee, because (a) where licensees are numerous the third party infringer, if commercially strong, can harass the patentee by corrupting one after another of the licensed companies, and (b) there are many cases in which only the third party infringer, who is deriving commercial revenues from the use of the patents, could respond adequately in damages; and, of course, if the third party were not amenable to the injunctive process, he could go on procuring infringements of the patents at will.

The Solicitor General's arguments overlook the importance of limited licenses in the business world and their usefulness in promoting the wide use of patents. Many inventions have a number of potential uses, sometimes in widely different fields. A business concern developing or acquiring such an invention may be able to employ its patent for only one of the potential uses. It may not have the skill or capital to go into other lines of business, or for some other reason it may not want to do so. In such a situation it is in the public interest that the patent should be put to use in other fields by the granting of licenses to companies operating in those fields. Unless, however, licenses to manufacture for particular uses are effective, a patentee in that situation can enjoy the benefits of its patent monopoly in its own business only by refusing to grant licenses in other fields. A rule requiring that result would hinder industrial progress and be contrary to the public interest.

The Solicitor General's broad attack on limited manufacturing licenses would, if successful, overrule an unbroken line of decisions of this Court extending back at least 90 years. *Rubber Company* v. *Goodyear*, 9 Wall. 788, 799-800; *Mitchell* v. *Hawley*, 16 Wall. 544. Mr. Justice Brandeis was able to say, in 1938, that

> "The practice of granting licenses for a restricted use is an old one, * * *. So far as appears, its legality has never been questioned." (*General Talking Pictures Co.* v. *Electric Co.*, 305 U. S. 124, 127.)

The *General Talking Pictures* case was decided after full consideration, first upon the original argument and then on a re-argument. The opinions of Justices Butler and Brandeis are closely reasoned and persuasive, and the dissent of Mr. Justice Black was less a difference on patent law principles than on the factual question of whether the patented apparatus involved in the case did in fact move, and was generally available, in the ordinary channels of trade.

A great deal of business has been done, and many arrangements under patents have been made, on the authority of those decisions. They ought not to be disturbed except for strong and cogent reasons. Moreover, the present case is not one in which an intelligent re-examination of the *General Talking Pictures* case could be made, because it does not involve a real controversy between the parties as to the lawful scope or the legal or practical effect of limited licenses or license notices.

POINT II

THE SOLICITOR GENERAL'S CONTENTION THAT THE MEASUREMENT OF ROYALTIES ON A BASIS OTHER THAN THE ACTUAL USE OF THE LICENSED PATENTS CONSTITUTES A TOLL ON COMMERCE BEYOND THE SCOPE OF PATENTS SHOULD BE REJECTED.

Here again the Solicitor General is asking the Court to decide an abstract proposition, and not one that is the

subject of a real controversy between the parties. As we understand the facts, petitioner has been manufacturing and selling radio receiving sets embodying certain of the respondent's patents, was sued for infringing those patents and settled the suit by taking a license in the respondent's usual form. Therefore, while under the license agreement the petitioner might have to pay royalties on apparatus that did not employ any of respondent's patents, that is not the case before the Court.

But if the question were before the Court, the contention of the Solicitor General still ought not to prevail, because the suggested rule of thumb is not an intelligent one. It would stamp the brand of illegality on many natural and sensible business arrangements having no possibly adverse effect on the public interest.

The Solicitor General appears to assume that there is a right way, and only one right way, to compute patent royalties. But the statute which grants a legal monopoly to the patentee does not fix or restrict the amount or character of the consideration that he may receive for relinquishing his monopoly privilege or sharing it with others. The fundamental principle of freedom of contract applies to patentees as to other property owners; and so long as the patentee's contracts do not bring about results that are contrary to the public interest, there is no reason for the courts to concern themselves with the consideration that is to be paid to him or the methods employed in computing it.

We can readily conceive of royalty arrangements being held unlawful where they involve the measurement of royalties upon sales of unpatented as well as patented products. For example, if the purpose and effect of such a royalty charge were to increase the price of unpatented goods and render them non-competitive with patented goods, trade

would be unlawfully restrained. See *United States* v. *U. S. Gypsum Company*, 333 U. S. 364, 397. But the vice would lie in the purpose and effect, and not in the mere fact that the consideration for the patent license was measured by some standard other than the revenues derived from sales of the patented article.

There is an easy plausibility in the Solicitor General's proposition that a patentee may not take toll of an industry when his patents are not being used, because he may not derive royalties from unpatented goods. The word "royalty" has connotations of a tribute exacted for a privilege, and it is plausible to urge that tribute may not be exacted when the privilege is not exercised. But the concept of "royalty" as a tribute is not inherent in the patent law; and if the word "compensation" or "consideration" be substituted, and account be taken of the consideration that moves from the patentee to the licensee in actual business situations, the unsoundness of the Solicitor General's rule of thumb becomes apparent.

The end purpose of all royalty arrangements is to fix a fair consideration for the benefits that the licensee derives or expects to derive from the license; and the royalties of patentees are frequently measured on a basis other than the use made of particular patents because often, under modern business conditions, the rights and benefits accruing to the licensee often go beyond the patent or patents. Professor Armstrong's FM development is an example. It was the end result of about 20 years of research and experimentation having as its objective the elimination of static in radio. When Armstrong in the middle 1920's turned to what he called frequency modulation as a possible means of solving radio's most vexing problem, he had first to invent a transmitter that would produce a wave with the physical charac-

teristics that he wanted, since at the time no one knew how to do that. He also had to invent a receiver that would function with such a transmitter. But when after years of continuous work he had accomplished those purposes, his objective was still unattained; and three more years of research and experimentation were necessary before the great inventive conception of "FM" came along. Nor did the inventive process stop there. During four more years of research and of practical work in putting his inventions into use, two more inventions of a major character were made, as well as a number of improvement inventions.

When the time came to license radio receiver manufacturers under the patents, what the prospective licensees wanted was not rights under this patent or that, or even under the patents that the inventor himself considered to be involved in the apparatus to be manufactured. They wanted a blanket license under any and all radio patents of the inventor, then issued or which might issue at any future time during the term of the agreement, together with a unilateral privilege of extending the license for further periods of time so long as useful patents remained in the licensor's hands. For those rights—and, during the early years, for the promise of the inventor to cooperate with and assist them in their FM development work—they were willing to pay a stipulated royalty, which would be the same in amount whether they used ten patents or one.

It is not unlikely that they would have been willing to agree to pay a royalty on all frequency modulation radio receivers sold by them, whether in any particular set they used ten patents or *none*. That question did not come up because one of the patents was considered to be so basic that it would be involved in all FM apparatus. But if the question had come up and the royalties had been measured

by sales of receivers without regard to the use of patents, the royalty agreement would have been based on good and lawful consideration in the grant to the licensee of the privilege of using the patents if he wished, and in the further grant of any and all future rights which the licensor might be in a position to confer. Trade would not have been restrained in any manner; and in the negotiations the royalty rate would have been fixed in the light of the royalty base, and probably it would have been lower; and total royalties might or might not have been greater than they actually were.

The question of fixing royalties independently of the use of particular patents has recently come up in a very practical way in Professor Armstrong's FM patent situation. Several years ago a public service communications company took a license under his FM patents and embarked on a program of building ultra-high frequency radio relay links throughout the United States. Some months ago, that company requested certain modifications of its license agreement, offering at the same time to make other modifications in favor of Armstrong, including a change in the method of computing royalties.

In the discussions which followed, the company suggested that payment of royalties be made independent of the use of the patents in particular apparatus and circuits; that the agreed royalty charges be paid for the privilege of using the patents if desired, and for the grant of rights under future patents. Its arguments in favor of that proposal may be paraphrased as follows:

Armstrong would be saved the trouble of determining whether one or more of patents were being used in particular apparatus and circuits of the licensee, and the licensee likewise would be spared that trouble. The licensee appreciated

the merits of Armstrong's inventions, recognized that he had opened the way for their going into the ultra-short wave radio field, valued his willingness to advise and help them and wanted to be able to take advantage of it during the development of their project. They wanted to avoid any differences of opinion with him as to the scope of his patents or their applicability to particular apparatus. They thought the apparatus that they were going to employ would fall into several classes—those admittedly involving one or more of the Armstrong patents, those which their patent attorneys thought the Armstrong patents probably did not cover, and those where the question was considered doubtful. Since the royalty rate was low, they thought it would be cheaper to pay the royalties on all their circuits rather than to require their patent lawyers to pass on each piece of apparatus so as to demonstrate to their accounting department whether or not it employed some Armstrong patent.

The difficulty of determining when a particular patent is being used must not be underestimated. In the mechanical arts, where the eye can observe, the problem is relatively simple; but that is not true of the modern fields of science where the phenomena are largely unseen. There have been cases where controversies have raged for years as to whether particular inventions were being employed in particular radio apparatus, where the issues were purely questions of fact as to the electrical phenomena that were occurring in the apparatus. Questions as to the scope of patents are frequently difficult also; and in the practical business world, if the patentee has contributed something of real value to the industry, and his ability to make additional contributions in the future is recognized, it is frequently the case that both the patentee and those who do business with him prefer to be rid of such questions.

In short, the proposal made by Armstrong's licensee, for royalties not definitely tied to the application of patents to particular apparatus, was a suggestion for a practical business arrangement between private parties, which appeared to be suited to their mutual interests and convenience, and if accepted could not possibly have affected the public interest adversely.

It would be possible to give many illustrations of the absurd and uneconomic results that would be produced by an academic formula or rule of thumb that required a patentee to tie his compensation directly and invariably to the use or sale of a piece of apparatus employing his patents. One good illustration, as we see it, is Professor Armstrong's method of licensing radio broadcast transmitters, according to which the man who puts up a 1 kilowatt station pays $250, the man who erects a 50 kilowatt station pays $2,500, and those whose stations have power of more than 1 kilowatt but less than 50 kilowatts pay according to an appropriate sliding scale; and when any licensed station increases its power it pays the additional amount that the higher power calls for.

Since the operating power determines the geographical area that the station can serve, and hence the advertising revenues that it can derive, it is a rough approximation of the value of the patentee's inventions to the user; and no one has yet been able to suggest a fairer method of computing royalties.

Nevertheless, according to the theory propounded by the Solicitor General in this case, it might well be held to be an illegal method. For when the operating power of a station is increased, it usually is not necessary to replace the transmitter, but only to add amplifying equipment to it; and

amplifying equipment by itself is not covered by Armstrong patents. It would be easy, therefore, to analyze the situation as one in which an additional royalty was being paid for the privilege of using unlicensed apparatus. Yet from the time when Armstrong granted his first license for a broadcast transmitter, not a single broadcaster has ever complained about that method of collecting royalties. On the contrary, everyone concerned has agreed that it is eminently fair and reasonable. It would be absurd—and it would not be in the public interest—to condemn such an arrangement on the basis of some academic theory of the proper method of computing royalties.

The illustrations that we have given show the fallacy of the Solicitor General's method of stating the question that he seeks to put before the Court, *i.e.*, in terms of an extension of the patent monopoly to unpatented apparatus. When Professor Armstrong collects a royalty from a radio broadcaster who has increased the power of his station, his patent monopoly is not being extended. His right to collect the royalty is derived from a private contract, and not from the patent monopoly. He does not thereby acquire the power to collect royalties on the use of amplifiers by others or to enjoin unlicensed companies from employing amplifiers. Nor is his monopoly increased when a radio communications company makes a royalty payment in respect of a circuit which at the moment is not employing his patents. He cannot sue any other company for royalties on the same basis or enjoin them from using unpatented apparatus; and in the actual illustration that we have given, the public service company would be making the payment; not in recognition of Armstrong's right to collect royalties on that apparatus but in express derogation of that right, and as part of the consideration for rights of a much broader character.

The adoption by this Court of the suggested rule of thumb, with respect to the computation of patent royalties, would not affect those business concerns which have control over segments of industry by virtue of their patents. Nor would it affect those in a position to operate in a large way, as by taking a stock interest in the licensee company, entitling them to enjoy the profits from unlicensed as well as licensed business, or by contracting to receive a percentage of gross revenues or net profits. It would only affect seriously the individual patentee or small patent holder, who must conform to the business situations in which he finds himself if he is to derive from his inventions the rewards that the patent law holds out to him.

POINT III

THE CONTENTION THAT THE PETITIONER SHOULD BE PERMITTED TO PROVE INVALIDITY OF THE PATENTS AS A DEFENSE TO THIS ACTION SHOULD BE REJECTED.

Petitioner's broad attack on the ancient doctrine of estoppel of a licensee to contest the validity of the licensed patents does not find support in the decisions of this Court in *Sola Electric Co.* v. *Jefferson Co.*, 317 U. S. 173; *Katzinger Co.* v. *Chicago Mfg. Co.*, 329 U. S. 394; *MacGregor* v. *Westinghouse Co.*, 329 U. S. 402; and *United States* v. *U. S. Gypsum Co.*, 333 U. S. 364, 387-88. Nor does the Solicitor General join in that attack.

Hence we address ourselves to the narrower argument of the Solicitor General, who advances the general proposition "that the validity of the licensed patents may be challenged in any case where the contract would be illegal in the absence of valid patents" (p. 5), and finds that proposition

applicable here because, he says, "the refusal of respondent to permit all the licensees in petitioner's position to sell to purchasers who might use the product commercially, and the attempted restriction upon the purchasers themselves, would unquestionably constitute an unlawful restraint of competition apart from the protection afforded by the patent laws" (p. 4).

Thus the Solicitor General's argument raises two questions:

> (1) Is a license to manufacture and sell for particular uses unlawful if not based upon valid patents?
>
> (2) Does such a license become unlawful if the licensee is required to affix to the apparatus a notice of the limited use for which the manufacturer is licensed to sell?

We do not know of any authority for the proposition that such a limited use license depends for its lawfulness upon the validity of the patents, where the licensor in good faith grants a portion of what he considers to be his rights and does not exact from the licensee an agreement to refrain from doing business in the unlicensed fields. *Cf. Nachman Spring-Filled Corporation* v. *Kay Mfg. Co.*, 139 F. (2d) 781.

Though the invalidation of a patent may make a license agreement ineffective from that time on, on the theory of "eviction" (see *Crackett Chemical Co.* v. *Chamberlain Co.*, 63 F. (2d) 853, 855, but *cf. Appleton Toy & Furniture Co.* v. *Lehman Co.*, 105 F. (2d) 801, 803), the invalidation of patents has never been held, so far as we know, to invalidate a license agreement under those patents—much less to make such an agreement "an" unlawful restraint of competition". On the contrary, such patent licenses are held

to be effective up to the time of the eviction and to require the payment of royalties up to that time. *Appleton Toy & Furniture Co.* v. *Lehman Co.*, *supra*, at 803.

Adoption by this Court of the doctrine suggested by the Solicitor General, that a limited patent license agreement is unlawful unless supported by valid patents, would have a shattering effect upon many licensing arrangements now in existence. It would cast doubt on the doctrine that royalties do not become repayable in the event of the invalidation of the patents. It would raise questions of treble damages under the anti-trust laws. It would unquestionably lead to a multiplicity of litigation by licensees who might seek an opportunity to escape the payment of royalties, or to make favorable settlements of claims for royalties against them, by refusing to pay and then pleading invalidity when sued.

Such a rule would promote litigation, discourage the settlement of litigation and make the lot of independent inventors more difficult than it already is—especially because the validity of a patent is not the easiest of problems. Validity is not an absolute truth, capable of certain determination in every case. Patents have been held invalid because witnesses have died and dates could not be established, or because for some fortuitous reason the patentee could not sustain his burden of proof, or because of the application of some new and technical principle affecting the requirements of claims. The Justices of this Court have had differences of opinion among themselves as to whether particular patents were valid or invalid; and it could hardly be asserted that every case where a patent was invalidated was correctly decided.

We venture to mention a number of conspicuous cases wherein the courts have held invalid, for want of invention or for anticipation, patents which have been held in the

highest esteem in the scientific world. The most fundamental of all patents in radio, the Marconi 4-circuit tuning patent—the invention with which practical wireless communication began—was held invalid for want of invention. *Marconi Wireless Co.* v. *United States*, 320 U. S. 1. The patent for one of the commercially most important inventions of the last 50 years, the Langmuir high-vacuum patent for electronic tubes, was invalidated on the same ground. *De Forest Radio Co.* v. *General Electric Co.*, 283 U. S. 664, opinion amended, 284 U. S. 571. But the decisions of the courts in those cases have not been accepted in the world of science, and credit for the inventions still belongs to the patentees.

Scientific history still records that Marconi gave birth to radio communication when he made the 4-circuit tuning invention, and it remains one of the great inventions of history. And in 1940 six of the most distinguished scientists in the country, in connection with the 150th anniversary of the patent system, selected Dr. Langmuir as one of the 19 living Americans whose inventive contributions to American life had been of a major character, and specifically cited him as the creator of the high-vacuum tube.*

---

*The selection was made and the citation written by the Committee on National Modern Pioneer Awards, composed of Karl Compton, Chairman; John Tate, Dean of the College of Science, University of Minnesota, and President of American Physical Society; Forest R. Moulton, Permanent Secretary, American Association for the Advancement of Science, formerly Professor of Astronomy, University of Chicago; Edward R. Weidlein, Director of the Mellon Institute and past President of the American Association of Chemical Engineers; George B. Pegram, Dean of the Graduate Faculties of Columbia University, and past President of the Society for the Promotion of Engineering Education; and Frank C. Whitmore, Dean of the School of Chemistry and Physics, Pennsylvania State College, and past President of the American Chemical Society.

In *Radio Corporation* v. *Radio Engineering Laboratories, Inc.*, 293 U. S. 1, Dr. Lee DeForest, rather than Dr. Armstrong, was held to have been the inventor of the regenerative circuit, the foundation of radio as we know it today. The highest scientific body in radio, the Institute of Radio Engineers, had previously awarded its Institute Medal to Professor Armstrong for his achievement in making that invention. At the time of this Court's decision, exactly one-half the directors of the Institute were either employed by, or employed by affiliates of, American Telephone & Telegraph Company or Radio Corporation of America—the two corporations that had been successful in defeating the Armstrong patent. Nevertheless, the Institute directors, shortly after this Court's decision, unanimously re-awarded the medal to Armstrong, reaffirming the original citation which credited him as the true inventor. The Franklin Institute followed suit, with the award of the Franklin Medal, and the American Institute of Electrical Engineers with the award of the Edison Medal. So also did the Committee on National Modern Pioneer Awards who in 1940, in selecting both Armstrong and DeForest as among the 19 living Americans whose inventive contributions to American life had been of the highest order, specifically cited Armstrong and refrained from citing DeForest as the inventor of the regenerative circuit.

We cite these cases, not in criticism of the courts, but as illustrations of the difficulties and uncertainties that are often involved in determining the validity of patents, and the practical unwisdom of rules that would prevent patentees and alleged infringers from resolving those uncertainties and difficulties by reasonable and legally effective business arrangeme ts, that permit new ideas and new

devices to be put into use and inventors to go on inventing, instead of spending their time litigating.

The second question which the Solicitor General raises is whether it is necessary to establish a valid patent in order to make it lawful for a licensor to specify that a limited use notice be affixed to the apparatus.

We do not know of any authority that would support the Solicitor General's position. Of course, if the patents are invalid, the notice has no legal effect whatever, since it cannot be enforced; and there is serious doubt as to what legal effect, if any, such a notice has where the patents are admittedly valid, beyond the limited situation represented by the *General Talking Pictures* case, where it conceivably might serve to prove actual knowledge on the part of one who had induced a licensee to do business in a field where it had not taken a license. In his dissenting opinion in the *General Talking Pictures* case Mr. Justice Black did not suggest that the license notice there was unlawful, but only that as a matter of law of property it should not be given effect.

The Solicitor General argues that the notice would have a practical effect, when taken together with threats of infringement suits. But there is nothing in the record, so far as we know, to indicate either that such threats were made or that there was anybody in a position to be threatened.

The matter of the notice is a good example of why courts do not decide questions that are not presented by real controversies before them. Leaving out of account the fact that petitioner never actually put the notice on its sets, to hold that such a notice might have the suggested practical effect would be pure speculation. We have never heard

of a case in the radio industry where a member of the public was sued or threatened with suit for infringement for an unlicensed use of a home receiver.

Moreover, we doubt that there is any other industry in which, by custom, license notices (whether restricted or of the conventional type) have become of less importance than in the radio industry, where the manufacturers have shown great resourcefulness in placing such notices—when they are affixed at all—where the purchaser of the radio set will never see them unless he is looking for them, and then only if he takes the set apart.

We respectfully suggest, to any member of the Court who may be interested, that he examine any radio set in his home in order to determine (a) whether he can find any of the several license notices that are supposed to be affixed to such apparatus, and (b) whether—if he finds one—he can get near enough to it, and get enough light on it, to read the fine print, even with the aid of a flashlight and a magnifying glass.

We submit that the issue of the restricted license notice in this case is *de minimis* as well as fictitious.

The position of the Solicitor General is not supported by this Court's decision in the *Sola Electric Co.* case and the other cases above cited, or by the decision of the Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit in *Nachman Spring-Filled Corporation* v. *Kay Mfg. Co., supra.* While the *Sola Electric Co.* decision was, as Judge Frank remarked in the *Nachman* case (at p. 783), a surprise to the bar, the reasoning of that case and of the subsequent cases is crystal clear. It was this:

A license agreement providing for the fixing of prices of patented articles is lawful. An agreement to fix prices

of articles not covered by valid patents is unlawful under the Sherman Act. Assuming that a price-fixing patentee holds only invalid patents, and his licensee is not permitted to contest them, then the doctrine of estoppel has the effect of legalizing and perpetuating a violation of the Sherman Act. The public interest in competition precludes that result.

The *Nachuaii* case applied the same principle to an agreement not to compete—a specific restraint of trade that would be perpetuated, and in effect made lawful, if the party restrained were not allowed to escape from the restraint on account of the invalidity of the patent.

But the application of the rule of estoppel in this case would not have any such effect. Insofar as the license notice is directed at the manufacturer, it does nothing more than restate the scope of his license. Insofar as it is directed at the hypothetical purchaser of radio sets who wants to employ them for commercial purposes, it is not self-enforcing; and if any such person exists and should be sued for infringement, he would be fully entitled to set up the invalidity of the patents, the invalidity of the notice, the rule of property law invoked by Mr. Justice Black in the *General Talking Pictures* case and any and every other relevant defense.

The Sherman Act is couched in terms as broad as those of the Constitution itself. The application of its general principles to practical cases has been a matter of gradual evolution over a period of 60 years, during which a body of doctrine—some of it precise and some of it as broad as the statute itself—has been evolved. The legality or illegality of particular business practices under the Sherman Act is not always clear in advance of judicial decision; and

sometimes it is not entirely clear after judicial decisions which are not unanimous. A rule, therefore, that deprived a patentee of the benefit of the estoppel doctrine merely because some restraint or attempted restraint of trade, however trivial, could be found in his license agreements, would be very harsh indeed.

The doctrine of estoppel to contest the validity of licensed patents is a very important protection for patentees—second only to the infringement remedy itself. That doctrine makes it possible for patentees to develop their inventions and arrange in an orderly manner for them to be put to use, with the confidence that an infringer will have to be dealt with only once. There is hardly any type of litigation more expensive than infringement suits, especially where the patents are technically difficult and relate to matters beyond the ready comprehension of laymen. The books are full of examples of the resourcefulness of licensees in evading and avoiding royalties; and if every contest over royalties, most of which must be brought to suit in the State courts, could be turned at the will of the defendant into the equivalent of a long and complicated infringement suit—but without the danger of treble damages that an infringement suit in the Federal courts involves—the exploitation of patent rights would be difficult indeed, at least for the individual patentee and the small patent-holding company.

14 March 1950

Respectfully submitted,

ALFRED MCCORMACK,
Attorney for Edwin H. Armstrong as Amicus Curiae.

WALTON H. HAMILTON,
Of Counsel.

LIBRARY
SUPREME COURT U.S.

Office Supreme Court, U. S.
FILED
MAR 2 1950
CHARLES ELMORE CROPLEY

IN THE

Supreme Court of the United States

OCTOBER TERM, 1949

No. 455

AUTOMATIC RADIO MANUFACTURING COMPANY, INC.,

Petitioner,

against

HAZELTINE RESEARCH, INC.,

Respondent.

ON WRIT OF CERTIORARI TO THE UNITED STATES COURT OF APPEALS FOR THE FIRST CIRCUIT

ANSWER TO PETITIONER'S OBJECTION TO MOTION ON BEHALF OF EDWIN H. ARMSTRONG FOR LEAVE TO FILE A BRIEF AS *AMICUS CURIAE*

ALFRED MCCORMACK,
Attorney for Edwin H. Armstrong as Amicus Curiae.

WALTON H. HAMILTON,
Of Counsel.

IN THE

Supreme Court of the United States

OCTOBER TERM, 1949

No. 455

AUTOMATIC RADIO MANUFACTURING COMPANY, INC.,
Petitioner,

against

HAZELTINE RESEARCH, INC.,
Respondent.

ANSWER TO PETITIONER'S OBJECTION TO MOTION ON BEHALF OF EDWIN H. ARMSTRONG FOR LEAVE TO FILE A BRIEF AS *AMICUS CURIAE*

We address ourselves to the four points stated in the petitioner's "Objection" to the filing of our brief.

1. That the motion is not independent of the brief.

The motion presented on behalf of Dr. Armstrong is a self-contained paper. It makes no reference to the brief which accompanies it and is independent of the brief. We have understood that it is customary, in asking this Court for leave to file a brief *amicus curiae*, to attach the brief to the motion in order that, in passing on the motion, the Court may refer to the brief, if it so desires, in order to determine more readily whether it should be received.

In this instance the time schedule would hardly have permitted any other procedure.

2. That the motion is not timely.

The significance of the case derives from the fact that the Solicitor General filed a memorandum in support of the petition for certiorari, and has now filed a brief *amicus curiae*, asking this Court, in making its decision on the concrete facts of the case, to announce several principles of general application to patent licenses which, if adopted by the Court, would substantially affect inventors and patent owners.

The Solicitor General's brief was filed in this Court on March 14. Armstrong's motion, with the accompanying brief, was filed on the following day, March 15. In order to file it on the 15th, three weeks in advance of the probable date of argument, it was necessary to address the motion and brief to the earlier memorandum of the Solicitor General, to write them upon the assumption that the Solicitor General's brief on the merits would be sufficiently similar to his memorandum so that our papers would be relevant; and then to examine the Solicitor General's brief before filing the papers, in order to determine whether that assumption had proved to be correct. It would not have been physically possible to ascertain that fact until March 15, the day after the brief of the Solicitor General had been filed.

Rule 27, paragraph 9(a), with its reference to the filing of an *amicus* brief "promptly after * * * granting certiorari", should not be held to render Dr. Armstrong's motion untimely. The case came to his notice late in January, at which time he was engaged in testifying in a deposition on

pre-trial proceedings in a patent suit, and in discovery and inspection of documents of the adverse party in that suit. After his deposition ended on February 10, he gave prompt attention to the problem of whether it would be appropriate for him and desirable for him to ask leave to file an *amicus* brief in this case. After a number of discussions with his attorneys, he gave instructions to them on February 23 to prepare the necessary papers, and the papers were then prepared as promptly as circumstances permitted, in view of the necessity of correspondence between counsel in New York and Washington.

Where, as here, an applicant for leave to file a brief *amicus curiae* has made his motion, attaching the brief, two days after the petitioner's brief has been filed and one day after filing of the brief to which he desires to address himself—in this case the brief of the Solicitor General—and well in advance of the date fixed for argument and the date when respondent's brief is due, it is submitted that any reasonable requirement of promptness has been met.

3. That the motion does not state the nature of Professor Armstrong's interest.

Professor Armstrong's interest in the issues before this Court, as framed by the Solicitor General, is stated succinctly in our motion, and is further shown under the next heading.

4. That the motion does not set forth any facts or questions of law that have not been, or reasons for believing that they will not adequately be, presented by the parties, and their relevancy to the disposition of the case.

Dr. Armstrong has been engaged for many years, and is still engaged, in fundamental research which is financed

from revenues derived from his patents. The licensing system under his FM patents is designed to produce fair royalties and to encourage and promote the widest public use of his inventions. His licensing policy is an open one, and he imposes no restriction upon any of his licensees beyond those which the law requires him to impose in order to make his licensing system effective.

He represents a class of patent owners different from that which respondent represents; and while both Dr. Armstrong and respondent are interested in the field of radio and have, no doubt, many problems that are common to patent licensors in such a field, there are sufficient differences between their respective situations to justify the presentation of their different viewpoints, in a case where the representatives of the Government have come before the Court to advocate the adoption of broad principles that would have a most serious and adverse effect on all patent owners.

In such a case an *amicus* brief of an individual patentee, if it served no other function, might assist the Court in appointing more precise bounds to its decision, and might serve also to put the facts of the particular case in their proper place in the scheme of things.

The case before the Court falls along the line where the patent grant, the anti-trust laws and public policy meet. The number of such cases—each with its own concrete situation—with which this Court has been confronted is surprisingly small. The public interest, which we join the Solicitor General in insisting is dominant, must in this domain be realized amid a conflict of values. There is not a single uniform system for the licensing of patents, but a host of systems differing widely in character, in the aims

which prompt them and in their incidence upon the public, upon the economy and upon individual interests. Those licensing systems are put to work in an organic and dynamic industrial society in the greatest variety of circumstances; and legal rules of thumb that might serve the interest of the public in one set of circumstances might have the opposite effect in other circumstances.

The Solicitor General, coming here as *amicus curiae* as of right, has asked the Court to employ this specific case for a wholesale reform of business practices in a field as important as patent licensing. We urge that it is appropriate and highly desirable for this Court to give consideration to the impact of the suggested rules on others than the particular parties, and especially on the individual inventor and patentee, whose protection and encouragement are within the immediate constitutional purpose of the patent law.

The reasons for permitting Dr. Armstrong's brief to be filed in this case are similar to, and no less strong than, the reasons which moved this Court in *Standard Oil Company* v. *Federal Trade Commission*, No. 107 in this Term, to grant leave to an attorney for a group of retailers and an attorney for a group of jobbers to present their opposing views in oral argument as *amici curiae*.

Respectfully submitted,

ALFRED MCCORMACK,
Attorney for Edwin H. Armstrong
as *Amicus Curiae*.

WALTON H. HAMILTON,
Of Counsel.

21 March 1950

LIBRARY
SUPREME COURT U S

JUL 14 1950

CHARLES ELMORE CROPLEY

IN THE

United States Supreme Court

October Term, 1949

No. 455

AUTOMATIC RADIO MANUFACTURING COMPANY, INC.,

Petitioner,

vs.

HAZELTINE RESEARCH, INC.,

Respondent.

PETITION FOR REHEARING.

FLOYD H. CREWS,
405 Lexington Avenue,
New York 17, N. Y.,
Counsel for Petitioner.

GEORGE K. WOODWORTH,
35 Kilsyth Road,
Brookline 46, Mass.,

DARBY & DARBY,
MORRIS NELSON,
405 Lexington Avenue,
New York 17, N. Y.,
Of Counsel.

LIBRARY
SUPREME COURT U S

JUL 14 1950
CHARLES ELMORE CROPLEY

IN THE

United States Supreme Court

October Term, 1949

No. 455

AUTOMATIC RADIO MANUFACTURING COMPANY, INC.,

Petitioner,

vs.

HAZELTINE RESEARCH, INC.,

Respondent.

PETITION FOR REHEARING.

FLOYD H. CREWS,
405 Lexington Avenue,
New York 17, N. Y.,
Counsel for Petitioner.

GEORGE K. WOODWORTH,
35 Kilsyth Road,
Brookline 46, Mass.,

DARBY & DARBY,
MORRIS RELSON,
405 Lexington Avenue,
New York 17, N. Y.,
Of Counsel.

IN THE

United States Supreme Court

October Term, 1949

No. 455

AUTOMATIC RADIO MANUFACTURING COMPANY, INC.,
Petitioner,

vs.

HAZELTINE RESEARCH, INC.,
Respondent.

PETITION FOR REHEARING.

Tying-In and Block-Booking.

The majority opinion appears to us to be untenable from a logical standpoint, and impossible from a practical standpoint, on the facts of this record. The difficulty appears to lie in a failure to consider controlling facts.

The Court expressly points out (Opinion, p. 3)

> "there is no conditioning of the license grant upon the acceptance of another and different license."

The grant of a license under one patent on the condition that the licensee take a license and pay royalties under another would of course be an unlawful extension of the patent monopoly by block-booking.

The Court further holds, however, that a patent owner may use one patent **to enforce the payment of royalties** on devices the patent **does not cover**, provided only that he

does not make his licensee sign a license calling for royalties under a patent which does cover the devices. He may therefore enforce the payment of royalties on devices his patent does not cover, provided:

1. The devices are unpatented; or
2. He does not own a patent covering the devices; or
3. He does not force the signing of a license under a patent covering the devices.

The mere statement of these propositions would seem to be their own refutation. Obviously no one will illegally require the signing of a second license calling for royalties under a second patent if he may legally collect the second royalties provided no second license is signed. Thus, he may accomplish deviously the exact result which is barred by the illegal method. A premium is put on subterfuge.

The motion picture distributors may now license the exhibition of only Grade A pictures, but at a rate which includes a full charge for the privilege of using Grade B pictures, whether or not the exhibitor chooses to exercise that privilege.

ASCAP, or a new Association of composers, may now compel the motion picture producers to pay it percentage royalties on all films produced for the next 10 years, whether having music or not, and whether the music originated with ASCAP members or not, and even though none did.

The facts of the present case also strikingly illustrate the inevitable results.

Hazeltine's Neutrodyne patents became obsolete in 1927. Continuously since that time, large companies have re-

fused to pay royalties and Hazeltine has sued and sued again on patent after patent in the attempt to enforce the payment of royalties. For twenty-one years every patent sued on has been held finally invalid, or not infringed, or both (see cases cited on pages 4 and 5 of our Main Brief). Hazeltine has no unexpired patent which has ever been finally held to be valid and infringed despite its repeated suits.

Obviously, in all these years Hazeltine has had no valid patent worth using, and no one for 21 years has paid Hazeltine for the privilege of using anything. This may be because of Hazeltine's parsimonious research appropriation (R. 173(h)).

Nor is anyone today paying Hazeltine royalties for the privilege of using anything, past, present, or future. This is proved, conclusively it seems to us, by the fact that seven large companies, namely (R. 178-9, 249-251):

General Electric
General Motors
Admiral
Philco
Emerson
Crosley
Motorola

do not pay royalties to Hazeltine. They can afford to fight and do. This list includes every large manufacturer in the industry except RCA and Zenith. Hazeltine grants licenses under patents of both of those companies (R. 255).

Yet today, Hazeltine has 130 radio manufacturing licensees. Why?

The answer to that question is found in a single fact of record, namely, that on every infringement suit Hazel-

tine has spent more than $100,000 (R. 189). Small companies obviously cannot afford suits of that magnitude. The minimum royalties of $10,000 a year which Hazeltine demands of Automatic Radio in this action amount to more than 25% of its net profits (R. 178(b)).

One other fact confirms this answer beyond possible question. At the time the license was signed, Mr. Woodworth, Automatic Radio's patent counsel, advised it that it was using no Hazeltine patents but must nevertheless settle with Hazeltine because the cost of litigation would be (R. 202)

> "far beyond the means of defendant, which is a comparatively small corporation."

This affidavit was not made on information and belief.

Hazeltine has 130 licensees only because of the economic pressure it exerts through litigation—not because of the merits of a single one, or all, of its patents.

The signing by 130 small manufacturers of standard, uniform, printed forms of license agreement represents no more bargaining for terms than the purchase of a railroad ticket.

The fallacy in considering this a (Opinion, p. 5)

> "convenient mode of operation designed by the parties" (note use of plural)

is clear from the reason given for so holding, namely (p. 5)

> "to avoid the necessity of determining whether each type of petitioner's product embodies any of the numerous Hazeltine patents."

This mode of operation was clearly not designed by Automatic Radio. It may be safely assumed Hazeltine would accept all royalties paid by any licensee, even though the

licensee chose to pay on its total production without questioning patent coverage. The only inconvenience which the licensee is spared is therefore the burden of determining whether it owes Hazeltine money, if it had the right to make such a study. Such right would clearly not be relinquished as a matter of "sound business judgment". Nor could it possibly represent the (Opinion, p. 6)

> "most convenient method of fixing the business value of the privilege granted by the licensing agreement"

when it is considered that patents run for only 17 years while the license is for at least 10 years (R. 16, Article X, Section 1). The majority of Hazeltine's patents would expire in 10 years, and it has produced nothing patentable in over 20 years (see p. 3 above).

This is certainly not intended to be either incendiary, or vague. It is a recital of conclusions which, it seems to us, inevitably follow from the undisputed facts of record, and inevitably lead to a legal conclusion of misuse of patents.

Hazeltine changed in 1937 to a form of license under which it collected royalties on devices not covered by its patents (Binns, R. 82) only because it no longer had any patents which anyone desired to use (p. 3 above). If the decision of this case is not changed the Hazeltine form will undoubtedly be adopted by many large owners of many trival patents.

From a practical standpoint, the weapon which this decision places in the hands of patent owners, particularly the administrators of patent pools, is of heroic proportions. The opportunities for patent exploitation which it opens up are staggering.

In the *National Lead* case, 332 U. S. 319, this Court, referring to a mere few hundred patents, none of which had

been litigated, quoted at page 327 the last two sentences of the following quotation from Judge RIFKIND's opinion in the District Court in that case at 63 F. Supp. 532:

> "The result of that is that the newcomer is confronted by a veritable jungle of patent claims through which only the very powerful and stout-hearted would venture, having a regard for the large initial investment which this business requires. These patents, through the agreements in which they are enmeshed and the manner in which they have been used, have, in fact, been forged into instruments of domination of an entire industry. The net effect is that a business, originally founded upon patents which have long since expired, is today less accessible to free enterprise than when it was first launched."

Patent pools of thousands of patents are common today. One patent pool in the radio industry exceeds 10,000 patents.

By using Hazeltine's new form of patent marking which this Court approves, the administrators of these pools need not inform even their licensees which of their patents it asserts they are using. Patents multiply at such a rate in big industries that even those which issue currently cannot even be studied by the small competitor, who must take a license. The decision in this case, as a practical matter, fastens a perpetual patent monopoly upon many industries, regardless of the merits of any one, or all, of the patents. The public, of course, pays.

If the collection of patent royalties under the combination of 570 patents of at least 7 different owners on the unpatented products of 130 manufacturers is not a restraint of trade, then price fixing is not a restraint of trade.

This Court has said in the case of *Standard Oil Co. v. United States*, 283 U. S. 163, at page 174:

> "If combining patent owners effectively dominate an industry, the power to fix and maintain royalties

is tantamount to the power to fix prices." National Harrow Co. v. Hench (C. C.) 76 F. 667, affirmed in 39 L. R. A. 299, 27 C. C. A. 349, 55 U. S. App. 53, 83 Fed. 36, see also (C. C.) 84 Fed. 26; Blount Mfg. Co. v. Yale & T. Mfg. Co. (C. C.) 166 Fed. 555."

Yet the power of combining patent owners to fix and maintain percentage royalties on **unpatented** articles made by 130 manufacturers is expressly approved in this case. Combining patent owners may now legally take their entire profits by dividing percentage royalties on total production (however exorbitant), and compete in price only above this fixed level. In effect, price fixing of unpatented articles is therefore legalized for every industry by following Hazeltine's license form. There is probably no industry in which there are no patents.

Such a holding is a retrogression in the law of patents and monopoly to the period before the Statute of Monopolies of 1623, when the vice of private taxes on ordinary unpatented goods was eradicated.

Restrictive Use.

If Hazeltine has withdrawn the requirement of restrictive use notices on sets, which the record does not show, it has certainly not done so irrevocably. On the contrary, it has done so, if at all, unilaterally and temporarily. The

---

"9

Where the royalty demanded is a fixed percentage of the gross sales price, this relationship is clear. A combination of patent-owning manufacturers, which required royalty payments on this basis and which appeared to dominate the automobile bumper industry, was dissolved by a consent decree entered in the district court for Southern New York in December, 1917. See United States v. Discher, unreported, noted in Federal Anti-trust laws and Decisions (Department of Justice) 1928, pp. 147, 148. See also National Economic Conference Board, op. cit. supra note 5, pp. 139, 140. United States v. Discher (D. C.) 255 Fed. 719. • • •"

requirement for the restrictive use notices is still in the license agreement and may be enforced at any time. Furthermore, the original restrictive notice is included in all licenses granted up to the present time, clearly showing that Hazeltine has not abandoned this requirement (Binns affidavit, Respondent's Main Brief, p. 80). Still further, the license itself purports to restrict the uses to which the apparatus may be put by those who purchase it in retail stores. Under the present decision, all the patent owner need do is waive a restriction during the pendency of any litigation in which it is challenged.

Conclusion.

It is accordingly prayed that rehearing be granted.

Respectfully submitted,

FLOYD H. CREWS,
Counsel for Petitioner.

GEORGE K. WOODWORTH,
DARBY & DARBY,
MORRIS RELSON,
Of Counsel.

New York, N. Y.,
July 14, 1950.

Certificate.

It is certified that this petition is presented in good faith and not for delay.

FLOYD H. CREWS,
Counsel for Petitioner.

LIBRARY
SUPREME COURT, U.S.

FILED
AUG 24 1950
CLERK

IN THE

Supreme Court of the United States

OCTOBER TERM, 1949

No. 455 **455**

AUTOMATIC RADIO MANUFACTURING COMPANY, INC.,

Petitioner,

v.

HAZELTINE RESEARCH, INC.,

Respondent.

RESPONDENT'S REPLY TO PETITION FOR REHEARING

MILES D. PULLMAN,
National Press Building,
Washington 4, D. C.,
Attorney for Respondent.

PHILIP F. LAFOLLETTE,
LEONARD A. WARNER,
LAWRENCE B. DUNN,
Of Counsel.

JUDICIAL PRINTING CO., INC., 32 Rector St., N. Y.—Hanover 2-0944-46

IN THE

Supreme Court of the United States

OCTOBER TERM, 1949

No. 455

AUTOMATIC RADIO MANUFACTURING COMPANY, INC.,
Petitioner,

v.

HAZELTINE RESEARCH, INC.,
Respondent.

RESPONDENT'S REPLY TO PETITION FOR REHEARING

A careful review of Petitioner's Petition for Rehearing reveals that it raises no issues which have not been previously urged by it and fully briefed and argued before this Court by both parties. In large part the Petition assumes non-existent situations having no relation to the facts presented by this case and from these hypothetical assumptions it conjures up imaginary and dire consequences without justification in law, logic, or business experience. Petitioner is tilting at windmills.

In view of the foregoing circumstances it is believed that no useful purpose would be served by rearguing point

by point what has already been fully briefed and argued before this Court.

Respectfully submitted,

MILES D. PILLARS,
National Press Building,
Washington 4, D. C.,
Attorney for Respondent.

PHILIP F. LAFOLLETTE,
LEONARD A. WATSON,
LAURENCE B. DODDS,
Of Counsel.